

HANDBOOK
TO
THE CANADIAN
READERS

REVISED EDITION OF 1928

*The Canadian Readers are authorized for use in
the Schools of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta,
British Columbia, New Brunswick, and Prince
Edward Island.*

TORONTO

THOMAS NELSON & SONS, Ltd. | W. J. GAGE & CO., Ltd.

1928

PREFACE

The material contained in the *Handbook to The Canadian Readers* is intended for the use of teachers and aims to provide all information necessary for the thorough understanding of the selections in the texts.

The editor wishes to express his appreciation of the kindness of the Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited, in giving him permission to make use of material formerly prepared by him and published in the *Handbook to The Alexandra Readers* and the *Handbook to The Manitoba Readers*.

TORONTO,
March 1st, 1923.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
NOTES ON BOOK II.....	7
NOTES ON BOOK III.....	39
NOTES ON BOOK IV.....	115
NOTES ON BOOK V.....	239
BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.....	427
PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.....	477
LIST OF PUBLISHERS.....	483
INDEX.....	487

Book II

MORNING HYMN

An excellent companion selection is "A Child's Prayer" by M. B. Betham-Edwards on page 101 of the Second Book of *The Silver-Burdett Readers* (Silver). The first stanza is as follows :

"God make my life a little light
Within the world to glow ;
A tiny flame that burneth bright
Wherever I may go."

A reproduction of the picture of "The Child Samuel" by Sir Joshua Reynolds accompanies the text.

A prayer corresponding to "Morning Hymn" entitled "Evening Prayer" by Charles G. D. Roberts is found on page 1 of Book I of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

THE GOOSE THAT LAID THE GOLDEN EGG

This is one of the fables of Æsop. The same fable is told at greater length on page 72 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson) and somewhat differently on page 156 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.).

A sketch of Æsop, together with a list of books dealing with his fables, is given on page 39. Further interesting sketches of Æsop may be found in "Æsop, the Slave Boy" and "How Æsop's Fables have been Preserved" in the "Æsop Section" beginning on page 156 of Book IV of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson). Eight of the fables accompany the sketches. A capital selection—nine in number—of the fables, written for this grade, is given under the heading "Fables from Æsop" on page 43 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). See also the collection of twelve fables written for this grade on pages 11-24 of the Second Reader of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson).

Other stories which teach the same lesson are "The Dog and His Shadow" on page 61 and "Fortune and the Beggar" on page 160 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) ; "The Greedy Crane"

on page 9 of Book II of *The Horace Mann Readers* (Longmans); and "The Little Madame: A Norman Fairy Story" in *Fairy Tales from Far Away* by Marie Bayne in *Nelson's Fireside Library* (Nelson).

MATILDA JANE

This selection is taken from Chapter XVIII of *The Story of Sylvie and Bruno* by Lewis Carroll. The standard edition of the story published by the Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited, Toronto, has many excellent illustrations by Harry Furniss. It contains only the portions about the two fairy children, without any extraneous matter. See page 41.

The story relates the adventures of the two little fairy children, Sylvie and Bruno. The children have in their possession a magic jewel which gives them the power to become visible or invisible at will, thus affording them many strange experiences in fairyland, and enabling them to baffle their friends in the world of reality with innocent childish pranks. Sylvie is a winsome, motherly little maid, whose chief concern is the care and education of her small brother. Bruno is an irresistible little scamp of an argumentative disposition, who has the faculty of turning the tables on his opponents in such a way that they are completely nonplussed. He has a strong objection to learning the lessons set for him by Sylvie and always brings them to an abrupt conclusion by announcing: "Can't learn no more! Course I can, if I like, but I can't if I don't like!" In the course of their travels Sylvie and Bruno arrive at a farmhouse, where they are hospitably received, and where Sylvie makes the acquaintance of Bessie, the little daughter of the house. The selection in the text is a song which Sylvie teaches Bessie to sing to her doll, Matilda Jane, and, as Bessie informed her audience, "Sylvie planned the words, and Bruno planned the music—and I sang it." Much of the unique humor and subtle satire of the book is no doubt lost on children, but their interest is held by the fascinating story.

Good companion poems are "My Funny Dolly" by E. S. Tucker on page 83 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner), "The New Doll" on page 62 and "The Old Doll" on page 63 of *Little Rhymes for Little Readers* by Wilhelmina Seegmiller (Rand), "Mehitable Ann" on page 72 of *The Shining Ship and Other Verses for Children* by Isabel Ecclestone Mackay (McClelland), and "The Broken Doll" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 189 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). A good prose selection to read to the pupils in this connection is "The Dolls' Thanksgiving Dinner" on page 136 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

THE FISHERMAN AND HIS WIFE

This is a very old story and is found in the folk-lore of almost all nations. No two peoples tell the story in exactly the same way, but however the details may differ, the essential thought is always the same.

The most familiar version of the story is that told by the Grimm Brothers to be found on page 60 of Book II of *Stories from Grimm* (Nelson). Margaret A. Doheny, under the title "The Fairy and the Poor Man" on page 85 of *Play Awhile : A Dramatic Reader* (Little, Brown), has an excellent dramatic version of the story based on Grimm. Sara Cone Bryant, under the title "Fulfilled : A Legend of Christmas Eve" on page 172 of *How to Tell Stories to Children*, has an interesting variant of the story adapted from *Fairy Tales from Afar* by Svend Grundtvig.

On page 46 of Book I of *The Chisholm Readers* (Jack) is the story of "The Woman who Lived in a Bottle," but the story is simply one of selfish greed on the part of the old woman, as is also "The Little Old Woman who Lived in a Vinegar Bottle" on page 15 of *The Birthday Party* by Amy Steedman (Nelson). See also "The Discontented Blacksmith" on page 34 of *Quaint Old Stories to Read and Act* by Marion Florence Lansing (Ginn).

A very excellent collection of folk stories and legends is found in Part I entitled *Doors of Gold* and Part II entitled *Fairy Favours of The Royal Treasury of Story and Song*, published by Thomas Nelson and Sons, Ltd., Edinburgh. The books are beautifully illustrated in color and in black and white. Another excellent series containing fairy and folk-lore stories, myths, and legends is the *Bright Story Readers* published by The Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited, Toronto. The little books for Grade I, about twenty in number, are quite suited to the junior division of Grade II, while those for Grade II, about twenty-five in number, are admirably adapted for the senior division, or the second half of the school year.

BED IN SUMMER

This selection is taken from *A Child's Garden of Verses* published in 1885. A complete edition of the book for school use with an introduction by Lloyd Osbourne, Stevenson's step-son, and a chronology of Stevenson's childhood is published by Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. An excellent illustrated edition for school use is published by Rand, McNally & Co., Chicago.

An appreciation of Robert Louis Stevenson as a writer for children is found in the notes on "Farewell to the Farm" on page 40. In the "Robert Louis Stevenson Section" beginning on page 9 of Book II of *The Art-*

Literature Readers by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Gage) there are several excellent biographical sketches suitable for reading by pupils of this grade: "Robert Louis Stevenson" on page 12, "His Home" on page 17, "Robert Louis Stevenson's Childhood" on page 20, "Robert's Schooldays" on page 24, and "Robert at his Grandfather's" on page 31. Nineteen poems from *A Child's Garden of Verses* accompany the sketches. See also *The R. L. Stevenson Reader* by Bryce and Spalding (Scribner). The book is very beautifully illustrated. The music of "Bed in Summer" is found on page 10 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack).

THE WATER AND THE PITCHER

This story is told at much greater length, with considerable dialogue, by Mary H. Howliston under the title "What Broke the China Pitcher" on page 129 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley). See also "How Dame Nature Got Her Frost" on page 70 of *Cat-Tails and Other Tales* by Mary H. Howliston (Flanagan). See also page 41 of Book II of *The British Columbia Readers* (Gage). See page 70.

An excellent companion selection is "Silvercap, King of the Frost Fairies" by Alice J. Patterson on page 126 of Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis' *For the Children's Hour*. In this connection a poem entitled "The Little Artist" on page 99 of Book I of *Through the Year* by Anna M. Clyde and Lillian Wallace (Silver) might be read to the pupils. "The Fairy Artist" on page 89 of Book II of *Story Hour Readers* (American Book Co.) is also a capital poem for pupils of this grade.

THE CHICKENS

This same selection is found under the title "How to Get a Breakfast" on page 53 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan), with a difference in the third stanza and a fourth stanza added :

"Said the third little chick,
 With a shrill little squeal,
 'I wish I could find
 Some nice yellow meal.'

"Said the fourth little chick,
 With a small sigh of grief,
 'I wish I could find
 A little green leaf.' "

The selection appears in quite a number of School Readers under different titles, such as "How to Get a Breakfast," etc.

On page 62 of the First Reader of *The Horace Mann Readers* (Longmans) there is a similar poem of six stanzas under the title "If You Want Any Dinner". The first stanza reads as follows :

"Said Little Chicky Buff
With a sad little cry,
'I wish I could find
A fat little fly'".

The story in prose of "Twelve Little Chickens" on page 78 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson) has a somewhat similar idea.

BABY BEAR MENDS HIS CHAIR

This selection is to be found on page 31 of *Pretty Polly Flinders* by Mary Frances Blaisdell, published by Little, Brown, and Company, Boston. The preface explains the plan of the book : " 'I wonder,' said Little Polly Flinders ; 'I wonder if the Three Bears locked their door after Silver Locks went into their house and ate their porridge. I wonder where the Three Kittens found their mittens. I wonder if Chicken Little ever got out of Foxy Loxy's den.' And Polly Flinders found out. Some one told her, some one who knows the answers to questions like these that children are always asking : 'What became of the little Red Hen ?' 'Who lived in the house that Jack built ?' 'Did Cinderella ever have another pumpkin coach ?' And here are the answers in this little book, with, oh ! ever so many others to fire the imagination and delight the heart of childhood."

All the selections in *Little Polly Flinders* are quite suited both in language and thought to pupils in this grade. On page 20 the story of "Bread and Honey" tells how the loss of Little Bear's porridge was made up to him and supplemented with bread and honey, and how everybody was happy.

The story of Silver Locks is told with a number of excellent illustrations in "Silver Locks" on page 9 of *Child Life in Tale and Fable : A Second Reader* by Etta Austin Blaisdell and Mary Frances Blaisdell (Macmillan). See also "The Story of the Three Bears" on page 37 of *How to Tell Stories to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton) and "The Three Bears" on page 43 of *Folklore Stories and Proverbs* by Sara E. Wiltse (Ginn). A dramatized version is found in *Dramatic Reader for Lower Grades* by Florence Holbrook (American Book Co.).

A capital companion selection is "The Naughty Bear" on page 75 of Book III of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn).

The original of the story of the Three Bears was written by Robert Southey and is "embedded in Chapter CXXIX of that glorified commonplace book *The Doctor*, published in London in seven volumes from 1834 to 1837."

THE RAINBOW

There are two other selections in Book II that deal with the rainbow : "The Rainbow Bridge" on page 95 of the text and "Boats Sail on the Rivers" on page 103. See notes on "Iris" on page 84.

A very pretty little poem entitled "A Pretty Game" by Judge Parry is found on page 38 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan):

"The sun and the rain in fickle weather
Were playing hide and seek together ;
And each in turn would try to chase
The other from his hiding place.
At last they met to say, 'Good-bye,'
And lo ! a rainbow spanned the sky."

Two excellent stories to read in this connection are "The Blind Girl" on page 20 and "What I Can See" on page 24 of the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). They are built around a beautiful colored reproduction of Sir John Millais' picture "The Blind Girl." The companion of the blind girl is describing to her the rainbow seen in the background of the picture. See also a capital selection entitled "Old Sol's Rainbow" on page 126 of *Cat-Tails and Other Tales* by Mary H. Howliston (Flanagan).

A good poem to read in connection with this selection is "Clouds" by Frank Dempster Sherman on page 169 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

A NEW GAME

A good poem to read in this connection is "A Sky Voyage" by Edith M. Thomas on page 133 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

AUTUMN FIRES

This selection is taken from *A Child's Garden of Verses* published in 1885. See pages 9 and 40.

An excellent collection of poems relating to the season of autumn is found in the section entitled "Songs of Autumn" on pages 187-250 of

Nature in Verse compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). Many of these are admirably suited to the pupils of this grade. Among the best are "The Seasons" by Helen Adelaide Ricker on page 187, "Lost : The Summer" by R. M. Alden on page 188, "Autumn" by Albert Lighton on page 189, "About the Fairies" on page 190, "Autumn Leaves" by George Cooper on page 203, "How the Leaves Came Down" by Susan Coolidge on page 205, "October's Party" on page 208, and "The Frog's Good-Bye" by Aunt Clara on page 221. See also a similar collection entitled "Autumn Poems" on pages 86-95 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

A favorite poem with the pupils which may be read in this connection is "A Masque of the Seasons" by James Whitcomb Riley on page 217 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner). An interesting prose selection entitled "Autumn" is found on page 30 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson). Companion selections are "Winter" on page 65, "Spring" on page 76, and "Summer" on page 96 of the last named book.

IN A MINUTE

This selection is taken from *Five Minute Stories* by Laura E. Richards, published by the Milton Bradley Company, Springfield, Mass. There are many other stories in the book equally well-suited to the pupils of this grade.

In the "Laura Richards Section" of Book III of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson) is found an excellent sketch of the author under the title "Laura E. Richards' Early Home." The sketch is accompanied by several selections from her poems and prose writings : In prose, "The Lazy Robin" on page 131, "The Pig Brother" on page 135, "The Great Feast" on page 138, and "Wall-Paper-ville" on page 145, and in poetry, "Little Sunbeam" on page 125, "Three Little Birds" on page 133, "The Spice-Box" on page 137, and "The Umbrella Brigade" on page 141. On pages 106-110 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) are found four other poems : "The Bumblebee," "Little Brown Bobby," "Jippy and Jimmy," and "The Song of the Corn Popper." See page 121.

THE WIND

A group of Christina G. Rossetti's poems is found on pages 67-74 of the Second Reader of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson) : "A Linnet," "What is Pink ?" "In the Meadow," "Daisies," "A Dia-

mond or a Coal," "An Emerald is as Green as Grass," "The Peach Tree," "The Wind," "Boats Sail on the Rivers," "The Birthday Gift," and "The Lambkins." Another group is found on pages 37-42 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn): "Lambkins," "Ferry Me Across the Water," "Coral," "The Swallow," "Wrens and Robins," and "Boats Sail on the Rivers." All the foregoing poems are quite suitable for reading by the pupils of this grade.

There are many excellent companion poems dealing with the wind. Some of the best of these are: "My Lady Wind" on page 10 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan); "Winter Night" by Mary F. Butts on page 19, "The Wind" by Letitia Elizabeth Landon on page 33, and "What the Winds Bring" by Edmund Clarence Stedman on page 29 of *The Posy Ring* by Kate Douglas Wiggin and Nora A. Smith (Doubleday); and "The Boy and the Wind" by Marie Zetterberg on page 214 of the Second Reader of *The Natural Method Readers* (Scribner).

Good prose companion selections are "The Wind's Playmate" on page 70 of *The Outdoor Book* by Zoe Meyer (Little, Brown), "What the Wind Does" on page 73 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner), "The Wind's Surprise" on page 78 of Book II of *The Aldine Readers* (Newson), and "The Wind's Work" by Maud Lindsay on page 164 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). The Greek story of the winds is told in prose on page 61 of the Second Book of *The American Normal Readers* (Silver). On page 65 of the same book is an interesting story entitled "A Day's Work for Westwind."

THE JACKAL AND THE ALLIGATOR

This is an old East Indian fable, the original of which occurs in *Old Deccan Days* by Mary Frere (Murray). See notes on page 90.

The story as told in the text is only a portion of the original. The complete story under the title "The Little Jackal and the Alligator" is found on page 72 of *Stories to Tell to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton). The same story, slightly abridged, is told on page 153 of the Second Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). See also "The Alligator and the Jackal" on page 137 of Book II of *The New Barnes Readers* (Laidlaw). Excellent dramatic versions of the same story are given on page 122 of *Play Awhile: A Dramatic Reader* by Margaret A. Doheny (Little, Brown) and under the title of "The Jackal and the Crocodile" on page 26 of *Story-Hour Plays* by Frances Sankstone Mintz (Rand).

A capital companion selection is "The Lambikin," adapted from one of Joseph Jacob's *Indian Fairy Tales*, to be found on page 76 of Margaret

A. Doheny's *Play Awhile: A Dramatic Reader*. The same story is told in dramatic form on page 17 of Frances Sankstone Mintz's *Story-Hour Plays*. Two other East Indian tales are found in the same book: "The Sparrow and the Crow" on page 11 and "The Furious Lion" on page 21. In Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) there are three good stories from a similar source: "The Timid Hares" on page 91, "The Shoe" on page 97, and "The Camel and the Jackal" on page 102. "The Tiger and the Hare" on page 124 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott) is also an East Indian story and tells how a tiger was tricked by a hare.

PAGE 34—**Jackal**. A description of the jackal is given on page 92.
Alligator. The crocodile is here meant. See page 92.

THE BROWN THRUSH

The thrush, while singing its song of happiness to all the world, is also giving a warning and teaching a lesson. If its eggs were destroyed, it would no longer have a merry song to sing, because of its sorrow, and soon there would be no birds to sing. If there were no goodness in the world there would be no joy.

Good companion poems are "Sir Robin" by Lucy Larcom on page 39 and "The Bluebird" by Emily Huntington Miller on page 87 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan), and "Who Stole the Bird's Nest?" by Lydia Maria Child on page 6 of Part I of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack). See also "The Tree, the Nest, and the Eggs" on page 25 of Book II of *The Blodgett Readers* (Ginn).

A good biographical sketch of Lucy Larcom is given under the title "When Lucy Larcom was a Little Girl" in the "Lucy Larcom Section" beginning on page 150 of Book III of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson). Seven of her poems accompany the sketch: "March," "The Wind-Flower," "The Brown Thrush," "Jack-in-the-Pulpit," "Sir Robin," "Calling the Violet," and "The Rivulet."

The bird in the poem is generally supposed to be the brown thrasher, which is usually called the brown thrush, although it is not really a thrush. A detailed description of the bird by Thomas Nuttall is given on page 16 of Book II of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand). The description is accompanied by a beautiful colored illustration. See also page 207 of *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). Thomas Nuttall says: "The thrashers display the most ardent affection for their young, attacking snakes, dogs, and cats in their defence. One of the parents, usually the male, seems almost continually

occupied in guarding against any dangerous intruder. The cat is attacked commonly at a considerable distance from the young, and the woods echo with the plaintive *ye-ow, ye-ow*, and the low, guttural, angry *tsh, tsh, tsh*. The enemy is thus pursued off the field, commonly with success, as guilty grimalkin appears to understand the threatening gestures and complaints with which she is so incessantly assailed. Towards their more insidious enemies of the human species, when approaching the helpless or unfledged young, every art is displayed; threats, entreaties, and reproaches, the most pathetic and powerful, are tried in no equivocal strain; they dart at the ravisher in wild despair and lament in the most touching strains of sorrow the bereavement they suffer. I know of nothing equal to the burst of grief manifested by these affectionate parents, excepting the notes of human suffering." Both the brown thrasher and the true thrushes, however, build their nests usually on the ground or on a bush or sapling never more than eight feet above the ground. All are beautiful songsters. The various members of the thrush family—wood thrush, Wilson's thrush or veery, Alice's thrush, olive-backed thrush, and hermit thrush—are fully described on pages 216-217 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. See page 223.

PAGE 37—**To you and to me.** The editor of *Notes to the Ontario Readers* says: "Observe that, 'He's singing to me!' becomes 'he sings to you and to me' in the last stanza, as, after the interpretation of the song, the bird sings to the little girl and the little boy a song they can understand."

THE DANDELION

Many stories are told of the origin of the dandelion. "The Legend of the Dandelion" on page 96 of *Stories to Act* by Frances Gillespy Wickes (Rand) is an excellent story written specially for this grade. "The Bag of Gold" on page 56 of the First Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Gage) tells an interesting story, intended rather for pupils in a lower grade. See also "The Legend of the Dandelion" on page 195 and "The Dandelion" on page 196 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley).

A good companion selection is "The Little Travellers" on page 33 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson). See also "The Weeds" in *By Meadow and Stream* translated from the Danish by G. C. Moore-Smith (Nelson) and "Dandelion-Down" by Lucy Larcom on page 45 of Book I of *Through the Year* by Anna M. Clyde and Lillian Wallace (Silver). A good story of the dandelion is "Help One Another" on page 10 of Book I of Anna M. Clyde and Lillian Wallace's *Through the Year*.

See also "Dandelions" on page 35 of Book II of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn).

The dandelion is described with a colored illustration on page 193 of *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset), on page 16 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract), on page 35, with a colored illustration, of *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack), and in the section entitled "A Group of Airship Seeds" on page 128 of *Wild Flowers of Western Canada* by William Copeland McCalla (Musson).

Frederic William Stack says: "Dandelion is an obscure name, but is generally believed to be a corruption of the French *dent-de-lion*, meaning lion's tooth, and refers to the outline of the leaf, which is said to resemble that of the tooth of a lion." Charles M. Skinner in *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* (Lippincott) adds: "As a lion was once a symbol of the sun, and as the flower suggests that luminary, the association of the plant with the lion is more excusable on such a ground than on that of a resemblance between the leaf and teeth." This last mentioned book has on page 101 a beautiful Algonquin tale of the origin of the dandelion.

THE DANDELION

In the first edition of Book II of *The Canadian Readers* the name of the author of this poem was omitted. It was written by Mrs. Emma Payne Erskine.

Two excellent little poems of two stanzas each on the flower are found in Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson): "The Dandelion" on page 14 and "Dainty Little Dandelion" on page 100. A capital companion poem with a humorous turn is "The Dandelion" by Katharine Pyle on page 198 of the Second Reader of *The Natural Method Readers* (Scribner). See also "The Dandelions" by Helen Gray Cone on page 86 of *Three Years with the Poets* by Bertha Hazard (Houghton). Two other poems, "Dandelion" by Kate L. Brown on page 66 and "Dandelion" by Nellie M. Garabrant on page 67 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) are very interesting, but they are perhaps a little too advanced for this grade.

THE SNOW BLANKET

A capital version of this same story, but much fuller, is given in "The Snow Blanket for the Seeds" by Mary Loomis Gaylord on page 102 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). The selec-

tion is entirely suited to the pupils of this grade both in thought and language and should, if possible, be read to them. Two other selections, but too difficult for reading purposes in this grade, are "Mother Earth's Blanket" on page 82 and "Pan and His Magic Paint-Box" on page 190 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans). See also the poem entitled "Mother Earth's Quilts" on page 54 of Book II of *The Blodgett Readers* (Ginn). A number of other suitable poems are given in the notes on "Putting the World to Bed" on page 28. "The Vapor Family" on page 85 of *Cat-Tails and Other Tales* by Mary H. Howlston (Flanagan) might be read to the pupils.

THE SNOW BIRD'S SONG

Albert Field Gilmore in *Birds Through the Year* (American Book Co.) describes the snow bird: "The most striking feature of the chickadee's fluffy, rather plain dress is the glossy cap he wears. The back is a slaty gray, the tail somewhat darker. The chin is black, the throat and under parts whitish, the upper neck and cheeks snow-white. They are good acrobats, now clinging to the underside of a limb, now hanging from its tip, but never stopping for an instant. Busy as bees they are, a habit, however, which may be found among all our small winter birds. To an observer it seems that constant labor and a cheerful heart are necessary to stimulate these midgets to brave the rigors of the winter". The whole sketch on page 240 of the book from which the foregoing extract is taken may be read with advantage. William Lovell Finley in the chapter entitled "The Chickadee" on page 15 of his *American Birds* has an excellent sketch of the bird with four good illustrations. A description of the chickadee is given on page 212, with a beautiful colored illustration on page 269, of *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also a capital description by Thomas Nuttall on page 16 of Book I of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand). The text is accompanied by a full-page colored illustration.

Good companion poems are "The Snowbird", by Hezekiah Butterworth on page 57 of *The Posy Ring* by Kate Douglas Wiggin and Nora A. Smith (Doubleday) and "The Snowbird" by Frank Dempster Sherman on page 36 of the Second Reader of *The Horace Mann Readers* (Longmans). See also the chapter entitled "Black Cap Learns to Coast" on page 91 of *The Outdoor Book* by Zoe Meyer (Little, Brown).

PAGE 46—**Merrily singing.** William Lovell Finley says: "I have never found the chickadee moody. I have seen him when it was so cold I could not understand just how he kept his tiny body warm; when it looked like

all hunting for him and no game. If he was hungry he did not show it. The chickadee winters in the north. He endures the cold and hunger of the dreary months. In the spring his cheer seems just the same. He does not bubble over. He takes his abundance in quiet and contentment."

KING SOLOMON AND THE BEES

This old story is told much more completely in *Nature Myths* by Flora J. Cooke (Flanagan). A good companion selection is "King Solomon and the Ants" in the same book.

THE LITTLE SEED

In the first edition of Book II of *The Canadian Readers* the name of the author of this poem was omitted. It was written by Kate Louise Brown.

Good companion poems to "The Seed" are "Baby Seed Song" by Edith Nesbit on page 38 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan), "The Seed" by Edward Shirley on page 59 of the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson), and "The Little Plant" by Emilie Poulsson on page 190 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). On page 40 of *Cat-Tails and Other Tales* by Mary H. Howliston (Flanagan) there is a story called "The Little Brown Seed," followed by a poem of the same name, in which the seed answers the call of spring. A little poem entitled "Just a Little Seed" by Anna Thomas might be given to the pupils :

"Just a little seed,
Very small indeed ;
Put it in the ground
In a little mound ;
Then wait and see
What the seed will be."

In connection with this poem it would be a good idea for the teacher to read to the pupils the story entitled "Margery's Garden" on page 145 of *Stories to Tell to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton).

WHY THE BEAR'S TAIL IS SHORT

This same story, which comes from both German and Indian sources, is told on page 39 of Book IV of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn) under the title "Why the Bear Has Lost His Tail" and on page 147 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.) under the title "How the Bear Lost His Tail."

On page 72 of *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) the same story is also told along with many other myths about animals and birds. *Nature Myths* by Flora J. Cooke (Flanagan) has many similar stories. See also page 28.

THE SANDMAN

In the first edition of Book II of *The Canadian Readers* the name of the author of this poem was omitted. It was written by Marie Van Vorst.

The following companion lullabies are quite suited to this grade: "Cradle Song" by Elizabeth Prentiss on page 29; "When the Sleepy Man Comes" by Charles G. D. Roberts on page 32; "Rockaby, Lullaby" by J. G. Holland on page 37; "The Dustman" by Fred E. Weatherly on page 50, and "The Rock-a-By Lady" by Eugene Field on page 91 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). See also "The Sandman" by Margaret Vandegrift on page 228 of *The Posy Ring* by Kate Douglas Wiggin and Nora A. Smith (Doubleday), "Baby Goes to Sleepy Town" by Margaret Sutton Briscoe on page 134 of Book II of *The Jones Readers* (Ginn), and "The Indian Mother's Lullaby" by Charles Myall on page 118 of Book II of *The Aldine Readers* (Newson). *The Book of Lullabies* by Melvin Hix (Educational Pub. Co.) contains some excellent selections. See page 46.

A good prose selection to read in this connection is "The Sand-Man Story" on page 128 of Book II of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). On page 130 of the same book is the old lullaby "Rock-a-Bye."

THE MOUSE AND THE LION

This is one of the fables of Æsop. See pages 7 and 39. The same story, but differently told, is found on page 24 of the Second Book of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson). See also "The Lion and the Mouse" on page 62 of *Folklore Stories and Proverbs* by Sara E. Wiltse (Ginn). The same lesson is taught in a long story called "The Faithful Beasts" on page 75 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

The lion is a favorite character in the fables and legends. Excellent stories of the animal, told in dramatic form, are "The Furious Lion," a Punjab tale, on page 21, "The Mule and the Lion," a Chinese fable, on page 42, and "The Lion and the Goat," an East Indian fable, on page 50

of *Story-Hour Plays* by Frances Sankstone Mintz (Rand). All of these are quite suitable for this grade.

Good companion stories are "The Ant and the Dove" on page 56 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn), "The Grasshopper and the Dove" on page 15 of Book II of *The Aldine Readers* (Newson), "Taro and the Turtle" on page 52 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman), "Help One Another" on page 39 of Book II of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn), and "How Did He Do It?" by Emilie Poulsson on page 63 of Book II of *The Jones Readers* (Ginn).

FROGS AT SCHOOL

This poem is sometimes entitled "Twenty Froggies." A complete analysis of the poem stanza by stanza is given on pages 120-125 of Part I of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

Good companion poems are "Old Dame Cricket" on page 59 and "Dame Duck's First Lecture on Education" on page 72 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan), and "They Didn't Think" by Phoebe Cary on page 22 of *The Beacon Second Reader* by James H. Fassett (Ginn). See the prose selection entitled: "The Swimming Lesson" on page 78 of *Bunny Rabbit's Diary* by Mary Frances Blaisdell (Little, Brown).

THE UGLY DUCKLING

The selection in the text is dramatized from the story of the same name by Hans Christian Andersen in his *Danish Fairy Legends and Tales*. The selections as originally written are much too difficult for pupils in this grade, so that in every case they must be very much simplified. The original story of "The Ugly Duckling" is found on page 28 of *Danish Fairy Legends and Tales* by Hans Christian Andersen edited by Sarah C. Brooks (Macmillan) and also on page 59 of the *Introductory Book of Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). This last book contains a beautiful colored illustration of the story and also illustrations in black and white. A simplified version of "The Ugly Duckling" suited to this grade is found on page 105 of the *Second Reader* of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill). Other versions are given on page 61 of Book II of *The Progressive Road to Reading* (Gage) and on page 147 of the *Third Year Language Reader* (Macmillan).

A very elaborate dramatic version of "The Ugly Duckling," but quite within the limits of the pupils in this grade, is found on page 199 of *A Dramatic Reader : Book Three* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry).

A capital analysis of this story, with suggestions as to treatment in class, is given on pages 83-101 of Part I of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson). Two methods are suggested, the first centering around the thought "A mother's love for her children," and the other around the idea of "Kindness to all creatures."

In thought Andersen's stories are quite suited to this grade, but, as has already been stated, the language is too difficult. Simplified versions of three of the stories are found in the Second Reader of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson): "The Fir Tree" on page 31, "The Brave Tin Soldier" on page 81, and "Little Maia" on page 147. See also "Five in One Pod" on page 47 and "The Snow Man" on page 93 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston); "The Daisy and the Lark" on page 138 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.); and "The Magic Match-Safe" on page 127 and "The Flax" on page 142 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). *Child Life in Tale and Fable: A Second Reader* by Etta Austin Blaisdell and Mary Frances Blaisdell (Macmillan) has the following: "What the Moon Saw" on page 51, "The Little Match Girl" on page 106, "The Ugly Duckling" on page 116, and "Five Peas in a Pod" on page 133.

Book III of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson) has two excellent biographical sketches of the author in the "Hans Christian Andersen Section" of the book: "Hans Christian Andersen's Childhood" on page 77 and "How He Became Famous" on page 84. Four of his stories accompany the sketches: "The Princess and the Pea" on page 76, "The Candles" on page 79, "The Ugly Duckling" on page 86, and "The Daisy" on page 100. See also "Hans Christian Andersen and his Stories" on page 135 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

THE SWING

This poem was published in 1885 in *A Child's Garden of Verses*. See pages 9 and 40. The music of the poem is found on page 38 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack).

Good companion poems are "A Swinging Song" on page 106 of the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson); "Letting the Old Cat Die" by Mary Mapes Dodge on page 145 and "In the Swing" by Eudora S. Bumstead on page 153 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver); and "The Grape Vine Swing" on page 57 of *When We Were Little* by Mary Fanny Youngs (Dutton).

THE LOST DOLL

This poem is taken from Chapter V of *The Water-Babies : A Fairy Tale for a Land Baby*. A synopsis of the book is given in the notes on "The Little Chimney Sweep" on page 102. The song is sung by the fairy Do-as-you-would-be-done-by when she was cuddling Tom for the first time. All the other babies were pleased with the ditty. The author does not say whether Tom liked it, but remarks : "What a silly song for a fairy to sing. And what silly water-babies to be quite delighted with it." It has since been a great favorite with land babies. See page 8.

The "Charles Kingsley Section" beginning on page 95 of Book IV of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson) has three interesting sketches of Kingsley : "Charles Kingsley's Boyhood," "Charles Kingsley's Schooldays," and "Mr. Kingsley's Pets." These are well worth reading to the pupils.

A good companion poem to "The Lost Doll" is "My Poor Dolly" on page 5 of *Little Poems for Little People* chiefly by Edward Shirley (Nelson).

LITTLE HIAWATHA

This selection tells the story of the childhood of Hiawatha, the hero of Henry Wadsworth Longfellow's poem of the same name. See notes on "How the Indians Got the Corn" on page 56 and on "Hiawatha's Hunting" on page 127. See also "Hiawatha's Childhood" by Longfellow on page 113 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan).

There are three selections in rather simple language dealing with Hiawatha in Book II of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Gage) : "The Little Indian Boy, Hiawatha" on page 104, "Hiawatha's Childhood" on page 105, and "The Young Man, Hiawatha" on page 109. An excellent illustration of Hiawatha by Elizabeth Norris is found on page 107 of the same book. *The Hiawatha Primer* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) is beautifully and suitably illustrated, and is very valuable for this grade. See also "Hiawatha" on page 54 of the Second Book of *The American Normal Readers* (Silver).

HIAWATHA'S BROTHERS

This selection is taken from Section III entitled "Hiawatha's Childhood" of *The Song of Hiawatha* by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow. See page 127.

PAGE 78—**Built their lodges.** See notes on "The Beavers" on page 133.
Hid their acorns. See notes on "Squirrel Wisdom" on page 47.

The reindeer. The reindeer is really a native of Europe. See description, with colored illustration, on page 46 of *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack). Longfellow refers here to the common American deer. An interesting Indian legend entitled "Why the Hoofs of the Deer are Split" is found on page 79 of *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton).

Was so timid. See "Why the Rabbit is Timid" on page 68 of Florence Holbrook's *The Book of Nature Myths*.

THE WIND AND THE SUN

This is another of the fables of Æsop. See pages 7 and 39. The same story is excellently told in prose narrative under the title "The North Wind and the Sun" on page 94 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). See also page 11 of the Second Reader of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson) and page 54 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). A dramatized version may be found on page 180 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). See also *Æsop's Fables* by Lena Dalkeith in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack).

A good companion selection entitled "The Strongest" is found on page 162 of the Second Book of *The Silver-Burdett Readers* (Silver). The same story is told in dramatized form under the title "The Strongest: Who? or Which?" on page 30 of *Stories to Act* by Frances Gillespy Wickes (Rand).

A HAPPY HOME

This pretty little poem describes the home of the squirrels. The illustration on page 82 of the text fully explains the selection.

An excellent companion poem is "The Queer Little House" on page 29 of Book I of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton). It tells about the home of the chickens under their mother's wings. "The Egg in the Nest" on page 41 of the same book is always of interest to the pupils.

A good poem on the squirrel is "Whisky Frisky" on page 55 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). A very excellent squirrel story is "The Proud Little Squirrel" on page 54 of Book III of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn). It would be well for the teacher to read this story to the pupils.

THE LAND OF COUNTERPANE

This selection was published in 1885 in *A Child's Garden of Verses*. See pages 9 and 40.

A good sketch of Stevenson to have the pupils read is "A Child's Garden of Verses" on page 58 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). It is written in language suitable for this grade and tells the pupils just what they would want to know about Stevenson.

A good companion poem is "The Indian Game" by Edith G. Brewster on page 73 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). See also "The Wise Playmate" on page 26 of *When We Were Little* by Mary Fanny Youngs (Dutton).

THE STORY OF PICCOLA

This story in prose is told from the poem "Piccola" in *Stories and Poems for Children* by Celia Thaxter, published by Houghton Mifflin Company. The poem is reproduced on page 90 of *Stories to Tell to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton). Another version of the story, extremely full in its details, is given on page 156 of *The Story Hour* by Kate Douglas Wiggin and Nora A. Smith (Houghton). It would be well for the teacher to read this story to the pupils.

There are an almost unlimited number of Christmas stories that may either be read to the pupils or read by them. One of the best of these is "The Golden Cobwebs" on page 133 of *How to Tell Stories to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton). Other selections suitable for this grade are "The Story of the Wise Men" on page 81 of the Second Book of *The American Normal Readers* (Silver); "The Christmas Bells" by Mary L. Gillman on page 64 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.); "A Visit from St. Nicholas" retold from Clement Moore on page 65 of the Second Reader of *The Hollon-Curry Readers* (Rand); "How the Fir Tree became the Christmas Tree" on page 88 of *Folk Stories and Fables* by Carolyn Sherwin Bailey (Milton Bradley); "The First Christmas Tree" on page 64 of *Stories to Act* by Frances Gillespy Wickes (Rand); and "Christmas Eve" on page 133 of Book III of *The Browne Readers* (Ginn). The story mentioned above, "The Golden Cobwebs," adapted from Robert Haven Schaufler, is excellently told for this grade on page 141 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

Suitable Christmas poems to accompany the selection in the text are "Shoe or Stocking" by Edith M. Thomas on page 31 and "Santa Claus" on page 85 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan); "Hang

up the Baby's Stocking" by Emily Huntington Miller on page 174 of the Second Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill); "Christmas Bells" on page 83 of the Second Reader of *The Expressive Readers* (American Book Co.); "Said Tulip, 'That Is So'" by Madge Elliot on page 282 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver); "Three Merry Sailors" on page 105 of the First Reader of *The Horace Mann Readers* (Longmans); and "Santa Claus" on page 112 of *The Children's First Book of Poetry* by Emilie Kip Baker (American Book Co.).

LADY MOON

Good companion poems are "The New Moon" by Eliza Lee Follen on page 245 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver); "A Bonny Boat" by Margaret Johnson on page 9 and "Moon, So Round and Yellow" by Matthias Barr on page 27 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan); "The Lost Playmate" by Abbie Farwell Brown on page 57 of the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson); and "The Little Boy and the Moon" by Emily Huntington Miller on page 67 of Book II of *The Blodgett Readers* (Ginn). "Mr. Moon: A Song of the Little People" by Bliss Carman on page 90 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent) is a capital poem for children, but too difficult for this grade. See also "Full Moon" on page 58 of *Peacock Pie; A Book of Rhymes* by Walter de la Mare (Holt) and "The Moon" by Robert Louis Stevenson on page 111 of *The Children's First Book of Poetry* by Emilie Kip Baker (American Book Co.).

In *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) there are five very interesting legends connected with the moon, which may be read to the pupils: "Why the Face of the Moon is White" on page 179, "Why All Men Love the Moon" on page 184, "Why There is a Hare in the Moon" on page 188, "The Children in the Moon" on page 193, and "Why There is a Man in the Moon" on page 197. Another interesting story is "The Sun, the Moon and the Wind" on page 102 of *Child Life in Tale and Fable: A Second Reader* by Etta Austin Blaisdell and Mary Frances Blaisdell (Macmillan).

THE RAINDROP

Similar stories to the selection in the text are "The Little Raindrops" on page 15 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson), "The Raindrop" on page 38 of the First Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Gage), "When Spring Came to the Garden" on page 11 of *The Outdoor Book* by Zoe Meyer (Little, Brown), and "Do What You Can" on page 97 and "Three

Drops of Water, and What Became of Them" on page 100 of Book I of *Through the Year* by Anna M. Clyde and Lillian Wallace (Silver). The poem "The Little Lazy Cloud" on page 95 of the last-named book might also be read in this connection. See also one of Krylov's fables entitled "The Rain Cloud" on page 107 of the Second Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

Good companion poems are "Rain in Summer" by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow on page 106 of *Three Years with the Poets* by Bertha Hazard (Houghton), "The Raindrop's Ride" on page 163 of the Second Reader of *The Natural Method Readers* (Scribner), "Who Likes the Rain" by Clara Doty Bates on page 56 of *The Children's First Book of Poetry* by Emilie Kip Baker (American Book Co.), and "Raindrops" by Ann Hawkshawe on page 43 of *The Beacon Second Reader* by James H. Fassett (Ginn).

THE WIND

This poem was published in *A Child's Garden of Verses* in 1885. See pages 9 and 40. The music is found on page 30 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack). Suggestions for companion poems and additional reading are given in the notes on "The Wind" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 13.

THE RAINBOW BRIDGE

A full account of Iris is given in the notes on "Iris" on page 84. The same story is told in "Iris' Bridge" by Flora J. Cooke on page 47 of Book II of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Gage). See also "Old Sol's Rainbow" on page 126 of *Cat-Tails and Other Tales* by Mary H. Howliston (Flanagan) and "Wild Flower Rainbow" on page 90 of the Second Reader of *The Horace Mann Readers* (Longmans). The Norse legend of the rainbow is told in the "Story of the Rainbow" on page 106 of Book II of *The New Century Readers* (Rand).

A good companion story is "The Color Fairies" on page 50 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson). See also "The Rainbow Dress" on page 50 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). An excellent series of similar classical myths is given in the section entitled "Myths" on pages 170-222 of *The First Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton).

PAGE 95—Juno. See note on page 411.

The Moon. Diana, or Artemis, was the goddess of the moon. *See page 166.*

Apollo. *See page 165.*

Gray old Sea. Neptune or Poseidon. *See page 166.*

PAGE 97—A pot of gold. This has passed into a proverb. The story of how an attempt was once made to steal this pot of gold is told on page 64 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner) and in more detail on page 114 of Book II of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton).

PUTTING THE WORLD TO BED

Good companion poems to this selection are "Tiny Little Snowflakes" by Lucy Larcom on page 92 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston), "A Wonderful Weaver" by George Cooper on page 95 of Book III of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson), "Falling Snow" on page 142 of *The Beacon Second Reader* (Ginn), "The Disappointed Snowflakes" on page 124 of Book II of *The Jones Readers* (Ginn), and "The Snowflakes" by Mary Mapes Dodge on page 115 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). The little poem entitled "Snow" might also be given to the pupils:

"This is the way the snow comes down,
Softly, softly falling ;
So God giveth the snow like wool,
Fair and white and beautiful.
This is the way the snow comes down,
Softly, softly falling."

HOW THE ROBIN GOT ITS RED BREAST

This story is also found in *Nature Myths* by Flora J. Cooke (Flanagan). It is one of a number of very interesting Indian myths about the birds and their peculiar features. A number of these legends are told in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) : "Why the Woodpecker's Head is Red" on page 15, "Why the Swallow's Tail is Forked" on page 23, "Why the Raven's Feathers are Black" on page 34, and "Why the Parrot Repeats the Words of Men" on page 52. *See also Indian Nature Myths* by Julia Darrow Cowles (Flanagan). *See page 98.*

The teacher should tell the children, before taking up this selection in class, the Indian legend of the origin of fire. It may be found under the title "How Fire was Brought to the Indians" on page 36 of Florence

Holbrook's *The Book of Nature Myths*. This book should be in every school library. See also "How Coyote Stole Fire" by Katharine B. Judson on page 40 of Book III of *The Edson-Laing Readers* (Sanborn).

BOATS SAIL ON THE RIVERS

See notes on "The Rainbow" on page 12 and on "The Rainbow Bridge" on page 27. See also page 85.

In this connection Henry Wadsworth Longfellow's beautiful legend of the rainbow might be read to the pupils. The little Hiawatha is talking to Nokomis, his grandmother :

"Saw the rainbow in the heaven
 In the eastern sky, the rainbow,
 Whispered, 'What is that, Nokomis ?'
 And the good Nokomis answered :
 'Tis the heaven of flowers you see there ;
 All the wild flowers of the forest,
 All the lilies of the prairie,
 When on earth they fade and perish,
 Blossom in that heaven above us.' "

TWO LITTLE KITTENS

An excellent little prose drama based on "Two Little Kittens," quite suitable for either reading or acting in this grade, is found on page 7 of *Play Awhile : A Dramatic Reader* by Margaret A. Doheny (Little, Brown). Good companion selections are "How the Quarrel was Settled" on page 25 of the Second Reader of *The Natural Method Readers* (Scribner), "Three Bugs" by Alice Cary on page 83 of Book I of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton), and "Agreed to Disagree" by Sydney Dayre on page 157 of Book I of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). See also the story entitled "The Cooky" by Laura E. Richards on page 144 of *How to Tell Stories to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton), "A Barnyard Quarrel: A Swedish Folk Tale" on page 104 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.), and "The Elephant and the Monkey" on page 57 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

A good poem dealing with cats is "The Cats' Tea-Party" by F. E. Weatherley on page 12 of Part I of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack).

WOLF! WOLF!

This is one of the fables of Æsop. See pages 7 and 39. The fable is told in extended story form for this grade on page 121 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott) and in briefer form on page 18 of the Second Reader of *The Free and Treadwell Readers* (Row, Peterson). See also *Æsop's Fables* by Lena Dalkeith in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack).

An excellent little story told in dramatic form, which teaches the lesson of faithfulness to duty, is found under the title "The Little Shepherd" on page 26 of the Second Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). See also "The Shepherd Boy" on page 129 of Book I of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

OVER IN THE MEADOW

The complete poem by Olive A. Wadsworth contains twelve stanzas, of which only five are given in the text. The order of arrangement in the original is as follows: Mother-toad, mother-fish, mother-bluebird, mother-muskrat, mother-honeybee, mother-crow, mother-cricket, mother-lizard, mother-frog, mother-spider, mother-firefly, and mother-ant. The complete poem is given on page 45 of *The Children's First Book of Poetry* by Emilie Kip Baker (American Book Co.).

PAGE 113—**Muskrat.** The body of the muskrat is about a foot in length, with a tail eight inches long. The animal is thick-set, with a rounded head and small and close ears. The front feet are small, and the hind feet stout with five partly webbed toes, well fitted for swimming. "At the approach of winter it builds itself little dome-topped houses, in which it hibernates in families. In the spring its flesh is good eating, but later it acquires a musk-like flavor which is disagreeable." It is much hunted in Canada for its fur. See *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan).

PUPPY AND I

This selection is taken from *When We Were Very Young*, a volume of poems for children by A. A. Milne. All the poems in this volume are excellent for reading to the pupils. A number of them are set to music in a small book entitled *Fourteen Songs from "When We Were Very Young"* published by McClelland & Stewart, Toronto. Among these are "Missing," "Buckingham Palace," "The Three Foxes," and "In the Fashion." The first stanza of the last mentioned poem is as follows:

“A lion has a tail and a very fine tail,
 “And so has an elephant, and so has a whale,
 “And so has a crocodile, and so has a quail—
 They’ve all got tails but me.”

The first stanza of “The Three Foxes” indicates the nature of the poem:

“Once upon a time there were three little foxes,
 Who didn’t wear stockings, and they didn’t wear sockses
 But they all had handkerchiefs to blow their noses,
 And they kept their handkerchiefs in cardboard boxes.”

Alan Alexander Milne was born on January 18th, 1882. He was educated at Westminster School, London, and at Trinity College, Cambridge. He began his career as a journalist while still at Cambridge by editing *Granta*, the undergraduates’ paper. From 1906 to 1914 he was assistant editor of *Punch*. During the Great War he served in France with the Royal Warwickshire Regiment. He resides in London, England. He is noted not only as a dramatist and novelist but also as a writer of children’s poems. Amongst the best-known of his works are *Mr. Pim*, *The Red House Mystery*, *Mr. Pim Passes By*, *The Romantic Age*, *The Truth About Blayds*, *The Dover Road*, *When We Were Very Young*, *Now We Are Six*, and *The House At Pooh Corners*.

GRAY AND WHITE

The underlying thought in this poem is common to the folk-lore of almost all peoples. “The House in the Wood,” told in dramatized form on page 152 of *Play Awhile: A Dramatic Reader* by Margaret A. Doheny (Little, Brown) and “Mother Frost” by William and Jacob Grimm on page 55 of *The Beacon Second Reader* by James H. Fassett (Ginn) may serve as typical examples.

A good companion selection to “Gray and White” is “Why the Rabbit is Timid” told in prose by Florence Holbrook on page 68 of *The Book of Nature Myths* (Houghton). See also “How Little Rabbit Caught the Sun in a Trap” on page 70 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston).

PAGE 117—**Mole.** “The moles belong to the northern hemisphere alone. The head is small, pointed, and almost continuous with the thick, tailless body, from which the limbs project very little, so that the animal has the shape of a round, pointed wedge; ears and eyes have almost disappeared,

and the sense of smell is mainly depended upon for such information as the creature requires. The fur is soft and short, and the mouth has forty small, sharp teeth. It passes its whole life underground, only occasionally coming out upon the surface at night. Its enormous strength enables it to force its way through compact soil, though it naturally prefers the looser sort near the surface, and on this account, as well as because such places are richer in worms, it infests gardens and lawns." See "A Quarrelsome Mole" on page 28 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans). The story of the origin of the moles is told in "The Story of the First Moles" on page 96 of Florence Holbrook's *The Book of Nature Myths*.

THE COUNTRY MOUSE AND THE CITY MOUSE

This is one of the *Fables* of Æsop, but there are many variations. See page 7. Whether written in dramatic or story form the satire is very neat and very symbolic. With or without the maxim which is sometimes attached, the lesson is always clear and practical.

The story is told much more fully in narrative form in "The Tale of the Littlest Mouse" by Anne Guilbert Mahon on page 45 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley). An excellent story version, written for this grade with appropriate illustrations, is found on page 43 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson). Another good dramatic version is given on page 28 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston).

A good companion story, somewhat simple, perhaps, for this grade, is "The Wolf and the Dog" on page 19 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston). See also "The City Mouse and the Garden Mouse" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 31 of the same book.

A good collection of mouse stories of the humanistic type is *Master Mouse the Madcap* by Jacqueline Clayton (Nelson).

MY SHADOW

This poem is taken from *A Child's Garden of Verses* published in 1885. See page 9. The music of the poem is found on page 18 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack).

A good companion story is "The Naughty Shadow," a Russian tale, on page 20 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

THE BROWNIES

This selection, which deals with a familiar subject, is intended for dramatic reading in the classroom. The notes on the selection entitled "The Shoemaker and the Elves" on page 10 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers* to be found on page 115 of the text should be read in this connection. The stories there referred to and recommended are somewhat advanced reading for Grade II, but all of them may be told to the pupils.

PUSSY WILLOW

This poem gives a pretty picture of the general change in all nature in the spring. The beginning of the picture is really in the last stanza when the call of the south wind awakens the pussy willows (the furry blossoms of the willow), which appear before the leaves. In the first and second stanzas are given the other changes of spring, the melting snow, the running sap, the return of the birds, and the appearance of the little mayflower. Interesting chapters on the pussy willows are found in *Round the Year* by L. C. Miall (Macmillan) and in *Plants and Their Children* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (American Book Co.). An interesting selection, entitled "The Origin of Pussy Willows," is contained in *Fanciful Flower Tales Overheard in Fairyland* by Madge A. Bigham (Little, Brown, Boston). A colored illustration of the catkins is given in *Gardens in Their Season* by C. Von Wyss (Macmillan). The stories in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) deal for the most part with animals, but there are a few that concern the trees and the flowers: "Why the Evergreen Trees Never Lose their Leaves" on page 118, "Why the Aspen Leaves Tremble" on page 122, "How the Blossoms Came to the Heather" on page 125, "Why the Juniper has Berries" on page 133, and "The Story of the First Snowdrops" on page 175. See also *Nature Myths* by Flora J. Cooke (Flanagan) and *Indian Nature Myths* by Julia Darrow Cowles (Flanagan). See also "Pussy Willow's Hood" on page 196 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner) and "How Pussy Grew like the Sunbeams" on page 1 of *The Outdoor Book* by Zoe Meyer (Little, Brown).

Excellent companion poems, admirably suited to this grade, are "The Out-Door Pussies" on page 203 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner), and "The Pussy Willow" on page 40 and "Miss Willow" by Susie E. Kennedy on page 42 of *Nature in Verse* by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). Other good spring poems are "Where They Grow" on page 82 and "The Secret" on page 98 of Book II of *The Atlantic Readers* (Nelson); "Calling the Violet" by Lucy Larcom on page 74 of the Second Reader of *The Aldine Readers* (Newson); "Buttercups and Daisies" by Mary Howitt on page

177 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.); and "Spring Waking" by Isabel Ecclestone Mackay on page 96 and "Spring" by Celia Thaxter on page 116 of Book I of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

PAGE 138—**Maple.** See page 327.

Elm. The elm is fully described on page 150 of *Trees That Every Child Should Know* by Julia Ellen Rogers (Grosset).

Mayflower. The mayflower is known also as the trailing arbutus and the ground laurel. Mrs. William Starr Dana in *How to Know the Wild Flowers* (Scribner) says: "The waxy blossoms and delicious breath of the trailing arbutus are among the earliest prophecies of perfume-laden summer. We look for these flowers in April—not beneath the snow, where tradition rashly locates them, but under the dead brown leaves of last year; and especially among the pines and in light sandy soil." See also *Modern Nature Study* by Sidney Silcox and O. J. Stevenson (Macmillan) and Mrs. Dana's *Plants and Their Children*. The mayflower is the emblem of Nova Scotia. See John McPherson's poem "The Mayflower" in *A Treasury of Canadian Verse* edited by Theodore H. Rand (Ryerson Press).

PAGE 139—**Bluebirds.** See page 134.

Yellow tassels. "The poplar begins to flower early in March. It is a catkin-bearing tree, and high on the upper branches there dance and dangle long slender woolly tails." A description and a colored illustration of these catkins is given in *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

THE LITTLE ESKIMO

In Book III of *The Edson-Laing Readers* (Sanborn) the section entitled "In an Eskimo Land" is decidedly worth reading to the pupils. It consists of six stories, all of which are well within the compass of pupils in this grade: "With Sipsu and Gunlah," "The Three Brothers," "The Long Winter," "The Coming of the Sun," "The Kayak," and "Summer is Here." A similar series of Eskimo stories, equally suited to this grade, is given in Book II of *The New Century Readers* (Rand): "Toolooah" on page 38, "The Igloo" on page 40, "Eskimo Fun" on page 43, "Hunting and Fishing" on page 45, and "Story of the Hunters" on page 48. All of the foregoing selections are well illustrated. See also "Agoonack, the Esquimau Sister" on page 9 and "How Agoonack Lives through the Long Summer" on page 19 of *The Seven Little Sisters Who Live on the Round Ball that Floats in the Air* by Jane Andrews (Ginn), "The Story of Agoonack and Her Sail upon the Ice Island" on page 1 of *Each and All: The*

Seven Little Sisters Prove Their Sisterhood by Jane Andrews (Ginn). *The Little Eskimo* by Laura Smith (Flanagan), *Eskimo Stories* by Mary Smith (Rand), and *Children of the Cold* by Frederick Schwatka (Educational Pub. Co.). A capital poem to read in connection with the text is "A Very Exceptional Eskimo" on page 25 of *The Shining Ship and Other Verses for Children* by Isabel Ecclestone Mackay (McClelland).

Book III of *The Edson-Laing Readers* already referred to deals with other peoples in a manner similar to the treatment of the Eskimo: Indians, Russians, Norwegians, Swiss, Germans, Dutch, Italians, and Chinese. All of these selections are excellent companion pieces to "The Little Eskimo." See also *Little Folks of Other Lands* in *The World and Its People* series (Nelson) and *Round the World with Father*, the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Geography* (Nelson).

THE DAISIES

Christina G. Rossetti has a pretty little poem of a single stanza entitled "Daisies" :

"Where the pretty bright-eyed daisies are,
With blades of grass between,
Each daisy stands up like a star
Out of a sky of green."

Other companion poems, perhaps a little too advanced for this grade, are "Buttercups and Daisies" by Mary Howitt on page 61 and "Wake Up, Little Daisy" on page 64 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). See also "How We Got Our First Daisies" on page 86 of Book II of *The Aldine Readers* (Newson) and "The Daisy" by Hans Christian Andersen on page 107 of the Introductory Book of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). The poem "Where Do All the Daisies Go" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 68 of *The Children's First Book of Poetry* by Emilie Kip Baker (American Book Co.) might also be read.

On page 156 of Book II of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) is "The Water Lily" told in prose. This selection might well be read by the pupils in connection with "The Daisies."

WYNKEN, BLYNKEN, AND NOD

This poem was published in 1892 in *With Trumpet and Drum* under the title *Dutch Lullaby*. It is a fairy tale in verse. The writer fancies two little eyes and a little head going off to sleep in their trundle-bed as three little men sailing away in a wooden shoe and meeting with many adventures on their journey.

An appreciation of Eugene Field as a writer of children's poems is found in the notes on "The Duel" on page 71. An excellent series of sketches of Field, quite suitable for reading to the pupils in this grade, is found in the "Eugene Field Section" of Book III of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances Elizabeth Chutter (Atkinson): "Eugene Field, the Boy," on page 13, "Eugene Field's Schooldays" on page 16, "Eugene Field and the Children" on page 19, and "Eugene Field and his Friends" on page 23. Eleven selections from Field's poems accompany the sketches. The *Eugene Field Reader* by Alice L. Harris (Scribner) contains sixteen of Field's poems, all of which are suited to this grade. The book is beautifully illustrated.

Excellent companion poems are "Ho, for Slumberland!" by Eben E. Rexford on page 248 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) and "The Slumberland Boat" by Emeline Goodrow on page 211 of the Second Grade of *Studies in Reading* by J. W. Searson and George E. Martin (University Pub. Co.). A good nonsense poem in this connection is "The Table and the Chair" by Edward Lear on page 92 of *Lippincott's Second Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott).

THE FROG PRINCE

This selection is one of the German folk-tales collected by the Brothers Grimm. See page 115. A representative selection from the stories is found in Books I and II of *Stories from Grimm in Nelson's Graded Readings* (Nelson), in *Stories from Grimm* by Amy Steedman in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), and in *Grimm's Fairy Tales* edited by James H. Fassett in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

Other versions of "The Frog Prince" are found on page 63 of *Doors of Gold* in *The Royal Treasury of Story and Song* (Nelson), on page 159 of Book II of *The New Barnes Readers* (Laidlaw) under the title "The Enchanted Frog", and on page 76 of the Second Reader of *The Winston Readers* (Winston) under the title "The Princess and the Golden Ball."

Several of Grimm's stories are found in *The Beacon Second Reader* by James H. Fassett (Ginn): "The Wolf and the Seven Young Kids" on page 14, "The Four Friends" on page 44, "Mother Frost" on page 55, "Rumpelstiltskin" on page 70, and "Briar Rose" on page 126. In the Second Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill) are found "How Hans Did as He was Told" on page 49 and "The Hare and the Hedgehog" on page 71. In *The Second Year Language Reader* (Macmillan) are found "The Wolf and the Seven Kids" on page 7, "The Elves and the Shoemaker" on page 28, and "One Eye, Two Eyes, and Three Eyes" on page

62. In Book II of the *Howe Readers* (Scribner) are found "The Cat and the Fox" on page 84 and "The Town Musicians" on page 179. In *Child Life in Tale and Fable: A Second Reader* by Etta Austin Blaisdell and Mary Frances Blaisdell (Macmillan) are found "The Wolf and the Seven Goslings" on page 66, "Snow-White and Rose-Red" on page 88, "Queen Bee" on page 128, and "The Town Musicians" on page 137. All the foregoing selections are specially adapted from the original stories for use in this grade.

The teacher is strongly recommended to procure copies of *The First Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* and *The Second Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* both by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton). The two books are a mine of fables, folk tales, fairy tales, and myths. The material in the former book may be read by the pupils in this grade. The latter book provides a storehouse of material for stories to tell to the pupils. Andersen, Grimm, Perrault, Æsop and also tellers of modern fairy tales are well represented. *The Third Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton) has many suitable stories which may be told to the pupils.

The stories of Charles Perrault have a special appeal to the pupils of this grade. Five of these are given in Book II of *The Heart of Oak Books* edited by Charles Eliot Norton (Heath): "Little Red Riding Hood" on page 16, "Diamonds and Toads" on page 53, "Cinderella" on page 82, "The Sleeping Beauty in the Wood" on page 96, and "Puss in Boots" on page 111. All of these may be read without difficulty by the pupils.

In this connection four other selections may be specially mentioned: "Hop O' My Thumb," "Cinderella," "The Wolf and the Seven Kids," and "Little Red Riding Hood" in *I Read Them Myself* series re-told by Louey Chisholm (Jack). These books are written for this grade, are attractively arranged, and are well illustrated. See also *Folk Tales from Grimm* dramatized by Ethelyn Abbott (Flanagan).

A good companion story is "The Rose of Pity" in *Fairy Tales from Far Away* by Marie Bayne in *Nelson's Fireside Library* (Nelson).

THE REASON WHY

An excellent companion selection to this charming little poem is "A Mortifying Mistake" by Anna M. Pratt on page 96 of Book I of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). See also "Five Little White Heads" by Walter Learned on page 128 of *How to Tell Stories to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton).

THE MONTHS

A similar version of this poem, differing in details, by Sara Coleridge is given on page 126 of Part I of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson). The same poem, well illustrated, is given on page 148 of *Second Year Language Reader* (Macmillan). Still another version is found on page 155 of Book II of *Story Hour Readers* (American Book Co.).

Good companion selections are "The Twelve Months," a Bohemian tale, on page 191 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman), "Marjorie's Almanac" by Thomas Bailey Aldrich on page 3 and "A Year's Windfalls" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 20 of *The Posy Ring* by Kate Douglas Wiggin and Nora A. Smith (Doubleday), and "The Months" by Richard B. Sheridan on page 19 of *Three Years With the Poets* by Bertha Hazard (Houghton). See also "A Masque of the Seasons" by James Whitcomb Riley on page 217 of Book II of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner).

An interesting poem to read in this connection is "How the Days Got Their Names" on page 232 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

PAGE 159—**Daffodil.** The daffodil is described on page 214.

Dandelions. See page 17.

Buttercups. See page 80. An interesting legend of the buttercups is told in "How Buttercups Came" on page 168 of Book II of *The Elson Readers* (Scott, Foresman).

PAGE 160—**Milkweed.** See page 119.

Book III

O CANADA

This poem is rapidly taking its place as the National Song of Canada. The music is given on page 175 of *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage) and in the One Book Course and Book II of *The Progressive Music Series* (Gage). A list of national songs is given in the notes on "Dominion Hymn" on page 115.

BELLING THE CAT

The story in the text was related originally by Æsop, who is said to have lived in the latter half of the 6th Century B.C. He is supposed to have been born in Phrygia in Asia Minor, and to have been a slave. It gradually came about that everything having the appearance of a fable was attributed to Æsop, so that many of the stories are even more ancient than the date at which he is supposed to have written. A collection of these fables was made in Germany about 1480, and a few years later this was translated into English by William Caxton. This collection is the source of most of the *Fables of Æsop* as we know them. See the chapter entitled "A Writer of Fables" in *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering* by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.) and "Æsop and his Fables" on page 27 of the Fourth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill). *The Fables of Æsop* selected, told anew, and their history traced by Joseph Jacobs (Macmillan) has a valuable introductory essay. See page 7.

The fable of "Belling the Cat" is told in dramatic form in a very interesting way in *Quaint Old Stories to Read and Act* by Marion Florence Lansing (Ginn). Good school editions of the fables are *Æsop's Fables Retold for the Children* by Elizabeth Hardie (Nelson) and *In Fableland* by Emma Serl (Silver).

A recent writer says: "Among the kinds of stories used for impressing important truths on the mind, the fable is one of the oldest and best known. Fables are usually very brief, presenting some single incident which is at once recognized as typical of a common human way of looking at things. The business of the fable is to correct this faulty attitude

of mind by having us see how very foolish it is. The characters in the fable may be human beings, or animals, or gods, or inanimate objects personified. The well-known fables go so far back in time that we cannot trace them to their first sources."

On at least one occasion the fable of "Belling the Cat" was made use of for a practical purpose. James Main Dixon in *Dictionary of Idiomatic English Phrases* (Nelson) tells the story as follows: "When James III was king of Scotland, he irritated the old nobility by the favor he showed to painters and architects. One of the latter, named Cochran, who had succeeded to the estates of the Earl of Mar, was especially hated by the nobles. At a meeting in the church of Lauder they discussed how best to get rid of him. Lord Gray, afraid that the discussion would lead to no practical result, told the story of the mice and the cat. 'A colony of mice had suffered greatly from the attacks of a cat, who pounced upon them before they had time to escape. They were much concerned over the matter and resolved to do something to defend themselves. A young mouse rose up and proposed that they should fix a bell round pussy's neck, which would warn them of her approach. The proposal was warmly received, until an old mouse put the question, "but which of us will bell the cat?"' The orator had not thought of this and was speechless. When Lord Gray had finished, Archibald, Earl of Angus, a man noted for his bodily prowess and daring, rose up and swore that he would bell the cat. He kept his word, captured Cochran, and had him hanged over the bridge of Lauder. Afterwards he was always known as 'Bell-the-Cat.' "

FAREWELL TO THE FARM

This poem was published in 1885 in *A Child's Garden of Verses*. It tells of the good-bye of children, who have spent a happy holiday time on a farm. Each thing left behind is mentioned with a remembrance of the good times in which it has played a part, and yet, with all the pleasant memories, there is a child-like anticipation of their journey and their return to their home. The music of the poem is found on page 42 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack).

There is no author in whom children are more interested than in Robert Louis Stevenson. They recognize instinctively that he is a real friend to them, and they wish to know something about the man himself and especially how he spent his childhood. The story of his boyhood is told in a very interesting way in the chapter entitled "An Author's Boyhood" by Amy Steedman on page 123 of *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack). See also "Stevenson's Lighthouses" in

Lives and Stories Worth Remembering by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.). See notes on "Bed in Summer" on page 9.

Mr. Lloyd Osbourne, Stevenson's stepson, in the introduction to the authorized edition of *A Child's Garden of Verses* (Scribner) says: "At the present day there are few books that hold so secure a place as the *Child's Garden*. Wherever English is spoken, and that is now as far reaching as the world itself, there are little children culling flowers from Stevenson's garden and weaving his thoughts and fancies into the round of their tiny lives. Under these circumstances it is natural to find some curiosity in respect to the author of this remarkable book. It has often been thought that he was a man surrounded by children; that he gained his insight and appreciation by a constant contact with children; that he played and romped with them, telling them stories and listening to the confidences they were so ready to pour into his ear. But, so far from this being the case, Stevenson, on leaving his Edinburgh nursery, said good-bye to all the little children he was ever destined to know with the least degree of intimacy. The child of the *Child's Garden* was Stevenson himself. The plays were his plays; the dreams were his dreams; the fears and fantasies were all his own. Throughout his life he was never free from physical ills. But when he was condemned to the involuntary idleness of the sick-room, to long nights of sleeplessness and pain, to a convalescence often more intolerable than the course of the malady itself, it was then he returned, with the clearest memory and comprehension to the days of his own precarious infancy."

ALICE IN WONDERLAND

This selection is made into a continuous, complete narrative by connecting portions of Chapters I, II, and III of *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*.

The *Dictionary of National Biography* says: "In 1865 appeared *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*, the work by which, with its pendant *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*, Lewis Carroll's name is best known and will be known. Therein the author's absurd gift of comic invention and delicate fanciful fun is at its richest; while the circumstance that the books originated in the wish to amuse one of his little girl-friends animated them with a charm and humanity that are not to be found in the same degree in anything else he wrote. The little girl in question was Alice Liddell, to whom the original story of Alice was told on a river excursion. In these two books the author accomplished what was practically a new thing in writing—a persuasive yet rollicking madness that

by its drollery fascinates children, and by its cleverness, their elders." Both *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* and *Through the Looking Glass* may be read in their entirety to children in Grade III. A good edition is published in the *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). An abridged edition may be found in *The Golden River* series (Nelson). A complete edition of both books, with capital illustrations in color and in black and white by Sir John Tenniel, is published by the Macmillan Company.

James Taylor Field in Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) has the following account of the origin of the book: "Lewis Carroll loved children and used to make parties and picnics for them and tell them stories. One summer afternoon he took three of his little girl friends, Alice, Lorena, and Edith Liddell, for a boat ride on the river. They asked for a story—as they always did when he went out with them—and he began to tell them about a little girl whom he called Alice, after Alice Liddell, and who had a great many surprising adventures. He made up the story as he went along, and whenever he got to an exciting place he would stop and say, 'And that's all till next time.' Then he would pretend to go to sleep, but the girls would shake him and cry, 'It is next time now'; and he would take up the story again. They had many trips together before the story was finished. Afterwards he wrote it out for Alice, and it was printed." See also the selection entitled "Lewis Carroll" on page 24 of Book VI of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand). See notes on "Matilda Jane" on page 8.

PAGE 16—Dodo. A bird which formerly lived in the Mauritius Islands, but became extinct about 1680. "It was a massive, clumsy, flightless, and defenceless bird, about as large as a swan, covered with downy feathers, with a very stout, hooked bill, short strong legs, short tail, and wings too small for flight." The expression "Dead as the Dodo" is familiar to all.

Lory. A parrot of small size and brilliant plumage. It is found both in the Malay Peninsula and in the islands of the Pacific.

THE ELF AND THE DORMOUSE

The illustration at the bottom of page 18 of the text indicates how this poem should be treated. It is simply a pretty, humorous poem, with a fanciful turn at the end.

An excellent story entitled "How We First Came to have Umbrellas" is found on page 168 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley). It paraphrases the poem. See also "A Fairy Umbrella" on page 154 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans).

PAGE 18—Elf. See notes on "The Shoemaker and the Elves" on page 115.

Dormouse. A. H. Miles in *Natural History* (Dodd) says: "The common dormouse and the greater dormouse are the principal varieties of this interesting little animal. They resemble the squirrel in appearance as well as in some of their habits. They live in trees, where they construct nests, on nuts, acorns, fruits, insects, birds, and eggs, and squirrel-like rest upon their hindquarters when eating, holding their food between their forepaws. They lay up store for winter and become torpid in the cold weather, rolling themselves into a ball, in which condition they may be handled without injury. The common dormouse is found all over Europe." It is not found in America. See *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan).

THE PLOUGHMAN

This poem first appeared in a collection of poems entitled *Little Poems for Little People* chiefly by Edward Shirley (Nelson).

Although entitled "The Ploughman," the poem really tells the whole story of the growth of the grain from the ploughing of the field to the reaping and gathering of the harvest. In countries where the winters are not severe the fields are prepared and the seed is sown in the autumn. Man and horse labor nobly to plough the soil and plant the seed. Then nature covers the fields with a blanket of snow to protect the tiny seeds from wind and frost. Then, when the spring sunshine and the rain have melted the snow and warmed the ground, the seeds begin to grow. They continue to grow during the hot summer days, until the waving wheat-fields are ready for the harvest. Once again, when nature's task is completed, man and horse take up their work of gathering in the harvest, and drawing it away, so that it may be made ready for the thresher.

An excellent companion poem to the selection in the text, entitled "The Promise of Bread," is found on page 295 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod). It begins as follows:

"Out on the frozen uplands,
Underneath the snow and sleet,
In the bosom of the ploughland
Sleeps the Promise of the Wheat.
With the ice for head and foot stone
And a snowy shroud outspread,
In the frost-locked tomb of Winter
Sleeps the Miracle of Bread."

PAGE 19—**Noble toil.** Oliver Wendell Holmes in "The Ploughman" on page 334 of Stevenson's *Country Life Reader* says:

"These are the hands whose sturdy labor brings
The peasant's food, the golden pomp of kings:
This is the page whose letters shall be seen
Changed by the sun to words of living green.

"This is the scholar whose immortal pen
Spells the first lesson hunger taught to men;
These are the lines which heaven-commanded Toil
Shows on his deed—the charter of the soil!"

Until the spring. It should be remembered that "fall wheat" is here referred to, not "spring wheat," as is usual on the prairies.

PAGE 20—**Pennons.** Like small, narrow flags.

Wain. An old name for wagon.

Goodly grain. The following little poem might be written on the black-board for the pupils after the study of the selection:

"Back of the bread is the snowy flour;
Back of the flour is the mill;
Back of the mill the growing wheat
Nods on the breezy hill;
Over the wheat is the glowing sun
Ripening the heart of the grain;
Above the sun is the gracious God,
Sending the sunlight and rain."

THE JACK-O'-LANTERN

The selection in the text tells the story of an incident in the early colonial history of America. Incidents of sudden attacks by the Indians were quite common at this time. See *Mary of Plymouth* and *Ruth of Boston* both by James Otis (American Book Co.). A good story of early colonial life in Massachusetts is told in "Early Adventures in the Colonies" by Eva March Tappan on page 30 of Book V of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton).

PAGE 22—**The better, etc.** The reference is, of course, to the famous old story of Red Riding Hood. See page 39 of *The First Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton).

Blockhouse. It was usual in the early colonial days to build a strongly fortified house in a central part of the village, in which the people could

gather in case of an attack by the Indians. This house was made fire-proof as far as possible and was pierced with loopholes for gun-fire.

PAGE 23—Fire-spirit. The Indians hold the Fire-spirit, as they call him, in awe and will by no means venture into what they think to be his haunts. See *Thirty Indian Legends* by Margaret Bemister (Macmillan). An interesting account of how the Indians first obtained fire is found in the chapter entitled "How Fire was Brought to the Indians" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton).

HOW THE LITTLE KITE LEARNED TO FLY

This poem tells the story of courage inspired by example. The little kite has never flown before. It watches the others, and longs to follow them and enjoy the fun. It fears that in the attempt it may fall. At length, encouraged by the example and the mistakes of the big kite, it makes the attempt and is made happy by its success.

A good companion poem is "Perseverance" by Celia Thaxter to be found on page 165 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). It tells of the efforts of a little sparrow to learn to sing. See also "The Little Spider's First Web" and "The Young Robin who was Afraid to Fly" in *Among the Meadow People* by Clara Dillingham Pierson (Dutton).

NING-TING

This pleasant little story of Ning-Ting is taken from *A Child's Garden of Stories* by Maude Elizabeth Paterson (Macmillan). The book is an excellent collection of stories, all of which are suitable for reading to pupils in this grade. See the selection entitled "Yuan and Su: Two Little Chinese Children" in *Child Life in Other Lands* by H. Avis Perdue (Rand) and *China* by Lena E. Johnston in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black). A good companion selection is "The Feast of Lanterns" on page 44 of *The Second Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton).

PAGE 25—Pig-tail. The queue, of which he was inordinately proud, was formerly the distinguishing mark of a Chinaman. Since the establishment of the Chinese republic, however, it is no longer compulsory to wear a queue; in fact, most Chinamen have now abandoned its use. In childhood the front part of the head was shaved, and the hair on the back of the head allowed to grow to as great a length as possible. It was braided and lengthened out by cord until it reached the heels.

Queer shoes. These shoes are made of felt, with very thick soles. **Chop-sticks.** These are made of wood or ivory, and resemble lead-pencils, but taper towards the ends. They are used in pairs held between the thumb and the first and second fingers.

PAGE 26—Large kite. Yan Phou Lee in "The Games of the Chinese Boy" on page 68 of Book V of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton) says: "Kite-flying is a national pastime. Young and old take part in it, and it is not unusual to see a gray-haired man enjoying it in company with a ten-year-old youngster. Kites are of all sizes. I have seen kites that were six or seven feet from wing to wing. The frame is made of bamboo slips which can be easily bent. Over this is pasted very stout rice-paper, upon which strong figures are painted—sometimes the face of a man, sometimes a bird. On the larger kites a bow is fastened at the top, with a reed instead of a string, and when the wind blows upon this reed, a melodious sound is heard through the air, that greatly delights everybody; it seems to the watchers a mysterious voice from a different world."

PAGE 28—Man in the Moon. Every people has the superstition that there is a man in the moon, but no two agree as to the reason for his being there. One legend is related in "Why There is a Man in the Moon" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton). A German story, "The Man in the Moon," is told on page 36 of *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand).

THE SLEEPY SONG

The author has made use in this poem of a pretty variation of the old trick of inducing sleep by counting sheep as they pass through a hole in the fence. When bedtime comes and the fire is low, mother or nurse takes the little child upstairs to bed and sings a song of sheep, first a gray and then a white, nose to tail, following each other up a hill and over the top. The long line keeps on and on, and the fire burns low. The little child drowsily falls asleep and never knows how many sheep have gone over the hill.

Mrs. Bacon has pictured the idea of the poem so successfully that one can almost feel the drowsiness in the rhythm. Note the circle in which the thought runs. In the second stanza the gray and white sheep follow each other closely. Then they reach the top and disappear. "One runs over and one comes next—their colors are white and gray."

An exquisite little companion poem is "Lullaby" by E. Cavazza on page 93 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). It has the same idea as the poem in the text. The first stanza is as follows:

“Through sleepy-land doth a river flow,
 On its further bank white daisies grow,
 And snow-white sheep in woolly floss
 Must one by one be ferried across.
 In a little boat they safely ride
 To the meadows green on the other side.
 Lullaby, sing lullaby!”

“Ho for Slumberland” by Eben E. Rexford on page 248 and “A Summer Lullaby” by Eudora S. Bumstead on page 177 of *Nature in Verse* may well be read in connection with “The Sleepy Song.” See also “When the Sleepy Man Comes” by Charles G. D. Roberts on page 32 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan) and “The Dustman” by Fred E. Weatherly on page 50 of the same book and “The Sandman” by Margaret Vandegrift on page 32 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). Other lullabies are mentioned on pages 95 and 102.

SQUIRREL WISDOM

This selection is adapted and simplified from “Cheating the Squirrels” in *Notes by the Way* published in *Pepacton* in 1881. The note opens as follows: “For the largest and finest chestnuts I had last fall I was indebted to the gray squirrels.” It concludes: “The squirrel, of course, had to take the chances of a prowler like myself, coming along, but he had fairly stolen a march on his neighbors. As I proceeded to collect and open the burrs, I was half prepared to hear an audible protest from the trees about, for I constantly fancied myself watched by shy but jealous eyes. It is an interesting inquiry how the squirrel knew the burrs would open if left to lie on the ground a few days. Perhaps he did not know, but thought the experiment worth trying.” The note is adapted to form the first paragraph of “Squirrels” in *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers* by John Burroughs (Houghton). See page 77 of *Sharp Eyes and Other Essays* by John Burroughs edited by H. McIntosh (Gage).

A capital poem to read to the pupils in connection with the text is “The Squirrel’s Arithmetic” by Annie Douglass Bell on page 215 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

It is the gray squirrel that is referred to in the text. John Burroughs has a very vivid description of the gray squirrel in *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers* above mentioned. A colored illustration of three gray squirrels accompanies the text. He says: “Gray squirrels, when they have been partly domesticated in parks and groves near dwellings, are

said to hide their nuts here and there upon the ground, and in winter to dig them up from beneath the snow, always hitting the spot accurately."

PAGE 31—Chestnut burrs. The chestnut referred to in the text is the sweet or Spanish chestnut. It is a large, bushy tree with beautiful leaves and heavy and spreading branches. C. E. Smith says of the fruit of the chestnut: "The seed grows bigger and bigger till it looks like a round green ball covered all over with bristles. The seeds are ripening inside this ball, two or three, sometimes five, seeds closely packed side by side. In October the green covering splits into four pieces, and the seeds fall to the ground. Notice how beautifully this bristly covering is lined with soft, silky down to protect the smooth skin of the nut. Each nut is slightly flattened at the sides where it was tightly pressed against its neighbor, and it comes to a point at the top, where the withered remains of the seed-bristles show in a dry brown tuft. The skin on the nut is dark brown, and there is a large scar at the foot where it was fastened to the green cup." See description and colored illustration in *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). J. Horace McFarland has a most enthusiastic description of the chestnut on page 166 of *Getting Acquainted with the Trees* (Macmillan). See also "The Chestnut and Chinquapin" on page 22 of *Trees That Every Child Should Know* by Julia Ellen Rogers (Grosset).

PAGE 32—Crows. The crow is described with a colored illustration in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa) and in *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* by Charles W. Nash (Department of Agriculture, Toronto). See also the chapter entitled "Jack Crow" in *American Birds* by William Lovell Finlay (Scribner) and *Birdcraft* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan).

Jays. P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Western Canada* has descriptions and colored illustrations of the jay. See also Nash's *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture*.

Chipmunks. The chipmunk is described with a colored illustration in the chapter entitled "The Chipmunk" in John Burrough's *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers*. He says: "A hard winter affects the chipmunks very little; they are snug and warm in their burrows in the ground and under the rocks, with a bountiful supply of nuts or grain. I have heard of nearly half a bushel of chestnuts being taken from a single den."

Red squirrels. An excellent description of the red squirrel is given in the chapter entitled "Squirrels" in John Burrough's *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers*. He says: "The red squirrel lays up no stores, but scours about for food in all weathers, feeding upon the seeds in the cones of the hemlock that still cling to the tree, upon sumac-bobs, and the seeds of frozen apples."

HARVEST SONG

This poem is a song of thanksgiving. The first two stanzas enumerate the various tasks of the autumn season, and the third returns thanks to the Creator for the harvest gathered in and stored away for winter use.

A good companion poem is "The Joy of Harvest" by Henry Alford, the words and music of which are on page 171 of Book II of *The Progressive Music Series* (Gage).

JAMES WATT AND THE TEA-KETTLE

The incident related in the text is told in more extended form in *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.).

Excellent companion stories are "Eureka!", "Galileo and the Lamps," and "Sir Isaac Newton and the Apple," all to be found in James Baldwin's *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*. "The Song of Steam" by George W. Cutter on page 152 of Book IV of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand) might also be read to the pupils.

An exhaustive account of Watt and his relation to the steam engine is given in Lessons 13, 14, and 15 of Book VI of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson).

In connection with this selection, the lives of many other inventors suggest themselves. George Stevenson, the inventor of the locomotive, is treated in "An Engineer's Boyhood" by Amy Steedman in *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack) and in Lessons 33 and 34 of Book VI of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson). The story of Edison is told in "An Inventor's Boyhood" on page 7 of Louey Chisholm's *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old*.

James Watt was born at Greenock, on the Clyde, on January 19th, 1736. His father was a man who followed many pursuits, carpenter, builder, general merchant, and ship chandler, and towards the close of his life was chief magistrate of Greenock. James was all his life very delicate and suffered severely from headaches. Until the age of seventeen he lived with his parents, attending school from time to time when his health would permit. At school he was specially interested in geometry, and while at home passed the time making models of machinery and tools. For a time he lived with his mother's relatives at Glasgow and then went to London, where he spent a year as apprentice to a maker of mathematical instruments. The climate of London did not suit him, so he returned to Greenock, removing a little later to Glasgow. There he was appointed mathematical-instrument maker to the University and allowed

to establish his workshop within the grounds. While at the University he repaired the model of a steam fire engine, which had never acted properly. He made the machine go, and this fixed his thought on the possibilities of steam. From this time onward the story of his life is taken up with his inventions and his various business enterprises. In 1774 he removed to Birmingham, where he continued to reside until his death at Heathfield, near Birmingham, on August 25th, 1819.

The *Dictionary of National Biography* says: "Most persons of good standing and general information, if asked what they knew about Watt, would probably say that he was the inventor of the steam engine. Those who at all study the subject, or are acquainted with mechanical matters, will at once agree that, great as were Watt's merits, they were the merits of an improver upon an existing machine—the fire engine—and were not those which attach to the original suggester of a novel principle of work."

ONE, TWO, THREE

This selection, which is to be found in *Poems* by H. C. Bunner (Scribner), is a picture of a dear grandmother who can no longer be active and a little crippled boy, who forget all their ills in a happy game of "pretend." The volume from which the poem is taken contains many selections suitable for pupils in this grade.

PAGE 40—Used to be. The little chap's mother is dead.

THE GOOD SAMARITAN

This selection is verses 30-37 of the 10th Chapter of *Luke*. Verses 25-29 should be read as an introduction. See *The Gospel According to St. Luke* edited by F. W. Farrar in *The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press). In this parable "the divine law of love, ignoring the divisions of race, nation, and color, unites mankind into one neighborhood and brotherhood."

Other suitable Bible readings for Grade III are found in Book II of *Graded Bible Readings* (Nelson).

PAGE 41—**Jerusalem to Jericho.** The distance is about twenty-one miles through a rocky, dangerous gorge.

Thieves. Brigands. "Palestine was notorious for these plundering Arabs. Herod the Great had rendered real service to the country in extirpating them from their haunts, but they constantly sprang up again, and even the Romans could not effectually put them down."

By chance. By a pure coincidence.

A certain priest. Canon Farrar says: "His official duties at Jerusalem were over, and he was on the way back to his home in the priestly city of Jericho. Perhaps the uselessness of his external service is implied. In superstitious attention to the letter he was wholly blind to the spirit. He was selfishly afraid of risk, trouble, and ceremonial defilement, and, since no one was there to know of his conduct, he was thus led to neglect the traditional kindness of the Jews *towards their own countrymen*, as well as the positive rules of the Law and the Prophets."

A Levite. The Levites were members of the tribe of Levi, who were employed in subordinate service, such as cleaning, carrying fuel, and acting as choristers, in connection with the Temple at Jerusalem.

Looked on him. Merely to satisfy his curiosity, and then he passed on.

Samaritan. An inhabitant of Samaria. He was an alien in the eyes of the Jews, for "the Jews have no dealings with the Samaritans." In ordinary circumstances even the wounded man would have shrunk from his rescuer.

PAGE 42—**Oil and wine.** The ordinary remedies of the time.

Set him. It is implied that the Samaritan walked by the side of the beast.

Two pence. Enough to pay for the man's keep for several days. The wage of an ordinary laborer at that time was a penny a day.

THE HONEY-BEE'S SONG

This is a story in rhyme of the industry and thrift of the honey-bee. Merrily and busily it flits from flower to flower throughout the long summer days, seeking the honey which it stores away for its winter's food. The poem contains a warning that "lazy folk never can thrive" and an invitation to be up and doing, and follow the example of the busy little bee.

A good companion poem entitled "The Ant and the Cricket" is found on page 57 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). Read also "The Song of the Bee" by Marian Douglas on page 385 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod) and "The Ladybird and the Ant" by Lydia Huntley Sigourney on page 24 of Book II of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

The industry and the thriftiness of the bees are brought out in "A Wonderful City" by Arabella B. Buckley on page 122 of the Seventh Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). An exceptionally interesting story covering all phases of the activity of the bee is told in "Buz Makes her Appearance" by Maurice Noel on page 131 of Book V of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). "The Story of the Bees and

the Flies" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) shows how the bees owe their origin to their habits of industry. See *Bees Shown to the Children* by Ellison Hawks (Jack).

WEIGHING AN ELEPHANT

This selection tells the story of how an ingenious native solved the problem of weighing an elephant. See page 71. A good descriptive selection dealing with the elephant, written for Grade III, is "The Greatest of Beasts" on page 197 of the Third Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). See also *Elephant Stories from St. Nicholas* (Century Co.).

WHERE GO THE BOATS

This poem was first published in *A Child's Garden of Verses* in 1885. See page 40. The first stanza of the poem describes a river. Beside it a child is playing. He pretends that the green leaves that he throws into the river are great boats, or floating castles which are being carried down the river, past mill and valley and hill. As he watches them floating away, he wonders what other children, perhaps a hundred miles or more away, will capture them and bring them ashore.

The music of this poem is found on page 14 of *Songs with Music from "A Child's Garden of Verses"* (Jack). A companion poem is "The Tidal River" by Charles Kingsley to be found on page 177 of Book III of *Highroads of Geography* (Nelson).

MERCURY AND THE WOODMEN

This selection is one of the fables related by Æsop. See notes on "Belling the Cat" on page 39. "The Travellers and the Hatchet" in *Quaint Old Stories to Read and Act* by Marion Florence Lansing (Ginn) is another dramatic version of the same fable. See "The Honest Woodcutter" on page 9 of *Fairy Plays for Children* by M. L. Goodlander (Rand).

Many of the best stories for pupils of this grade have been re-cast in dramatic form for class reading. *Story Hour Plays* by Frances Sankstone Mintz (Rand) contains thirty-six of these, among others "The Glow-worm and the Daw," "The Bee and the Spider," "How the Fox lost His Meat," "The Ungrateful Adder," "Hänsel and Gretel," and "Naomi and Ruth." *A Dramatic Reader: Book III* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry) contains fifteen similar little dramas, including "Some Wise Men of Gotham," "Snow-White," "King John and the Abbot," "Cinderella,"

and "Hercules the Lion Killer." *Little Plays* by Lena Dalkeith in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack) contains material slightly more advanced. The five plays in the book are: "Sir Gareth of Orkney," "The Princess and the Swineherd," "King Alfred and the Cakes," "Scene from Robin Hood," and "Scene from Uncle Tom's Cabin."

PAGE 50—**Mercury.** See note on "Quicksilver" on page 278.

THE SAND CASTLE

In this poem the children are building a sand castle on the sea shore. The castle is guarded by walls, outworks, and moat, with a keep from which floats the English flag. Instead of a drawbridge there is a bridge well constructed with stones so that retreat may be possible. The castle is so strongly built that it will not fall before any "common shock," but if it should fall, there is still a way open over the causeway, and even then the flag of old England will be flying still. The children have got safely to land. Robert Louis Stevenson's "My Kingdom" in *A Child's Garden of Verses* (Longmans) is an excellent companion poem.

PAGE 54—**Moat.** A ditch dug around a castle and filled with water, so that the attackers could not reach the foot of the wall. If water was not available, the moat was filled with sharpened stakes.

Keep. A strong fortress or tower within the castle, to which the defenders could retreat in case the outer walls were captured.

Drawbridge. In order to gain access to the mediaeval castles, it was necessary to cross the moat. A bridge was thrown across this, so built that it could be raised at will. See page 392.

SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

The original story on which the selection in the text is based, as told by Sidney's friend Fulke Greville, Lord Brooke, is as follows: "Being thirsty with excess of bleeding, he called for drink which was presently brought him; but as he was putting the bottle to his mouth, he saw a poor soldier carried along, who had eaten his last at the same feast, casting up his eyes at the bottle. Which Sir Philip perceiving, took it from his head before he drank, and delivered it to the poor man with these words, 'Thy necessity is yet greater than mine.'" The story of Sidney's patient endurance of suffering, his forgetfulness of self, and his consid-

eration for one in a more humble station than himself has become one of the classics of English literature and history.

After the selection in the text has been studied, the teacher would do well to read to the pupils "The Spirit of Sir Philip Sidney" on page 28 of *The Post of Honour: Stories of Daring Deeds Done by Men of the British Empire in the Great War* by Richard Wilson (Dent). The author suggests: "The old story of Sir Philip Sidney might well be written in letters of gold upon the wall of every school in the Empire." "Sir Philip Sidney" by Edward Shirley on page 164 of Book III of *Highroads of History* (Nelson) is a capital poem to read to the pupils. For a contrasting picture see "The Ungrateful Soldier" in *Fifty Famous Stories Retold* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.).

Sir Philip Sidney was born at Penhurst, in the County of Kent, on November 29th, 1554. His father, who had married a daughter of the Duke of Northumberland, was successively governor of Ireland and president of Wales. Sidney was thus related to many of the higher nobility, and the fact of his being a nephew of the Earl of Leicester assured him of court favor at the very beginning of his career. An old writer says: "Almost from his cradle there was nothing of childhood about him for his age; and when twelve years old he wrote to his father in elegant Latin and French." After studying for a time at Oxford and at Cambridge he entered at the age of seventeen the diplomatic service. Subsequently he was employed on various missions, travelled extensively, and devoted much time to writing. In 1586 he was appointed governor of Flushing, a position which gave his military ambition a chance. The Earl of Leicester was in command of the English operating in Flanders against the Spaniards. Sidney Lee says: "At length Leicester, yielding to the entreaties of his colleagues and his nephew, decided to come to close quarters with the enemy. The great fortress of Zutphen, which was in Spanish hands, was to be attacked. As soon as the news reached Sidney, he joined Leicester's army of assault as a knight-errant; his own regiment was far away at Deventer. He presented himself in Leicester's camp upon his own initiative. On September 21st, 1586, the English army learned that a troop of Spaniards, convoying provisions to Zutphen, was to reach the town at daybreak next morning. Five hundred horsemen of the English army were ordered to intercept the approaching force. Without waiting for orders Sidney determined to join in the encounter. He left his tent very early in the morning of the 22nd, and meeting a friend who had omitted to put on leg-armor, he rashly disdained the advantage of better equipment, and quixotically lightened his own protective garb. Fog hung about the country. The little English force soon found itself by mistake under the walls of the town, and threatened alike in front and

at the rear. A force of three thousand Spanish horsemen almost encircled them. They were between two fires—between the Spanish army within the town and the Spanish army which was seeking to enter it. The Englishmen twice charged the reinforcements approaching Zutphen, but were forced to retreat under the town walls. At the second charge Sidney's horse was killed under him. Remounting another, he foolhardily thrust his way through the enemy's ranks. Then, perceiving his isolation, he turned back to rejoin his friends, and as he retreated was struck by a bullet on the left thigh a little above the knee. He managed to keep his saddle until he reached the camp, a mile and a half distant." Then followed the incident of the cup of water. In spite of all that medical aid could do he died twenty-six days later, on October 17th, 1586. His body was taken to England and buried in St. Paul's Cathedral, London. "Sir Philip Sidney" on page 183 of *In Tudor Times* by Edith L. Elias (Harrap) contains the best brief account of Sidney. See also *The Heroes of England* by J. G. Edgar in *Everyman's Library* (Dent) and *Famous Englishmen of the 16th Century* by Sir Sidney Lee (Nelson).

PAGE 55—Zutphen. A small town in Holland on the Yssel River.

GOLDEN-ROD

The author in this poem pictures the seasons of the year as the times of the day, and the autumn flower, the golden-rod, as the evening lamp. The butterflies and bees, when they see this flower, know that it is time to seek their winter shelters, where they sleep content until the spring awakens them again. But those who do not take warning from the evening lamps are caught by the frost and killed.

Two similar poems dealing with the golden-rod are "Goldenrod" by Mrs. F. J. Lovejoy on page 193 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) and "Goldenrod" on page 194 of the same book. Both these poems are well worth reading to the pupils. Others of Frank Dempster Sherman's poems suited to this grade are "The Dew Drops," "Snowflakes," "Shadow Children," "A Real Santa Claus," "Daisies," "The Four Winds," "The Christmas Cat," "Vacation Song," "King Bell," and "Smiles and Tears." These are to be found in *Little Folk Lyrics* (Houghton).

The golden-rod is one of the commonest of wild flowers in Western Canada. James C. Needham in *Outdoor Studies* (American Book Co.) says: "Hardly a furlong of country roadside or neglected fence row but has its clump of golden-rod. Not a few who admire it in autumn do not know it in summer before its flowers appear. It is then only a weed, and

as a weed many a tidy farmer cuts it down. But when summer is over its green changes to gold. Its weedy coarseness is crowned with ample clusters at once showy and delicate, and so exquisitely graceful that from one end of our continent to the other it is sought for diligently. It decks the altar in many a church: it brightens many a school-room: it adorns many a private table. It is beautiful enough for the rich to desire it; it is common enough for the poor to have it; and, best of all, it grows so near at hand that we all can find it, enjoy its beauty, and inform our minds with the lessons of its interesting life." The various species of golden-rod are exhaustively described on pages 170-182 of *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset). A beautiful illustration of the plant is given in *Guide to the Wild Flowers* by Alice Lounsberry (Stokes). See also *How to Know the Wild Flowers* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (Scribner).

HOW THE INDIANS GOT THE CORN

This selection is an Indian nature-myth and is retold in prose from Section V, entitled "Hiawatha's Fasting," of *The Song of Hiawatha* by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow. The poetical extracts in the text are from Longfellow's poem. See page 127.

A similar legend of the Ottawa Indians entitled "The Story of the Indian Corn" is told on page 71 of *Thirty Indian Legends* by Margaret Bemister (Macmillan). The Chippewa Indian legend entitled "Mondahmin, who Gave the Corn" is told from Schoolcraft on page 133 of *Wigwam Stories* by Mary Catherine Judd (Ginn). Two very interesting stories are told in *The Red Indian Fairy Book* by Frances Jenkins Olcott (Houghton). These are the Iroquois legend entitled "The Spirit of the Corn" on page 123 and the Chippewa legend entitled "How Indian Corn Came into the World" on page 117. A very informing book in connection with Hiawatha is *The Hiawatha Industrial Reader* by Mary A. Proudfoot (Rand). The aim of the author is to awaken the child's interest in primitive industries through a study of the life of the American Indians. See also *How the World is Fed* by Frank George Carpenter (American Book Co.).

After the selection in the text has been studied, it would be of great benefit to the pupils to read to them "The Corn Story" by W. J. Hopkins on page 176 of the Third Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). It relates the story of the planting and the testing of the corn, and describes the feast that follows. "The Corn Song" by John Greenleaf Whittier might also be read to the pupils. It is to be found on page 228 of *Country*

Life Reader by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod). Section XIII of *Hiawatha* entitled "Blessing the Cornfields" is quite suitable for reading in class.

PAGE 59—**Great Spirit.** The great god of the Indians, he who breathed into them the spirit of life. See the chapter entitled "Some Beliefs of the Indians" on page 27 of *Indian Stories* by Cicero Newell (Silver).

PAGE 60—**Mondamin.** E. J. Fleming says: "Mondamin means the spirit's grain or berry. The Ojibway Algonquins have a pretty story, in which the stalk in full tassel is represented as descending from the sky under the guise of a handsome youth, in answer to the prayers of a young man at his fast of virility, or coming to manhood. The legend refers, of course, to the sealing of the tribes, when, instead of depending on 'these things' they receive Mondamin—Indian corn—the gift of the Great Spirit. Schoolcraft calls this the Cereal Allegory of the West. He says the Indian is here taught that *transformation can be effected only by labor and perseverance*. There is much beauty of fancy in describing the change."

SEVEN TIMES ONE

This selection is one of the *Songs of Seven* published in 1863 in a volume entitled *Poems*. The complete poem is divided into seven sections, descriptive of seven periods in the life of a woman: "Seven Times One—*Exultation*"; "Seven Times Two—*Romance*"; "Seven Times Three—*Love*"; "Seven Times Four—*Motherhood*"; "Seven Times Five—*Widowhood*"; "Seven Times Six—*Giving in Marriage*"; "Seven Times Seven—*Longing for Home*." These poems are "noteworthy for the musical lilt which makes them cling to the memory, and for a warmth of sentiment which touches the popular heart." The poem in the text is entitled "Exultation."

As many teachers find this selection somewhat difficult to handle in class, the following suggested lesson, taken from the *Teachers' Notebook for the Holton-Curry Fourth Reader* (Rand), may be of value: "A talk about birthdays and the happy methods of celebrating them would form a good introduction to this birthday poem. The purpose should be to bring the pupils into the birthday atmosphere.

"Do you think the little girl in this poem had a very happy birthday? Does she seem interested in and on very good terms with everything she finds?"

"*Stanza 1.* Where was this little girl when speaking? Why was there 'no dew left on the daisies and clover'? How can you tell the day was not cloudy? Can you tell what her arithmetic lesson had been that day? Does that seem to fit into her birthday celebration?"

"*Stanza 2.* What makes the little girl feel she is quite old? Why does she feel so superior to the lambs? What excuse does she find for them?

"*Stanzas 3 and 4.* Why does she mention the moon? Do you think she must have looked up towards the sky? Can you see the moon in the daytime? At what other time had she seen the moon? How did it look then? How does it look now? What does she imagine may be the reason? If so, what does she hope? Does she dislike thinking of the moon in disgrace on this birthday? Why?

"*Stanza 5.* What does the little girl see next? Why does she call him a 'velvet' bee? a 'dusty fellow'? How had he 'powdered his legs with gold'? Have you seen such bees? What does she say to the marsh marybuds? Why are they called 'brave'? May it be because they do not seem afraid of the bee? (The marsh marigold blossoms hold a yellow powder, which children sometimes call money and shake out in their hands.) Do you think the bee had gotten some of this gold dust on him?

"*Stanza 6.* What two flowers does she address in this stanza? Why does she want the columbine to open its wrapper? Does she seem to know what all the flowers are like? What does she ask the cuckoo-pint to do? Can you tell from her question something of the shape and color of that flower?

"*Stanza 7.* What bird does the little girl see? What does she ask the linnet to do? Why does she think the linnet might be afraid to do what she asks? What promise does she make? Why does she say the linnet may trust her? Do you think the little girl feels quite grown up?

"Do you like the music of this poem? Do you have any choice among the stanzas? Which ones give you the clearest pictures? Does the poem make you able to imagine just how the little girl goes about the meadow, her actions as she finds each new object, the colors and shapes of the flowers, the moon, the linnet, the meadow full of daisies and clover?"

PAGE 66—**With gold.** With yellow pollen from the flowers.

Marsh marybuds. The flowers of the marsh marigold, one of the handsomest of the wild flowers. Frederic William Stack in *Wild Flowers Every Child should Know* (Grosset) says: "Early in April the beautiful, bright yellow cups of the flowers reflect the glory of the sun from amid a thrifty, bushy clump of crisp, glossy green leaves. The large showy, saucer-shaped flower measures an inch or an inch and a half across." A colored illustration of the flower is found in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). See "The Early Spring Wild Flowers" on page 112 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod).

Columbine. The wild columbine has large bright red flowers, yellow within and nodding. A beautiful colored illustration of the flower is given in Mrs. William Starr Dana's *How to Know the Wild Flowers*. Harriet L. Keeler in *Our Garden Flowers* (Scribner) says: "A wild flower of English fields, the columbine was early transplanted into English gardens and has held its place securely there for at least five hundred years. Its seeds were among the treasures borne over sea to the new world, and it early bloomed in Pilgrim gardens." The flowers of the garden varieties are of various colors, ranging from pure white to smoky purple. The name columbine is derived from the Latin, *columba*, a dove, but its significance is disputed. Some believe that it was associated with the bird-like claws of the blossom; while Dr. Parr maintains that it refers to "the resemblance of its spurs to the heads of pigeons [turtle-doves] in a ring around a dish, a favorite device of ancient artists." An exhaustive description of the columbine is given on page 10 of Frederic William Stack's *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know*.

Two twin turtle-doves. The turtle-dove is to be met with in Great Britain only during the summer months. In Canada it is also a migrant. See colored illustration in W. P. Pycraft's *A Book of Birds* (Ryerson Press). The expression "two twin turtle-doves" is explained in the note under "columbine" above.

Cuckoo-pint. The wake robin, one of the most curious of the wild flowers is fully described by Janet Harvey Kelman as follows: "The large glossy leaves are arrow-shaped, and they are covered all over with dark purple blotches. From amongst them rises a pale-green twisted sheath, which is completely closed when in bud. Like the leaves, it is spotted all over with purple blotches, and the edges are stained a pale yellow-brown. Inside this sheath rises a tall narrow purple cone, on a stout green stalk. Fastened round this green stalk are three curious collars. First comes a collar of tiny green pear-shaped glands, of which nobody knows the use. Then comes a purple collar made up of stamen heads without any stalks. And a little way below these there is a deep band of round green seed-vessels like small beads. These are hidden in the lower part of the green sheath; but in autumn they grow much larger, and soon burst open the covering sheath. Then they turn into beautiful scarlet berries." See colored illustration in Janet Harvey Kelman's *Flowers Shown to the Children*. See also Frederic William Stack's *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know*.

Linnet. J. A. Henderson says: "The colors of the linnet vary much, and while the male generally wears bright crimson on breast and forehead, some birds are without it, and some have yellow instead. The back is reddish-brown, and the wings and slightly forked tail are very dark,

with white markings. They all lose the bright colors in winter. The hen bird never has the red breast." The linnet has a very sweet song. See colored illustrations in *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack).

A STORY OF FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE

Many similar stories are told of the girlhood of Florence Nightingale. The best account of the work she accomplished in the hospitals at the base during the Crimean War is found in the chapter entitled "The Lady with the Lamp" in *Fights for the Flag* by W. H. Fitchett (Smith, Elder). See also *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering* by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.) and "Florence Nightingale" by Rosa Nouchette Cary in Volume VIII of *The Children's Hour* (Houghton). The same story as in the text is related in more detail, in "A Nurse's Girlhood" by Amy Steedman in *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack). See also "Florence Nightingale" on page 47 of *Stories of Famous Women* by Margaret Stuart Lane (Oxford Press). An excellent story to read to the pupils is "Florence Nightingale, the Heroic Nurse" by Virginia Winchester Freeman in Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). Longfellow's poem "Santa Filomena" might also be read in class. It may be found on page 322 of Book VI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

A good companion story is "Sister Dora" in *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering* by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.). The same story is on page 234 of Book II of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). The story of Elizabeth Fry, the prison reformer, is told on page 83 of *The Book of Great Lives* (Evans) and that of Elsie Inglis, the nurse who played such a heroic part in the Great War, on page 65 of Margaret Stuart Lane's *Stories of Famous Women*.

Florence Nightingale was born at Florence, Italy, on May 12th, 1820, and was named after the city of her birth. Her father was a cultured gentleman of ample means and fond of travel. Her first home was at Lea Hall in Derbyshire, but about 1825 the family removed to Lea Hurst in the same shire. In the next year her father purchased Embley Park in Hampshire, where the family spent the winters, the summers being passed at Lea Hurst. "She enjoyed under her father's roof a liberal education, but she chafed at the narrow opportunities for activity offered to girls of her station in life. She engaged in cottage visiting and developed a love for animals. But her chief interest lay in tending the sick. Anxious to undertake more important responsibilities, she visited hospitals in London and the country with a view to finding what scope for activity

offered there. Nursing was then reckoned in England a menial employment, needing neither study nor intelligence; nor was it viewed as a work of mercy or philanthropy." Her hospital visits began about 1844 and were continued both in England and on the continent for eleven years. Her visits convinced her that nursing might be made a "calling" for ladies and no mere desultory occupation. On August 12th, 1853, she herself became superintendent of the Hospital for Invalid Gentlewomen at London.

Soon after the outbreak of the Crimean War in March, 1854, the British people were horrified at the stories which began to reach them of the horrible sufferings of the wounded at the front, in strong contrast to the care devoted to the French soldiers in their own hospitals. Public indignation was great, and immediate action was demanded. On October 14th, 1854, Florence Nightingale offered her services to the War Office, her letter crossing one addressed to her by Sidney Herbert, the Secretary of State for War, asking her to take charge of the hospitals in the Crimea. On October 21st she embarked for the seat of war, taking with her a band of thirty-eight nurses, and on November 4th she reached Scutari, the hospital base. "The difficulties she met with are incapable of exaggeration. The military and medical authorities already on the spot viewed her intervention as a reflection on themselves. Many of her own volunteers were inexperienced, and the roughness of the orderlies was offensive to women of refinement. But her quiet resolution and dignity, her powers of organization and discipline rapidly worked a revolution." She allowed herself but four hours sleep out of the twenty-four, and, when she returned to England in August, 1856, a revolution in military hospitals had been accomplished.

The British people were prepared to give Miss Nightingale an enthusiastic reception, but she stole home privately, refusing to make use of the ship of war which had been provided for her passage. In 1860 the sum of £50,000 was collected and presented to her, but she refused to make any personal use of the amount and devoted it to the establishment of the Nightingale School and Home for Nurses at St. Thomas's Hospital. The remainder of her life was devoted to the improvement of sanitary conditions both public and private. She died at London on August 13th, 1910, at the age of ninety years. See *Florence Nightingale* by Sir Edward Cook (Macmillan).

PAGE 67—Derbyshire. The Derbyshire moors are essentially a sheep country. Large areas are practically unenclosed, and the sheep-dog is a necessity. These dogs are carefully trained from puppyhood in the herding and protecting of sheep. They exhibit an almost incredible

skill, intelligence, and devotion. Very rarely do they change masters. A good story of a sheep dog is "Lassie, the Shepherd's Dog" on page 45 of *In the Animal World* by Emma Serl (Silver). *Bob, Son of Battle* by Alfred Oliphant (Doubleday) is an excellent story of a sheep-dog for pupils' reading.

PAGE 70—**Learning how.** Note that it was this training that enabled Miss Nightingale to play her part so well when the time came.

The wounded soldiers. The *Dictionary of National Biography* (Oxford Press) says: "Her headquarters were in the barrack hospital at Scutari, a huge, dismal place, reeking with dirt and infection. Stores urgently needed had not got beyond Varna, or were lost at sea. There were no vessels for water or utensils of any kind; no soap, towels, or clothes, no hospital clothes; the men lying in their uniforms, stiff with gore and covered with filth to a degree, and of a kind no one could write about; their persons covered with vermin. One of the nurses, a week after arrival, wrote home: 'We have not seen a drop of milk, and the bread is extremely sour. The butter is most filthy; and the meat is more like moist leather than food. Potatoes we are waiting for, until they arrive from France'."

THE LOBSTER QUADRILLE

This poem occurs in the chapter of the same name in *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. See page 41. The Mock Turtle and the Gryphon dance their favorite quadrille on the sea-shore for the instruction of Alice, the Mock Turtle singing the song in the text as they dance. "So they began solemnly dancing round and round Alice, every now and then treading on her toes when they passed too close, and waving their fore-paws to mark time, while the Mock Turtle sang very slowly and sadly."

It would be to the great advantage of the pupils if the teacher should have a copy of *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*, so that she may read to the class the setting of the poem. Treated by itself it loses much of its humor and a great deal of its interest. If the edition with illustrations by Sir John Tenniel is used, even better results will be obtained. See page 41. The joke of the dance is that the snails, lobsters, etc., who join in are seized and thrown out to sea.

A capital nonsense poem to read to the pupils is "A Nautical Ballad" on page 121 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). See also "A Tragic Story" by Albert von Chamisso on page 60 of the same book.

Two celebrated writers of "nonsense verse" are represented in *The Canadian Readers*—Lewis Carroll and Edward Lear. *The Teacher's*

Notebook for the Holton-Curry Fifth Reader (Rand) says: "What a debt of gratitude the world owes to writers like Edward Lear and Lewis Carroll! Their 'nonsense books' have done more for it than many serious volumes. It is hard for the mind to keep on a straight track all the time. It is a great relief now and then to turn ourselves loose in such a riot of imaginings as we find in Lear's *Nonsense Rhymes* and *Laughable Lyrics* and Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* and *Through the Looking Glass*. We are no longer bound by the 'dictionary'; we can invent our own vocabulary. The rules of probability are no longer rules for us. What wonderful and queer things there are in this 'nonsense' world! Having 'kicked up our heels' in this way we can come back to the everyday world of rules and be much more sensible." To this may be added a comparison between the "nonsense verse" of the two authors by Carolyn Wells in *A Nonsense Anthology* (Scribner): "Although like Lear's in some respects, Lewis Carroll's nonsense is perhaps of a more refined type. There is less of the grotesque and more poetic imagery. But though Carroll was more of a poet than Lear, both had the true sense of nonsense. Both assumed the most absurd conditions and proceeded to detail their consequences with a simple seriousness that convulses appreciative readers, and we find ourselves uncertain whether it is the manner or the matter that is more amusing. Lewis Carroll was a man of intellect and education; his funniest sayings are often based on profound knowledge or deep thought. Like Lear, he never spoiled his quaint fancies by over-exaggerating their quaintness or their fancifulness, and his ridiculous plots are as carefully conceived, constructed, and elaborated as though they embodied the soundest facts. No funny detail is ever allowed to become *too* funny; and it is in this judicious economy of extravagance that his genius is shown."

Other similar poems of Lewis Carroll which may be read to the pupils are "The Walrus and the Carpenter," "You are Old, Father William," "Jabberwocky," "A-Sitting on a Gate," and "Beautiful Soup."

PAGE 72—Lobster. A very full and interesting description of the lobster, with a full-page colored illustration, is given on page 81 of *The Sea-Shore Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). Note that when the lobster is alive it is dark-green in color, but when plunged into boiling water in order to prepare it for market it becomes red.

Quadrille. A square dance once popular in England.

Whiting. A food fish, from twelve to eighteen inches in length, found in great abundance along the coasts of Great Britain.

Snail. Janet Harvey Kelman in *The Sea-Shore Shown to the Children* says: "You may find the sea-snails crawling about in numbers all over the weed-

covered rocks which are left bare as the tide goes down. Its shell varies very much in color, for it is sometimes bright yellow, and sometimes pale yellow, and sometimes olive green, and sometimes brown, and sometimes almost black. Indeed, you might almost think that there were half-a-dozen kinds of these sea-snails instead of only one. These creatures have tooth-ribbons set with hundreds of tiny hooked teeth, and they use them in feeding upon the leaves of sea-weeds." See colored illustration in *The Sea-Shore Shown to the Children*.

Porpoise. A blunt-headed fish from five to eight feet in length and two and a half feet in breadth. Porpoises usually travel in schools. See *Natural History* by Alfred H. Miles (Dodd).

Shingle. The coarse gravel of the sea beach.

PAGE 73—**Scaly friend.** The whiting.

THE SUNFLOWER

The story here told is not strictly in accord with the ancient narrative. According to the usual version of the Greek myth, Clytie was a sea nymph, the daughter of Oceanus, who became jealous of the love of Apollo, the sun god, for her sister Leucothea. Thinking that if her sister were out of the way, she herself would obtain the love of the god, she caused her death. But Apollo, knowing her treachery, disdained her, and Clytie pined away until at last she became a sunflower. There are, however, many different stories related. Other versions of this story are given on page 165 of *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand) under the title of "The Girl Who Was Changed into a Sunflower" and on page 197 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley) under the title of "The Story of Clytie." See *Stories of the Golden Age* by Mildred Gooch Anderson (Macmillan), *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian S. Hyde (Heath), *Old Greek Nature Stories* by F. A. Farrar (Harrap), and *The Third Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton). See also *A Book of Myths* by Jean Lang (Jack).

Classical myths are particular favorites of pupils in this grade. Five of these, written specially for Grade III, are found in *Lippincott's Third Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott)—"Cadmus" on page 28, "Apollo's Present" on page 44, "Proserpina" on page 75, "The First Man to Fly" on page 122, and "Jupiter, King of the Gods of Greece" on page 137. Perhaps the best collection for pupils of Grade III is found in Mary Catherine Judd's *Classic Myths*. While the majority of the stories are based on the myths of Greece and Rome, there are many from the Norse,

the Russian, the Finnish, and the German. See particularly "The Little Maiden Who Became a Laurel Tree" on page 150, "Why the Narcissus Grows by the Water" on page 168, "The Legend of the Anemone" on page 170, and "The Forget-me-not" on page 180. *Round the Year in Myth and Song* by Florence Holbrook (American Book Co.) contains an excellent collection of suitable classical myths.

PAGE 74—**Sea maiden.** A nymph. The nymphs were female deities among the Greeks, generally represented as young and beautiful. They were regarded as immortal. They were divided into two classes, land nymphs and water nymphs. The former lived among the mountains, or among rocks and woods, or even in trees, while the latter had their abode in the ocean, the lakes, the streams, and the fountains.

PAGE 75—**The Sun king.** Phoebus Apollo among the Greeks was worshipped as the god of the sun. In the morning the god mounted his golden chariot and took his way across the heavens. In the evening, when he had reached his destination in the West, he and his chariot were taken in a golden boat and transported around the earth to his palace in the East. See *Stories of the Ancient Greeks* by Charles D. Shaw (Ginn). See also "Phaeton" on page 133 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

PAGE 76—**Sunflower.** Harriet L. Keeler in *Our Garden Flowers* (Scribner) says: "Whoever carefully observes the growing plants of the sunflower in his garden, will be convinced that at a certain period of their development the growing tips do follow the sun. This is not true of the younger plants; and obviously it could not be true of the stem summit when loaded with flower-heads, or even of a single flower-head on its stiff peduncle, but at the time when the leaves of the summit are gathered into a rosette, preparatory to the appearance of the bud, the tips seem to be especially sensitive and they do follow the sun—at least mine do; one cannot speak for his neighbor's sunflowers."

Thomas Moore uses the sunflower as an emblem of constancy:

"The heart that has truly loved never forgets,
But as truly loves on to the close,
As the Sunflower turns on her god when he sets,
The same look that she turned when he rose."

LITTLE THINGS

Only a portion of the original poem, which consists of four twelve-line stanzas, is here quoted. The selection in the text is the second stanza divided into three stanzas of four lines each. The complete poem,

under the same title is found in Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

A recent writer says: "Charles Mackay sings an old, old song in these verses. An old song that is ever new, for the lesson of mercy and kindly consideration of our fellows needs ever to be read to us, lest in too much thought of ourselves we forget how we may help others by some kind action which is free from all self-interest."

PAGE 76—**Might drink.** This line in some editions reads: "But judged that toil might drink."

THE WEDDING OF ALLAN-A-DALE

This selection tells the story of how Allan-a-Dale joined his fortunes with Robin Hood's band of outlaws in Sherwood Forest. Whether such a man as Robin Hood actually existed we do not know for certain, and much has been written on both sides of the question. But it is of little importance as to whether or not he ever lived in the flesh; there is no doubt that he lives in the imagination of the people. Three books are of interest in this connection: *Stories of Robin Hood* by H. E. Marshall in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), *Robin Hood and his Merry Men* by Henry Gilbert (Jack), and *Robin Hood and his Merrie Men* by Francis Gledhill in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). Complete and interesting narratives are also found in *Robin Hood and his Merry Men* by Maude Radford Warren (Rand) and in *The Story of Robin Hood and his Merry Men* by John Finnemore (Black). The ballad on which the story in the text is based is found on page 150 of Book II of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). It should, if possible, be read to the pupils.

All the celebrated stories concerning Robin Hood may be found in the books above referred to—"Robin Hood and Little John," "Robin Hood and Friar Tuck," "Robin Hood and Maid Marian," "Robin Hood and the Sheriff of Nottingham," "Robin Hood and Guy of Gisborne," "Robin Hood and King Richard," etc.

John Finnemore says: "Of all the popular heroes of the English people, none has ever achieved an equal name and fame with Robin Hood. For more than six hundred years, songs and ballads of this famous outlaw have been familiar on the lips of the peasantry. Kings and princes have been forgotten, but not Robin Hood and his band of bold followers in merry Sherwood forest. His adventures were told in rhymes, which were sung at village merry-makings, and while many old songs have faded from memory and knowledge, these have lived, proving how close to the heart

of the people were the stories which told of the greenwood hero and his doings.

“Never was the history of an outlaw followed with such deep interest and delight as the history of Robin Hood. And second only to his own are the names of his favorite followers and friends, Little John, William Scarlet, George Green, Much the Miller’s son, Friar Tuck, and Maid Marian. What was the reason of this deep and constant affection for a man who is clearly depicted as an enemy to the Government of the day, and a robber? To gauge the feeling, we must remember the times in which Robin lived. The nation was still divided into two great classes—the Norman rulers and the Saxon ruled. The first class bitterly oppressed the second, crushing them under new laws and new customs. Robin Hood was a Saxon who stood out against the Norman lords, and the people loved him for it, and delighted in the stories which told how cleverly he spoiled the spoilers. For Robin never plundered a poor man. The ballads are all of one strain there: and when his name is mentioned in history, it is just the same: he is always described as the friend of the poor, the needy, and the oppressed: he never allows the smallest insult or injury to be offered to a woman; he seizes the wealth of the rich and shares it with the poor.

“Nor does it follow that he had done anything very wrong to be declared an outlaw. A Saxon was made an outlaw for a very small offence against his Norman conquerors. If he shot a deer on land which had once been his own, that was an ample offence with which to earn outlawry. An outlaw was in a very desperate position; he bore the title of ‘a wolf’s head,’ to show that his own head was of no more value. Any man who met him might slay him, as if he were a wild beast.

“So when Robin Hood took to the forest he struck blow after blow against the lords who were tyrants of the land. He attacked and plundered baron and knight and sheriff, abbot and prior—men who stood for the Norman rule and all its cruelty. And the people loved him for this. In their eyes he stood for liberty, and the equal rights which rich and poor should have before the law. So they bore in mind his every deed, and made songs of them, and handed the songs down from generation to generation, until some penman set them on paper, and at last the printer arose to secure them for later ages in his quaint sheets of black-letter. In these songs is seen to the full the old English love of fair play and straight dealing. The bold yeomen in the greenwood stand staunchly together in fair weather and foul. They hit hard, but they hit fairly. They are courteous to women, to honest men, and the poor. They are resolute to beard and overthrow the oppressor; they seize upon his wealth amid universal applause, but they do not hoard it among themselves; the needy

are made glad by their bounty. In short, Robin Hood is the incarnation of the rough, hearty virtues beloved of our Saxon forefathers."

PAGE 77—**Little John.** His name was really John Little, but the name was reversed by the band when they saw the man:

"Tho' he was called little, his limbs they were large,
And his stature was seven feet high;
Wherever he came, they quaked at his name,
For soon he would make them all fly."

The celebrated ballad which recounts the first meeting of Robin Hood and Little John is given in *Old English Ballads* edited by William Dallam Armes in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). The story of this meeting is told in prose by Thomas Bulfinch on page 52 of Book VI of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand).

Much. Much, or Midge as he is usually called in the Robin Hood Ballads, was the son of a miller and acted as bailiff for the band. He was short and stout. The comic figures of Little John and Much, the tall thin man contrasted with the short stout man, are evergreen of literature, e.g. Don Quixote and Sancho Panza. See page 298.

PAGE 78—**Allan-a-Dale.** Allan-a-Dale was the minstrel in Robin Hood's band. He appears along with his leader in Sir Walter Scott's novel of *Ivanhoe*.

PAGE 80—**Lincoln green.** A cloth of greenish color worn usually by the foresters of this period.

Friar Tuck. A famous member of Robin Hood's band. He was undisputed master of his forest until Robin came, when he was compelled to yield. He then joined the band of outlaws as their comrade and spiritual adviser. See *Tales of Romance* (Longmans).

PAGE 84—**Sherwood Forest.** Charles Morris in *Historical Tales: English* (Lippincott) says: "William the Conqueror, so we are told, had no less than sixty-eight forests, peopled with deer and guarded against intrusion of common men by a cruel interdict. His successors added new forests, until it looked as if England might be made all woodland, and the red deer its chief inhabitants. Sherwood forest, the favorite lurking place of the bold Robin, stretched for thirty miles in an unbroken line. But this was only part of the Robin's 'realm of pleasance.' From Sherwood it was but a step to other forests, stretching league after league, and peopled by bands of merry rovers, who laughed at the king's laws, killed and ate his cherished deer at their own sweet wills, and defied sheriff and man-at-arms, the dense forest depths affording them innumerable lurking places, their skill with the bow enabling them to defend their domain from assault and to exact tribute from their foes. Such

was the realm of Robin Hood, a realm of giant oaks and silvery birches, a realm prodigal of trees, overcanopied with green leaves until the sun had ado to send his rays downward, carpeted with brown moss and emerald grasses, thicketed with a rich undergrowth of bryony and clematis, prickly holly and golden furze, and a host of minor shrubs, while some parts of the forest were so dense that the entangled branches of the thickly set trees were so twisted together that they hardly left room for a person to pass." See H. E. Marshall's *Stories of Robin Hood*.

I DO! DON'T YOU?

This poem represents four points of view, the liking in each case depending upon the interests of the individual. A good companion poem to this selection is "Marjorie's Almanac" by Thomas Bailey Aldrich on page 89 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

PAGE 85—**The primrose.** One of the most familiar of the English wild flowers. It has five pale lemon-colored petals, each with a notch in the outer edge and two orange-colored streaks running from the base. The flower is described with a colored illustration in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). See also "The Primrose" on page 27 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract).

Golden-rod. See page 55.

Holly. There is a very interesting chapter descriptive of the holly, together with a colored plate, in *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). An equally good descriptive chapter is found on page 185 of S. L. Dyson's *Children's Flowers*. See also "The Proud Holly" on page 78 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans). The author of this poem, Mrs. Mackay, lived in Vancouver, British Columbia. In that province the primrose and the holly are familiar plants.

THE HAYLOFT

This poem was published in *A Child's Garden of Verses* in 1885. See page 40. It describes haying-time in years long gone by, when the hay was cut by scythes. The hay was then carted to the barn and stored in the loft. There the children played and were as happy as the mice who made their home in the hay mountains.

THE GOLDEN TOUCH

The classical story of Midas, told originally by the Latin poet Ovid in Book XI of *The Metamorphoses*, differs somewhat from that in the text. Midas was king of Phrygia in Asia Minor. He was a wealthy and powerful monarch, but greedy and avaricious. On one occasion he received Silenus, the tutor of the god Bacchus, with great hospitality, and as a reward the god promised to grant him whatever he should desire. He asked for and received the power of turning everything he touched into gold. He soon repented of his gift, and in pity Bacchus told him to bathe himself in the Pactolus River. Midas did so, with the result that the sands of the river were ever afterwards golden. Water from the Pactolus sprinkled over the objects that he had turned into gold at once restored them to their original condition.

The story of the Golden Touch is told in *A Wonder-Book for Boys and Girls* by Nathaniel Hawthorne in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). See also *Tanglewood Tales Told to the Children* by C. E. Smith (Jack), *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian S. Hyde (Heath), and *Stories of the Ancient Greeks* by Charles D. Shaw (Ginn). Another story of Midas entitled "The King with the Ass's Ears" is found in *A Child's Garden of Stories* by Maude Elizabeth Paterson (Macmillan). See also "The King who Changed his Mind" and "Unlucky Midas" in *Lippincott's Third Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott) and "Midas the Avaricious" and "Midas the Critic" in *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn). A complete version of the Midas stories is given in *A Book of Myths* by Jean Lang (Jack).

A FAIRY WENT A-MARKETING

This selection is one of the fairy poems of Rose Fyleman. All of the poems in her various volumes of verse are peculiarly suited to children of this grade. *Fairies and Chimneys*, *The Fairy Flute*, *The Fairy Green*, and other volumes are published by Methuen & Co., London, but may be obtained in cheap editions, very suitable for classroom use, from Thomas Nelson & Sons, Limited, Toronto.

Rose Fyleman was born of Jewish parentage at Nottingham, England, in 1877. After graduating from University College, Nottingham, she taught school for some years. Subsequently she became interested in music and studied singing in Berlin and Paris, and at the Royal College of Music in London, where she took the A.R.C.M. diploma. She made her first public appearance as a singer in Queen's Hall, London, in 1903, and since that time has been engaged in public singing, teaching, lecturing, and

journalism. She is the editor of *The Children's Magazine* and *The Merry-Go-Round*, and is a contributor to *Punch* and various other London papers. Amongst her publications are *Fairies and Chimneys*, *The Fairy Green*, *The Fairy Flute*, *The Rainbow Cat*, *A Small Cruse*, *Forty Good-Night Tales*, *Eight Little Plays for Children*, *Fairies and Friends*, *Letty*, and *The Rose Fyleman Fairy Book*.

THE RABBIT'S TRICK

This selection is an amusing story, as the title indicates, of a trick played by Brother Rabbit on the Whale and the Elephant. Good companion selections are "The Wonderful Tar Baby" from *Uncle Remus: His Songs and his Sayings* by Joel Chandler Harris reproduced on page 28 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn), "Mr. Rabbit, He's a Good Fisherman" by the same author on page 75 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton), and "The Little Jackal and the Alligator" in *Stories to Tell to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton).

A capital description of the whale is given on page 32 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). The animal frequently, when full grown, attains a length of seventy feet. See page 303. The African elephant and the Indian elephant are both described in *The Story Natural History*. Excellent colored plates accompany both descriptions. See also "The Indian Elephant" on page 37 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). An interesting story to read to the pupils in connection with the elephant is "How the Elephant Got his Trunk" in *Just So Stories* by Rudyard Kipling (Gundy). The same book also has the story of "How the Whale Got his Throat."

THE DUEL

This selection first appeared in *Love Songs of Childhood* published in 1894. For many years Eugene Field conducted a special column of mingled prose and verse in one of the Chicago daily papers, and in this many of his best-known poems of childhood first appeared.

Kenneth Grahame in his introduction to *Lullaby-Land*, a selection from the poems of Eugene Field published by Charles Scribner's Sons, has two or three paragraphs that throw light upon the method of approach to selections similar to the one in the text. He says: "There is a sort of garden—or rather an estate, of park and fallow and waste—nay, perhaps we may call it a kingdom, albeit a noman's land and an everyman's land—which lies so close to the frontier of our work-a-day world that a step will take us therein. Indeed some will have it that we are there all the time,

and that at any moment—if we did but know the trick—we might find ourselves trotting along its pleasant alleys, without once quitting our arm-chair. Nonsense-Land is one of the names painted up on the board at the frontier station; and there the custom-house officers are very strict. You may take fripperies of every sort, new and old; but all common-sense, all logic, all serious argument must strictly be declared and is promptly confiscated. Once safely across the border, it is with no surprise at all that you greet the Lead Soldier strutting somewhat stiffly to meet you, the dog with eyes as big as mill-wheels following affably at his heels; on the banks of the streams little Johnny-head-in-air is perpetually being hauled out of the water; while the plaintive voice of the Gryphon is borne inland from the margin of the sea.

“Most people at one time or other have travelled in this delectable country, if only in young and irresponsible days. Certain unfortunates, unequipped by nature for a voyage in such latitudes, have never visited it at all, and assuredly never will. A happy few never quit it entirely at any time. Domiciled in that pleasant atmosphere, they peep into the world of facts but fitfully at moments; and decline to sacrifice their high privilege of citizenship at any summons to a low conformity.

“Of this fortunate band was Eugene Field. He knew the country thoroughly, its highways and its byways alike. Its language was the one he was fondest of talking; and he always refused to emigrate and to settle down anywhere else. As soon as he set himself to narrate the goings-on there, those of us who had been tourists in bygone days, but had lost our return tickets, pricked up our ears and remembered and knew. The Dickey-Bird, we recollected at once, had been singing the day we left, in the amfalula-tree; and there, of course, he must have been singing ever since, only we had forgotten the way to listen. Eugene Field gently reminded us, and the Dickey-Bird was vocal once more, to be silent never again.”

A very interesting article to read to the pupils entitled “A Story About Eugene Field” is found on page 173 of Book III of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). It deals with Field as a friend of children and discusses his poems written for them. Field may be ranked along with Lewis Carroll and Edward Lear as a writer of “nonsense verses.” See notes on “The Lobster Quadrille” on page 62.

Other poems by Eugene Field which somewhat resemble “The Duel” are “The Sugar-Plum Tree” in *With Trumpet and Drum* and “The Dinky Bird” and “Fiddle-dee-dee” in *Love Songs of Childhood*, both books published by Charles Scribner’s Sons. See *Eugene Field Reader* by Alice L. Harris (Scribner). See page 35.

THE PIED PIPER OF HAMELIN

This selection relates the celebrated legend of the Pied Piper. The story is told by E. Cobham Brewer as follows: "The Pied Piper was so called from his dress. He undertook for a certain sum of money to free the town of Hamelin of the rats which infested it; but when he had drowned all the rats in the river Weser, the townsmen refused to pay the sum agreed upon. The piper, in revenge, collected together all the children of Hamelin, and enticed them by his piping into a cavern on the side of the mountain Koppelberg, which instantly closed upon them, and 130 went down alive into the pit (June 26th, 1284). The street through which the piper conducted his victims was Bungen, and from that day to this no music is ever allowed to be played in this particular street." The name of the piper was Bunting. Similar stories are told about many other places. An interesting article on rats and their habits is found on page 190 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson).

The poetry scattered through the selection is taken from Robert Browning's "The Pied Piper of Hamelin" published in 1842 in *Dramatic Lyrics*. The whole poem should, if possible, be read in class. It may be found on page 22 of Part VII of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack). Another and much longer version of the story in prose is found in *How to Tell Stories to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton). A dramatized version, suitable for either class reading or acting, is found in *Dramatic Reader for Lower Grades* by Florence Holbrook (American Book Co.).

An excellent companion selection to "The Pied Piper of Hamelin" is "The Rat Charmer" by Selma Lagerlöf to be found on page 168 of Book V of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand). Another good story is given in "A Rat Tale" by Evelyn Grieve on page 174 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). The poem "Bishop Hatto" by Robert Southey might also be read to the pupils.

The following very interesting note is taken from the *Teachers' Notebook for the Holton-Curry Fifth Reader* (Rand): "Rats and mice were certainly much more troublesome in olden times than they are now, if we may believe the stories that have come down to us. Even now, when we know so many ways of destroying them, they are often very annoying. In the earlier days there were people who made it their business to rid communities of such pests. Naturally, if such rat hunters were to be very successful, they must find some method that produced better results than those used by their competitors. It would be wise also to keep the method a secret, so that others could not use it, and, if the method consisted of some kind of mysterious charm to be exerted, so much the better. In those days people were more credulous than

they are now, and believed that some kinds of music had irresistible effects on these pests. The country was overrun by professed 'rat charmers', most of whom must have been quite as bad pests as the rats they said they could destroy. But the need was so great that the harassed communities dreamed of the coming of such a saviour. Stories grew up about strange beings who did come now and then, when all other means had failed, and saved the people from despair through their mysterious piping. After which they would as mysteriously disappear.

"One of the weaknesses of human nature is that when one is in distress one will promise almost anything for relief and, having received it, haggle at paying the price agreed upon. In many of the piper legends, where the price was not paid in advance, the beneficiaries took advantage of the situation and refused to pay. The rats no longer bothered. There had been no formal agreement, the piper having trusted to the honesty of human nature. Besides, the business of exerting mysterious charms had something nefarious about it, and the piper was told that he had better clear out and consider himself lucky. But 'we must always pay the piper,' says the proverb, and where payment is refused some dire retribution is always sure to follow."

PAGE 101—**Hamelin.** A town in the south-western corner of Hanover, at the junction of the Hamel and the Weser Rivers.

PAGE 106—**Beyond the hills.** A commentator on "The Pied Piper" has the following pertinent remarks: "Do people still make the kind of stupid, silly, brainless mistakes that the burghers of Hamelin made? Do they ever put selfish greed above honor? Doesn't it seem that the lessons of the past ought to guard against further errors? Do you really believe that one must reap what one sows? Wouldn't you dislike being laughed at for the same reason that you have for laughing at the Mayor and Corporation? Well, if so, get in line and make sure that no piper can ever accuse you of withholding what is his."

THE LAND OF STORY-BOOKS

This poem was published in *A Child's Garden of Verses* in 1885. See page 40. It gives a picture of a quiet home evening. The parents sit and talk, or amuse themselves with music. The little boy, who cannot understand their apparent idleness, in imagination changes the room into the land of the favorite tales of his story-books. The shadowy parts of the room, behind the furniture and along the wall, are turned into secret places where he may hunt lions or prowl like an Indian scout. This interesting game of "pretend" occupies his time until all too soon it is interrupted by bedtime.

Another of Robert Louis Stevenson's poems from *A Child's Garden of Verses*—"Historical Associations"—is a good companion poem.

PAGE 107—**Play at books.** Act the stories he has read.

My starry solitudes. "The language of the story-books is imitated."

The others. The enemy.

And I. And as if I.

SAINT VALENTINE

The selection in the text is a very pretty story and explains how the name of St. Valentine became associated with the customs that prevail on that day. St. Valentine, however, had a history somewhat different from that here related. He was a priest of the Catholic Church, who lived at Rome during the latter half of the third century. Charged with befriending some of the martyrs during the persecution of the Christians in the reign of Claudius, he was thrown into prison, severely beaten, and finally, on February 14th, 270, was beheaded. Pope Julius built a church at Rome in his honor. See *Curiosities of Popular Customs* by William S. Walsh (Lippincott).

Two good St. Valentine's Day Stories are found in *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley): "Stuart's Valentine" on page 255 and "Big Brother's Valentine" on page 257.

THE OWL AND THE PUSSY-CAT

From 1832 to 1836 Edward Lear lived with the family of the Earl of Derby at Knowsley. He was a great favorite with the grandchildren of the earl, and to amuse them he began the writing of his nonsense rhymes. He continued to write both poems and stories of this nature almost to the time of his death. See notes on "The Lobster Quadrille" on page 62.

An interesting selection to read to the pupils entitled "Something about Edward Lear" is found on page 185 of Book III of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). Two others of Lear's nonsense poems are printed with this article—"Calico Pie" and "The Jumbles." The author makes the point that these nonsense poems are not reasonable and that is what makes them funny. "A 'nonsense' poem has just enough 'sense' in it to make it seem real." The best illustrated collection of Lear's poems for school use is *Nonsense Songs* published by Frederick Warne. See also *A Nonsense Anthology* by Carolyn Wells (Scribner).

PAGE 112—**Bong-tree.** The bong-tree is, of course, a purely imaginary tree.
Runcible. This is a word coined for the occasion. It means "saw-toothed"; a very unusual spoon to eat with.

FOUR SUNBEAMS

This poem appeared originally in *St. Nicholas* for December, 1879, over the initials M. K. B. The four sunbeams set out in the morning to find pleasure in doing kindness to others. Each accomplishes his purpose and realizes that in doing it he has found his best and fullest happiness.

Four good companion poems are found in *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). These are "The Sunbeams" by Emilie Poulsson on page 10, "The Little Lazy Cloud" on page 32, "Suppose" by Epes Sargent on page 47, and "The Sunbeam" on page 105. A little poem entitled "Trifles" might be given to the pupils:

"A raindrop is a little thing,
 But on the thirsty ground,
 It helps to make the flowers of Spring,
 And beauty spread around.
 A ray of light may seem to be
 Lost in the blaze of day;
 But its sweet mission God can see,
 Who sends it on his way."

See "Five Peas in a Pod" by Hans Christian Andersen on page 129 of *The First Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe (Houghton).

PIPPA

This selection tells the story of Robert Browning's *Pippa Passes: A Drama*, published in 1841. The story of the drama is sufficiently indicated in the text. Edward Berdoe sums up the thought as follows: "The drama shows us how near God is to us in conscience. 'God stands apart,' as the poet says, 'to give man room to work'; but in every great crisis of our life, if we listen we may hear Him warning, threatening, guiding, revealing. The drama shows us, too, our mutual interdependence. We look for great things to work for us; it is ever the unseen, unfelt influences which are the most potent. We are taught, also, that there is nothing we do or say but may be big with good or evil consequences to many of our fellows of whom we know nothing. People whom we have never seen, of whose very existence we are ignorant, are affected eternally by our lightest words and our most thoughtless actions."

PAGE 115—**Asola.** A small town near Mantua in northern Italy. **To make silk.** Italy is one of the great silk producing and manufacturing countries of the world. The reason for this is that the climate of the country, especially that of the Lombardy Plain is suited to the cultivation of the white mulberry tree, on which the silkworm feeds. The silkworm itself requires steady warmth. A most interesting chapter to read to the pupils is "The Silkworm Rearer" on page 30 of *Work and Workers Shown to the Children* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack). See also "The Silk-Moth's Story" on page 152 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans) and a series of very interesting articles under the general title of "The Silkworm" on page 69 of *Interesting Neighbors* by Oliver P. Jenkins (Blakiston).

PAGE 116—**Whirling spools.** Silk is now manufactured entirely by machinery. For a description of the machinery at which Pippa worked see the chapter entitled "The Weaver" in Arthur O. Cooke's *Work and Workers Shown to the Children*.

PAGE 117—**Like unwound silk.** Note the appropriateness of the simile as here used.

PAGE 118—**All service, etc** The complete song is as follows:

"All service ranks the same with God;
 If now as formerly He trod
 Paradise, His presence fills
 Our earth, each only as God wills
 Can work—God's puppets, best and worst,
 Are we; there is no last or first.
 Say not 'a small event!' Why 'small'?
 Costs it more pain that this, ye call
 A 'great event', should come to pass
 Than that? Untwine me from the mass
 Of Deeds which make up life, one deed
 Power shall fall short in or exceed!"

PIPPA'S SONG

This poem is one of the songs in *Pippa Passes*, referred to in the previous selection. It is a beautiful little poem expressing utter confidence in God. Everything is beautiful in nature, God is above, therefore "All's right with the world." A recent writer sums up the thought: "The song is a quick, single glance at the joyous beauty of the world and the conclusion to be drawn therefrom." The song is really the central thought of the drama. The music of "Pippa's Song" is given on page 129 of Book III of *The Progressive Music Series* (Gage).

PAGE 119—**The lark.** The English skylark is, of course, meant. See page 330.

The snail. The garden snail. See *Living Creatures of Water, Land, and Air* by John Monteith (American Book Co.). See also "The Story of a Snail" on page 34 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans).

Thorn. The hawthorn, a shrub with spreading branches and stout thorns or spines. The flowers are white, or sometimes reddish, rather large and clustered, with a peculiar, disagreeable odor. See *How to Know the Wild Flowers* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (Scribner) and "Hawthorn" on page 75 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract). See also "Mother Hawthorn" on page 38 of Joan Kennedy's *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories*.

AT THE ZOO

This is a plea for sympathy for the wild animals kept in captivity. The little bear in his pit in the Zoological Gardens seems happy enough playing with his ball, until a kind enquiry reminds him of his natural condition from which he has been separated. Note the whimsical turn given to the narrative in the last line; it is pregnant with meaning.

A good description of the brown bear is given on page 111 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). A colored plate "Buns, Please" accompanies the description. See also "The Brown European Bear" on page 226 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson).

A good story to read to the pupils in this connection is "The Story of a Sea Gull" by Mrs. Molesworth on page 187 of Book II of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

THE POWDER-MONKEY

The hero of this selection is Sir Cloudesley Shovell. The *Dictionary of National Biography* says: "The story of his swimming under the enemy's fire, with despatches in his mouth, though vouched for by family tradition, cannot be localized or dated. It is said to have happened while he was still a boy, which would fix it to the Dutch War of 1665-7." It is not at all probable that such an incident ever took place, at least as far as Shovell is concerned, but the lesson of the story in the text remains the same.

Sir Cloudesley Shovell (1650-1707) was one of the most celebrated of the English admirals. He went to sea at the age of fourteen and advanced very rapidly in his profession. The history of his life is merely

one of the commissions he held and the engagements in which he took part. He died in the wreck of his fleet among the rocks of the Scilly Islands. "The body of Shovell, still living, was thrown on shore in Port-hellick Cove, but a woman, who was the first to find it, coveting an emerald ring on one of his fingers, extinguished the flickering life. Near thirty years after, on her death-bed, she confessed the crime and delivered up to the clergyman the ring." Shovell was buried in Westminster Abbey.

PAGE 123—**The British admiral.** Sir John Narborough. It should be noted that Sir John Narborough was not a British admiral in the present sense of the term, as the Kingdom of Great Britain was not formed until many years after this engagement is said to have taken place. Sir John (1640-1688) had a notable career in the English navy. His most famous expedition was against the Bey of Tripoli, in which he completely subdued the pirate chief. He died while with his fleet on May 27th, 1688, and was buried at sea. He was a relative of young Shovell and befriended him through his early years, although but ten years older.

PAGE 125—**Gibraltar.** The fortress was taken from the Spaniards by the English fleet under Sir George Rooke in 1704. See a very interesting selection entitled "Gibraltar" by John Lang on page 153 of *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack).

WAITING TO GROW

This poem deals with the wakening of the early spring flowers, some of them very small, and gives us the lesson of the watchful care of the Creator, to Whom nothing is so small as to be beneath His notice. The illustration at the bottom of page 126 in the text shows the snowdrop, the violet, the daisy, and the buttercup.

The following companion poems, all suited for pupils in Grade III, may be found in *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver): "Spring Song" on page 4, "A Song of Spring" by Helen C. Bacon on page 8, "Hide-and-Seek" by Frank Dempster Sherman on page 35, "The First Snowdrop" by Julia M. Dana on page 38, "April Fools" by Emily H. Miller on page 50, "Flower Dances" by Mrs. Anderson on page 56, "Buttercups and Daisies" by Mary Howitt on page 61, and "Wake up, Little Daisy" on page 64. See also "Talking in their Sleep" by Edith M. Thomas on page 115 of the Third Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.), "The Coming of Spring" by Mary Howitt on page 9 of Part II of *The Golden Staircase* by Louey Chisholm (Jack), and "The Bluebird" by Emily Huntington Miller on page 87 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan).

PAGE 126—**Little white snowdrop.** The earliest of the out-of-door flowers. Harriet L. Keeler says: "A few days such as frequently occur in midwinter, warm enough to thaw the surface of the ground sufficiently so that the green leaves can push through, are all that is necessary. The little flower, so white, delicate, and spiritual that it seems to be snow organized into flower form, comes at once to the surface. We have no other that responds so quickly to the summons of the sun." A description of the snowdrop with colored illustration is given in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack) and in *Our Garden Flowers* by Harriet L. Keeler (Scribner). See also a very pretty colored illustration in *Gardens Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). Interesting stories to read to the pupils are "The Story of the First Snowdrops" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton), "The Wilful Snowdrop" on page 10 of *The Kingsway Book of Nature Stories* by Joan Kennedy (Evans), and the poem entitled "Snowdrops" by Lawrence Alma-Tadema on page 14 of Part II of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack). See also "Snowdrop, Crocus, and Tulip" on page 23 of Book IV of *The "Look About You" Nature Study Books* by Thomas W. Hoare (Jack).

Violet. There are in all considerably over one hundred species of violets recorded, twenty of these being represented in Canada. See full descriptions and illustrations of the American species in *How to Know the Wild Flowers* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (Scribner) and in Harriet L. Keeler's *Our Garden Flowers*. The best known and most loved of all the species of violets is the common blue of our fields and meadows. The bird's-foot violet is found in western Canada. See "The Violet and Heart's-ease" on page 109 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract). Also "The Violet" by Barry Cornwall on page 55 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). Interesting legends of the violet and the snowdrop are found in *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* by Charles M. Skinner (Lippincott).

Daisy. Mrs. William Starr Dana in *How to Know the Wild Flowers* (Scribner) says: "The common white daisy stars the June meadows with these gold-centred blossoms which delight the eye of the beauty-lover while they make sore the heart of the farmer, for the 'white-weed,' as he calls it, is hurtful to pasture land and difficult to eradicate." See "Wake Up, Little Daisy" on page 64 and "The Daisy" by James Montgomery on page 65 of Mary I. Lovejoy's *Nature in Verse*. The English daisy, which differs essentially from our daisy, is described fully in "The Daisy" on page 9 of S. L. Dyson's *Children's Flowers*.

Buttercup. "A flower of the meadow and roadside, which blooms from June to October, is the buttercup. This is a relative of the marsh marigold, which often gets the same name. The petals of the buttercup are waxy

yellow, and all the parts of the flower are separate from each other. They are all more or less poisonous and should not be tasted. The western representative is the dwarf buttercup, only eight inches high." The buttercups are very fully described on pages 115-121 of *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset) and in the chapter entitled "Buttercups" on page 21 of S. L. Dyson's *Children's Flowers*. See also Janet Harvey Kelman's *Flowers Shown to the Children*.

THE MADONNA OF THE CHAIR

Raffaello Santi was born at Urbino, in Italy, on Good Friday, March 28th, 1483. He received his first instruction in art from his father who died when the boy was eleven years old. His uncle then became his guardian and apprenticed him to Timoteo Viti, an artist then living at Urbino. Subsequently he studied under the celebrated artist Perugino and also at Florence. By 1507 his fame as an artist had been established, and in the next year he was invited to Rome by Pope Julius II to assist in the decoration of the Vatican, the residence of the popes. In 1514 he became the architect of St. Peter's Cathedral at Rome, and in 1515 he was appointed to superintend the excavations among the ruins of the city. He gave himself up with intense earnestness to his work, but the strain proved too great for his delicate constitution. He caught a fever, and, after ten days' illness, died on Good Friday, April 6th, 1520, at the early age of thirty-seven years. See *The Story of Three Great Artists* by Ellen M. Cyr (Ginn) and *Stories of Great Artists* by Olive Browne Horne and Katherine Lois Scobey (American Book Co.).

There are many excellent books dealing with Raphael as an artist. Perhaps the most suitable for the schoolroom are *Raphael* by Paul G. Konody in *Masterpieces in Colour* (Jack) with eight full-page illustrations in color including the Madonna of the Chair; *Raphael* by Estelle M. Hurl in *Riverside Art Series* (Houghton) with sixteen full-page illustrations in black and white; and *Raphael* by Julia Cartwright in *The Popular Library of Art* (Duckworth) with fifty full-page illustrations in black and white. See also *Picture Study in Elementary Schools* by L. L. W. Wilson (Macmillan) and *Pictures Every Child Should Know* by Dolores Bacon (Grosset).

The story of the Madonna of the Chair is more fully told by Charles M. Skinner in *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* as follows: "Father Bernardo, a holy hermit who lived far from cities, was often besought to solve moral problems and guide his people in worldly transactions. Though his time was mostly spent in prayer, he derived

comfort from his 'two daughters': terms playfully applied to little Mary, the daughter of a vine-dresser, who brought delicacies to soften the hardness of his fare and cheer him with her prattle, and a big oak that defended his hut from snow and rain. This oak was his daily companion. He watered its roots if it thirsted, talked to it, caressed it, and fancied its thanks in the murmur of its leaves. Once, when the country had been devastated by freshets that swept away his cabin, he found refuge in the tree, and thither went the speaking 'daughter,' carrying food and cover, for after three days of imprisonment among the branches he was like to die. Several lumbermen wanted to cut the tree into beams, but Bernardo would never consent, and during his life the oak suffered no injury. As his last days drew near he implored heaven to mark 'his two daughters' in some way to signify the use and beauty of their lives, but at first it did not appear as if this were to be done, for Mary became the wife of an artisan, and the big oak was at last sacrificed for its wood, which Mary's father converted into wine casks. As the young woman sat nursing her infant before one of these casks a handsome stranger drew near, just as the older boy of Mary ran to her with a little cross he had fashioned from a couple of sticks. As if struck by the incident, the young man asked leave to make a picture of the group. Hardly waiting permission, indeed, he seized the cover of the cask and on its smooth surface outlined the picture known to the world as the 'Madonna della Sedia.' For the young man was Raphael. And thus the prayer of Father Bernardo was answered, for the two 'daughters' became elements in one of the highest expressions of beauty." This same story is told with much more detail in "The Madonna of the Chair" on page 27 of Book I of *Stories Pictures Tell* by Flora L. Carpenter (Rand).

Estelle M. Hurlll says of the illustration in the text: "The Madonna of the Chair is so called because in this picture the Virgin is seated. She is sitting in a low chair, holding her child on her knee, and encircling him with her arms. Her head is laid tenderly against the child's, and she looks out of the picture with a tranquil, happy sense of motherly love. The child has the rounded limbs and playful action of the feet of a healthy, warm-blooded infant, and he nestles into his mother's embrace as snugly as a young bird in its nest. But as he leans against the mother's bosom and follows her gaze, there is a serious and even grand expression in his eyes which Raphael and other painters always sought to give to the child Jesus to mark the difference between him and common children. By the side of the Madonna is the child who is to grow up as St. John the Baptist. He carries a reed cross, as if to herald the death of the Saviour; his hands are clasped in prayer, and, though the other two look out of the picture at us, he fixes his steadfast look on the child, in ardent worship."

PAGE 128—**Columbus.** A sketch of Columbus is given on page 145. **Mountain villages.** Raphael was born at Urbino, a town of central Italy, the capital of the province of Resaro. The town is picturesquely situated on the side of a hill, and has many beautiful churches and stately buildings, but the streets are narrow and crooked. It contains a magnificent monument to Raphael. The house in which he was born is owned by the municipality and is preserved as a memorial to the great painter. **His father.** Giovanni Santi, the father of Raphael, was a painter of considerable skill and a close personal friend of the reigning Duke of Montefeltro, to whom he was court painter and poet. Several of his paintings are still preserved, as is also a rhyming chronicle of 23,000 verses celebrating his ducal patron.

A vase for a prince. The prince was Guidobaldo, Duke of Montefeltro, who succeeded his father in the dukedom in the year before Raphael's birth. He was a highly cultured ruler, and under his rule Urbino became one of the chief literary and artistic centres in Italy. The story of the vase which Raphael painted for him is told in "The Child of Urbino" in *Bimbi: Stories for Children* by Marie Louise de la Ramée, or to use her pen-name, "Ouida" (Ginn). It is also found in abridged form on page 147 of the Sixth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

It should be kept in mind that in Raphael's day, the nobles were the great patrons of literature and art. Unless a writer or artist could interest one or more of the great nobles in his work, he had a very hard time indeed to earn his living by his pen or by his brush. In Italy, at this time, the pope and the great princes of the church were munificent patrons of literature and art.

PAGE 131—**Madonnas.** Pictures of the Virgin Mary. Raphael is remembered above all as a painter of Madonnas. Here was the subject best expressing the individuality of his genius. From the beginning to the end of his career the sweet mystery of motherhood never ceased to fascinate him. Again and again he sounded the depths of maternal experience, always making some new discovery.

The Madonna of the Chair. This celebrated painting, now in the Pitti Gallery, Florence, is a wood panel two feet three and three-quarters inches in diameter. It was painted between 1510 and 1514. The Italian title of the picture is "Madonna della Sedia."

THE PEDDLER'S CARAVAN

The peddler with his caravan is a sight more familiar in England than it is in Canada. The illustration, however, at the top of page 133 of the text gives sufficient explanation.

"The poem is an interesting attempt to express a child's way of looking upon life. Most people never outgrow the desire for wandering. The road holds its imaginative charm. The vagabond element is strong. To the child, with his limited horizon, the big house on wheels, rumbling into his range of vision from the great outside world, holds all sorts of possibility for adventure. In reading, be sure to express the wide-eyed interest of the child in the wonderful, strange discoveries and startling adventures which the peddler's van suggests to his mind."

A stanza is omitted in the text between the third and fourth. It reads as follows:

"The roads are brown, and the sea is green,
But his house is like a bathing-machine;
The world is round, and he can ride,
Rumble and slash, to the other side."

PAGE 133—**Captain Cook.** Captain Cook was one of the most adventurous of the great English explorers. His *Voyages* is a most fascinating book of travel and has always been a favorite with young people. See page 318.

A JAPANESE HOME

This little poem is a story in pleasing verse of the customs of Japan as compared with ours. The selection "Tada and Tama: Two Japanese Children at Home" in *Child Life in Other Lands* by H. Avis Perdue (Rand) is excellent material to read to the class in explanation of the poem. It contains a picture of a rickshaw. A similar selection is "Hana and Tora" on page 167 of the Third Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). See also the chapters entitled "In the House" and "The Rickshawman" in *Japan* by John Finnemore in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black) and *Our Little Japanese Cousin* by Mary Hazleton Wade (Page).

PAGE 134—**Rickshaw.** An abbreviated form of *jirinrickisha*, a small two-wheeled hooded vehicle drawn by one or more men.

IRIS

Iris, according to the Greek myths, was the daughter of Electra, one of the Oceanides, or nymphs of the sea. She was the messenger of Hera, or Juno, the queen of the gods and travelled from heaven to earth over the rainbow bridge. She is generally represented with wings tinted with

all the colors of the rainbow, her long, trailing mantle being similarly colored. Frequently she is regarded as the personification of the rainbow. "She assumes her garments of a thousand colors and spans the heavens with a covering arch." One of her duties, however, was to supply the clouds with water for the refreshment of the thirsty earth. It is in this character that she is treated in the poem. See "Iris, the Rainbow Princess" in *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand). See also *Myths of Greece and Rome* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.) and *A Book of Myths* by Jean Lang (Jack). "The Rainbow Bridge" on page 95 of Book II of *The Canadian Readers* tells the story of Iris.

Almost all the early peoples have stories connected with the wonders of the heavens, such as Iris, the rainbow goddess. A few of these are found in Mary Catherine Judd's *Classic Myths*. On page 55 there is a Russian myth entitled "The Milky Way," which explains the origin of that phenomenon of the heavens, "The Giant with the Belt of Stars" on page 42 and "The Great Bear in the Sky" tell the stories of Orion and the north star. The origin of the sun and the moon is explained in "The Sun and the Moon" on page 268 of *Wigwam Stories* by Mary Catherine Judd (Ginn), and "The Great Bear in the Sky" on page 155 of the same book tells the story of the polar star. *The Red Indian Fairy Book* by Frances Jenkins Olcott (Houghton) contains three very interesting stories: "Little Dawn Boy and the Rainbow Trail" on page 7, "The Land of the Northern Lights" on page 196, and "The Boy in the Moon" on page 276.

PAGE 135—**Sun-king.** Phoebus Apollo. See page 165. The real origin of the rainbow is referred to here.

Rainbow bridge. F. A. Farrar in *Old Greek Nature Stories* (Harrap) says: "Among the marvels of the sky, the rainbow is so striking, so beautiful, and so mysterious, that it is no wonder it worked on the imagination of ancient races. Some thought it, very naturally, the bridge leading to heaven. Among the Greeks, it gave rise to the goddess Iris, a beautiful maiden clothed in an ethereal robe of delicate tints like those of the rainbow." Among the Norse the rainbow was known as Bifröst, and was said to be the bridge over which the gods travelled from their home in Asgard to the earth. "It was built of fire, water, and air, whose quivering and changing hues it retained." See *Myths of Northern Lands* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

Gems of rain. Mary Catherine Judd says: "Iris loved the water best of all things on earth. She always wore a chain of raindrops for pearls, and a cloud for a robe."

Stately flags. Mary Catherine Judd says: "She had an army of soldiers by each river bank. Men called the soldiers plants, but their swords

were always drawn for Iris, and their stately heads were adorned with her favorite colors. When you see a group of plants clustering at the water's edge, with their sword-like leaves pointing to the sky, and the great blue flowers looking like a crown, remember this is the flower Iris loved." The larger blue flag, or fleur-de-lis, is one of the most regal of the wild flowers. It grows from one to three feet in height, the leaves are flat and sword-shaped, and the flowers large and showy, violet-blue, variegated with green, yellow, or white. The flag is described on page 322 of *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset) and on page 282 of *How to Know the Wild Flowers* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (Scribner). See also page 40 of *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* by Charles M. Skinner (Lippincott).

Pot of gold. It is an old superstition that there is a pot of gold buried at the foot of the rainbow. *See page 28.*

Her jewels. The rain.

LORD NELSON

Horatio Nelson was born at Burnham-Thorpe, in Norfolk, September 29th, 1758. In 1771 he went to sea for the first time, and two years later took part in an expedition to the Arctic Seas. Subsequently he saw service both in the East Indies and in the West Indies, and by 1779 had attained the rank of post captain. In 1780 he was in command of an expedition against Nicaragua, but, owing to the unhealthy climate, failed in his purpose. On the outbreak of the French war in 1793 he was given the command of the *Agamemnon* and sent to the Mediterranean. Three years later he was serving as commodore under Admiral Sir John Jervis, and played a conspicuous part in the battle off Cape St. Vincent in 1797. In the same year he was made rear-admiral and placed in charge of the squadron blockading Cadiz. About this time he lost his right arm in a night attack on Santa Cruz. In 1798, in command of a fleet, he attacked the French in Aboukir Bay, and won the famous battle of the Nile. For this service he was raised to the peerage as Lord Nelson. In 1801 he was sent to the Baltic as second in command to Sir Hyde Parker and successfully conducted the bombardment of Copenhagen, winning a complete victory over the Danes. As a recognition of his bravery he was created Viscount Nelson. In 1803 he was appointed to the command of the Mediterranean fleet and for fifteen months was engaged in blockading Toulon. During this time, so anxious was he to prevent the escape of the French fleet, that he left his ship only on three occasions. When the alliance between France and Spain was concluded in 1804, Nelson went to sea

in search of their combined fleets, pursuing them as far as the West Indies. They eluded him, however, and he returned to Portsmouth. Again he put to sea, and on October 21st, 1805, he met the two fleets off Trafalgar. He won a brilliant victory, but lost his life during the engagement. See *The Story of Nelson* by Edmund Francis Sellar in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack), *The Story of Nelson* by A. O. Cooke (Oxford Press), *The Story of Nelson* by Harold F. B. Wheeler (Harrap), *Lord Nelson* by J. K. Laughton in *English Men of Action* series (Macmillan), and *Life of Nelson* by Robert Southey (Nelson).

PAGE 141—One of these. Nelson was raised to the peerage after the battle of the Nile. See *Peeps at the Royal Navy* by the Rev. James Baikie (Black). An excellent colored plate of the battle of the Nile is found on page 177 of Book VI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

Wounded. In one of his battles he lost an arm.

Greatest of all his fights. The battle of Trafalgar.

The signal. A colored plate showing the arrangement of the flags to form the signal is found in *History of the Union Jack: How It Grew and What It Is* by Barlow Cumberland (Ryerson Press) and in *The House of Hanover* by Tom Bevan in *The Tower History Readers* (Pitman).

Famous victory. On October 21st, 1805, Nelson, in command of the British fleet, caught sight of the combined fleet of France and Spain under Admiral Villeneuve. Nelson had 27 men-of-war and 4 frigates, while Villeneuve had 33 men-of-war and 7 frigates. Nelson adopted the plan of attacking in two lines, he, himself, leading the one line and Admiral Collingwood the other. The battle was stubborn, but victory at last inclined to the British. Twenty of the enemy's ships surrendered, while seven escaped, only to be captured later. Most of the prizes, however, were destroyed in a great storm which came on immediately after the battle. The British loss was 1,587 men, including Lord Nelson, while the Spanish admiral was killed and Villeneuve captured. "Trafalgar was the most amazing victory won by land or sea through the whole Revolutionary War. It permanently changed the whole course of history and it goes far to justify Nelson's famous boast, 'The fleets of England are equal to meet the world in arms.'" A brilliant account of Trafalgar is given in *Deeds that Won the Empire* by W. H. Fitchett (Smith, Elder). See also *Historical Tales: English* by Charles Morris (Lippincott). Sir Henry Newbolt's "The Quarter Gunner's Yarn" in *Collected Poems* (Nelson) is a capital selection to read in this connection, as is also "The Battle of Trafalgar" by Elizabeth H. Mitchell to be found on page 169 of Book III of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

AN EASTERN LEGEND

In this beautiful rendering of an old legend we have another poem dealing with kindness to the birds. An appealing Eastern legend of the Christ-child and the birds by Elizabeth Stuart Phelps is found in *Our Birds and their Nestlings* by Margaret Coulson Walker (American Book Co.). A very interesting story entitled "The Madonna of the Goldfinch" is found in the volume with this title by Amy Steedman (Jack). It is a perfect illustration of the thought of the poem. See also "A Good Marksman" by Joseph Kirkland on page 158 of Book II of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan), "The Dead Robin" by Sydney Dayre on page 160 of the same book, "The Wounded Curlew" by Celia Thaxter on page 159 of Book III of the same series, and "Remorse" by Sydney Dayre on page 85 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan).

ROBINSON CRUSOE

The selection in the text tells the story of Robinson Crusoe, the hero of *The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe, of York, Mariner*, published in 1719. The germ of the book is found in the adventures of Alexander Selkirk, a sailing master, who, having quarrelled with his captain, was put ashore on the island of Juan Fernandez, off the western coast of South America. There he remained for over four years, when he was rescued by an English ship and landed in England in 1708. Some of the experiences of Selkirk are used in the narrative, but on the whole the book is the product of the vivid imagination of the author, "a scheme of a real life of eight and twenty years, spent in the most wandering, desolate and afflicting circumstances that ever a man went through." The story of Alexander Selkirk is told in *Stories of Heroic Deeds* by James Johonnot (American Book Co.).

Henrietta Christian Wright in *Children's Stories in English Literature: From Shakespeare to Tennyson* says of *Robinson Crusoe*: "De Foe took a common English sailor and invested him with a charm that made him immortal, though he did no deed of valor or chivalry, and had for his highest aims only the hope of getting away from the scene of his own adventures. England went mad over Robinson Crusoe. The working people especially exulted over this hero, who was just like themselves, and who did just the things they would have done in the same circumstances. They admired his good sense, his homely invention, his matter-of-fact way of going about things, and of making the best of things. When he came to a difficulty they could anticipate the manner in which he would deliver himself from it, and if he had done differently they would have

criticized him for a ninny. But he always did the right thing. He had the ingenuity of the poor and their skill in making expedients. He knew how to make one thing do the work of another; he had also the practical patience which tries one thing after another till something is found to fit the emergency. Here was a story indeed, because it was not a story indeed, but a bit of real life."

Crusoe's island is generally identified with Tobago, a small island about eighteen miles north-east of Trinidad. It is thirty-two miles long and from six to nine miles broad. It has at present a population of about 20,000 Negroes.

An excellent abridged edition of *Robinson Crusoe*, suitable for reading to pupils in Grade III, is found in the *Golden River* series (Nelson). Another good edition edited by Alfonzo Gardiner is in the *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

A capital series of companion selections to "Robinson Crusoe" is found in Lessons 8, 9, 27, 34, 38, 43, 44, and 45 of Book III of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson). They tell the story of the shipwreck of Captain Blake and his son, Percy, a boy of nine, the happenings during the six months they lived there, and their rescue by a British warship. As Captain Blake and his son found themselves in a similar position to that of Robinson Crusoe, the whole series makes very interesting reading for the pupils. See also "Tent House" on page 310 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

A LAUGHING CHORUS

In this poem the flowers are represented as just awakening from sleep, and, while they are still under the ground, calling to each other to start upwards towards the light. Each flower in turn promises to go. Even though many days are wintry and dull they keep their promise.

Excellent companion poems to this selection are "Said Tulip, That is So" by Madge Elliot on page 282 of *Nature in Verse* by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) and "Spring's Waking" by Isabel Ecclestone Mackay on page 87 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). Other companion poems are referred to in the notes on "Waiting to Grow" on page 79.

PAGE 150—**The Snowdrop.** See page 80.

The Scilla. An early-flowering bulbous plant. The word is derived from the Greek name meaning *I injure*, probably from the poisonous nature of the bulb. "Its blue stars come early, usually in March, and are wholly, delightfully, persistently blue." A colored illustration is given in *Gardens Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). See also *Our Garden Flowers* by Harriet L. Keeler (Scribner).

The Crocus. A full description of the crocus is given on page 208.

The bluebirds sing. See page 134.

Narcissus. A bulbous plant which blooms early in the spring. The flowers are white and yellow. There are many varieties of the narcissus, but perhaps the most popular is the polyanthus or paper white. Illustrations of this variety, as well as of several others, are found in the two books mentioned above. See "Why the Narcissus Grows by the Water" in *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand).

Hyacinth. A bulbous plant flowering early in the spring. The flowers are bell-shaped and of various colors: blue, red, purple, lilac, yellow, and white. See illustration in Harriet L. Keeler's *Our Garden Flowers*.

Violet. See page 80.

THE BRAHMAN, THE TIGER, AND THE SIX JUDGES

This selection is taken from *Quaint Old Stories to Read and Act* by Marion Florence Lansing (Ginn). The original story on which the dramatic version is based is one of the old folk-tales of India, which have been handed down by oral tradition from generation to generation, most of them having been told in the ancient Sanskrit tongue. Teresa Peirce Williston in the preface to *Hindu Tales* (Rand) says: "After the day's work in the fields, with no light save the moon and the stars, the men, women, and children of the little Hindu villages gather for their only recreation—listening to the tales of the village story-teller. Where did this man learn his stories? From some earlier story-teller to whom, as a child he had listened. Thus from generation to generation, wholly by word of mouth, have these stories been passed down, the unwritten literature of a simple, story-loving people." See *Indian Fairy Tales* by Joseph Jacobs (Longmans), *Old Deccan Days* by Mary Frere (Murray), and *Jataka Tales* re-told by Ellen C. Babbitt (Century Co.). In these three books many suitable stories for pupils in this grade may be found. It is worthy of note that in almost all of these old Indian stories the moral element is strongly in evidence. It is well for the teacher to insist more or less strongly on this point in class.

As this is a very old story, many versions have been published. One of the best of these in narrative form is entitled "The Brahman, the Tiger, and the Jackal" and is found on page 117 of *Stories to Tell to Children* by Sara Cone Bryant (Houghton). The story is cast in dramatic form in *Story-Hour Plays* by Frances Sankstone Mintz (Rand) under the title "How the Tiger was Caught" and in *A Dramatic Reader; Book III* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry) with a title similar to that in the text.

“The Brahman in the story is evidently one of deep sensibility, with a large faith in the world of living things. He thought the Tiger would be grateful for the help he received. When the Tiger proved the opposite, the Brahman proposed to submit the justice of his cause to any six. He must have known that the quality of gratitude is somewhat rare, but that it certainly was not unknown. So he risked finding one instance of its recognition among six chances. The element of suspense, very important in a story, is gained by having the real sense of justice appear in the final judge. Note that each of the first five judges gives his decision because of some personal experience he has had. The story illustrates well the danger of making a rule to cover all cases. It may be that ‘men are an ungrateful race,’ but there is always a chance of an exception to the rule. When the exception is found it must be taken into account, if complete justice is to be done.”

PAGE 150—The Brahman. The Brahmans are the highest caste among the Hindus of India. “Members of this caste may be, but are not obliged to be, priests. No one dares harm, and all must honor them. They often retire to some lonely place and devote themselves to meditation and self-denial. Some become religious beggars and wander about from place to place living on alms. Even in this condition, however, the Brahman is considered far better and holier than anyone in a lower caste.” Kindness to animals is one of the distinguishing teachings of their religion. **Tiger.** A very full and interesting description of the tiger is given on page 49 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). The author says: “There is no doubt about it, the tiger is a beast of whom very few have a good word to say. ‘I will kill, kill, kill,’ roars the tiger, ‘whether I am hungry or not; just because it pleases me, I will kill’ That is his song, and a cruel song it is. Just by watching a tiger in the Zoo, we can get an idea of his nature. The lion seems dignified and generous; the elephant is clumsy and kind; but cruelty looks out of the tiger’s great eyes with their golden rings—cruelty, and cunning, and stealth.” See “The Tiger” on page 33 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). A good colored plate of tigers at feeding time accompanies the description. See also “Tiger” with colored illustration in *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack).

PAGE 151—Fig tree. The fig tree here referred to is not the fig tree of commerce but the Banyan tree, which grows wild in northern India and is common throughout the whole country. “It has a woody stem, branching to a height of seventy to one hundred feet and of vast extent, with heart-shaped entire leaves terminating in acute points. Every branch from the main body throws out its own roots, at first in small tender fibres

several yards from the ground; but these continually grow thicker until they reach the surface, when they strike in, increase to large trunks, and become parent trees, shooting out new branches from the top, which again in time suspend their roots, and these, swelling into trunks, produce other branches, the growth continuing as long as the earth contributes her sustenance." The shade afforded by these immense areas may be gathered from the fact that one of these trees is known to have sheltered seven thousand men. In 1815 it was about two thousand feet in circumference and had over three thousand trunks large and small.

PAGE 152—Camel. Camels are as a rule very disagreeable animals. Ethel Talbot in *The Story Natural History* (Nelson) says: "A Pack Camel will cry and scream sometimes, and lie between his packages and refuse to move till his baggage is taken off him and lightened. 'How cruel you are to a poor orphan,' he seems to say. He'll swear, too, when the timid traveller ventures up on to his back, and snarl very likely if he thinks there's too much fidgeting going on behind in the uncomfortable saddle. After *that* if the traveller doesn't behave himself, the great beast may turn and bite his foot for him; and it is said that when a camel does bite—and he's got a huge mouth and rows of greenish teeth—he *always* takes away the piece." See page 109.

PAGE 153—Bullock. Bullocks are used as beasts of labor in India as horses are with us.

Eagle. See page 225.

PAGE 154—Alligator. The animal here meant is not the alligator but the crocodile. Alligators are found only in the western world. Alfred H. Miles in *Natural History* (Dodd) says; "These formidable and unwieldy monsters grow to an immense size, sometimes attaining to a length of twenty-five feet. Their enormous jaws and innumerable sharp teeth give them a terrible appearance, while their hard, scaly coats are invulnerable against ordinary attack. Their point of weakness is their unwieldy character, taking advantage of which the natives will dive beneath them and stab them with knives in vulnerable parts. The huntsmen aim at their eyes as being the nearest approach to their brains." A very interesting account of the crocodile is given on page 171 of Ethel Talbot's *The Story Natural History*.

PAGE 155—Jackal. The jackal is about the size of a fox, but resembles the wolf in shape. "Its color is a bright yellow, or sorrel. Its cry is a howl, mixed with barking, and a lamentation resembling that of human distress. The jackal may be considered as the vulture of the quadruped kind; the most putrid substances that once had life are greedily devoured. They watch the burying-grounds, follow armies, and keep in the rear of

caravans." They usually hunt in packs. When tamed, the jackal has all the manners of a dog. See Alfred H. Miles' *Natural History* and *The Life of Animals; The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan).

A NEST IN A POCKET

This selection teaches in a very unobtrusive way the duty of kindness to all the dumb creation. It expresses in concrete form the thought in *The Ancient Mariner* of Coleridge:

"Farewell, farewell! but this I tell
 To thee, thou Wedding Guest!
 He prayeth well, who loveth well
 Both man and bird and beast.

"He prayeth best, who loveth best
 All things both great and small;
 For the dear God who loveth us,
 He made and loveth all."

A pretty little poem by Emily Huntington Miller, entitled "Little May," expresses somewhat the same idea:

"Have you heard the waters singing,
 Little May,
 Where the willows green are bending
 O'er their way?
 Do you know how low and sweet,
 O'er the pebbles at their feet,
 Are the words the waves repeat,
 Night and day?"

"Have you heard the robins singing,
 Little one,
 When the rosy dawn is breaking,—
 When 'tis done?
 Have you heard the wooing breeze,
 In the blossomed orchard trees,
 And the drowsy hum of bees
 In the sun?"

"All the earth is full of music,
 Little May,—
 Bird, and bee, and water singing
 On its way.

Let their silver voices fall
On thy heart with happy call:
'Praise the Lord, who loveth all,'
Night and day,
Little May."

THE STORY OF ALADDIN

This selection is taken from a collection of stories known as *The Arabian Nights Entertainments*, or sometimes as *The Thousand and One Nights*. Only a part of the story of Aladdin is told in the text; the complete story should, if possible, be read in class. It may be found, well-told for this grade, in *The Story of Aladdin* in the *Golden River* series (Nelson) and on page 41 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). See *The Arabian Nights Entertainments* edited by Clifton Johnson in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan), *Stories from The Arabian Nights* edited by M. Clark (American Book Co.), and *Stories from The Arabian Nights Told to the Children* by Amy Steedman (Jack).

Other interesting stories from *The Arabian Nights* are "Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves," "Sindbad the Sailor," "The Barmecide's Feast," "The Merchant and the Genie," "The Story of the Fisherman," and "The Enchanted Horse." These stories may be found in one or other of the above-mentioned books.

The series of oriental tales entitled *The Arabian Nights Entertainments* was first translated from the Arabic by a French scholar, Antoine Galland, who between the years 1704 and 1717 published his translation in twelve volumes. Clifton Johnson says: "The charm of these stories was recognized by all who read them, and Galland's translation was soon retranslated into all the languages of Europe. From their very first appearance in English, they have been accorded a foremost place in the ranks of imaginative literature. They transport the reader into a wonderland of marvellous palaces, beautiful women, powerful magicians, and exquisite repasts, and the descriptions captivate the senses with their Eastern richness and splendor. We have now been reading them nearly two hundred years, but the passing of time does not in the least dim their lustre or dull the pleasure that is to be found in them." The collection derives its title from the fact that the stories were supposed to have been related each night for the entertainment of one of the sultans. See "Who Wrote 'The Arabian Nights'?" on page 71 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton) and "Readings from 'The Arabian Nights'" on page 11 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

THE ROCK-A-BY LADY

This poem was published in *Love Songs of Childhood* in 1894. It is a lullaby which a mother sings to her child. It tells first of the little child becoming drowsy and then of the pleasant dreams of the childish occupations and interests of the day. Then we can think of the little one, tired of play, sitting at the window and watching the moon rise, and imagining the fairies on the moonbeams. Any little child would wish to dream these dreams. He must just shut his eyes and let the Rock-a-by Lady carry him away to Hush-a-by Street.

Eugene Field has written many lullabies, the best of which are: "Norse Lullaby", "Armenian Lullaby," "Jewish Lullaby," "Heiho, My Dearie," and "Hushaby, Sweet my Own" in *With Trumpet and Drum* and "So, So, Rock-a-by So!", "The Song of Luddy-Dud," and "The Shut-Eye Train" in *Love Songs of Childhood*, both books published by Charles Scribner's Sons. See *Eugene Field Reader* by Alice L. Harris (Scribner).

Other lullabies are referred to in the notes on "Lullaby of An Infant Chief" on page 102 and also on page 46.

PAGE 168—**Poppies.** The poppy is the flower of sleep. The origin of the poppy is told by Charles M. Skinner in *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* (Lippincott) as follows: "When Proserpina was stolen by Pluto, her mother, Ceres, began a search for her that led through all Sicily, climbing Mount *Ætna* to light torches that she might keep on her journey through the night. Unable to restore her child, the gods caused poppies to spring about her feet, and, curious as to their meaning, she knelt to look at them closely. She inhaled their bitter, drowsy breath, and presently the plant bestowed upon her that rest her weary body needed." See *Myths of Greece and Rome* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.). A very full description of the poppy, including the sleep-poppy, is found on page 120 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract).

PANDORA'S BOX

The story of Pandora as given in the text is based on Nathaniel Hawthorne's version of the legend in "The Paradise of Children" in his *A Wonder-Book*. Hawthorne in this story has departed very widely from the classical myth "the form that has been hallowed by an antiquity of two or three thousand years." He defends himself, however, on the ground that no epoch can claim a copyright on these immortal fables of the ancient Greeks and that each age is privileged to deal with

them as it pleases. It is rather unfortunate that Hawthorne has so dealt with this and many other old Greek stories contained in his *A Wonder-Book* and *Tanglewood Tales*, as it means the unlearning by children in after years of much that they have gathered in childhood. Perhaps, in the present case, it is better to let the story stand as it is in the text, rather than to try and give the classical story as it has come down to us from the great writers of antiquity. See "Pandora" on page 1 of *Tanglewood Tales Told to the Children* by C. E. Smith (Jack).

According to the Greek story, man was created in form similar to the gods by Prometheus (Forethought) and Epimetheus (Afterthought). Although they had richly endowed him, yet Prometheus felt that one thing was lacking—something that would bring man nearer to the perfection of the immortal gods. In his estimation fire was the one thing necessary, and, as he knew that the gods would not willingly part with this, he determined to steal it from Olympus. He carried out his plan and presented the precious gift to man. Zeus (Jupiter) was so incensed at the action of Prometheus that he punished him cruelly, but, not content with this, he proceeded to take vengeance on man himself for his acceptance of the gift. Accordingly, he called a special council of the gods, and it was determined to create woman. "As soon as she had been artfully fashioned, each one of the gods endowed her with some special charm to make her more attractive. Their united efforts were crowned with the utmost success. Nothing was lacking except a name for the peerless creature, and the gods, after due consideration, decreed that she should be called Pandora (all the gifts). Then they bade Mercury take her to Prometheus as a gift from Heaven, but he, knowing only too well that nothing good would come to him from the gods, refused to accept her and cautioned his brother Epimetheus to follow his example. Unfortunately, Epimetheus was of a confiding disposition, and, when he beheld the maiden, he exclaimed: 'Surely so beautiful and gentle a being can bring no evil!' and accepted her most joyfully."

The first days of the union of Epimetheus and Pandora passed joyously and happily. But one day an old man came to the green where they were dancing, weary and travel-stained and staggering under the weight of a large box which he was carrying on his shoulders. The old man was really Mercury in disguise, and the box contained another gift from the gods. He refused to listen to their offers of hospitality, but asked permission to leave the box in their care until his return. No sooner had he departed than Pandora was overwhelmed with an ungovernable curiosity to see what the heavy box contained. In spite of the entreaties of Epimetheus, she untied the cords and lifted the cover. Immediately there flew out from the box "all the diseases, sorrows, vices,

and crimes that afflict poor humanity, and fastened themselves upon the astonished couple." In her fright Pandora dropped the cover of the box, and in a few minutes was even more astonished to hear a small voice pleading to be let out. She again lifted the lid, and out flew Hope. Thus, according to the ancients, evil entered into the world bringing untold misery, but Hope followed closely in its footsteps, to aid struggling humanity and point to a happier future.

An excellent account of Pandora is given in the chapter entitled "The First Man; or, Prometheus and Pandora" on page 14 of *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn). See also *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand), *Stories of Old Greece and Rome* by Emilie Kip Baker (Macmillan), *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian S. Hyde (Heath), and *Stories of the Ancient Greeks* by Charles D. Shaw (Ginn). The story is well told by Walter Taylor Field on page 213 of Book III of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). An admirable dramatic version entitled "Pandora" is found on page 3 of *A Dramatic Version of Greek Myths and Hero Tales* by Fanny Comstock (Ginn).

PAGE 171—**Pandora.** The word means "all the gifts."

Epimetheus. The son of Japetus and Clymene, one of the Oceanides. He was the brother of Prometheus and assisted him in making the first man. As a punishment the gods turned him into a monkey and imprisoned him. Pyrrha, the daughter of Epimetheus and Pandora, married Deucalion. She and her husband alone of human beings are said to have survived the Flood. See the chapter entitled "The Great Flood; or, Deucalion and Pyrrha" on page 23 of Robert Edward Francillon's *Gods and Heroes*.

THE SCARECROW

This poem is a humorous story of the farmer's attempt to drive the robins away from his cherry-tree and the successful trick they played upon him.

"The robin troubles berries only in June, July, and August, and grapes in September, while all the rest of the year he does valiant work as a gleaner of insects that cannot easily be destroyed by man." P. A. Taverner in *Birds of Eastern Canada* (Department of Mines, Ottawa) says "Though the robin is an efficient aid to the agriculturist, its fondness for fruit occasionally gets it into trouble with the small fruit-raiser. Forty-two per cent. of its food is animal, mostly insects; the remainder is composed largely of berries and other soft, small fruits, of which little more than

four per cent is cultivated fruit." See *Gray Lady and the Birds* and *Birdcraft* both by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan).

A good companion poem is "Cherries" on page 67 of Book I of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan).

PAGE 180—The Robins. The male robin is described as follows: Above olive-gray; head black; wings dark brown; tail black with white spot on two outer quills; entire breast brick-red; throat streaked with black and white; white eyelids; bill yellow, dusky at dip; feet dark; the female bird is paler throughout. Mabel Osgood Wright in *Birdcraft* (Macmillan) says: "The robin has two radical defects that detract from the pleasure of his society. He is extremely and unnecessarily noisy in his cries of alarm when anyone approaches his nest, not only in this way calling attention to its location, but setting the entire bird colony in an uproar. His other fault is untidiness and general disorder in nest-building. If robins build about a porch, or in an arbor, they invariably make a litter." The late Professor T. N. Willing points out that "the robin most commonly seen in Western Canada is similar to the Eastern bird in appearance and habits, but there is also in the Swift Current and Cypress Hills districts the Western Robin, which has no white tips to the tail-feathers and the male lacks black spots on the back." P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada* has a full description with a colored illustration of the robin. See also *Wake-Robin* by John Burroughs (Houghton) and *Birds through the Year* by Albert Field Gilmore (American Book Co.). A very interesting Indian legend of the origin of the robin is found in "Opechee, the Robin Redbreast" on page 208 of *Wigwam Stories* by Mary Catherine Judd (Ginn). See page 28.

PAGE 182—Guy. Scarecrow.

THE FLIGHT OF THE THRUSHES

This selection is taken from *Story-Hour Readings: Fourth Book* published by the American Book Company, New York. The book is made up of short stories and poems, all of an interesting nature, and valuable for reading to the pupils in this grade. The story deals with the migrations of birds, and tells how the thrushes make their way to Holland from far-distant Egypt.

PAGE 182—The Pyramids. Enormous stone erections built as tombs for the kings of ancient Egypt. The Great Pyramid of Gizeh was originally 481 feet, with the sides each 755 feet. It was built about 4000 B.C.

Thrush. See page 15.

PAGE 183—**Nile.** The great river of Egypt. Each year the torrential tropical rains cause the Nile to overflow its banks carrying with it soil washed from the fertile hills to the south. When the floods are over and the waters recede, a thin layer of mud is left to fertilize the fields of Egypt.

PAGE 184—**Storks.** The storks belong to the order of wading birds. They are found in various parts of Europe, Africa, and Asia. In the East they act as scavengers and are looked on with favor by the people. In Holland they are partly domesticated and build their nests upon the roofs of the houses. See *Natural History* by Alfred H. Miles (Dodd, Mead).

PAGE 185—**An Egyptian water-wheel.** A machine much used in Egypt for lifting water from the river either for domestic purposes or for irrigation.

PAGE 187—**Camels.** The camel is much used as a beast of burden in Egypt. Many people travel on the backs of donkeys.

HE AND SHE

In this poem the children find, through their own experience, that even those who occupy distinguished positions, or who live a life of luxury and ease, have had to win to their present state by hard work. There is no royal road to learning, or, for that matter, to anything else. The lesson of this poem should be enforced, but at the same time it should not be forgotten that "He and She" is a humorous poem.

Miss Cloud has written some excellent verses for children, perhaps the best of which are found in *Down Durley Lane*. A selection from this book entitled "The Scribe of Durley" is found on page 78 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

JOSEPH AND HIS BRETHREN

This selection is made up of selected portions taken from *Genesis*. The connecting links should be given either from the *Bible* itself, or from books like *Old Testament Stories Selected for the Children* by Edwin Chisholm (Jack) and *One Hundred Bible Stories for Children* by Robert Bird (Nelson). The first mentioned of these books contains also the stories of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses. See "Joseph" on page 18 of *Wandering Heroes* by Lillian L. Price (Silver). This book tells also the stories of Abraham, Isaac, and Moses.

PAGE 192—**Israel.** Jacob, whose name was changed to Israel after he had wrestled all night with the angel. See *Genesis xxxii*, 28.

Many colors. This coat was "a long outer robe, made of many pieces and of bright colors. It was expensive, showy, and usually worn only by persons of rank."

Hated. Note that his brethren hated Joseph on account of his father's love for him.

PAGE 193—**Rebuked.** Possibly this public rebuke was to lessen the hatred of Joseph's brethren, which Israel must have perceived.

Thy mother. His father's wife. Joseph's own mother, Rachel, was dead.

Envied. They envy him on account of the attention paid him by his father.

PAGE 194—**To eat bread.** "Behold the sons of Jacob *hating* a brother who had done them no evil, *envying* a brother because God portended him good—*murdering* a brother in purpose and preparing to break a father's heart with sorrow. Yet, in the midst of all, they sit down to eat bread."

Midianites. The Midianites were descendants of Abraham through Keturah, the Ishmaelites through Ishmael. The two tribes dwelt in the same country, and both seem to have been engaged in the caravan trade with Egypt. The company to which Joseph was sold was made up of both Midianites and Ishmaelites.

Twenty pieces of silver. About eleven dollars.

PAGE 195—**Thy son's.** Note that they do not say "our brother's."

Sackcloth. A coarse cloth worn as a sign of grief.

PAGE 196—**Pharaoh.** The title of the rulers of Egypt.

Kine. Cattle. Among the Egyptians the ox was the emblem of agriculture.

East wind. "To the east wind is ascribed in Scripture all the harm done to the crops by blasting, etc. It was more pernicious in Egypt than in other places, because it came through the vast deserts of Arabia."

Magicians. These were men who pretended to reveal secrets, interpret dreams, and foretell the future. They were generally supposed to owe their powers to the assistance of the Devil.

PAGE 197—**Is one.** The two dreams have the one meaning.

Very grievous. The Egyptians did not depend for their crops upon rain, but upon the overflowing of the River Nile. The meaning is that there would be an abundant overflowing of the Nile for seven years, to be followed by very little overflow in the succeeding seven years.

PAGE 198—**Corn.** Grain, wheat.

Benjamin. Joseph and Benjamin were the sons of Rachel.

Peradventure. Perchance, possibly.

PAGE 199—**Ye are spies.** It is just possible that Joseph, knowing his brethren so well, might have thought that they really were spies.

Nakedness. Weakness.

One man's sons. No man would be so foolish as to let his ten sons go together as spies, as, if caught, all would be put to death.

Twelve brethren. There are twelve brothers in our family.

The youngest. Benjamin.

One is not. Joseph is dead.

PAGE 200—**Proved.** Tested.

By the life of Pharaoh. As Pharaoh liveth.

Ward. Prison.

Out from me. He did not wish to betray the wrongdoing of his brothers to the Egyptians.

Troubled. Terrified.

PAGE 201—**Land of Goshen.** The most easterly part of lower Egypt, well-suited to a race of shepherds, the land being elevated above the annual overflow of the Nile.

KING WENCESLAS

This poem is the legend of good King Wenceslas. The king, looking from his window, sees a poor peasant trying to gather enough fuel to carry to his home. When the good king hears how far away the poor man lives, his sympathy is aroused, and he bids his page accompany him that he may bear to the peasant's home food and drink. The page, weary in the cold and darkness of the night, is taught that he may follow in the footsteps of his master and find the road less difficult. Thus the legend teaches that all who possess the means may find blessing for themselves, if they will but bear blessings to others.

The memory of Stephen, the first of the Christian martyrs, is celebrated on December 26th, known in England as Boxing-Day. William S. Walsh in *Curiosities of Popular Customs* (Lippincott) says: "St. Stephen's being the day after Christmas, it was formerly the custom for the poor to go round begging the broken victuals left over from the holiday feast. But in old England St. Stephen's Day is chiefly celebrated under the name of Boxing Day, because on that day it was the custom for persons in the humbler walks of life to go the rounds with a Christmas box and solicit pecuniary gifts from patrons or employers. Hence the word Christmas-box came eventually to signify gifts made in this holiday season, and retained this meaning after the boxes themselves had been abolished."

The music of "King Wenceslas" is given in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage). In the same book are also found the words and music of three other Christmas Carols:

"God Rest you Merry, Gentlemen," "The First Nowell," and "Good Christian Men, Rejoice."

PAGE 203—**Stephen.** See *Acts of the Apostles vii, 58-60.*

Saint Agnes. St. Agnes was one of the four great martyrs of the early Christian church. Her festival takes place on January 21st, as she suffered martyrdom on that date, A.D. 304.

LULLABY OF AN INFANT CHIEF

This is one of Sir Walter Scott's miscellaneous songs published in 1815. It carries us back to the days of chivalry. The singer is evidently the nurse crooning a song to the baby chieftain and in it telling him of the estate which is now his. His father was a knight and his mother the worthy companion of such a man, but both are dead. As far as the eye can see stretch the lands of which he is the owner. At the first sound of hostility his followers would rush to protect him. Now he must rest while he may, because, when he grows to manhood, his sleep will often be broken by the sound of the trumpet and drum calling him to take part in the strife.

The music of "Lullaby of an Infant Chief" is found on page 219 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Companion poems to this are numerous. Some of these are: "Good-Night" by Jane Taylor, "Little Birdie" by Lord Tennyson, and "A Lullaby" by Lawrence Alma-Tadema in Part I of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack) and "An Irish Lullaby" by Alfred Perceval Graves, "Lullaby" by W. B. Rands, and "Lullaby" by William Barnes in Part II of the same series. See pages 46 and 95.

THE LITTLE CHIMNEY SWEEP

This selection, somewhat altered and simplified from the original, is taken from Chapter I of *The Water-Babies: A Fairy Tale for a Land Baby*. The book was written by Kingsley for his youngest son "Grenville Arthur, and all other good little boys." Alfonzo Gardiner says: "The tale appeared in serial form in *Macmillan's Magazine* in 1862, and was published in book form in 1863. At this time chimneys were swept by little boys who were sent up them with a hand-brush, and, climbing upwards, swept as they went, until they reached the top. The work was hard and dangerous, and the little sweeps were often very cruelly treated. As the flues from different rooms often ran into one main

flue, the sweep frequently lost himself in the dark and crooked flues when climbing upwards, but especially when returning. By an Act of Parliament passed in 1840, it became unlawful, after 1st July, 1842, for a master-sweep to take an apprentice under 16 years old, and no one under 21 years of age was to be allowed to ascend a chimney. This law had been almost entirely evaded, but the publication of *The Water-Babies* drew such attention to the exceeding cruelty of forcing little boys to do this dangerous work, that more stringent regulations for the enforcement of the Act were made in 1864. Chimneys are now swept by a special brush invented in the early part of 19th century."

The story of *The Water-Babies* is briefly as follows: Tom, the little chimney-sweep and his master, Grimes, who ill-treated and starved him, had set out to sweep the chimneys of Harthover Place. On their way across the beautiful country they met an Irishwoman, who walked beside Tom and reproved Grimes for his wickedness, and then suddenly disappeared. Tom got lost among the many chimneys at Harthover Place and found himself in a room where a beautiful little girl lay asleep. He was so surprised at the reflection of his little soot-begrimed self, that he exclaimed aloud and wakened the little girl and her nurse. He jumped out of the window and escaped, although Sir John Harthover and several servants and Grimes ran after him. He ran through the woods and meadows and over a very steep cliff, till he came to a cottage where an old woman kept a little school. Here he became very ill with fever, and because he was very thirsty, he ran down to the river when he was left alone. Although the big people who found his little black body thought he was drowned, he really had become a water-baby with a little frill of gills around his neck.

Tom was not a good baby, but teased the water-creatures so that the water-fairies were not allowed to make him happy. One day some otters came rolling and swimming down towards the sea. When they found Tom was not good to eat, they teased him and called him an eft, and told him the salmon would soon come from the sea and eat him up. When Tom came to the sea and really met the salmon, he found them to be very kind, and they told him there were more water-babies to play with in the sea. He found some of these and helped them plant a water-garden, and was taken by them to St. Brandan's Isle, where there were thousands of water-babies.

At St. Brandan's Isle also were two fairy-sisters. One was Mrs. Be-done-by-as-you-did, with a black bonnet and shawl and green spectacles and a hooked nose and a birch rod, who gave sea-apples to good babies and hard pebbles to bad ones. She told Tom that when all the

babies were good she would be always beautiful like her sister Mrs. Do-as-you-would-be-done-by, who came on Sundays and cuddled and loved the babies. Tom wanted to be good, so a teacher was sent to him, who turned out to be Miss Ellie, the beautiful little girl from Harthover Place, who had one day fallen over a cliff at the sea-side and who had been given a pair of wings and taken away by the fairies. She taught him every day but Sunday, and Tom loved her so much that he begged to be allowed to go away with her on Sundays also. The good fairy told him he could not go, until he was willing to help some one whom he did not like. Tom was very sad, because the only one whom he felt he really should want to help was Grimes. This made him so cross that at last Miss Ellie was not allowed to teach him any more. Then he begged to be allowed to go to help Grimes.

Now Grimes had fallen into the water one night while fishing, and had been carried away and made a prisoner in a chimney-top at the Other-end-of-Nowhere. So Tom set out to find him, and, when he reached there, he found that Mrs. Be-done-by-as-you-did had come too, and she told Grimes he was treated in this way because he had treated Tom badly. Tom tried to pull the chimney down with his little hands and free his old master. This kindness and the news that his mother was dead softened the hard heart of Grimes, and when he spoke kindly to Tom, the chimney fell away and he was freed. Mrs. Be-done-by-as-you-did then became beautiful like her good sister, and Tom recognized in her the Irish-woman who had talked to him on the way to Harthover Place.

Tom was blindfolded and taken back to St. Brandan's Isle and was allowed to have Miss Ellie as his teacher and to go away with her on Sundays, because he had conquered himself and had learned to do the things he did not like.

Good school editions of *The Water-Babies* are *The Water-Babies Told to the Children* by Amy Steedman (Jack), *The Water-Babies* prepared by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), and *The Water-Babies* in the *Golden River* series (Nelson). See also *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering* by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.). A complete edition of *The Water-Babies* with 8 colored illustrations is published by T. C. and E. C. Jack, Edinburgh.

PAGE 209—**Two of the pictures.** Any picture of "Christ Blessing Little Children" and "Christ on the Cross" will illustrate this paragraph.

PAGE 214—**Magpies and jays.** Both the magpies and the jays are very noisy birds. See *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack).

A hunted fox. Hunting the fox with a pack of hounds is a favorite sport in England.

A WAKE-UP SONG

On this first day of June everything in nature calls to the two little children, Golden Head and Brownie, to waken up and come out and join them. The call sounds a joyous note, full of summer sunshine. Everything is busy, and the children must be busy too, since everywhere there is so much of life and so much to be done.

As this is a song of the coming of summer an interesting story to read to the pupils is "How Summer Came to the Earth" on page 169 of *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton). Good companion poems are found in *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver): "Little Nannie" by Lucy Larcom on page 111, "A Summer Day" on page 112, and "A Song of Summer" on page 102.

PAGE 214—Robins. See page 98.

Rowan tree. Better known, perhaps, as the mountain ash. "It is closely related to the roses, and is a cousin of the hawthorn, the apple, and the pear. It is not related in any way to the ash, but the leaves have some resemblance. It is not a large tree, but it is beloved by song-birds. In May and in June it bears creamy white flowers, followed later by clusters of rich, yellowish red berries, which hang in a bunch from the main stem." See *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).
Buttercups. See page 80.

Bobolinks. The bobolink is described as follows: "*Male*—Black head, chin, tail, wings, and underparts; buff patch on back of neck; also buff edges to some tail and wing feathers; rump and upper wing coverts white; bill brown; in autumn similar to female. *Female*—Below yellowish brown; above striped brown, except on rump, with yellow and white tips to some feathers; two dark stripes on crown." Mabel Osgood Wright says: "Of all our songsters none enters into the literature of fact and fancy more fully than the bobolink, and none so exhilarates us by his song. Sit upon the fence of an upland meadow any time from early May until the last of June, watch and listen. Up from the grass the bobolinks fly, some singing and dropping again, others rising larklike until the distant notes sound like the tinkling of an ancient clavichord. Meanwhile the grass is full of nests and brown mothers, neither of which you see, for you are wholly entranced by the song." The late Professor T. N. Willing adds: "The bobolink breeds on the prairies of Eastern Saskatchewan and a few have been recorded about the Cypress Hills, but they are not common further west than the Touchwood Hills. They arrive in the Qu'Appelle district about June 1st, and do not differ from the eastern birds." A description of the bobolink, accompanied by a colored illus-

tration, is found in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also "The Bobolink" by Charles Bendire, with a beautiful colored illustration, on page 45 of Book II of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand).

Cat-bird. The cat-bird is of even gray color with black cap and red under-tail coverts. P. A. Taverner in *Birds of Eastern Canada* says: "Its usual call-note like a cat's meow, which it utters in the brush while it curiously investigates the human intruder, has aroused a prejudice against it. It is a frequenter of thickets, and its curiosity is well developed. On some tall spray rising out of the tangle it sits in the bright sun with its tail depressed and body held low to the perch, and pours out a medley of song. Phrase follows phrase in rapid succession, and snatches of all the bird songs of the neighborhood are intermixed with occasional harsher, mechanical sounds which are given with as much gusto as the more melodious ones. The cat-bird is a most desirable neighbor." P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada* contains a colored illustration of the cat-bird. See also description by Thomas Nuttall on page 22 of Book I of C. M. Weed's *Bird Life Stories*.

A lot to do. "The poet is to spend the day gardening and wants the little ones for company."

ALL THINGS BEAUTIFUL

This poem is a tribute to the Creator of all things, with a reminder to us that, as we have eyes to see the beauties of nature, we also have lips to praise Him who made them. A recent writer says: "There is no lack of children's hymns, though there are not a great many that have at once the merit of being suited for singing in church and for reading as a little poem at home. But among the few with this double quality this hymn by the late Mrs. Alexander takes high rank by reason of its unstrained beauty and simplicity of thought and expression."

In the first edition of Book III this poem was wrongly attributed to John Keble. It was written by Cecil Frances Alexander.

Two good companion poems are "Little May" by Emily Huntington Miller on page 93 of this *Handbook* and "The Works of God" by Jane Taylor on page 99 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

A YOUNG HERO

Phoebe Carey has written a poem dealing with this old Dutch legend. The *Young and Field Literary Readers* has the following note: "This is an old Dutch legend of Haarlem. Parts of Holland, as you know, are

lower than the sea and are protected from it and from the canals by banks of earth called dikes. If one of these dikes should break or be worn away by a stream of water leaking through it, the country would be flooded and the people drowned in their homes. It was such an accident that the brave boy in the story prevented by staying all night at the dike and stopping with his arm a little stream of water trickling through a hole. If he had not done this the hole would in a few hours have been worn so large that nothing could have held the water back.

"Next morning some of the farmers found him there, tired out with his night's watching, and faint and cold. He could not stand. They carried him home, and his parents when they saw him borne along between the men thought for a moment that he was dead. But rest and food soon brought back his strength, and he lived many years and was greatly loved and honored. He is also known as the 'Boy Hero of Haarlem'."

The first few lines of Miss Carey's poem are as follows:

"The good dame looked from her cottage
At the close of the pleasant day,
And cheerily called to her little son
Outside the door at play:
'Come, Peter, come! I want you to go,
While there is light to see,
To the hut of the blind old man who lives
Across the dike from me,
And take these cakes I made for him—
They are hot and smoking yet;
You have time enough to go and come
Before the sun is set.'

"Then the good wife turned to her labor,
Humming a simple song,
And thought of her husband, working hard
At the sluices all day long;
And set the turf a-blazing,
And brought the coarse black bread,
That he might find a fire at night,
And find the table spread.

"And Peter left the brother
With whom all day he had played,
And the sister who had watched their sports
In the willow's tender shade,

And told them they'd see him back before
 They saw a star in sight,
 Though he wouldn't be afraid to go
 In the very darkest night!
 For he was a brave, bright fellow,
 With eye and conscience clear;
 He could do whatever a boy might do,
 And he had not learned to fear."

THE ARROW AND THE SONG

Longfellow, in his diary, writes: "October, 16th, 1845. Before church wrote *The Arrow and the Song*, which came into my mind as I stood with my back to the fire and glanced on to the paper with arrow speed."

A recent writer says: "What Longfellow is concerned about telling us is the power of some little song or poem like this to make friends for its writer among unknown readers. Though he may have sent it forth simply as an expression of what was momentarily felt by him, and never thought more about it, yet it finds lodgment in some responsive heart. And so we may go on to see that such possibilities of wide influence reside in all our actions. Do you think that all deeds, however aimless, have consequences, if we could but know? It would certainly seem so from the illustrations given in this poem. The principle that energy is never lost would seem to apply as well in the spiritual as in the physical world. If so, ought we to be more careful of our least actions? Yes, we cannot be sure that they will be without effect on others. It is certainly safer to go on the principle that all our actions are likely to have results, maybe consequences that are far-reaching. What a terrible thing if that had been a ribald song that went forth and lodged in some heart!"

Eric S. Robertson in *The Life of Henry Wadsworth Longfellow* in *Great Writers* series (Scott) says: "The Arrow and the Song' is short, simple, perfect. Another writer, in developing its idea, might have drawn upon a larger vocabulary; but here nothing but the simplest words are necessary. I think that no poet could find in this little song anything at which to cavil."

A BOY'S SONG

This poem is a recital of the things in nature that appeal to an active boy fond of outdoor life. The three last stanzas of the original poem are omitted in the text:

"Why the boys should drive away
 Little sweet maidens from the play,

Or love to banter and fight so well,
That's the thing I never could tell.

"But this I know, I love to play,
Through the meadow, among the hay;
Up the water and o'er the lea,
That's the way for Billy and me.

"There let us walk, there let us play,
Through the meadow among the hay,
Up the water and over the lea—
That's the way for Billy and me."

A good companion poem is "A Little Girl's Fancies" to be found on page 60 of the Third Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). See also "A Boy's Wishes" by William Allingham on page 61 of the same book.

PAGE 221—**Blackbird.** The English blackbird is, of course, meant. "The male bird is quite black all over except his bill, which is bright orange yellow. The hen is all dark brown with spotted breast and has no yellow bill. They are quite common in all parts of the country and are to be seen about gardens and shrubberies at any time of the year. The male has a rich clear voice, and he will sing for an hour or two straight on." See *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack).

Hawthorn. See page 78.

PAGE 222—**Hazel.** The hazel is described with a full-page colored illustration in *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

THE LOST CAMEL

This is a very old story. It teaches the importance of close and careful observation. An excellent companion piece to this, told in dramatic form, is "The Emperor's Test" by Augusta Stevenson to be found on page 40 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). It is somewhat lengthy, but exceedingly interesting and brings out in a different way the same idea as is contained in the selection in the text. See also "A Wise Indian" on page 70 of the Third Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). A good camel story entitled "Ahmed and his Camel" is found on page 207 of the Fourth Year of the same series.

Ethel Talbot in *The Story Natural History* (Nelson) describes the camel: "Well, first of all, he is of very much the same color as the sandy desert, and, if enemies should come along, he will look all of a piece with the landscape. Then his feet are made in such a wonderful way that

the soft cushion which lies under his two great toes spreads out when he steps, till, in much the same way that a duck uses his webbed feet, the 'Ship of the Desert' passes easily over the sandy country. His neck is long and ugly, but because of that he can see long distances; can scent out water if his master is in need; can gaze afar, too, to where the next patch of prickly, scrubby plants grows, which is the only food that the desert can afford him. Over his eyes hang heavy brows, which shelter him from the dreadful glare of the sun; and his huge teeth are exactly suitable for tackling the coarse desert food; while even his nostrils serve a useful purpose to the beast, since he can close them at will; and, should a dust-storm overtake him on his march, he can just shut them tight, close his eyes too, and, kneeling down, with his master sheltering snugly behind him, can wait until the storm is over." The account of the camel, from which this extract is taken is very interesting and could with advantage be read in its entirety to the pupils. See also "The Camel" on page 132 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). See page 92.

PAGE 222—**Dervish.** A Turkish or Persian monk, who professes extreme poverty and leads a very austere life.

PAGE 223—**Cadi.** A magistrate or judge of a village.

To see. Observe.

THE ORCHARD

The first of these poems needs no explanation. It is just a word-picture of an orchard in bloom, with a pretty fancy that the trees in blossom are like little brides.

The second poem is also a picture of the apple trees in bloom. In them the robins are building their nests, the bees are busy, and their sweetness tells of the coming of the summer.

In connection with these two selections "The Planting of the Apple Tree" by William Cullen Bryant on page 132 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod) might be read to the pupils.

ANDROCLES AND THE LION

This is a very old story. It appears in a somewhat similar form in *Æsop's Fables* and in the *Gesta Romanorum*. E. Cobham Brewer in his *Dictionary of Phrase and Fable* (Lippincott) states that the original story of Androcles was first related by Aulus Gellius, on the authority of Plistonices, who asserts that he himself was an eye-witness of the encounter.

Aulus Gellius lived during the second century after Christ. He kept a note book in which he was accustomed to jot down any story he had heard, or any object of interest he had seen during the day. This he put into shape under the title *Attic Nights*, and there the story of Androcles is to be found. In the first edition of Book III of *The Canadian Readers* the name Androcles was wrongly given as Androclus.

A very interesting description of the lion, especially in his relation to men, is found on page 15 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). Quite a different picture is presented from that in the text. Ernest Ingersoll in *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* (Macmillan) also discusses the attitude of the lion towards man. See also "The Lion" on page 13 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson).

An excellent companion selection is "Saint Gerasimus and the Lion" by Abbie Farwell Brown on page 1 of the Fifth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). See also "At Close Quarters with a Lion" by Robert Cochrane on page 183 of the Fifth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). One of the best stories of animals in their relation to men is told by Honoré Balzac in "The Soldier and the Panther" on page 267 of Book III A of *The Progressive Road to Reading* (Gage). The story is even more extraordinary than that of Androcles. See also "The Wolf-Mother of Saint Ailbe" by Abbie Farwell Brown on page 133 of *The Second Book of Stories for the Story-Teller* by Fanny E. Coe, (Houghton).

PAGE 227—**Fight with wild animals.** Among the favorite shows of the Romans were those which presented to a multitude sitting at ease in the sun, the sight of combat, wounds, and violent death, both of beasts and human beings. Condemned criminals, runaway slaves, and Christians who refused to do sacrifice to the Emperor and the Roman gods were thrown unarmed to the lions, and besides this gladiators fought with each other or with wild beasts. Women as well as men were brought out to fight on the bloody sand of the arena. The Colliseum at Rome seated about fifty thousand persons. In most cases the people were the judges. In a combat between gladiators, if the vanquished had fought bravely the people usually gave the signal to spare his life by turning down their thumbs. It was the people who, in admiration for Androcles, decided that he should be freed. See the chapter entitled "The Gladiators" on page 90 of *Within the Gates* (McDougall).

THE CHILD'S WORLD

This poem was originally published in 1871 in *Lilliput Lectures* under the title of "The World." The author in the first chapter of his book endeavors

to give to children a general idea of the world and sums up his thought in the stanzas in the text. The child looks out over the world and admires and wonders at everything—the water, the wind, the air, and all that grows upon the earth. He realizes that he is more than his surroundings, because he can love and think.

An excellent little poem by Alice C. D. Ripley may be read in connection with the text:

“O, big round world, O, wide, wide world,
How wonderful you are.
Your oceans are so very deep,
Your hills reach up so far;
Down through your valleys wide and green,
Such mighty rivers flow;
Upon your great sky-reaching hills,
Such giant forests grow.”

See also “The Child and the World” by Kate Douglas Wiggin on page 229 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) and “The World” on page 96 of Book III of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson). “The World’s Music” by Gabriel Setoun on page 11 of Part IV of *The Golden Staircase* (Jack) might be read to the pupils.

A DOG OF FLANDERS

This selection, somewhat simplified, forms the 1st Section and part of the 2nd Section of “A Dog of Flanders” in *A Dog of Flanders and Other Stories* published in 1872. “It is in her stories for children that Ouida’s wealth of imagination and power of feeling are seen at their best. The sympathy with the weak, the poor, and the oppressed, which lightens many of the pages of her novels, is there joined to a candor and simplicity of expression which makes such stories as *A Dog of Flanders* perhaps the most satisfactory writing of this brilliant and erratic story-teller.”

Another story by Ouida is “The Porcelain Stove” on page 23 of *Stories for the Ten-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack). See also *Moufflou* adapted for children (Nelson).

In the *Teachers’ Notebook for the Holton-Curry Third Reader* (Rand) many very valuable hints as to the handling of this selection in class are given. The authors suggest: “Have the lesson read several times, making the voice express great tenderness and sympathy for the homely, yellow dog, and admiration for gentle, golden-haired Nello and his dear old grandfather. Make them alive to the children and let them teach lessons of tenderness, kindness to animals, and loving consideration

for all. Numberless opportunities to teach lessons of thoughtfulness, tenderness, and consideration are in the story, and the wise teacher will use them and lead her children to admire and express these qualities."

The further story of Patrasche and Nello is as follows: The former owner of Patrasche was killed in a drunken brawl, so that the dog was left undisturbed. Although he had to work very hard, he was happy in his new life. When the old man could no longer work, the dog and the boy faithfully delivered the milk each day, and, though often hungry, were content. Nello shared all his secrets with Patrasche—his fondness for his little playmate, the wealthy miller's daughter, his longing to see the great Rubens picture in the Cathedral of St. Jacques at Antwerp, and his ambition to become a great painter.

After a time the wealthy miller forbade his daughter to play with Nello and even accused the boy of burning the outbuildings on his farm. Although the neighbors knew that this charge was unjust, they gradually neglected Nello and gave their custom to a man who delivered milk in a donkey cart. This was hard to bear, and, when the old man died, Nello and Patrasche found themselves friendless, homeless, and hungry.

Nello had taken a drawing to Antwerp, hoping to gain the prize given each year to a boy under eighteen, but the prize was awarded to another boy who had influence with the judges. On his way back to the village Patrasche found in the snow a pocketbook belonging to the miller, which contained notes for nearly the full value of his fortune. Nello returned this to the miller's wife, and as his reward asked her to keep his poor dog warm and fed. He refused to accept anything for himself.

When the miller returned home, nearly crazed over his loss, and found that his money had been returned by Nello, he regretted having treated him so badly and determined to find him the next day and care for him. But this resolve came too late. Patrasche refused to touch food, as he knew that Nello was starving, and at the first chance escaped and tracked him to the Cathedral at Antwerp. There he found his master prostrate before the picture which he had longed to see. The next morning the dog and the boy were found frozen to death and in such a close embrace that they could not be separated. They were buried by the contrite villagers side by side in one grave.

NATIONAL ANTHEM

It seems to be the general opinion that we owe both the words and the music of our National Anthem to Henry Carey, who died in 1743. The poem was written somewhere between 1736 and 1740 and was first sung on a public occasion during the Jacobite uprising of 1745.

There are three stanzas in "God Save the King" as originally written, but the second stanza is so inferior both in sentiment and melody that it is generally omitted. Prior to the reign of Queen Victoria, the first line read, "God save our Lord the king"; but on the accession of a woman to the throne the word "gracious" was substituted for "Lord." This word has been retained since that time. Many attempts have been made to add a final stanza to the Anthem, but none of these has proved very successful.

William T. Stead, writing of the National Anthem in *Hymns That Have Helped*, says: "For more than a hundred years whenever the British people have been really stirred by imminence of national danger, or by exultation over national triumphs, the most satisfying expression for their inmost aspirations has been found in the simple but vigorous verse. This is the war song of the modern Briton. For him it has superseded all others, ancient or modern. Whenever any number of Britons find themselves facing death, or whenever they have experienced any great deliverance, whenever they thrill with exultant pride, or nerve themselves to offer an unyielding front to adverse fate, they have used "God Save the King," as the natural national musical vehicle for expressing what would otherwise find no utterance. It is the melody that is always heard when our island story touches sublime heights or sounds the profoundest depths. It is one of the living links which bind into one the past, the present, and the future of the British race."

Interesting information with regard to the poem and its music may be found in *Stories of Famous Songs* by S. J. Adair Fitz-Gerald (Nimmo), in *Stories of Great National Songs* by Nicholas Smith (Young Churchman Co.), and in *A Dictionary of Hymnology* by John Julian (Murray).

Book IV

DOMINION HYMN

This poem was written at Ottawa in March, 1880, when the Duke of Argyle, then the Marquis of Lorne, was governor-general of Canada, and was published in 1884 in *Memories of Canada and Scotland: Speeches and Verses*. Only three stanzas of the original poem appear in the text. The complete poem of seven stanzas with chorus may be found in *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson). The music is given in Book III, Book IV, and the One Book Course of *The Progressive Music Series* (Gage).

Two other Canadian patriotic songs, in addition to those appearing in *The Canadian Readers*, are "My Own Canadian Home," by E. G. Nelson and "The Maple Leaf Forever," by Alexander Muir. The music of the former is given on page 182 of the One Book Course and on page 43 of Book IV of the *Progressive Music Series* (Gage), and of the latter on page 210 of Book IV of the same series. See also "This Canada of Ours" by Sir James D. Edgar on page 66 of Book IV of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). A further list is given in the notes on "Canada! Maple Land!" on page 236.

PAGE 9—**Salt sea mirrors.** Reflects the mountains in the waters of the ocean.

Wrought. Worked.

PAGE 10—**Triple crosses.** The crosses of St. George, St. Andrew, and St. Patrick. How these crosses are united in our national flag is fully explained in Chapter 22, entitled "The Union Jack", of Book V of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). A colored plate illustrates the chapter. See also "The Soldier Saint of England" on page 11, "The Fisherman Saint of Scotland" on page 29, and "The Missionary Saint of Ireland" on page 40 of *The Saints of the Union Flag and One More* (McDougall). See notes on "The Colors of the Flag" on page 182.

THE SHOEMAKER AND THE ELVES

This story is one of the *German Household Tales*, the work of Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm. These two brothers set themselves to collect the

folk-tales of Germany and to narrate them as nearly as possible in the exact words of the peasants from whom they obtained them. The collection has frequently been translated into English, the most complete edition being that of Margaret Hunt published in *Bohn's Library* (Bell). Some of the best known of the tales are "The Four Musicians," "The Sleeping Beauty," "Snow-White and Rose-Red," "Rumpelstiltskin," "Cinderella," "The Magic Fiddle," "Tom Thumb," "The Golden Bird," "Snow-drop and the Dwarfs," "The Frog Prince," and "The Wolf and the Seven Kids." An excellent selection is found in *Stories from Grimm* by Amy Steedman in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack) and in *Grimm's Fairy Tales* edited by James H. Fassett in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

The Adventures of a Brownie by Juliana Horatia Ewing (Rand) may be read as a companion story to the selection in the text. The first chapter of this book, entitled "Brownie and the Cook," is found on page 26 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton).

An excellent dramatic version of the story is found on page 43 of *Fairy Plays for Children* by Mabel R. Goodlander (Rand).

Horace E. Scudder says of Grimm's *Tales*: "The minds that devised and harbored the stories originally were child-like minds, to whom the world was a much more marvellous place than to modern educated men and women; not, it should be said, more marvellous than it is to the mind which can penetrate below the surface of things and read the wonders of actual nature; but superficially more marvellous, and children still look out on the world with somewhat the same eyes. They do not with their understandings accept these entertaining stories, but they have much the same sort of belief in them that when they are older they will take in the men and women of Shakespeare's dramas; and the exercise of their imagination in thus making real the singular objects presented to them is a healthful one, if it is kept simple and unstrained."

Side by side with the stories of the Grimms should be read those of Hans Christian Andersen, the Danish author. See page 21. Among the best known of Andersen's fairy legends and tales are: "The Wild Swans," "The Ugly Duckling," "The Fir Tree," "The Constant Tin Soldier," "The Flax," "The Daisy," "The Flying Trunk," "The Little Match Girl," "Great Claus and Little Claus," "The Tinder Box," and "The Little Mermaid." All of these stories are interesting reading for this grade as well as for Grade III. See *Stories from Hans Andersen* by Mary Macgregor in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), *Hans Andersen's Fairy Tales* in *Nelson's Classics*, and *Hans Andersen's Fairy Tales* translated by Askar Sommer with 16 colored illustrations (Jack). See also *Danish Fairy Tales and Legends* by Hans Andersen in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). Good editions are published also by J. M. Dent & Co.

and by Houghton Mifflin Company. A good sketch with portrait of Andersen, accompanied by four of his stories, is found on page 175 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

PAGE 10—**The elves.** The elves were "usually imagined as diminutive tricky beings in human form, given to capricious interference, either kindly or mischievous, in human affairs." Here their interest is kindly and beneficial. They are represented as excessively fond of cleanliness and industry in human beings, and as rewarding it bountifully.

PAGE 12—**Seen again.** This was characteristic of the elves. Compare the following story taken from *Fairy Mythology* by Thomas Keightley (Bell): "They gave great help to a poor smith, and every night they made brand new pots, pans, kettle, and plates for him. His wife used to leave some milk for them, on which they fell like wolves, and drained the vessel to the bottom and then cleaned it and went to their work. When the smith had grown rich by means of them, his wife made for each of them a pretty little red coat and cap, and left them in their way. 'Paid off! Paid off!' cried they, slipped on the new clothes and went away without working the iron that was left for them, and never returned."

A HINDU FABLE

This poem is classed among the author's *Fairy Tales, Legends, Apologues*. As originally published it bore the title "The Blind Men and the Elephant," with the sub-title "A Hindoo Fable." The following "moral," omitted in the text, was attached by the author:

"So oft in theologic wars,
The disputants, I ween,
Rail on in utter ignorance
Of what each other mean,
And prate about an elephant
Not one of them has seen."

A somewhat similar story to that in the text is told in dramatic form in "The Man's Boot" in *Quaint Old Stories to Read and Act* by Marion Florence Lansing (Ginn). A dramatic version of the story is given on page 1 of Book III of *A Dramatic Reader* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry) under the title "The Blind Men and the Elephant." A somewhat similar poem entitled "A Tragic Story" is found on page 60 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). The poem may also be compared with "The Owl Critic" by James T. Fields on page 28 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

PAGE 12—**Hindustan.** The original has "Indostan".

PAGE 13—**Began to bawl.** Jumps at once to a conclusion, without taking the trouble to investigate further.

THE POT OF GOLD

This is a very old story, found originally in Æsop. See page 7. The authorship of the selection in the text is unknown. Another version, entitled "The Treasure in the Orchard," is found on page 162 of *Lippincott's Third Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). See also "The Buried Treasure" on page 143 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

PAGE 15—**Olive orchard.** The cultivation of the olive tree, from the fruit of which the olive oil of commerce is obtained, is one of the principal industries of the European countries bordering on the Mediterranean. There are about thirty varieties of the tree, in addition to the wild olive, which is little more than a shrub. The cultivated tree rarely exceeds thirty feet in height.

Charles M. Skinner in *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* (Lippincott), says: "The olive is significant of security and peace, because it was with the olive-branch that the dove returned to the ark, and it is of record in holy writ because it figures in the parable of Jotham. Its oil has been in use for thousands of years and was the base of those perfumed ointments sold for so large a price in Rome and Athens. It anointed the heads of priests and kings. When peace was sought between warring nations, the messengers bore olive-branches. In the contest between Athena and Poseidon for the possession of the city that afterwards took her name, the deities declared that whichever of the twain bestowed upon it the gift best worth men's acceptance should command the city's worship. Poseidon came out of his element to create the horse; but Athena created the olive, and every gourmet owes a silent thanks to her as he nibbles its fruit or pours its oil over his salad." But perhaps the greatest honor that ever came to the olive was the choosing of its leaves to crown the victors at the great athletic contests among the Greeks.

Skinner's *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* contains many interesting legends relating to the olive.

SEPTEMBER

This poem is a description of early autumn, when all nature's stores are ripe and the loveliest of the flowers are blossoming.

A companion poem, entitled "In September," is found on page 196 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver). See also "Autumn" by Mrs. Hawtrey on page 86 and "September" by Mary Howitt on page 91 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson). "September" by L. M. Montgomery on page 80 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent) and "September" by Archibald Lampman may also be used for purposes of comparison.

PAGE 16—**The golden-rod.** See page 55.

Gentian's bluest fringes. The fringed gentian is described with a beautiful colored illustration in Mrs. William Starr Dana's *How to Know the Wild Flowers* (Scribner). Mrs. Dana says: "Thoreau describes its color as 'such a dark blue! surpassing that of the male bluebird's back!' My experience has been that the flowers which grow in the shade are of a clear, pure azure, 'Heaven's own blue,' as Bryant claims; while those which are found in open sunny meadows may be justly said to vie with the back of the male bluebird." The gentian derives its name from Gentius, king of Illyria, who discovered it to be useful in medicine. See *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* by Charles M. Skinner (Lippincott). There are many varieties of the gentian, the blue, the fringed, etc. See *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset).

Milkweed. The common milkweed bears dull purplish-pink flowers, clustered at the summit and at the sides of the stem. "Of course, nearly everybody knows that these plants are filled with a copious, milky fluid or sap that exudes upon the slightest provocation. In the fall the bursting seed pods expose a silvery, white mass of soft, silky substance of the finest quality. And this fluffy, flossy material is popularly gathered and utilized for filling sofa pillows." A very full and complete description of the milkweeds is found on pages 76-82 of Frederic William Stack's *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know*. The oval-leaved milkweed is described with a very pretty illustration on page 92 of *Wild Flowers of Western Canada* by William Copeland McCalla (Musson). See also illustration on page 129 of the same book.

Sedges. There are several hundred species of this reed-like plant. It grows in marshy meadows and damp spots.

Asters. There are about one hundred and twenty different species of

aster in Canada and the United States. All but about a dozen of these bear purple or blue ray-flowers. Probably the flower referred to in the poem is the New England aster. Mrs. William Starr Dana says: "Probably no member of the group is more striking than the New England aster, whose stout hairy stem (sometimes eight feet high), numerous lance-shaped leaves, and large violet-purple or sometimes pinkish flower-heads, are conspicuous in the swamps of late summer." An exhaustive and interesting description of the various varieties of wild asters is given on pages 375-384 of Frederic William Stack's *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know*. The white prairie aster is fully described with a beautiful illustration on page 124 of William Copeland McCalla's *Wild Flowers of Western Canada*.

The golden-rod and the aster are usually found together. The legend, related by Ellye Howell Glover, is as follows: "A long time ago two sisters, who were tenderly devoted to one another, started out on a tramp to find the 'little old woman under the hill,' who granted to every one their greatest desire. One was exceptionally fair, with long golden hair, and the other child was noted for her wonderful blue eyes, and they both wished the same things and dreamed the same dreams. In the warm September sunshine they loitered by the way, chasing butterflies and bees, listening to the birds, who sang in subdued tones and preened their sombre plumage, which they had exchanged for the brilliant hues they wore on their way north in the glad springtime. Now they were on their homeward flight to the southland, having raised their families and seen them disperse to homes of their own. The approach of winter touched the hearts of the children, and they resolved to hurry on to the 'little old woman' before the twilight deepened into night. They found her looking over her garden wall at the poor dying flowers that the cold winds were beginning to put to sleep. When close enough to talk the elder sister said: 'Dear Old Woman, please grant us our heart's desire.' 'And what may that be?' nodded the old lady. 'Please, we want to make everybody happy, only we must always be side by side together,' said the small sister. The old lady thought a few moments, and then solemnly raising her hands, as if in benediction, she called them to her, and, resting her fingers lovingly on the fair-haired child, murmured: 'I christen thee Golden-rod'; and, with a long, sweet look at the blue-eyed sister, she said, 'and you are Aster,' which we know means 'a star.' The two little children have never been seen since, only we know they are together, for where the tall golden-rod grows we find the aster, sometimes deep blue, and sometimes almost lavender, and sometimes white, but always abundant."

In the brook. The asters are reflected in the water.

Best of cheer. The fruits of harvest and orchard.

THE GOLDEN WINDOWS

This selection is taken from *The Pig Brother and Other Fables* by Laura E. Richards, published by Little, Brown, and Co., Boston, in 1906. The book is made up of short fables, many of them forming excellent material either for class reading, or for telling to children. *Five Minute Stories* and *More Five Minute Stories* by the same author also provide capital material for class use. See page 113.

PAGE 18—Alder. C. E. Smith says: "The alder is usually to be found growing by the side of a slow-running stream, over which its slender branches bend gracefully, while its spreading roots cling to the boggy soil at the water's edge. For the alder does not thrive in dry ground; it is a water-loving tree, and its many tiny roots attract moisture, and suck it up greedily, so that the ground where the alder grows is often a marshy swamp. Sometimes you will find an alder which has grown into a lofty tree, with a rough brown-black bark, and with many large branches; but it is much more frequently found as a low-growing and rather gloomy bush, about the same size as the hazel." An interesting chapter on the alder, with colored illustration, is found in *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

SONG OF THE GOLDEN SEA

This poem was published in 1907 in *The Cornflower and Other Poems*. Mrs. Blewett says: "At noon of an August day, some miles out from Portage la Prairie, we found ourselves in what our western guide declared was the largest field in the world. The great spaces of ripened grain created a profound impression. We seemed to be looking on a sea of gold, vast, illimitable—a sea that rippled in the wind and sang a psalm of glory all its own. Our train was still in the heart of the wheat country when, at sunset, I wrote the poem." The picture is one of golden grain and blue sky, and the thought comes that this western land is the source from which the old land shall draw its sustenance. An excellent companion poem is "Harvest Song" by Richard Dehmel on page 222 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod). See also "Thanksgiving Hymn" on page 53 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

A quotation from Arthur Stringer may serve to point the moral of this selection: "We are farmers, tilling the soil and growing wheat. We're making a great new country out of what was once a wilderness. To me, that seems almost enough. We're laboring to feed the world, since the

world must have bread, and there's something satisfying and uplifting in the mere thought that we can answer to God, in the end, for our lives, no matter how raw and rude they may have been."

PAGE 21—Turquoise. The precious stone known as the turquoise is of a deep blue color.

Garner-house. The granary from which is supplied the needs of the old world across the seas.

DAMON AND PYTHIAS

The incident as related in the text reverses the usual story. As told by Valerius Maximus, it was Pythias who was condemned to death and Damon who offered to take his place. The point, however, is of little importance. The lesson of an unselfish friendship, faithful even unto death, is still the same. Other great friendships, famous in literature, may be used by way of comparison; for example; David and Jonathan, Orestes and Pylades. The story of Damon and Pythias is told with considerable detail in *A Book of Golden Deeds* by Charlotte M. Yonge (Nelson) and in *Wonder Tales from the Greek and Roman Myths* by Gladys Davidson (Blackie). A capital selection to read with "Damon and Pythias" is "The Schoolmaster's Story" by Bjørnstjerne Bjørnson to be found on page 100 of the Sixth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

In the first edition of Book IV this selection was wrongly ascribed to Charlotte M. Yonge. The author is unknown.

PAGE 21—Syracuse. A powerful Greek city of Sicily, founded about 732 B.C. It had a magnificent harbor and was very strongly fortified. At one time the city maintained an army of one hundred thousand foot and ten thousand horse, in addition to a navy of four hundred ships.

So hard a ruler. Dionysius, called the Tyrant, who had usurped the supreme power in Syracuse and maintained his position by extreme cruelty. He died 368 B.C., after a reign of thirty-eight years.

Damon. Damon was a respected philosopher of Syracuse. Nothing further is known of him.

PAGE 22—Pythias. The proper spelling of this name is Phintias, but usage has sanctioned the form in the text.

HARVEST TIME

This poem first appeared in *Canadian Born* published in 1903. Summer is here figured as a young girl lying asleep amid the stillness

of the prairie. The warm south wind by his caresses awakens her—harvest time has begun.

PAGE 23—**Wild-rose briars.** The wild-rose is one of the commonest of the prairie flowers. See "Wild Roses" on page 45 of *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset).

Goldenrod. See page 55.

THE APE AND THE FIREFLY

This selection is taken from *Animal Fables* by A. O. Stafford, published by The American Book Company, New York. The book contains a large number of equally interesting stories, all of them well-worth reading to the class. The firefly is described on page 134.

An interesting animal fable is told in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook, published by Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston. It is entitled "Why the Cat always Falls upon her Feet."

"Some magicians are cruel, but others are gentle and good to all the creatures of the earth. One of these good magicians was one day traveling in a great forest. The sun rose high in the heavens, and he lay down at the foot of a tree. Soft, green moss grew all about him. The sun shining through the leaves made flecks of light and shadow upon the earth. He heard the song of the bird and the lazy buzz of the wasp. The wind rustled the leafy boughs above him. All the music of the forest lulled him to slumber, and he closed his eyes.

"As the magician lay asleep, a great serpent came softly from the thicket. It lifted high its shining crest and saw the man at the foot of the tree. 'I will kill him!' it hissed. 'I could have eaten that cat last night if he had not called, "Watch, little cat, watch!" I will kill him, I will kill him!'

"Closer and closer the deadly serpent moved. The magician stirred in his sleep. 'Watch, little cat, watch!' he said softly. The serpent drew back, but the magician's eyes were shut, and it went closer. It hissed its war-cry. The sleeping magician did not move. The serpent was upon him—no, far up in the high branches of the tree above his head the little cat lay hidden. She had seen the serpent when it came from the thicket. She watched it as it went closer and closer to the sleeping man, and she heard it hiss its war-cry. The little cat's body quivered with anger and with fear, for she was so little and the serpent was so big. 'The magician was very good to me,' she thought, and she leaped down upon the serpent.

"Oh, how angry the serpent was! It hissed, and the flames shot from its eyes. It struck wildly at the brave little cat, but now the cat had no fear. Again and again she leaped upon the serpent's head, and at last the creature lay dead beside the sleeping man whom it had wished to kill.

"When the magician awoke, the little cat lay on the earth, and not far away was the dead serpent. He knew at once what the cat had done, and he said, 'Little cat, what can I do to show you honor for your brave fight? Your eyes are quick to see, and your ears are quick to hear. You can run very swiftly. I know what I can do for you. You shall be known over the earth as the friend of man, and you shall always have a home in the home of man. And one thing more, little cat: you leaped from the high tree to kill the deadly serpent, and now as long as you live, you shall leap where you will, and you shall always fall upon your feet.'"

Here is another interesting animal story in dramatic form, entitled *The Camel and the Pig*.

Camel: Nothing like being tall, Friend Pig! Just see how tall I am. (*Camel stretches himself and points upward.*)

Pig: Nothing like being short, Friend Camel! See how short I am.

Camel: Oh, you think so, do you? Well, If I fail to prove that there is nothing like being tall I will give up my hump. (*Touches his back.*)

Pig: Ugh! Ugh! You will, will you? Well, if I fail to prove that there is nothing like being short, I will give up my snout. (*Touches his nose.*)

Camel: Agreed! Agreed!

Pig: Just so! Just so, Friend Camel!

(*Camel and Pig walk slowly over to the garden inclosed by the low wall.*)

Camel: Ah! Here is a delicious breakfast for me. (*Reaches over and eats.*) These leaves are so juicy and fresh. Nothing could be sweeter or better. Now, would you be tall or short, Friend Pig?

(*Camel and Pig walk over to the other garden. Pig runs to the low gate and into the garden.*)

Pig: Ah! Here are fresh cabbage and crisp turnips for my breakfast. (*Pretends to eat them.*) They are most delicious. (*Runs out, laughing, and says*): Now, would you be tall, Friend Camel, or would you be short?

Camel: Well, it's all right to be tall when you want leaves.

Pig: Yes, and it's all right to be short when you want to go through a low gate.

Camel: Yes, yes,—sometimes it is better to be short.

Pig: And sometimes it is better to be tall; I see that.

Camel: Well, Pig, you keep your snout and I will keep my hump.

Pig: That's a bargain, and a fair one, too.

Camel and Pig:

Tall is good, where tall would do;
Of short, again, 'tis also true!

 THE FAIRIES OF THE CALDON-LOW

According to the common belief fairies were of two kinds, those who spent their time in tormenting and injuring human beings and those who took a delight in doing good to mankind whenever they had a chance. The fairies in the poem are of the latter class. The story is one of almost numberless similar stories current among the peasantry in various parts of England. One of these is told in verse in "Mabel on Midsummer Day" on page 445 of *Old Fashioned Stories and Poems in The Children's Hour Series* (Houghton).

PAGE 27—**Caldon-Low.** Caldon Hill.

Midsummer Night. The festival of St. John the Baptist is celebrated on June 24th, the anniversary of the day of his birth. The evening preceding the festival is known as St. John's Eve, or Midsummer Night. The occurrence so near to the Saint's day of the summer solstice, during which the days reach their maximum of length, accounts for the latter name. On St. John's eve the fauns were supposed to exercise their magic power for the benefit of men and women who deserved their bounty. Midsummer Night has long been associated with supernatural appearances. Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* is based on this old superstition.

Fairies danced. Dancing in a ring to the accompaniment of music was supposed to be a favorite amusement of the fairies.

PAGE 29—**Dank.** Damp.

Corn. Wheat.

Linseed. The seed of the flax, from which the oil is extracted.

Croft. A small piece of enclosed land beside a dwelling-house, used for pasture or tillage.

All full of flowers. The flax has a beautiful blue flower. See "A Field of Flax" on page 169 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod). The story of how flax was given to man is told in "How the Queen of the Sky Gave Gifts to Men" by E. M. Wilmot-Buxton on page 71 of the Fourth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill).

PAGE 30—**A brownie.** W. J. Rolfe says: "A brownie is described in Keightley's *Fairy Mythology* as 'a personage of small stature, wrinkled visage, covered with short curly brown hair, and wearing a brown mantle or hood. His residence is the hollow of an old tree, a ruined castle, or

the abode of man. He is attached to particular families, with whom he has been known to reside even for centuries, threshing the corn, cleaning the house,' etc. He likes a nice bowl of cream or a piece of fresh honey-comb left for him in a corner, but is strangely offended by a gift of clothing. The brownie is particularly associated with Scotland, though he figures in some English stories also." See page 117.

Tow. The coarse and broken parts of the flax or hemp.

PAGE 32—Prithee. I pray thee.

JACKANAPES

This selection is abridged from Parts I, II, and III of *Jackanapes* by Juliana Horatia Ewing, published in 1873. See pages 56-70 of Book IV of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances E. Chutter (Atkinson).

The story of *Jackanapes* is briefly as follows: The Black Captain had married Miss Jessamine's sister, Miss Jane. His father, the general, did not approve of his son's choice, and refused to recognize the marriage. The captain was killed at Waterloo. A few days after the news reached "The Green" Jackanapes was born, but his mother died of grief. The boy was brought up by Miss Jessamine and lived the life of an ordinary, healthy English boy with his companions of the village. He was a fine, manly little fellow, but constantly in mischief. At last the general relented and came to pay a visit to his grandson. He was at once taken with the boy and promised him that, like his father, he should be a soldier. In due time Jackanapes entered the army, receiving his commission from the Duke of Wellington, under whom his father had served at Waterloo. He became just as popular with his fellow officers and the men of his regiment as he had been with the boys in the village. Of course he was a cavalry-man, and the horse he rode was named Lollo, in memory of his first pony. He lost his life in saving that of Tony Johnson, one of his boyhood companions, who was serving in the same regiment.

There is no better story to read to a class of children than *Jackanapes*. It is a story of "Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends." Mrs. Ewing closes her story thus: "Very sweet are the uses of prosperity, the harvests of peace and progress, the fostering sunshine of health and happiness, and length of days in the land. But there be things—oh, sons of what has deserved the name of Great Britain, forget it not! 'the good of' which and 'the use of' which are beyond all calculation of worldly goods and earthly uses: things such as Love, and Honor, and the Soul of Man, which cannot be bought with a price, and which do not die with death. And they who fain would live happily ever after should not leave these things out of the lessons of their lives."

PAGE 32—Jackanapes. The word means literally, "Jack the Ape," and is usually a contemptuous name for a conceited young fellow. When the boy was born, his aunt anxiously asked the doctor if he would live. The doctor replied: "Live? Bless my soul, ma'am! Look at him! The young Jackanapes!" The name so applied stuck to the boy through life. It was merely a playful term of affection. Jackanapes' real name was Theodore.

Caravans. Covered wagons belonging to the gypsies. An illustration of a caravan is given on page 133 of Book III of *The Canadian Readers*.

Whirligigs. A toy that is spun in the hand by means of a string. In England a whirligig means also a merry-go-round.

PAGE 33—Common. A tract of land formerly attached to many English villages, which was the common property of all the inhabitants. For plan see page 69 of Book V of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

Gypsies. A dark-eyed, tawny, long-haired race, who are supposed to be descended from some obscure Hindu tribe. They made their appearance in Europe during the fourteenth century. They have no fixed place of abode, but wander from place to place, living in caravans and tents. They are tinkers, horse-dealers and basket-makers by trade. Many of the women make their living by fortune-telling. They are quite numerous on this continent, but now they wander about in motor-driven vehicles. They have a language of their own called "Romany." *Lavengro* by George Borrow in *Nelson's Classics* and *Romany Rye* by the same author in *Everyman's Library* (Dent) deal with the gypsies.

PAGE 38—The whisper. The words which would control Lollo.

A secret. Shewing the manly, honorable nature of the boy.

Waterloo. The famous battle in which Wellington defeated Napoleon. Jackanapes' father, the Black Captain, was killed in the battle. "He was called the Black Captain, partly because of himself and partly because of his wonderful black mare. Strange stories were afloat of how far and how fast that mare could go when her master's hand was on her mane and he whispered in her ear." An excellent description of the great battle is given in the chapter entitled "Waterloo" on page 217 of Book VI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

PAGE 39—Horsemen of the East. Probably an Arab. The Arabs are renowned for their skill in handling and riding horses.

HIAWATHA'S HUNTING

This selection is a part of Section III, entitled "Hiawatha's Childhood," of *The Song of Hiawatha*, published in 1855. See pages 23 and 56.

Longfellow had been from early life interested in the Indians and their legends. Shortly after 1850 he determined to write an Indian poem and with this object in view began the search for material. He found the material ready to hand in Henry Rowe Schoolcraft's *Algonquin Researches*, published in 1839. The principal hero of this book is Manabozho, the culture hero and the ruler of the gods and animals among the Algonquin Indians. The name of the hero, however, did not suit the poet, who adopted instead the name Hiawatha. The real Hiawatha was an Onondaga chief of the 15th century, who was chiefly responsible for the union of the Five Nations, and around whose deeds and exploits many traditions had gathered. Thus the poem while dealing with the legends of the Algonquin Indians has for its title the name of a chief of their hereditary enemies, the Iroquois. Elizabeth J. Fleming says: "In forming his literary hero, Longfellow selects only such legends as are suited to the character he intends to portray, which is indeed the idealized Indian. But through all he makes him the embodiment of no virtue, the hero of no adventure, for which he has not the authority of Indian tradition. He portrays him as the benefactor, like the real Hiawatha, the maker of wise laws, builder of roads, clearer of streams, the destroyer of evil, a prophet." See "Hiawatha the Wise" on page 244 of *Wigwam Stories* by Mary Catherine Judd (Ginn).

A good school edition of *The Song of Hiawatha* edited by Elizabeth J. Fleming is found in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). See also *The Story of Hiawatha* by C. E. Whitaker in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan) and *The Hiawatha Alphabet* by Florence Holbrook (Rand). A very excellent little book to read to children in this connection is *The Story of Hiawatha* retold in prose by Florence Shaw (Bell); the complete story of Hiawatha, based on Longfellow's poem, is there told in an attractive way.

PAGE 40—Iagoo. Iagoo is celebrated in Indian legends as a "marvellous story-teller, somewhat akin to Baron Munchausen". See "Iagoo, the Great Story-Teller" on page 81 of Mary Catherine Judd's *Wigwam Stories*.

Nokomis. Hiawatha's grandmother, who brought him up.

Arrows. The Indian arrows were from two to two and one half feet long, feathered, and tipped with iron, flint, or bone.

PAGE 43—Made a cloak. The drying or curing of the skins among the Indians is done chiefly by the women. An Indian may bring in a deer in the morning, and before bedtime his wife will have several pairs of moccasins made from the skin.

THE THREE MINSTRELS

This selection is taken from *Mother Stories* published in 1900. In the original the story is prefaced by the motto: "The child must listen well if he would hear." "The story teaches us the lesson of the restfulness and charm of nature, as contrasted with the din of battle and the splendor of courts. The man who found his dream of music in the sound of the wind, the rippling of the brook, and the song of the bird, was the man who awoke sweet memories and touched the heart. There is, in the story, the thought that all nature is full of music to one whose spirit is attuned to harmony."

An excellent introduction to this selection would be the reading to the class of "The Minstrel" on page 7 of Book II of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). The story of the minstrels is there told, with an account of the important part they played in mediaeval life. See page 322.

CHILDREN OF THE EMPIRE

This poem was evidently inspired by the Imperial spirit which binds together in such a firm union the widely scattered parts of our Empire. The sacrifices of the pioneers and the privations of war have all been endured in order to strengthen this feeling of unity and security under the flag. Therefore, the children of the Empire are called upon to uphold what has been so dearly bought, to love that part of the Empire in which they were born, but chiefly to love the Empire as a whole.

A good companion poem is "Empire First" by John T. L'Espérance on page 70 of *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson).

A WONDERFUL JOURNEY

This selection is taken from *Thirty Indian Legends* by Margaret Bemister (Macmillan). Other stories of Wesakchak—"The Wonderful Ball," "The Gray Goose," "Little Brother Rabbit," and "The Bald-headed Eagles"—are found in the same volume. In addition the book contains many other very interesting legends of the Indians, all relating to our own Canadian tribes. Glooskap is another name for Wesakchak. His adventures are related in *The Far East and the Far West Red Children* by Mara L. Pratt (Silver). The stories are very similar to those told in *Thirty Indian Legends*. Menabozho is another name for the great Indian god. Six interesting stories about him are told in *Wigwam Stories*

by Mary Catherine Judd (Ginn). One of the best of these is "How the Kingfisher got his Ring and his Ruffle" on page 235. Other companion stories are found in *Indian Legends* by Margaret Bemister in *Everychild's Series* (Macmillan), *Indian Legends* by Marion Foster Washburne (Rand), *Indian Folk Tales* by Mary F. Nixon-Roulet (American Book Co.), and *Old Indian Legends* by Zitkala-Ša (Ginn).

The hero of this story is known by many names among the Algonquin tribes, varying from Wisakedjak to Nanabazho. The *Handbook to the Indians of Canada* (Geographic Board, Ottawa) says: "He is reputed to possess not only the power to live, but also the power of renewing his own life; and of creating life in others. He is this life struggling with the many forms of want, misfortune and death that come to the bodies and beings of nature." Wesakchak, the name given to him in the text, is the great creator of the world and all that in it lives. The Indians do not see the contradiction between the being who has the power to mark permanently the prairie-chicken and the same being stuck in a stump from which he cannot release himself without the assistance of two squaws. Particular attention should be paid to the reasons advanced by the Indians for the markings of the prairie-chicken and the long necks of the swans. They have a story to explain almost everything in nature that came within their observation.

PAGE 49—**Bluebird.** See page 134.

PAGE 50—**Blackbirds.** The red-winged blackbird is described by John James Audubon with a colored illustration on page 48 of Book I of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand). See page 109.

Thrushes. See pages 15 and 223.

Canaries. The bird commonly known as the wild canary is the American goldfinch. The male bird has a yellow body, black wings, tail, and cap. It is found throughout Eastern Canada and as far west as Manitoba. See description and colored illustration in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner, (Department of Mines, Ottawa). A full description by Alexander Wilson, with a beautiful colored illustration, is also given on page 11 of Book II of Clarence Moores Weed's *Bird Life Stories*.

Prairie-chicken. The prairie sharp-tailed grouse is described fully in *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Musson). The bird is sufficiently described in the text. Many other interesting stories as to how the various animals and birds got their distinctive markings are told in Mary Catherine Judds' *Wigwam Stories*. See also *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton).

PAGE 52—**Swans.** Both white and black swans have their building

grounds near to and within the Arctic Circle. See Nuttall's *Birds of Canada and the United States*. See page 21.

AN INDIAN SUMMER CAROL

This poem is a beautiful description of the scenes and the delights of the late autumn in Canada. Summer seems to have returned again in all its glory, but mellowed and even more lovely. "A Day in Autumn" would be a more appropriate title for the poem; what is described here is not really Indian Summer. Susannah Moodie's poem entitled "Indian Summer" on page 369 of Book IV of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton) gives a much better idea of this lovely season of the year. The first stanza is as follows:

"By the purple haze that lies
 On the distant rocky height,
 By the deep blue of the skies,
 By the smoky amber light,
 Through the forest arches streaming,
 Where Nature on her throne sits dreaming,
 And the sun is scarcely gleaming,
 Through the cloudless snowy white,—
 Winter's lovely herald greets us,
 Ere the ice-crowned giant meets us."

See also "Indian Summer" by William Wilfred Campbell on page 48 of *Country Life Reader* by O. J. Stevenson (McLeod).

PAGE 53.—**Indian summer.** William S. Walsh in *Curiosities of Popular Customs* (Lippincott) says: "This season is generally in November, though the period varies within a month. It is characterized by fair but not brilliant weather; the air is smoky and hazy, perfectly still and moist, and the sun shines dimly, but softly and sweetly, through an atmosphere that some call copper-colored and others golden. The name of Indian summer is differently explained. The Rev. James Freeman derives it from the fact that the Indians are particularly fond of it, regarding it as a special gift of their favorite god, the god of the south-west, who sends the soft south-west winds, and to whom they go after death. Daniel Webster said that the early settlers gave that name to the season because they ascribed its peculiar features, the heat and the haze, to the burning of the prairies by the Indians at that time. Mr. Kercheval, however, gives a more plausible explanation: 'It sometimes happened that, after the apparent onset of winter, the weather became warm, the smoky time commenced and lasted for a considerable number of days. This was the Indian summer, because it afforded the Indians—who during

the severe winter never made any incursions into the settlements—another opportunity of visiting them with their destructive warfare’.”

Beeches. Julia Ellen Rogers in *Trees That Every Child Should Know* (Grosset) says: “The bark of the beech tree played an interesting part in the early history of the human race. Long before the European tribes had written languages, they sent messages from one to another. These messages between tribes, friendly or warlike, were written in hieroglyphics, cut into the smooth surface of beech bark, and messengers carried them back and forth. Sheets of beech bark, as well as birch, made the walls and roofs of the huts in which people lived. Their boots and various household utensils were made out of beech wood, which is so close-grained that vessels made of it hold water without leaking.” See also *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

Reaches. Continuous stretch.

Sumach. There are about one hundred and thirty varieties of the sumach. The common sumach of Canada is little more than a shrub and bears clusters of dark red berries.

Elysian. According to the Greek poets, the Elysian Fields, or Islands of the Blessed, were the abodes of the souls of the good and of the heroes after death. Homer describes the Elysian Fields as a plain at the end of the earth, where life is easiest to man. “No snow is there, nor yet great storm nor any rain.” Elysian here means “heavenly.”

PAGE 54—**Golden-rod.** See page 55.

The rover. The bee, flitting from flower to flower.

The birch. There are many varieties of the birch—white, canoe, black, red, and cherry. The trees are easily recognized by their silky, tattered bark. See *Forests and Trees* by B. J. Hales (Macmillan), Julia Ellen Rogers’ *Trees that Every Child Should Know*, and Janet Harvey Kelman’s *Trees Shown to the Children*.

Dryad. Among the Greeks the Dryads were nymphs who presided over the woods. See page 65. A Dryad was not immortal, her life terminating with that of the tree in which she lived, or whose special guardian she was.

The loon. The loon, or great northern diver, was formerly common throughout Canada. Of late years, however, owing to the encroachment of settlements, it is growing scarcer. P. A. Taverner says: “Most frequenters of our waterways and lakes are familiar with the long loud laugh of the loon. The loon has another call, beginning low, rising high, and then dropping suddenly. It is often noisy at night, or just before a storm, and birds frequently call to and answer one another across the water. The loon is from twenty-eight to thirty-three inches in length, with black back spotted with white, head and neck black, and throat

with two bands of white stripes. *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa) has a colored illustration of the loon on page 223. See also *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Musson). See page 351. **The robin.** See page 98.

THE BEAVERS

This selection is a part of the chapter entitled "The Best Builders" in *Wilderness Babies*. The portion here given is somewhat changed from the original. *Wilderness Babies* should be in every school library. It tells the stories of eleven of the baby mammals of the wilderness—how they grow and learn day by day to take care of themselves. The mammals are the opossum, manatee, whale, elk, beaver, rabbit, squirrel, bear, fox, wolf, and mole. All the stories are told in a very interesting way and are not at all exaggerated. See also "The Beaver's Story" in *Stories of Birds and Beasts* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan), "The Biography of a Beaver" by William Davenport Hulbert on page 170 of Book V of *Farm Life Readers* (Silver), and *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan). This last book contains an excellent description of a beaver-dam, with plan.

A very graphic description of beavers is given on page 161 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). The author says: "The beavers measure about three feet in length; they are covered with short, thick fur; they are gnawing animals too, with sharp teeth like the squirrels, and when they feed on land they can be seen sitting up on their tails and eating with the help of their fore-paws, just as we have all seen squirrels do. Both animals, too, have the habit of laying up stores of food against a time of need. But in other ways they are very different. No bushy tail has the beaver, but a flat, scaly one, which comes into use as a rudder when he swims; his hind feet are webbed, because most of his life is spent in the water." See also "The Beaver" on page 98 of *At the Zoo* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). The story of "Full Moon and the Beavers" from *Along Four-Footed Trails* by Ruth A. Cook (Pott) might also be read to the pupils. It is reproduced on page 112 of the Seventh Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

PAGE 56—**Wildcat.** The lynx is probably meant. "The animal has short legs, and is generally about the size of a fox, attaining often to three feet in length. It preys upon small quadrupeds and birds, in the pursuit of which it is an expert climber." See Ernest Ingersoll's *The Life of Animals: The Mammals*.

THE SILENT SEARCHERS

This poem describes the fire-flies, which are seen only at night, and shine like sparks of light as they flit about in the darkness. One may fancy that they are little spirits from fairy-land, so weird do they appear. In fact, there is an ancient legend to this effect, as the poem relates.

A very interesting description of the fire-flies or glow worms, with an illustration, is found under the title "Glow-Worm" on page 106 of *British Insects Shown to the Children* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack). The author says: "It has been found that minute cells containing fatty phosphorescent matter are present on the beetle's body, and that near these cells are air-tubes, placed there that they may supply a liberal store of oxygen to make the light burn brightly." See also *Curious Flyers, Creepers, and Swimmers* by James Johonnot (American Book Co.).

An interesting story of the fire-flies is told in the chapter entitled "The Unfortunate Fire-Flies" in *Among the Night People* by Clara Dillingham Pierson (Dutton). See also the poem "Twinkling Bugs" on page 5 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book Of Verse* (Macmillan).

THE BEWILDERED BLUEBIRDS

John Burroughs in the chapter on "The Bluebird" in *Wake-Robin* (Houghton) says: "When Nature made the bluebird she wished to propitiate both the sky and the earth, so she gave him the color of the one on his back and the hue of the other on his breast, and ordained that his appearance in spring should denote that the strife and war between these two elements was at an end. He is the peace-harbinger; in him the celestial and the terrestrial strike hands and are fast friends. He means the furrow and he means the warmth; he means all the soft, wooing influences of the spring on the one hand and the retreating footsteps of winter on the other." The male bluebird, common in Eastern Canada, is azure blue above; wings blue with some dark edgings; breast brick-red; lower parts white; bill and feet black; while the female is dull blue above, with the breast paler and more rusty. The bluebirds arrive usually in March and begin to take their departure in October. A good description of the bluebird, with colored illustration, is given in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). The late Professor T. N. Willing points out that "the bluebird found in Western Canada is not the same as the Ontario species, which is, however, recorded as appearing in parts of Manitoba. It is known as the mountain bluebird, the male of which is brighter blue above and pale blue below, shading to whitish on the belly, without the rusty throat and breast of the eastern

bird. It is also slightly larger and there is a difference in the plumage of the females. Bluebirds in Western Canada are seldom seen on the open prairie, but are found along the streams and in such localities have been known to make their nests in holes in the clay banks." See "The Bluebird" by Alexander Wilson on page 9 of Book I of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand). An excellent colored illustration accompanies the text. See also *Bird-Life* by Frank M. Chapman (Appleton) and *Birdcraft* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan).

PAGE 61—**Woodpecker chambers.** John Burroughs says: "The bluebird usually builds its nest in a hole in a stump or stub, or in a cavity excavated by a woodpecker, when such can be had." There are many varieties of woodpeckers in Canada—hairy, downy, black-backed, ladder-backed, yellow-bellied sapsucker, pileated, red-headed, red-bellied, and the golden-winged (flicker). All of these are fully described with colored illustrations in P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. The downy woodpecker is described by Alexander Wilson on page 61 and the hairy woodpecker by Charles Bendire on page 64 of Book I of Clarence Moores Weed's *Bird Life Stories*. The red-headed woodpecker is described by Alexander Wilson on page 81 of Book II of the same series. All three chapters are beautifully illustrated. See also *Modern Nature Study* by Sidney Silcox and O. J. Stevenson (Macmillan), Frank M. Chapman's *Bird-Life*, and Mabel Osgood Wright's *Birdcraft*.

THE NUT-CRACKERS AND THE SUGAR-TONGS

This selection is taken from *The Pelican Chorus* by Edward Lear, published by Frederick Warne and Co., New York. An appreciation of Lear as a writer of nonsense verse is given on page 75. Another good nonsense poem, in addition to those already mentioned, is "A Nautical Ballad" on page 121 of Book II of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan). See also a collection entitled "Nonsense Verse" beginning on page 263 of *Poems and Rhymes* selected by Eva March Tappan in *The Children's Hour* series (Houghton).

KING ARTHUR'S SWORD

This selection is Chapter II of *King Arthur and His Knights* by Maude Radford Warren, published by Rand, McNally & Co. The first chapter deals with the birth of Arthur and the establishment of his kingdom. If possible this chapter should be read to the class before dealing

with the selection in the text. *The Coming of Arthur* in Tennyson's *Idylls of the King* may also be read in this connection, as a great deal of it bears specifically on the story here told. See *Stories of King Arthur's Knights* by Mary Macgregor in *Told to the Children Series (Jack)*, *King Arthur and his Noble Knights of the Round Table* by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), *Stories of the Knights of the Round Table* by Henry Gilbert (Jack), *Legends of King Arthur and his Court* by Frances Nimmo Greene (Ginn), *Heroes Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset), and *Heroes of the Middle Ages* by Eva March Tappan (Harrap).

There is very little known about the real history of King Arthur; in fact, many have doubted that such a prince ever had any existence. He is said to have been chief of the British tribe of the Silures in the 6th century and to have drawn together the scattered tribes of the Britons to oppose the Saxons. He made headway against the invaders for a time, but was killed at the battle of Badon Hill in 520. He is also said to have been buried at Glastonbury, about twenty-one miles from Bristol. However this may be, there has gathered around Arthur a body of legend and story that has made his name and his deeds famous. Lord Tennyson has made him the central figure of his great poem *Idylls of the King*.

The storehouse of information in regard to King Arthur is *Le Morte Darthur* (The Death of Arthur) by Sir Thomas Malory, completed in 1470 and printed in 1485 by Caxton. Many other stories, however, have been added, so that now there is little consistency in the Arthurian story. Incidents related of one knight are in other versions ascribed to another knight. It is best to accept each story as it stands, without attempting to reconcile it with that related by another writer. An abridged edition of *Le Morte Darthur* edited for school use by Douglas W. Swiggett is published in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

The study of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table naturally calls to mind the great national heroes of the early and middle ages of Europe: Sigurd, the Norseman, known among the Germans as Siegfried; Charlemagne, Roland, and the Chevalier Bayard of France; The Cid, Champion of the Spaniards against the Moors; Cuchulain and Finn mac Cumhal, of Ireland; William Wallace and Robert Bruce of Scotland; Beowulf, Alfred the Great, Robin Hood, Hereward the Wake, and Richard the Lion-hearted of England; Frederick Barbarossa of Germany; and William Tell and Arnold von Winkelried of Switzerland. Many of these heroes are referred to in *The Canadian Readers*: Alfred the Great, Wallace, Bruce, Robin Hood, and Tell. *Heroes Every Child Should Know* by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset) contains stories of Siegfried, Roland, The Cid, William Tell, Robin Hood, and Robert Bruce. *Famous*

Men of the Middle Ages by John H. Haaren and A. B. Poland (American Book Co.) has stories of Alfred, Charlemagne, The Cid, Frederick Barbarossa, Robert Bruce, William Tell, and Arnold von Winkelried. *Famous Men of Modern Times* by John H. Haaren and A. B. Poland (American Book Co.) has the story of the Chevalier Bayard. *Heroes of the Middle Ages* by Eva March Tappan (Harrap) has stories of Charlemagne, Beowulf, Alfred, Hereward the Wake, The Cid, Richard the Lion-hearted, Bruce, Tell, and Arnold von Winkelried. Book III of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson) has stories of Charles the Great (Charlemagne), Alfred the Great, Frederick of the Red Beard (Barbarossa), and Richard of the Lion Heart. The stories of Cuchulain and Finn may be found in *Cuchulain of Muirthemne* and *Gods and Fighting Men* both by Lady Gregory (Murray). See also *Stories of Legendary Heroes* selected by Eva March Tappan in *The Children's Hour* series (Houghton) and *Heroes of Long Ago* (McDougall).

PAGE 67—**Merlin.** A magician who plays an important part in the Arthurian legends. It was he who brought up King Arthur and secured him his kingdom. He finally met his death through the blandishments of Vivien, one of the ladies of Arthur's court. See *Merlin and Vivien* in Tennyson's *Idylls of the King* (Macmillan) and the chapter entitled "The Beguiling of Merlin" in *Stories of the King* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.).

PAGE 68—**Three tall women.** Malory says that these were King Arthur's sister, Queen Morgan le Fay, the Queen of the Northgales, and the Queen of the Waste Lands. Tennyson in *The Coming of Arthur* describes them as

"three fair queens,

Who stood in silence near his throne, the friends

Of Arthur, gazing on him, tall, with bright

Sweet faces, who will help him at his need."

When Arthur is sorely wounded and about to pass away, it is these three Queens who come across the great water in the barge which is to carry him to the island-valley of Avilion, the world after death. See *The Passing of Arthur* in Tennyson's *Idylls of the King* and *Tales from Tennyson* by G. C. Allen (Constable).

The Lady of the Lake. There is much confusion in the Arthurian romances as to the personality of the Lady of the Lake. It is perhaps better to think of her merely as she is so beautifully described by Tennyson in *The Coming of Arthur*:

"And near him stood the Lady of the Lake,

Who knows a subtler magic than his own,

Clothed in white samite, mystic, wonderful.
 She gave the King his huge, cross-hilted sword,
 Whereby to drive the heathen out: a mist
 Of incense curl'd about her, and her face
 Wellnigh was hidden in the minster gloom:
 But there was heard among the holy hymns
 A voice as of the waters, for she dwells
 Down in a deep; calm, whatsoever storms
 May shake the world, and when the surface rolls,
 Hath power to walk the water like our Lord."

Cross-hilted sword. Excalibur, the famous sword of King Arthur. The word means "cut-steel." The Lady of the Lake was engaged nine years in the manufacture of the weapon. Tennyson describes the scene and the sword as follows:

"There likewise I beheld Excalibur
 Before him at his crowning borne, the sword
 That rose from out the bosom of the lake,
 And Arthur row'd across and took it—rich
 With jewels, elfin Urim, on the hilt,
 Bewildering heart and eye—the blade so bright
 That men are blinded by it—on one side,
 Graven in the oldest tongue of all this world,
 'Take me,' but turn the blade and ye shall see,
 And written in the speech ye speak yourself,
 'Cast me away!' And sad was Arthur's face
 Taking it, but old Merlin counsell'd him,
 'Take thou and strike! the time to cast away
 Is yet far off!' So this great brand the king
 Took, and by this will beat his foemen down."

The cross-shaped hilt of the sword was symbolical of its religious significance. See *Boy and Girl Heroes* by Florence V. Farmer in *Everychild Series* (Macmillan) and James Baldwin's *Stories of the King*.

Each of the famous heroes of the Middle Ages had a special name for his sword. Siegfried's sword was called "Balmung." The Cid's sword was known as "Colada"; Roland's sword bore the name "Durandal." It is said to have belonged to Hector, the son of Priam, the great hero of the Trojan war. Charlemagne's sword was called "Joyeuse." Lancelot called his sword "Aroundight." Henry Wadsworth Longfellow has the following lines:

"It is the sword of a good knight,
 Tho' homespun be his mail;
 What matter if it be not hight,

*Joyeuse, Colada, Durindale,
Excalibur, or Aroundight."*

PAGE 69—**Cast me away.** A description of the casting away of Excalibur, after Arthur had completed his work and had received his fatal wound, is found in *The Passing of Arthur* in Tennyson's *Idylls of the King*.

PAGE 70—**Very far off.** Not until he had fulfilled the purpose of his life and at his life's close. See the last chapter of Maude Radford Warren's *King Arthur and his Knights* and "The Passing of Arthur" on page 65 of *Stories of Great Adventures* by Carolyn Sherwin Bailey (Milton Bradley).

THE CLOUDS

This poem was published in 1888 in *Among the Millet*. Lampman's own title for *The Clouds* is the same as the name of the volume in which it appeared. The poem is a picture of the morning hour at a time of year when the sun is not bright enough to have dried the dew from the grass or to have cleared the sky of clouds. The poet would wish nothing better than to lie in the meadow amidst the daisies, and follow the whim of the poets of old, who fancied the clouds as sheep feeding on the fields of the sky, with the sun as owner and the wind as shepherd.

Good companion poems are "Clouds" by Frank Dempster Sherman on page 193 of Book II of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan) and "The Clouds" on page 117 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

PAGE 71—**Called you sheep.** The legend is told in full in "Apollo's Present" on page 44 of *Lippincott's Third Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott). Sometimes the clouds are known as the sheep of Apollo, the sun-god, and sometimes as his cattle.

Shining sun. See note on Apollo on page 165.

Daisies. See page 80.

THE KNIGHTS OF THE SILVER SHIELD

This selection is one of the stories contained in *Why the Chimes Rang* by Raymond Macdonald Alden, published by The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Indianapolis.

In order to understand this story the pupils should have at least some general idea of all that knighthood implied during the Age of Chivalry. It would be of great help in the handling of this selection in class should the teacher read to them Chapter 21 entitled "Knighthood" in Book IV

of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). There they will find that one of the virtues most insisted upon in a knight was implicit obedience to the will of his superior. It was in carrying out his instructions, distasteful though these were to him, that Roland won the golden star on his silver shield. The teacher for her own information should certainly read the chapter entitled "The Life of the Knight" on page 146 of *Heroes of the Middle Ages* by Eva March Tappan (Harrap). *German Ballads* translated by Elizabeth Craigmyle (Scott) contains a famous poem entitled "The Fight with the Dragon," which illustrates splendidly the central idea of the selection in the text. The story of this poem is told in "The Knight and the Dragon" by F. J. Gould on page 217 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). A good story to read in this connection is "How Cedric Became a Knight" by Elizabeth Harrison on page 24 of the Fourth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). See also "How Sir Percivale was Taught Chivalry" by Henry Gilbert on page 274 of the Fifth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill).

THE MILLER OF THE DEE

The specific lesson taught in this poem is contentment with one's lot. A prose version of the story is given in *Fifty Famous Stories Retold* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.). The music is found in *Favorite Songs and Hymns* by J. P. McCaskey (American Book Co.).

PAGE 82—**The river Dee.** A river in England flowing into the Irish Sea.
King Hal. Henry VIII of England.

PAGE 83—**Fee.** Possession.

MICHAEL, THE UPRIGHT

This story, a very celebrated one in Dutch annals, concerns Admiral De Ruyter. He is of special interest to us, as it was he who led the Dutch in 1667, when they entered the Thames, burned a number of vessels, and destroyed an immense amount of stores. An account of the rise of Holland and the Dutch wars with England is given on pages 244-257 of Book V of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson).

Michael Adrianzoon De Ruyter was born at Flushing on March 24th, 1607. At the age of eleven he went to sea as a cabin boy and rose rapidly in his chosen profession. In 1636 he was placed in charge of an expedition organized by the merchants of Flushing against the French pirates. In 1640 he entered the service of the States-General of Holland with the

rank of rear-admiral. At St. Vincent in 1641 he distinguished himself in a naval battle with the Spanish fleet. In 1642 he returned to the merchant service, where he remained until the beginning of the war with England in 1652. In the next year he was second in command to Admiral Van Tromp, and took part in the three naval battles with the English. Later he served against the Turks in the Mediterranean and on behalf of Denmark against the Swedes. In 1661 he signally defeated the pirates of Tunis and Algeria, compelling their submission. In 1665 he commanded the Dutch fleet against the English, winning an important victory. Seven years later he again engaged the English in a drawn battle, in which he managed to secure the safety of the merchant fleet he was convoying. In 1676 Holland was drawn into a struggle between France and Spain on the side of the latter, and De Ruyter was sent to the Mediterranean. In a battle off Messina he suffered defeat, himself receiving a mortal wound. In spite of this he succeeded in securing the safety of his fleet, but died at Syracuse on April 29th, 1676. For his services in this battle, the king of Spain raised him to the dignity of a dukedom, but notice of the honor did not reach him before his death. He was buried at Amsterdam, where a magnificent monument was raised to his memory. De Ruyter is one of the great naval heroes of Holland, and indeed of the world; he is still held in affectionate remembrance by the Dutch people. See *Holland* by James E. Thorold Rogers in *The Story of the Nations* series (Unwin). See also *British Battles on Land and Sea* by James Grant (Cassell).

PAGE 84—The bey. The ruler of Morocco is called the bey. The title is applied also to the governor of a province.

THREE TREES

The pine tree grows in the forest crowded close, and therefore is tall and slim, being forced to grow upwards to seek the light. The oak tree, in an open field, grows broad and strong, sheltering the birds and the cattle. The apple tree, stunted and twisted, is brought into closer contact with human life. The pine and the oak prefer their own ways of living, but the apple tree claims neither strength nor beauty; its burden of fruit is its only concern. God, however, has a use for each and all. The oak is made into a ship, the pine into a mast, and the apples help to feed a hungry people.

Four lines at the end of the poem are omitted in the text:

“Now the farmer grows like the oak,
And the townsman is proud and tall;

The city and field are full of folk—
But the Lord has need of all."

PAGE 86—Pine tree. B. J. Hales in *Forests and Trees* (Macmillan) says: "Although some of the members of the pine family are low and shrub-like, the majority are trees with large, straight trunks. The wood is strong, but usually soft and easily worked, while the resinous juice protects it from decay. Almost all the timber used for buildings, bridges, fence-posts, telegraph and telephone poles, and railway ties is obtained from trees belonging to the great pine family." See *Trees That Every Child Should Know* by Julia Ellen Rogers (Grosset).

Oak tree. The oaks are fully described in B. J. Hales' *Forests and Trees*, pages 173-176.

Apple tree. See "The Apple and Apple-tree" on page 152 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

PAGE 87—Lord of the harvest. See *Matthew ix*, 38.

TOM, THE WATER-BABY

This selection is taken from Chapter III of *The Water-Babies: A Fairy Tale for a Land-Baby*. A synopsis of the book is given in the notes to "The Little Chimney Sweep" on page 102. The incident here related takes place almost immediately after Tom was supposed to have been drowned.

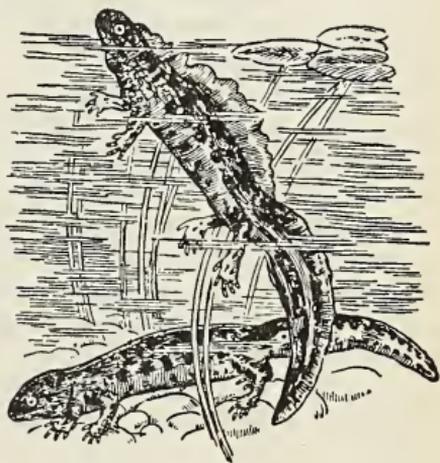
PAGE 88—The dragon-fly. The first part of Chapter II of *The Water-Babies* tells how Tom came to make friends with a number of the water creatures, among others with a dragon-fly. The dragon-flies are also known as Devil's darning-needles. They are familiar insects during the summer months. A vivid description of the dragon-fly with colored illustration is found in *British Insects Shown to the Children* by Arthur O. Cooke (Nelson). See also illustrations in *Modern Nature Study* by Sidney Silcox and O. J. Stevenson (Macmillan). See also *Pond Life* by E. C. Ash in *The People's Books* (Jack) and the chapter entitled "Not Lost but Gone Before" in *Parables from Nature* by Margaret Gatty (Nelson). A good story to read to a class is "The Oldest Dragon-fly Nymph" in *Among the Pond People* by Clara Dillingham Pierson (Dutton).

Gnats. A good description of the common gnat is found in Arthur O. Cooke's *British Insects Shown to the Children* and in *Pond Life* by the Rev. Charles A. Hall in *Peeps at Nature* series (Black).

PAGE 89—Otters. The otters in Great Britain are looked upon as the pirates of the streams, on account of the large number of fish they eat.

Ethel Talbot in *The Story Natural History* (Jack) says: "With its thin spindle-shaped body it twists and turns in the stream just as easily as the fish it hunts; its fur is thick enough and close enough to keep it dry and warm while it swims; its webbed toes come into use, and its long, flat tail acts as a useful rudder; it can dive too, and remain under water for some length of time, because it takes the precaution of closing up its nostrils and its ears. A fish has not much chance with the otter." A good description of the otter, together with a colored illustration, is given in *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack). See also *British Land Mammals and Their Habits* by A. Nichol Simpson in *Peeps at Nature* series (Black).

Eft. More familiarly known as newts. Edward C. Ash in *Pond Life in The People's Books* (Jack) says: "The female newt lays each egg on a leaf which she bends over, so as to protect it from fish and other dangers. The eggs hatch into most charming little creatures, delicate, graceful, and beautifully colored. Gradually the young newt grows more like the adult; the large external gills which give it so original an appearance disappear. When the young newts are mature, they leave the water and do not return until a year or two later." See Book II of *Senior Country Reader* by H. B. M. Buchanan (Macmillan). The following interesting story is told by the Greeks to explain the origin of the newt: "During the time that Ceres was wandering in search of her daughter Proserpina, she, on one occasion, suffered very much from thirst. Coming



NEWTS

to a thatched cottage, she knocked at the door, when an old woman came out. The goddess asked for water, but the old woman gave her a sweet drink, which she had made from parched barley, and Ceres, being very thirsty, drank freely. While she was drinking, Abas, or Stellio, a boy of bold and impudent look, who was standing by, laughed at her and called her greedy. Offended at the insult, the goddess threw the remainder of the liquor, with the barley, over the boy, and a sudden change took place in him. His arms became legs, a tail grew from his body, his skin was spotted and stained with the liquor. So that he might not be able to harm others, his size was diminished till he was less than a small lizard. The old woman, astonished, tried to touch the new marvel, but he fled

from her and sought refuge under a stone. Ever since that time, the newt tries to hide himself in shame." See *Old Greek Nature Stories* by F. A. Farrar (Harrap).

PAGE 90—Salmon. See Book II of H. B. M. Buchanan's *Senior Country Reader* for a description of the salmon. A very graphic account of the salmon of the Pacific coast is given in "The Story of a Salmon" by David Starr Jordan on page 362 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Cheshire cat. A. Wallace in *Popular Sayings Dissected* (Stokes) explains: "To grin from ear to ear. A particular pattern of stamp for the butter pats is in general use among the farmers of certain agricultural districts. In Cheshire the popular imprint was a cat of a particularly 'open countenance': hence the expression."

PAGE 91—Trout. See Book II of H. B. M. Buchanan's *Senior Country Reader*.

PAGE 92—Leeches. Worms with long, flattened bodies, having a sucker at each end for adhesion. Some leeches live in the sea, some in fresh water, and some on land.

Eels. H. B. M. Buchanan says: "Eels migrate, but they reverse the habits of the salmon. Whereas the salmon ascend our rivers to lay their eggs, and descend to the sea to fatten themselves and recruit their strength, the eels reverse the process, by descending to the brackish or salt water to lay their eggs, and by ascending our rivers for their food. After the little eels have been hatched out in the warmer brackish waters of our estuaries, they ascend the rivers in countless myriads, and so desperate are their efforts to reach certain points in our rivers, that they will climb up and over any obstacle in their way,—the upright posts of waterfalls, or the moist rocks at the side of the falls." A good account of the spawning habits of the eels is given in *Animals of the Sea* by Martin Duncan in *Romance of Reality Series* (Jack). See also *Living Creatures of Water, Land, and Air* by John Monteith (American Book Co.).

COLUMBUS AND THE EGG

This selection, the source of which is unknown, is one of the many interesting stories told of the human side of Columbus. The lesson taught is well worth impressing on the pupils. The two selections, "Columbus at the Court of Spain" and "The Return of Columbus to Spain" both by Alexander Vinet on pages 110 and 113 of the Fifth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill) should be read as interesting

commentaries on the selection in the text. See also the poem "Columbus" by Joaquin Miller on page 115 of the same book.

Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa about 1440. He early became a cloth-maker, but at the age of fourteen was sent to sea. For the next fourteen years he divided his time between voyages in the Mediterranean and working at his trade as a cloth-maker. About 1470 he removed to Lisbon, where he married, and afterwards made several voyages to the coast of Africa. While on shore he supported his family by the making and selling of maps and charts. Even as a boy he had shown a great fondness for geography, and indeed had for a time studied the subject, together with astronomy and navigation, at the University of Pavia. As early as 1474 he conceived the idea that by sailing westward from the coast of Europe he could reach Japan, and soon after began to press his project upon the king of Portugal. The king, however, proved treacherous, and in disgust Columbus quitted Portugal in 1484 and settled in Spain. For many years he was unsuccessful in persuading King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella to interest themselves in his plan, but at last in 1492 the queen was induced to furnish money for the expedition. Columbus was enabled to equip but three small vessels, the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*, the two latter having no decks amidships. The crew consisted of 120 men, of whom a number were discharged criminals. The three ships set sail from Palos on August 3rd, 1492. After delaying for a time at the Canary Islands, the vessels again, on September 6th, set forth on their voyage. A week later they crossed the equator and shortly afterwards were becalmed for a week in the Sargasso Sea. The trade winds were next a source of terror, and the men grew mutinous. By October 4th they were 2,274 miles from the Canaries, and it was with difficulty that Columbus persuaded his men to continue the voyage. But signs of land now became frequent, and at last, early in the morning of Friday, October 12th, land was sighted. At daybreak Columbus landed on the island of San Salvador, one of the Bahamas, and took formal possession of the newly discovered domain. He made a second voyage in 1493 and a third in 1498. Two years later he was deposed from his office as governor of the New World and sent back to Spain in chains. The arrest was disavowed by the Spanish sovereigns, but he was not reinstated in his high office. In 1502 he made a fourth voyage, returning to Spain in 1504. In 1506 he died at Valladolid in poverty and neglect. The best account of Columbus for use in the classroom is *The Story of Columbus* by Gladys M. Imlach in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack). See also *The Story of Columbus* by Arthur O. Cooke in *Herbert Strang's Readers* (Oxford Press), *The Story of Christopher Columbus* by Charles W. Moores (Houghton), *Pioneers on Land and Sea*

by Charles A. McMurray (Macmillan), and *Famous Voyages of the Great Discoverers* by Eric Wood (Harrap). A brief and interesting account of Columbus, suitable for reading to the pupils, entitled "Columbus, the Italian Sailor, and What He Found" by Thomas Bonaventure Lawler, is given on page 167 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

PAGE 95—Barcelona. Columbus returned to Palos, from which he had sailed, and later went to Barcelona, where Ferdinand and Isabella were holding their court.

Route to India. Columbus had set out on his expedition expecting to reach India and the East by sailing westward across the Atlantic. At this time he was not aware of the existence of the continent of North America, which barred the route.

PAGE 96—Te Deum. A hymn of praise to God. *Te Deum* are the Latin words which begin the *Te Deum Laudamus*: We praise Thee, O God: we acknowledge Thee to be the Lord, etc.

Don. The Spanish title of nobility.

THE FROST

This poem is a lively picture of "Jack Frost" at work. The first stanza tells how he works; the second shows how he dresses and adorns nature; the third describes his work as an artist; the fourth deals with the mischief he does. An interesting story of the frost is told in "What Broke the China Pitcher" by Mary Howliston on page 112 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). See "Jack Frost" on page 86 of Book II of *The Progressive Music Readers* (Gage).

PAGE 97—Blustering train. The frost works silently, but none the less effectively. See *Nature Study and the Child* by C. B. Scott (Heath).

Powdered its crest. It was formerly the fashion to dress the hair with powder.

Diamond beads. As ladies are decked with jewels.

Quivering lake. As if it were a warrior wearing a coat of mail.

A coat of mail. A sheeting of ice.

Many a spear. The rocks are represented as warriors armed with spears.

PAGE 98—Like a fairy. Noiselessly and with a fairy's magic power.

Sheen. Brightness.

THE TIME AND THE DEED

This poem was published in 1907 in *The Cornflower and Other Poems*. The writer shows very happily the worth of a kindly deed quickly done, and the value of putting off forever the doing of a selfish act that may cause pain.

A little poem of two stanzas entitled "The Better Way" might be read in this connection:

"If anything unkind you hear
About some one you know, my dear.
Do not, I pray you, it repeat
When you that some one chance to meet.
For such news has a leaden way
Of clouding o'er a sunny day.

"But if you something pleasant hear
About some one you know, my dear,
Make haste—to make great haste 'twere well,—
To her or him the same to tell;
For such news has a golden way
Of lighting up a cloudy day."

 THE HAMMER OF THOR

This selection is based upon Paul Henri Mallet's translations of the *Icelandic Edda*. Mallet, who was a Swiss historian, early became interested in the study of the Norse sagas. In 1760 he wrote *Memoirs on the Literature of the North* in six volumes and in 1777 a *History of Denmark* in three volumes. The introduction to this latter was translated into English under the title *Northern Antiquities*, and had a powerful influence in directing the attention of English writers to the treasures of the Norse and Icelandic early literature. The chief sources for our knowledge of Norse mythology are the *Elder Edda* in poetry and the *Younger Edda* in prose. It should be remembered that these books correspond with our *Bible*, as they are the sacred books of the northern nations. In *Icelandic Edda* means *great-grandmother*, probably with reference to the ancient origin of the myths the books contain.

Hamilton Wright Mabie in "How Thor Found His Hammer" on page 127 of *Norse Stories Retold from the Eddas* (Dodd) tells the same story with a wealth of detail. It is also told in the chapter entitled "The Quest of the Hammer" by Abbie Farwell Brown on page 316 of *Myths Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset).

See also *Stories from Northern Myths* by Emilie Kip Baker (Macmillan), *Out of the Northland* by Emilie Kip Baker in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan), and *Told by the Northmen* by E. M. Wilmot-Buxton (Harrap). See page 158. A good dramatic version of the story is given on page 127 of Book III of *A Dramatic Reader* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry) under the title "Loki and the Gifts."

PAGE 99—Vikings. Viking was the name given to a member of the pirate crews from among the Norsemen, who harried the coasts of Europe during the eighth, ninth, and tenth centuries. Laing says: "Vikings were merely pirates deriving the name of *viking* from the *vicks*, or inlets, on the coast in which they had harbored with their long ships or rowing galleys." Here, however, the term is applied to the Norsemen in general. An excellent chapter on the Vikings is found on page 28 of Book III of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson).

Chariot wheels. Thor never walked or rode on horseback, but was carried from place to place in a brazen chariot drawn by two goats, Tanngniost (toothracker) and Tanngrism (tooth-gnasher), from whose teeth and hoofs the sparks constantly flew.

Thor. According to Norse mythology Thor was the son of Odin and Frigga, queen of the gods. H. A. Guerber in *Myths of Northern Lands* (American Book Co.) says: "Thor was very remarkable for his great size and strength, and very soon after his birth amazed the assembled gods by playfully lifting and throwing about ten loads of bear skins. Although generally good tempered, he occasionally flew into a terrible rage, and as he was very dangerous under these circumstances, his mother, unable to control him, sent him away from home and entrusted him to the care of Vinguir (the winged) and of Hlora (Heat). These foster parents soon managed to control their troublesome charge, and brought him up so wisely that all the gods were duly grateful for their kind offices. Having attained his full growth and the age of reason, he was admitted in Asgard among the other gods, where he occupied one of the twelve seats in the great judgment hall." In Norway Thor was worshipped as the highest god, although in the mythology of the other northern countries he occupied the second place. He was recognized in all the countries as the god of thunder.

Lofty mansion. This was Bilskirnir (Lightning) in the realm of Thrudheim in Asgard. "It contained five hundred and forty halls for the accommodation of the thralls, who after death were welcomed to his home, where they were treated as well as their masters in Valhalla, for Thor was the patron god of the peasants and lower classes."

Asgard. The abode of the Asas or chief gods. The Norsemen supposed

the universe to be a flat circle, beyond which on all sides was a region of frost and mists. Midgard, the earth, was in the centre, surrounded by the ocean. On a high hill above the earth was built the heavenly city of Asgard. See the chapter entitled, "The Giant Builder" on page 299 of Hamilton Wright Mabie's *Myths Every Child Should Know* and "Odin and Valhalla" on page 24 of *Norse Tales* by Edward Thomas (Oxford Press).

Mjolnir. The hammer of Thor was a wonderful weapon. With it he could break the hardest metal and shatter the thickest mountain. It never could hurt the god himself, and no matter how far or how hard he threw it, it would always return to his hand. Whenever he wished, the great hammer would become so small that he could put it into his pocket quite out of sight. Its only fault was the shortness of its handle. See "The Making of the Hammer" in *Norse Stories* by H. W. Mabie (Dodd, Mead). The word is also spelled "Mjolner."

A belt. This was known as the Megin-giord.

Iron gloves. The hammer, as the emblem of the thunderbolts, was generally red hot, so that the iron gloves were very necessary.

PAGE 100—**Gifts of the gods.** Scarcely accurate. See *Introduction*.

Thrym. The king of the Storm Giants and the god of the destructive thunder storm. He is the personification of the giant forces of nature.

The giants. The giants were the first creatures who came to life when the universe was formed and inhabited the earth before it was given to mankind. They were born among the icebergs, which at that time occupied the centre of space. From the beginning they were the rivals and bitter enemies of the gods, who waged with them a ceaseless struggle. They were looked upon as the personification of all that was ugly and evil. When Ymir, the first giant, had been slain by Odin and his brothers, his blood gushed forth with such force and in such a stream that all his children were drowned in it, with the exception of Bergelmir and his wife, who escaped and took up their abode in Jotunheim at the very end of the world. From them all the giants were descended. The giants kept up their feud with the gods and never lost an opportunity to annoy them. An interesting description of the giants is given in Chapter XXIII of Guerber's *Myths of Northern Lands*.

A herald. The herald was Loki. It was important that a cunning messenger should visit the giant. Thor was the protector of Asgard, and without his hammer the giants, if they should attack the home of the gods, would probably prove successful in destroying it.

Freya. The golden-haired, blue-eyed goddess of love and beauty among the Norse. She was also the queen of the Valkyries, the maidens sent by Odin to choose those who should be slain on the battlefield. When she

herself took part in the conflict, half of the slain warriors fell to her share and half to Odin. These she conducted to her own palace. She was the proud possessor of a suit of falcon plumage, with which she could fly easily and rapidly wherever she wished to go. See Guerber's *Myths of Northern Lands*.

Band of heroes. When the Norse warrior met his death in battle, his spirit was at once conducted to Asgard, where dwelt Odin with the great gods and goddesses who paid him honor as their chief and ruler. Here among other magnificent palaces was Valhalla, the hall of the chosen slain. This palace had 540 doors, each wide enough to allow the passage of 800 warriors abreast. Above the principal gate were a boar's head and an eagle, whose glance looked all over the world. The walls were fashioned of glistening spears, so highly polished that they furnished the hall with light. The roof was made of golden shields, and the benches were decorated with fine armor. Here, at long tables, were seated the chosen warriors, waited upon at their feasting by the Valkyries. All night long the warriors feasted on flesh cut from the boar Schrimir, whose life was daily renewed, and drank mead furnished by the she-goat Heidrun, the supply of which was inexhaustible. In the morning they rose from the feast, donned their armor, and indulged in fierce combats until the coming of the night. Then their wounds were miraculously healed, and once more they sat down to the feast, and the next morning the fighting was resumed, so that the warriors might be ready for the fatal day when they would be called upon to defend the gods against their bitter enemies. In order that only the bravest and best of the warriors might reach Valhalla certain maidens called Valkyries were sent by Odin to the battlefield. They ranged the field, observed the warriors in the fight, picked upon those who were most worthy, and conducted them to Asgard. Freya was the queen of the Valkyries.

Odin. The All-Father, the highest and holiest god worshipped by the northern nations. H. A. Guerber says: "He was generally represented as a tall, vigorous man about fifty years of age, either with dark curling hair or with a long gray beard and bald head. He was clad in a suit of gray, with a blue hood, and his muscular body was enveloped in a wide blue mantle all flecked with gray. In his hand he generally carried the infallible spear *Gungnir*, which was so sacred that an oath sworn upon its point could never be broken, and on his finger or arm he wore the marvellous ring, *Draupnir*, the emblem of fruitfulness, precious beyond compare. When seated upon his throne, or armed for the fray, he wore his eagle helmet; but when he wandered about the earth in human guise, to see what men were doing, he generally donned a broad-brimmed hat, drawn down low over his forehead to conceal the fact of his having but one eye. Two

ravens, Hugin (thought) and Munin (memory), perched upon his shoulders as he sat upon his throne, and these he sent out into the wide world every morning, anxiously waiting for their return at nightfall, when they whispered into his ear news of all they had seen and heard, keeping him well informed about everything that had happened on earth. At his feet crouched two wolves or hunting hounds. When seated in state upon his throne, he rested his feet upon a footstool of gold." See "The Story of the Beginning" in *Asgard Stories: Tales from Norse Mythology* by Mary H. Foster and Mabel H. Cummings (Silver).

Loki. See page 160. The name is also spelled "Loke."

Giant-land. Jotunheim, a land of ice and snow beyond the ocean at the very confines of the world.

THE WIND IN A FROLIC

This poem is purely humorous and should be treated accordingly. It represents the wind as setting out on a frolic through the land, bent on mischief. First it sweeps through the town upsetting things generally; then away it goes through the country fields, the forests, the farms, and the lanes, and at last rocking the big ships and the little boats on the sea. But at sundown it sinks to rest with the thought that it has had a day of pure fun, with very little real harm to anybody. See pages 13 and 27.

A PIONEER WOMAN

This selection was originally written for and published in Book IV of *The Manitoba Readers* (Nelson).

Many graphic stories of the experiences of Marie Anne Lajimodière are related by Miss Agnes Laut in *The Conquest of the Great North-West* (Macmillan). One of the most interesting of these concerns her experiences at Edmonton. "When Henry moved his fifty men from Pembina up the Saskatchewan in 1808, among the free traders who went up with the brigades were the Lajimodières. Word of the white woman ran before the advancing traders by 'moccasin telegram,' and wherever pause was made, Indians flocked in thousands to see Marie Gaboury. Belgarde, a friend of Baptiste's, thought it well to protect her by spreading in advance the report that the white woman had the power of the evil eye; if people offended her, she would cause their death by merely looking at them; and the ruse served its purpose until they reached Edmonton. This was the danger spot—the centre of fearful wars waged by Blackfeet and Crees. Here came Marie Gaboury, in 1808, to live at Edmonton for four years.

Baptiste, as of old, hunted as freeman, and, strange to say, he was often accompanied by his dauntless wife to the hunting field. Once, when she was alone in her tepee on the prairie, the tent was suddenly surrounded by a band of Cree warriors. When the leader lifted the tent flap, Marie was in the middle of the floor on her knees making what she thought was her last prayer. A white renegade wandering with the Crees called out to her not to be afraid—that they were after Blackfeet. Baptiste's horror may be guessed when he came breathless across the prairie and found his wife's tent surrounded by raiders. 'Marie! Marie!' he shouted, hair streaming to the wind, and unable to wait until he reached the tepee, 'Marie! are you alive?' 'Yes,' her voice called back, 'but I—am—dying—of fright.'

Vivid accounts of life in the early days of the Red River Settlement are found in *The Romantic Settlement of Lord Selkirk's Colonists* by George Bryce (Musson) and in *The Selkirk Settlers in Real Life* by R. G. Macbeth (Ryerson Press).

PAGE 105—First white woman. Marie arrived at Pembina during the spring of 1806.

Province of Quebec. Marie was a native of the parish of Three Rivers, in the Province of Quebec.

Jean Baptiste Lajimodière. One of the most dashing of the scouts in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company.

Voyageur. In the early days in the North-West, this name was applied to the men who rowed the boats engaged in the fur trade, but the men were hunters and trappers as well.

PAGE 107—Fleets of canoes. These canoes were about thirty feet in length. Alexander Henry in his *Travels and Adventures in Canada and the Indian Territories* says: "The canoes were, as usual, five fathoms and a half in length, and four feet and a half in their extreme breadth, and formed of birch-tree bark, a quarter of an inch in thickness. The bark is lined with small splints of cedar-wood; and the vessel is further strengthened with ribs of the same wood, of which the two ends are fastened to the gunwales: several bars, rather than seats, are laid across the canoe, from gunwale to gunwale."

PAGE 108—Fort William. The headquarters of the North-West Company at the mouth of the Kaministikwia River.

Pembina. A small French settlement up the Red River about 60 miles from Winnipeg. The town is now in United States territory. See illustration on page 106 of the text.

Greatest interest. Miss Laut says: "To the Indian wives of the Frenchmen in the freeman's camp, Madame Lajimodière was a marvel—the

first white woman they had ever beheld. They waited upon her with adoration, caressed her soft skin and hair, and handled her like some strange toy."

Blackfeet. See page 162.

PAGE 110—The white settlers. The first body of colonists left Stornoway, on the island of Lewis, on July 26th, 1811, wintered at York Factory on Hudson Bay, and reached the Red River on August 30th, 1812. See *The Red River Colony: A Chronicle of the Beginnings of Manitoba* by Louis Aubrey Wood in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow Brook) and *Where the Buffalo Roamed* by E. L. Marsh (Macmillan).

Lord Selkirk. Thomas Douglas, Earl of Selkirk (1771-1820) early became interested in settling Scotsmen in British territory in North America. He founded settlements in Upper Canada and in Prince Edward Island and then turned his attention to the far North-West. He was the founder and protector of the Red River Settlement, and did his utmost to make it a success. It was the worry over the affairs of the Settlement that eventually caused his death.

North-West Company. The company was organized at Montreal in 1787 by a number of merchants engaged in the fur-trade. Most of the partners had already been engaged in trading in the far West, where the new company soon proved itself to be a vigorous rival to the Hudson's Bay Company. In 1802 it absorbed the XY Company, a younger rival, and, after a struggle which lasted until 1821, was itself finally absorbed into the Hudson's Bay Company.

To send letters. At this time there was bad blood between the North-West Company and the Hudson's Bay Company. The voyageurs of the former company were gathered in force near the Red River Settlement and were threatening bloodshed. It was necessary to communicate with Lord Selkirk, who was at the time in Montreal. Lajimodière was chosen as the most trusted messenger to be had. It was impossible to follow the usual route, as this would take him through Nor'-Wester territory, and it was known that he was to carry letters to Montreal. Accordingly, he was compelled to go through Minnesota to the Sault, then south along the American shore of Lake Huron to Detroit, and from Detroit to Montreal. He succeeded in reaching Montreal and delivered his letters to Lord Selkirk. The Nor'-Westers were furious at Lajimodière's success, and imperative orders were issued to intercept him on his return. "Rewards of \$100, two kegs of rum, and two carrots of tobacco were offered to Minnesota Indians if they would catch Lajimodière. They waylaid his canoe at Fond du Lac, beat him senseless, stole his despatches, and carried him to Fort William, where he was thrown in the butter-vat

prison and told that his wife had already been murdered on Red River." He was released by Lord Selkirk when he captured Fort William from the Nor'-Westers on his journey to the relief of the Settlement. When he reached Fort Douglas he was overjoyed to find that the news of his wife's death was false.

Fort Douglas. A Hudson's Bay Company's fort on the Red River, about two miles north of its junction with the Assiniboine. It was captured by the Nor'-Westers after the affair at Seven Oaks in 1816. See Bryce's *The Life of Lord Selkirk*.

Hudson's Bay Company. The fur-company known as "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay" was organized in 1670 under charter from Charles II, king of England, Prince Rupert of the Rhine being the first governor. For many years the company confined its operations to the shores of Hudson Bay, but eventually it spread its trading posts over almost all the northern half of the continent, and on the Pacific coast as far south as California. In 1821 it absorbed the North-West Company, and in 1869 it surrendered its territorial rights in British North America to the Dominion of Canada.

Seek shelter. Chief Peguis, an Indian friendly to the Hudson's Bay Company, had warned Governor Semple that the Nor'-Westers were gathering in force at Portage la Prairie for an attack on Fort Douglas, and that bloodshed was sure to follow. The governor refused to listen to this warning, and then the chief went to Madame Lajimodière. Miss Laut tells the story: "'White woman,' he commands, 'come you across the river to my tepee! Blood is to be shed.' And Marie Gaboury, who had learned to love the Indians as she formerly feared them, follows Chief Peguis down the river bank with her brood of children like so many chickens. Such is her fright as she ensconces her children in the chief's canoe, that she faints and falls backward, upsetting the boatload, which Peguis rescues like so many drowned ducklings, but Lajimodière's family hide in the Pagan tent while the storm breaks."

A large grant of land. "To Lajimodière, the scout, Selkirk assigned land in the modern St. Boniface, that brought to Marie Gaboury's children, and her children's children, untold wealth in the town lots of a later day."

SWEET AND LOW

This exquisite lullaby occurs between the 2nd and 3rd Cantos of *The Princess: A Medley* published in its original form in 1847. Walter Taylor Field in Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* says:

"The poem 'Sweet and Low' is a lullaby, a song sung by a mother to her baby while rocking him to sleep. The mother is a sailor's wife. She is sitting in the evening at an open window, or perhaps on the porch of their little cottage overlooking the sea, and the west wind is blowing softly and sweetly across the water as she rocks and sings to her little one. The moon is sinking so slowly that she calls it the dying moon, and as she looks she thinks of the baby's father who is out on the ocean far to the west, with the same moon shining on him. She thinks she can almost see the white sails of his ship in the moonlight, and she calls to the wind to blow him safely home to her and to his little one asleep in her arms."

The keynote of the poem is struck in the 3rd and 4th lines of the second stanza. S. E. Dawson says: "Far over the rolling waters of the western sea though the father may be compelled to wander, his thoughts are ever with his babe in the nest, his labors and privations are lightened and ennobled by worthy and unselfish purpose. Sweet influence this of the babe, reaching far across the ocean, and uniting loving hearts!" The song set to music is given in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage).

An excellent companion poem is "The Angel's Whisper" by Samuel Lover to be found on page 72 of Book I of *The Land of Song* selected by Katharine H. Shute (Silver).

PAGE 111—**Dying moon.** The setting moon. The wind is blowing from the west.

Silver sails. "White in the pallid radiance of the moon."

THE INCHCAPE ROCK

This poem, written at Bristol in 1802, is based on the following extract from an old writer: "By east the Isle of May, twelve miles from all land in the German seas, lies a great hidden rock called Inchcape, very dangerous for navigators, because it overflowed every tide. It is reported, in old times, upon the said rock, there was a bell fixed upon a tree or timber, which rang continually, being moved by the sea, giving notice to the sailors of the danger. This bell or clock was put there and maintained by the abbot of Aberbrothock, and being taken down by a sea-pirate, a year thereafter he perished upon the same rock, with ship and goods, in the righteous judgment of God."

The Inchcape Rock is better known as the Bell Rock and lies due east of the mouth of the Firth of Tay. Robert Stevenson, the celebrated

engineer, built a lighthouse on the island in 1811. It is a dangerous spot, as it is almost covered at spring tides, and the water surrounding it is very deep.

"The Inchcape Rock" is a good example of the ballad in its modern form. Compare "The Laidley Worm of Spindleston" on page 22 and "The Bailiff's Daughter of Islington" on page 28 of Book III of *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent) and "The Master of the Scud" by Bliss Carman on page 85 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in the same series.

PAGE 112—**Sign or sound.** There were no breakers.

Aberbrothock. Now Arbroath, on the coast a little north of the Firth of Tay.

PAGE 113—**Joyance.** An old form of joyousness.

The Rover. Sir Ralph was a pirate.

I'll plague. The bell was cut from the float in pure, wanton mischief. Note the poetic justice of the punishment which fell on Sir Ralph.

Scoured the seas. He left no place unvisited in his search for plunder.

PAGE 114—**Drift along.** The suggestion is that some supernatural power was moving the vessel.

JOHN RIDD'S RIDE

This selection is taken from Chapter X of *Lorna Doone: A Romance of Exmoor*. "The chief beauty of *Lorna Doone* lies in its sweet simplicity, and the clear direct manner in which the story is told. As a pen-picture of the people of North Devon, and of their country, it stands unrivalled amongst books descriptive of scenery and of those who dwell in the land."

Charles Dudley Warner's *Library of the World's Best Literature* (Glasgow, Brook) says: "The story is founded on legends concerning the robber Doones, a fierce band of aristocratic outlaws, who, in revenge for wrongs done them by the government, lived by plundering the country side. Regarding their neighbors as ignoble churls and their legitimate prey, they robbed and murdered them at will. John Ridd, when a lad of fourteen, falls into their valley by chance one day, and is saved from capture by Lorna Doone, the fairest, daintiest child he has ever seen. When he is twenty-one and the tallest and stoutest youth of Exmoor, 'great John Ridd' seeks Lorna again. He hates the Doones who killed his father, but he loves beautiful Lorna and becomes her protector against the fierce men among whom she lives. If slow to think, he is quick to act; if plain and unlettered, he is brave and noble; and Lorna welcomes his placid strength. Scattered through the swift narration, certain scenes, such as Lorna's escape to the farm, a tussle with the Doones, the attempted

murder at the wedding of John and Lorna, the final duel with Carver Doone, and others, stand out as great and glowing pictures." An excellent edition of *Lorna Doone*, abridged for class-room use without destroying the flavor of the original, is found in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). Another good edition is *The Story of John Ridd* by W. D. Fordyce (Nelson).

PAGE 115—Standing stoutly up. Rather resenting the tone in which he was addressed.

A tall boy. At this time John was about fifteen.

Have no burden. Will not allow anybody but me to ride her.

Tackle. Tame.

Leathers. A contemptuous way of speaking of the saddle and girths.

Dry little whistle. Amused at the assurance of John.

Annie. Annie Ridd. John's sister.

Go bail. Go surety. "There is no doubt about that."

Pride must have, etc. "Pride goeth before destruction and a haughty spirit before a fall"—*Proverbs xvi, 18*.

Tom Faggus. Tom was a noted highwayman, with all the characteristics of his kind.

PAGE 116—Demurely. "As if there were some secret understanding between them."

Dropping her soul. Submitting herself.

Up for it still. Are you still determined?

Is she able. An answer in kind to get even.

Good take-off. A good place from which to jump. Note the pun that follows.

Substance of their skulls. John, in the narrative, is always speaking of himself as thick-skulled, stupid.

PAGE 117—John Fry, Bill Dadds. Servants on the farm.

Duello. A battle between himself and the mare.

Mixen. The refuse heap.

Minced. Moved in a dainty manner.

Gee wugg. Go ahead; get along.

Outraged not. Did not lose her temper.

Curbed. Curvetted.

PAGE 118—Comb. The top of the head between the ears.

Robin Snell. When John was at Blundell's school at Tiverton, he had a fierce battle with one Robin Snell. This is described in one of the early chapters of the book.

Trow. Believe.

Cob wall. A wall made of mud and straw.

Quickset hedge. A hedge made of growing shrubs, not dead bushwood.

Scattering clouds. Breath from her nostrils.

PAGE 119—**Dog briars.** The wild briar.

Crimping a fish. Crimping is gashing the sides of a fish, while still living, in order to give the flesh greater firmness and to make it more crisp when cooked.

Cresses. The water-cresses near the banks of the little stream that flowed near.

Had not been wet. The mare had just assisted in the rescue of a white duck from the smaller stream.

The slip. A punning reference to the many escapes of the highwayman, in which he had been ably assisted by his mare.

BALDUR, THE BEAUTIFUL

This selection is taken from Book V of *The Atlantic Readers*, published by Thomas Nelson & Sons, Edinburgh.

Before taking up this selection in class, it would be well for the teacher to read in its entirety the Introduction to *Myths Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset). A paragraph may be quoted: "The sun, which vanquished the darkness, put out the stars, drove the cold to the far north, called back the flowers, made the fields fertile, awoke men from sleep and filled them with courage and hope, was the centre of mythology and reappears in a thousand stories, and in all kinds of disguises. In the early times men saw how everything in the world about them derived its strength and beauty from the sun; how the sun warmed the earth and made the crops grow; how it brought gladness and hope and inspiration to men; and they made it the centre of the great world story, the foremost hero of the great world play. For the myths form a practical explanation of the earth, the sea, the sky, and of the life of man in this wonderful universe, and each great myth was a chapter in a story which endowed day and night, summer and winter, sun, moon, stars, winds, clouds, fire, with life, and made them actors in the mysterious drama of the world. Our Norse forefathers thought of themselves always as looking on at a terrible fight between the gods, who were light and heat and fruitfulness, revealed in the beauty of day and the splendor of summer, and the giants who were darkness, cold, and barrenness, revealed in the gloom of night and the desolation of winter. To the Norsemen and other primitive peoples, the world was the scene of a great struggle, the stage on which gods, demons, and heroes were contending for supremacy, and they told that story in a thousand different ways. Each myth is a chapter in that story, and differs from

other stories and legends because it is an explanation of something that happened in earth, sea, or sky."

A brief account of the origin of the world and of the gods and giants, as related by the Norse sagas, may serve as an explanation of the first paragraph of the text: In the beginning, while as yet there was no earth, nor sea, nor sky, there existed in the midst of space a yawning gulf, called Ginungagap. North of this was Niflheim, where was the spring Hvergelmer, and from which flowed the twelve ice-cold rivers Elivagar. When these rivers had flowed far southward from their sources, the venom in them hardened and became ice. Thus Ginungagap on its northern side was filled with ice and fog and gusts of vapor. But on the south side of the abyss was Muspelheim, the land of sparks and flakes of flame. When the frozen vapor from the north met the heated blasts from the south, it melted into drops, and by the might of the *Supreme God*, these drops were quickened into life and became Ymer or Rhimthurs, the first of the Frost-Giants. From the left arm-pit of Ymer, while he slept, sprang a man and a woman, and from his feet was produced a son, Thrudgelmer, who in turn bore a son, Bergelmer. Ymer, was nourished by the cow Audhumbla, who had been born in a similar manner to the giant himself. One day when the cow was licking the salty rime stones, a man's hair appeared, the next day the head appeared, while on the third day the whole body was visible. The name of this man was Bure. His son Bor married Bistla, and their children were Odin, Vili, and Ve. These three soon conspired against their hated enemy, Ymer, and slew him. From his wounds flowed such a torrent of blood that a great deluge was caused, in which the whole brood of the Frost-Giants was lost, with the exception of Bergelmer. This giant escaped with his wife to Jotunheim, where he became the ancestor of the new race of Giants, the inveterate enemies of Odin, Thor, and the other gods. See "The Making of the Worlds, of Gods, and of Giants" on page 9 of *Norse Tales* by Edward Thomas (Oxford Press).

Odin, the ruler of the gods, and Frigga his wife had twin sons, Baldur and Hodur. They were "as dissimilar in character and physical appearance as it was possible to be; for while Hodur, god of darkness, was sombre, taciturn, and blind, like the obscurity of sin which he was supposed to symbolize, Baldur, the beautiful, was the pure and radiant god of innocence and light. The snow brow and golden locks of this god seemed to send out beams of sunshine to gladden the hearts of god and man, by whom he was equally beloved. Attaining his full growth with marvellous rapidity, he was admitted to the council of the gods, and married Nanna, which means 'blossom,' a beautiful and charming young goddess, with whom he lived in perfect peace. The only thing hidden from Baldur's

radiant eyes, at first, was the perception of his own ultimate fate." See *Myths of Northern Lands* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

The story of Baldur is told in *Some Norse Myths and Legends* re-told by A. Gertrude Caton in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), in *In the Days of Giants* by Abbie Farwell Brown (Houghton), and in *Told by the Northmen* by E. M. Wilmot-Buxton (Harrap). See also "The Death of Balder" on page 197 and "How Loke was Punished" on page 222 of *Norse Stories Retold from the Eddas* by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Dodd). "The Death of Balder" is reproduced on page 337 of *Myths Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset). An excellent version of the story is given in *A Book of Myths* by Jean Lang (Jack). "Baldur Dead" by Matthew Arnold, to be found in *Short Studies in English Literature* (Nelson), tells the story in stately blank verse, but it is perhaps too difficult for Grade IV.

PAGE 120—**Asgard.** See page 148.

Loki. One of the great gods of the Norse mythology. There are so many conflicting accounts regarding Loki that it is impossible to give any clear connected story concerning him. He was regarded as the personification of fire and lightning, and also of mischief. At last he came to be regarded as wholly evil and was cast out from among the circle of the gods. His last great act of treachery, the instigation of Hodur to throw the mistletoe at Baldur, so enraged the gods that they resolved on instant punishment. Loki was captured and chained to a rock; over him was placed a serpent, from whose mouth dropped poison, which, however, was caught in a cup by Loki's faithful wife. But at intervals the cup filled, Sigyn was compelled to empty it, a drop fell upon Loki, and he writhed in awful anguish, thus causing earthquakes, which shook the world. See "The Punishment of Loki" in *Asgard Stories: Tales from Norse Mythology* by Mary H. Foster and Mabel H. Cummings (Silver).

Baldur's palace. This palace was called Breidablik, "whose silver roof rested upon golden pillars, and whose purity was such that nothing common or unclean was ever allowed within its precincts."

PAGE 121—**Baldur's mother.** Frigga, the wife of Odin and the queen of the gods among the Norse. A good description of Frigga is given in "How the Queen of the Sky Gave Gifts to Men" by E. M. Wilmot-Buxton on page 71 of the Fourth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill).

Mistletoe. A small shrub which grows on trees, particularly the oak. After the death of Baldur, the gods made the mistletoe "promise never again to lend itself to harm, and to make sure that it kept its vow, they dedicated it to Freya, the goddess of love and beauty, and gave her special

authority over it. It promised never to do harm to any so long as it did not touch the earth, and that is why, thousands of years after, people who have never heard of Baldur and Hodur and Loki hang the mistletoe in their houses in the season of gladness and kiss one another as they pass beneath it, for it brings happiness, safety, and good fortune so long as it is not beneath our feet." See *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* by Charles M. Skinner (Lippincott). A good description of the mistletoe is given on page 212 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

Plucked a twig. This particular mistletoe grew in an obscure place on an oak near Asgard.

One of the gods. This was Baldur's twin brother, Hodur, the blind god of winter, who slays his brother the sun-god.

PAGE 122—A message. The message was born by Hermod, the messenger of the gods.

Daughter of Loki. Loki, the spirit of evil, married a giantess, Angurboda, the portender of ill. They had three children, Hel or Hela, the goddess of death, the Fenris-wolf, and the Midgard Serpent. These last two were horrible monsters who were seized and held captive by the gods. Hel was hurled down into the depths of Niflheim, where Odin gave her power over nine worlds.

Twilight of the gods. This time is known among the old Norse as "Ragnarok." On that dreaded last day, Loki would escape from his bonds, and, accompanied by Hel with all her hosts of evil spirits, the Fenris-Wolf, the Midgard Serpent, and the whole brood of the frost-giants, would wage fearful combat with the gods. Odin, Thor, and all the other gods would be killed, and the earth would be utterly destroyed, but from the ruins would arise a new heaven and a new earth, where would be no evil, and over which Baldur, the god of light, would rule as king. See "The Twilight of the Gods" in Foster and Cummings' *Asgard Stories: Tales from Norse Mythology* and Chapter XVI, entitled "The Twilight of the Gods," on page 234 of Hamilton Wright Mabie's *Norse Stories Retold from the Eddas*.

Light and joy. The myth is explained in the last paragraph of the text.

THE RIDERS OF THE PLAINS

This selection is taken from *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson). The editor says in a foot-note: "The writers of this stirring poem were two members of the North-West Mounted Police Force. It was written many years ago

in the North-West, and an old member of the force gave a copy to the editor of this volume, who published it in a Canadian newspaper, and afterwards in his volume *Canada*. This title is the original one." Robert W. Service has a stirring poem entitled "The Mounted Police" to be found on page 210 of Book V of *The Manitoba Readers* (Nelson). See also "The Riders of the Plains" by E. Pauline Johnson on page 21 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent).

The semi-military force known as the North-West Mounted Police was established in 1873 for the purpose of keeping law and order within the western territory, added a few years before to the Dominion by purchase from the Hudson's Bay Company. The force at first consisted of three hundred members, but this number was increased from time to time as the expansion of the country proceeded. The first Commissioner of the Mounted Police was Lieutenant-Colonel George A. French, later Sir George, who made a distinguished name for himself during the Boer War. In 1904 the king was graciously pleased to confer upon them the title "Royal," the force from that time being known as the Royal North-West Mounted Police. In 1920 they were merged into the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, and their headquarters were removed from Regina to Ottawa. The work of the R. N. W. M. P., as they were familiarly known, in making the west safe for settlement will not soon be forgotten. See *The Riders of the Plains* by A. L. Haydon (Copp Clark).

At the time this poem was written there was real danger of an uprising among the Indian tribes of the West. This was one of the strong reasons for the formation of the Mounted Police. Since the suppression of the Riel Rebellion in 1885, however, all danger of an Indian uprising has passed away.

PAGE 123—Blackfeet. The Siksika were an important confederacy of three Algonquin tribes, the Siksika, or Blackfeet proper, the Bloods, and the Piegans, the whole body being popularly known as Blackfeet. The name is commonly believed to have arisen from the discoloration of their moccasins by the ashes of prairie fires. The Blackfeet were roving buffalo hunters, living in tepees, and shifting their habitations from place to place. They lived around the foot-hills of the Rocky Mountains or on the upper waters of the Saskatchewan. At present there are about two thousand of the tribe gathered in reservations in Alberta.

Cree. The Crees were another important Algonquin tribe, who formerly roamed the prairies in what is now Manitoba and Saskatchewan. Their movements were governed largely by the food supply. There are now fewer than twenty thousand Crees in the whole of Canada. See page 324.

AN EXPLORER'S BOYHOOD

This selection is taken from Book IV of *The Chisholm Readers* (Nelson). An excellent book to read in connection with the text is *The Story of David Livingstone* by Vautier Golding in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack). "The Early Days of David Livingstone", adapted from a chapter in this book, may be found on page 320 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

David Livingstone was born at Blantyre, near Glasgow, on March 19th, 1813. His parents were poor, so that he was compelled to go to work at an early age. For a time he was employed in a cotton factory. Having made up his mind to devote his life to the work of a foreign missionary, he studied theology and medicine and in 1840 was sent to South Africa by the London Missionary Society. For sixteen years he remained in South Africa engaged in missionary work and in exploration. On his return to England in 1856 he was accorded a magnificent reception by the people and was awarded the gold medal of the Royal Geographical Society. Two years later he returned to Africa with the object of exploring the Zambezi River and of opening up the country for commerce. After a brief visit to England in 1864-65, he returned to Africa and continued his explorations. He died on the south shore of Lake Bangweolo on May 1st, 1873. See *David Livingstone* by Sylvester Horne (Macmillan) and *David Livingstone* by Thomas Hughes in *English Men of Action* series (Macmillan).

PAGE 124—Blantyre. A village in the county of Lanark, Scotland, about eight miles south-east of Glasgow.

Bonnie Prince Charlie. See page 173.

PAGE 125—Mrs. Livingstone. Her maiden name was Agnes Hunter.

The Covenanters. A solemn League and Covenant was entered into many times by the Scots to maintain the Presbyterian religion in Scotland. The name Covenanters is specifically applied to those who banded together in 1662 and the following years to resist the attempt of Charles II to force the episcopal form of worship upon the people. "Their meetings, called conventicles, were denounced as seditious, and to frequent them or to hold any inter-communication with any person who frequented them was forbidden on pain of death. These severe measures provoked the Covenanters to take up arms in defence of their religious opinions and led to a rebellion so widespread that it almost amounted to civil war. The sufferings of the Covenanters were extreme. Numbers of them were put to death with great cruelty, but suffering only strengthened their resolute spirit." The persecutions did not cease until the accession of

William III. See the Chapter entitled "The Killing Time" in Book XI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

PAGE 127—**Cotton-spinning mill.** A good description of cotton spinning is given in the chapter entitled "The Weaver" on page 32 of *Work and Workers Shown to the Children* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack).

PAGE 129—**That wonderful Life.** Christ.

Far-off lands. Even at this early age Livingstone's thoughts were turning to the interior of Africa.

PAGE 130—**The Great Physician.** Christ, the great healer of sorrows.
The Abbey. Westminster Abbey, where many of the great and good of England are buried. Livingstone's body was interred there, on April 18th, 1874. His heart, however, is buried in the interior of Africa, "under a mvula tree in the village of Chitambo."

Well done, etc. See *Matthew xxv, 23.*

THE WIND AND THE MOON

In this poem the author tells us a fairy tale of the Wind and the Moon. The Wind is annoyed at the staring Moon and so blows and blows until the clouds gather and cover it up. But each time the Wind stops, out peeps the Moon again. At last the Wind is forced to give up, but instead of acknowledging defeat, boasts that he is such a great power that he is able to blow the Moon "right out of the sky" and then "blow her in again." And all the time the Moon is quite unconscious of all the trouble she has been causing.

"The way of the bully and blusterer is splendidly set forth in this poem. When unable to accomplish what he sets out to do, he takes credit for whatever happens to be the fact. Though the Moon was entirely oblivious to the frantic doings of the Wind, and serenely going on her own way, the Wind still flattered himself that he was the 'boss' of the universe."

Although the poem is highly humorous, there is a serious lesson to be drawn from it. This, however, need not be too strongly insisted upon. Compare *The Wind in a Frolic* on Page 103 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*. A good contrasting poem to read to the pupils is "The South Wind and the Sun" by James Whitcomb Riley on page 221 of Book IV of *Farm Life Readers* (Silver).

PHAETON

This story is one of the Greek nature myths. F. A. Farrar in *Old Greek Nature Stories* (Harrap) says: "It is not unnatural that the ancients

should imagine, when the sun's heat was exceptionally fierce, that the chariot had come nearer to the earth than usual. Probably the tradition of some very hot summer, when the earth was parched up with drought, and great forest fires took place, gave rise to the famous story of Phaeton. We can imagine, too, from the conclusion of the story that the long drought was ended, as is often the case, by a terrific thunderstorm." Another version of this story is told in the selection entitled "How the Horses of the Sun Ran Away" in *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand). See also *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian Stoughton Hyde (Heath) and *Myths of Greece and Rome* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

All the books mentioned above are filled with Greek myths quite suitable either to read or to tell to the pupils: Endymion, Cadmus, Narcissus, Hyacinthus, Hylas, Bellerephon, Adonis, Orpheus, Jason, Daedalus, and many others.

A good dramatic version of the story is given on page 27 of *A Dramatic Version of Greek Myths and Hero Tales* by Fanny Comstock (Ginn). This is a most excellent book for class-room use. It deals with the stories of Pandora, Daphne, Latona, Philemon and Baucis, Proserpina, Narcissus, Arachne, Niobe, Perseus, Theseus, Alcestis, Orpheus, Arion, etc.

PAGE 133—Phaeton. Phaeton was the son of Apollo and Clymene, one of the sea-nymphs.

Apollo. Phoebus Apollo, (Greek Helios) god of the sun. He was the son of Zeus (Jupiter) and Lotona, and the brother of Artemis (Diana), the goddess of the moon. He was recognized as one of the chief gods by both the Greeks and the Romans. See the chapter entitled "Stories of the Sun-God" in F. A. Farrar's *Old Greek Nature Stories* and "Latona and Niobe" on page 30 of *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn). This last named book has a number of stories relating to Apollo.

PAGE 134—Father's palace. This palace was of pure gold.

Aurora. Aurora, or Eos, the personification of the Dawn was the daughter of Titan and Terra, and the mother of the winds and the stars. It was her duty to open the gates of the east for the sun-god, to pour the dew upon the earth, and to make the flowers grow. See H. A. Guerber's *Myths of Greece and Rome*.

The River Styx. This was the strongest oath that could be taken by the gods. Not even Zeus himself would dare to break an oath so sworn. If a god should break it, he was compelled to drink the waters of the Styx, which kept him in a state of senseless stupidity for a year; following that, he was deprived for nine years of the food and drink which sustained the gods. The Styx was one of the rivers of Hades, the world after death, around which it flowed nine times.

PAGE 135—**The chariot.** F. A. Farrar says: "Apollo, originally Helios, is represented as driving the chariot of the sun in its arched path across the heavens. This car was of dazzling beauty, made by Vulcan, or Hephaestus, the god of Fire, of pure gold, adorned with precious stones, the whole reflecting the radiant splendor of the sun. It was drawn by four immortal steeds, from whose nostrils issued flames, and which no weaker hand than that of Apollo himself could manage. The goddess Aurora, the personification of the Dawn, opened the gates of the palace of the sun god each day, so that the glorious equipage could be driven forth, and herself preceded the god of day to the starting point of his journey. It was the duty of the Hours, who were inferior deities, to yoke the glorious steeds to the chariot. Mounting the car, the god then drove the fiery horses up the steep ascent, guiding them all day long in their appointed path until in the evening they descended in the west into the wide stream of Oceanus. The Greeks thought that the earth was a vast, flat circle, divided in the middle by the sea, the Mediterranean, and with the broad river of Ocean flowing around it. Homer and Hesiod, from whom we get the oldest of these stories, do not explain how the sun got back to its starting point, ready for the next day's journey, but later poets imagined a wonderful winged boat, made, like the chariot, by Hephaestus, which received the sun, with its golden car, and bore them swiftly round the ocean to the east again." Guido Reni's beautiful painting of "Aurora" should, if possible, be shown to the pupils. It is to be found on page 37 of Book VI of *Stories Pictures Tell* by Flora L. Carpenter (Rand). A full explanation accompanies the picture.

The moon. Diana, the Greek Artemis, the moon-goddess, was the sister of Phoebus Apollo. She was worshipped as one of the supreme divinities by the Greeks and Romans. See "Diana and Orion" on page 77 of Robert Edward Francillon's *Gods and Heroes*.

PAGE 136—**Neptune.** The Neptune of the Romans was worshipped as Poseidon by the Greeks. He was the brother of Jupiter and the god of the sea, over which he had supreme dominion. See "Neptune" on page 137 of Robert Edward Francillon's *Gods and Heroes*.

Earth. Terra was the earth-goddess.

My brother Ocean. Neptune.

Jupiter. The Roman Jupiter was the Zeus of the Greeks. He was the son of Saturn, or Chronos, but conspired against him, and drove him from his throne. He thus became the supreme ruler of the universe, and as such was worshipped by the ancients. His most tremendous weapons were the thunderbolts, which he hurled at will. See "Saturn and the Golden Age" on page 3 and "The Gods and the Giants" on page 8 of Robert Edward Francillon's *Gods and Heroes*.

The river. The Eridanus, now the Po, in Italy. The body of Phaeton was half consumed when it was found by some nymphs, who gave it burial.

Phaeton's mother. Clymene, one of the sea-nymphs.

His sisters. "His sisters, the Heliades, came to the Eridanus River to bewail him, and as their tears fell into the water, they changed into golden drops, which we now call amber; and after a little, the mourners took on the form of trees that had given the precious gum: the poplar." See *Myths and Legends of Flowers, Trees, Fruits, and Plants* by Charles M. Skinner (Lippincott).

Cycnus. Cyenus was the son of Sthenelus, king of Liguria, a country in the west of Italy.

Deserts. According to the ancients, the Sahara Desert is the result of this rash ride, as is also the color of the inhabitants of Central Africa.

THE CIRCUS-DAY PARADE

This selection is one of the most successful of James Whitcomb Riley's poems for children. The parade is described with absolute accuracy, exactly as it would appear to the eyes of the eager boys watching it in all its glory and mystery. A good companion poem is "The Circus Parade" in *Prose and Verse for Children* by Katharine Pyle (American Book Co.).

An excellent sketch of the author by Meredith Nicholson is to be found on page 197 of the Fifth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). Several of Riley's poems accompany the selection, among others "A Sudden Shower" and "Old Aunt Mary's." A copy of Riley's *Rhymes of Childhood* published by The Bobbs-Merrill Co., Indianapolis, should be in every school library. It contains poems most interesting to pupils in all grades. Some of these are "The Raggedy Man," "The Boy Lives on our Farm," "Granny's Come to our House," "Little Orphant Annie," "The Man in the Moon," and "The Nine Little Goblins."

THE CHRISTMAS DINNER

This selection is taken from Stave Three of *A Christmas Carol* published just before Christmas, 1843. James M. Sawin says of it: "The *Carol* takes hold upon our sensibilities, and it is so nearly perfect that it is the one book critics cannot bear to criticize. It contains the whole gospel of Christmas; it calls upon us then to give ourselves up to mirth and good cheer; it kindles our hearts anew into a glow of thankfulness and unselfish-

ness; it bids us build larger hearth fires and let their cheery warmth embrace all mankind; it opens our doors upon a more generous and self-forgetting hospitality; it invites us fervently and reverently to consider Him whose message of love and peace Dickens thus sent abroad with wonderful power for good to a weary world." A good school edition of *A Christmas Carol* edited with introduction by James M. Sawin is found in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). Another useful edition, prepared for pupils' use by Alfonzo Gardiner, is published in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). A dramatized version for school reading or acting is found in *Dramatic Reader for Grammar Grades* by Marietta Knight (American Book Co.). The complete book is dramatized in *A Dickens Dramatic Reader* by Fanny Comstock (Ginn).

The story of *A Christmas Carol* deals with the change wrought in Ebenezer Scrooge by the visit to him of the ghost of Jacob Marley, his former partner, followed by the visits of three spirits, the Ghost of Christmas Past, the Ghost of Christmas Present, and the Ghost of Christmas Yet to Come. Scrooge had been a selfish, uncharitable old fellow, but under the influence of the sights shown him by the spirits, he completely changed. "He became as good a friend, as good a master, and as good a man, as the good old city knew, or any other good old city, town, or borough, in the good old world." The selection in the text is an account of the Christmas celebration at the home of Bob Cratchit, Scrooge's clerk, who rejoiced in the munificent salary of fifteen shillings a week. The Ghost of Christmas Present showed this happy family group, poor and humble though it was, to Scrooge, and this sight wrought no inconsiderable part in his reformation. "They were not a handsome family; they were not well dressed; their shoes were far from being water-proof; their clothes were scanty; and Peter might have known, and very likely did, the inside of a pawn-broker's. But they were happy, grateful, pleased with one another, and contented with the time; and when they faded, and looked happier yet in the bright sprinklings of the Spirit's torch at parting, Scrooge had his eye upon them, and especially on Tiny Tim, until the last."

Two excellent Christmas stories are found in the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton): "Carol Bird's Christmas" by Kate Douglas Wiggin on page 74 and "The Believing Voyage" by Charles E. Carryl on page 86. See also the poem "Christmas in Norway" by Celia Thaxter on page 71 of the same book, and the prose sketch "Old Father Christmas" by Juliana H. Ewing on page 65 of the Fifth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill). See also a capital collection of stories under the general title "Christmas" beginning on page 230 of *For the Children's Hour* by Carolyn S. Bailey and Clara M. Lewis (Milton Bradley).

CHRISTMAS

This poem implies that everything that happens throughout the year, whether fortunate or unfortunate, leads up to the cheer and peace of Christmastide. The Christmas spirit is for all, whether in the home protected by love, or in the busy street. It is the beautiful task of old and young alike to make the whole world brighter and better at this happy season.

There are very many good poems dealing with the Christmas season. Some of these are: "Old Winter" by Thomas Noel on page 44 of Book III of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan); "Kriss Kringle" by Thomas Bailey Aldrich on page 85 and "December" by Harriet F. Blodgett on page 100 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton); "Lady Yeardley's Guest" by Margaret J. Preston on page 196 of Book IV of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan); and "A Christmas Carol" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 126, "While Shepherds Watched Their Flocks" by Nahum Tate on page 169, and "Old Christmas" by Mary Howitt on page 185 of Book I of *The Land of Song* by Katharine H. Shute (Silver).

PAGE 144—**Flake.** Flakes of snow.

The Star. The Star of Bethlehem. "When they had heard the king, they departed; and lo, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was. When they saw the star, they rejoiced with exceeding great joy.—*Matthew ii, 9-10.*

Golden head. The golden hair of the child.

Bairn. Child.

Hoar. White.

THE BOY HERO

This selection is adapted from the story in *The Post of Honour; Stories of Daring Deeds done by Men of the British Empire in the Great War* (Dent). Practically the same story is told in Chapter II and III of *The Path of Glory: Heroic Stories of the Great War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson). A number of stories similar to that in the text are found in *The Path of Glory*, particularly in Chapter III entitled "Boy Heroes of the Navy."

Two excellent companion stories to "The Boy Hero," although they do not deal with the navy, are "The Story of Little-John" on page 34 and "Patches of Red" on page 234 of Book III of *The Young Patriot Readers* (Oxford Press). See also "Jacquot the Drummer" on page 48 of Book II of the same series.

A full description of the Battle of Jutland and its relation to the naval events of the Great War is given in the chapter entitled "Jutland" on page 230 of *Flag and Fleet* by William Wood (Macmillan). See also *The New Age Encyclopaedia* edited by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson) and pages 249-295 of Volume V of *The Children's Story of the War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson).

PAGE 145—Royal Academy. The Royal Academy of Arts, founded in 1768. Exhibitions of paintings are held at regular intervals in the magnificent home of the Academy in London.

The painting. A painting of the boy himself in action.

The Victoria Cross. The Victoria Cross is a decoration instituted in 1856 and conferred on officers and men of all ranks of the British army and navy for personal bravery. It consists of a bronze Maltese cross one and a half inches in diameter, with the royal crown surmounted by a lion in the centre, and beneath, the inscription "For Valour". A special pension of £10 a year is granted to every soldier who receives the Victoria Cross, with an additional £5 for every bar. In the event of an annuitant being unable to gain a livelihood the amount may be increased to £50.

Admiral Beatty. David Beatty was born in 1871 and entered the navy at the age of thirteen. He was one of the youngest seamen to become an admiral. He was in command of the British squadron that defeated the Germans at the battle of Dogger Bank on January 24th, 1915. In 1916 he succeeded Jellicoe in command of the Grand Fleet. After the war he received the surrender of the German fleet in the Forth. As a reward for his services during the war he was raised to the peerage as Earl Beatty of the North Sea and was given a grant of £100,000.

PAGE 147—Trafalgar. The famous engagement fought on October 21st, 1805, between the British fleet under Nelson and the combined fleets of France and Spain under Admiral Villeneuve. *See page 87.*

Admiral Jellicoe. The commander of the Grand Fleet during the early part of the Great War. John Rushworth Jellicoe was born in 1859 and entered the navy in 1872. He saw a great deal of active service in many parts of the world, so that when, in 1914, he was placed in command of the Grand Fleet, he was by no means untried. In 1916 he became first sea lord of the Admiralty and had charge of the campaign against the German submarines. As a reward for his services he was raised to the peerage as Viscount Jellicoe of Scapa. In 1920 he was appointed governor-general of New Zealand. He died in 1926.

Destroyers. Vessels specially designed and built to contend with the torpedo boats. They have great speed and can easily overtake and

destroy the vessels engaged in discharging torpedoes against an enemy ship.

PAGE 148—Grimsby. A Lincolnshire town on the east coast of England. "Faithful unto death." "Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life."—*Revelation ii, 10.*

THE SHEPHERD'S SONG

This poem is so simple in itself that it requires no explanation.

MARCH OF THE MEN OF HARLECH

When Edward I had completed his conquest of Wales, in order to keep peace in the land he built seven strong castles at seven important strategic points. Among these was Harlech Castle, on the seashore of Merionethshire. "Built on a crag of rock that juts from a terrace two hundred feet above the plain, stand the great stone towers, looking towards the majestic range of Snowden to the north, and guarding the wide stretch of country below; while to the west they gaze over the Irish Sea. Legend tells us that the castle stands upon the site of a far more ancient building, Branwen's Tower, which stood there a thousand years before English Edward was heard of." See *Wales* by E. M. Wilmot-Buxton in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black). The word "Harlech" means "above the boulders."

During the Wars of the Roses, Harlech Castle was held for the Lancastrians by David ap Sinion. After the disastrous battle of Northampton in 1460 Margaret took refuge there with her son Edward. The Earl of Pembroke was sent to Harlech with a powerful army to demand the surrender of the fugitives. But David stoutly answered: "I held a tower in France till all the old women in Wales heard of it, and now all the old women in France shall hear how I defend this castle." Margaret and Edward escaped, and David held the castle until forced by famine to surrender. The capitulation, however, was honorable, as the defenders and their brave leader were set at liberty. "The March of the Men of Harlech" was written during the progress of the siege to stir the Welsh chieftains to revolt against the usurping English king. E. M. Wilmot-Buxton says: "Even in the English words the chant is inspiring in the extreme; the Welsh words, joined to the warlike tune, would stir the veriest coward to play his part like a hero." See *Stories of Famous*

Songs by S. J. Adair Fitz-Gerald (Nimmo). The music of the song is found in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage). Another stirring Welsh battle-song, "The War Song of the Men of Glamorgan" by Sir Walter Scott is given in *A Book of British Song for Home and School* arranged by Cecil J. Sharp (Murray).

PAGE 149—Saxon. Both the Welsh and the Scots were accustomed to speak of the English as Saxons.

Hinds. Peasants.

Yeomen. The English archers were usually spoken of as yeomen. The word has various meanings.

Flag. While Wales was still independent, its flag was green with a red dragon figured on it.

Shall launch. The Saxons are now in the valley, and everything looks peaceful. Soon they will be among the mountain passes, when a frightful storm will break loose on their ranks. The Welsh will be waiting and ready for them.

Cambria. The ancient name of Wales.

Passes narrow. In "The Battle of Beal-an-Duine" in Canto V of *The Lady of the Lake* Sir Walter Scott describes vividly a battle among the mountain passes. See also "The Battle of Morgarten" by Mrs. Hemans.

On a blow. The fate of those you love depends on how manfully you bear your part in the battle. Your individual action may determine the result.

Strands of life. The threads of life are being torn apart; men are falling on every hand.

Deadly lock. Single combat, as distinct from the general battle.

Mercy shrieks. The cries for mercy are unheeded, so fierce is the battle

PAGE 150—Hoary. Even old, white-haired men are taking their part in the conflict.

Strike. Compare the appeal of Bozzaris on page 369 of Book V of *The Canadian Readers*. See also "Horatius" on page 379 of the same book.

THE BEATITUDES

These verses are found in *Matthew v, 3-10*, and are the opening words of the "Sermon on the Mount", preached by Christ to his disciples. "And seeing the multitudes, he went up into a mountain: and when he was set his disciples came unto him: and he opened his mouth and taught them, saying:"

The Beatitudes are so called from the opening word *beati*, "blessed," in the Latin version of the Bible known as the *Vulgate*. The Rev. A.

Carr in *The Gospel According to St. Matthew* in *The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) says: "Mark the Christian growth step by step. First, spiritual poverty, the only character which is receptive of repentance, therefore alone admissible into the kingdom. Secondly, sadness for sin. Thirdly, meekness, implying submission to the will of God. Fourthly, the soul-hunger for righteousness. Then three virtues of the Christian life, each of which wins, without seeking it, a reward in an ascending scale—mercy, purity, peacemaking. The last may be regarded as an encouragement to the disciples and as a test of true discipleship."

Similar Bible selections suitable for Grade IV may be found in Book IV of *Graded Bible Readers* (Nelson).

PAGE 150—Poor in spirit. Opposed to the spiritually proud, who think they have no need of repentance.

They that mourn. The primary meaning is those that mourn for sin, but those in suffering and distress are also intended.

The meek. Meekness is essentially a Christian virtue.

Obtain mercy. They shall be dealt with as they deal with their fellow-men. Compare the *Lord's Prayer*.

Shall see God. The Rev. A. Carr says: "The Christian education is a gradual unveiling of God; all have glimpses of Him; to the pure He appears quite plainly."

The children of God. Akin to the divine nature.

For righteousness' sake. The promise is not to those who are persecuted, but to those who are persecuted *for the sake of righteousness*. "The cause in which a man suffers is everything."

THE COMING OF ANGUS OG

This selection is taken from Book V of *The Victory Readers*, published by Thomas Nelson and Sons. It is one of the numerous stories told of the adventures of Bonnie Prince Charlie in 1745, during his attempt to regain the crown of Great Britain for his family.

Charles Edward Louis Philip Casimir, commonly called the Young Pretender, was born at Rome on December 31st, 1720. His father was the Chevalier de St. George, son of James II, and his mother the Princess Clementine, daughter of Prince James Sobieski. His education, owing to disputes between his father and mother, was carried on in a very desultory fashion, his tutors sometimes being Jesuit priests and sometimes Protestant ministers. Yet he was well educated in the ordinary sense, having a good knowledge of English, French, and Italian, and in addition a wide acquaint-

ance with music and art. He served with much distinction under the Duke of Liria at the siege of Gaeta in 1734, being specially commended by his commanding officer for bravery and skill.

About 1740 the hopes of the Jacobites, which had been so completely crushed by the failure of the rising of 1715, began to revive. In that year war was threatening between Britain and France, and the time seemed ripe for a new attempt to place the Stuarts once more on the throne. It was not until 1745, however, that it was considered expedient to undertake the expedition. In fact, the time chosen was singularly unfortunate, as France had suffered a severe reverse and was in no position to lend assistance. But the young prince was not to be deterred, and, in spite of the advice of practically all his associates, he determined to set out for Scotland, and there raise the standard of the Stuarts. He did so and landed in Scotland on August 2nd, 1745.

The landing was on one of the islands in the Hebrides. The larger number of the Highland chieftains flocked to his side, and on August 19th "the royal standard was unfurled at Glenfinnan, and Charles began his march south." He managed to elude the vigilance of his enemies and reached Perth. Edinburgh opened its arms to the young prince, who took up his residence in Holyrood Palace. The defeat of Sir John Cope at Prestonpans raised the enthusiasm of the Jacobites to the highest pitch, and it was resolved to invade England. Carlisle surrendered without a struggle, the English forces being exceedingly slow in their movements and leaving the city to its fate. But the English Jacobites did not rally to the Prince's standard; troops were pouring home from Flanders; the militia were being drilled; there was nothing to do but go back. On December 6th the Highland army began its long retreat northward, pursued by an English army under the Duke of Cumberland.

On the way a slight success at Falkirk roused the drooping spirits of the Highlanders, but they were at last brought to bay at Culloden Moor near Inverness. Here the weary, starved, and dispirited Highland army of 5,000 men faced the well-trained English army of 9,000 veterans. "Yet the bravery of the Highlanders was still aflame, and the sight of the foe inspired them. When the charge was sounded, they sprang forward with their usual impetuosity, but, alas! part of the line, the left wing, remained standing, and the withering fire from the enemies' guns swept the long slanting line. The Macdonalds on the left were affronted because they considered they should have had the place of honor on the right, and, to their eternal shame, they stood still while their brothers in arms sprang forward alone to meet the foe. Their chief, seeing this, cried out in dismay, 'Good God, have my children forsaken me?' and fell, pierced though the heart by a bullet. Such action could end only in one

way: the Highlanders were slain in heaps, and the battle was turned into a rout, with the order for all to save themselves as best they could. In all directions the men of the hills flew to cover after a fight lasting only forty minutes. The Dragoons, riding after them, butchered them so mercilessly, under orders from their leader, that he was nicknamed Billy the Butcher from that day, and even his small nephews, hearing the tales of his cruelty, ran from him on his return to London. Prince Charlie rode from the field in despair, and after a meeting with some of his generals, when it was decided that anything but escape was impossible, he went on broken in heart and spirit.

In spite of the reward of £30,000 upon his head, Charles Edward, by the help of Flora Macdonald and some of his faithful Highlanders, succeeded in making his escape to France. He was forced, however, to leave that country and subsequently took up his residence in Rome. He fell into dissipated habits, which estranged him from all his old friends. He died at Rome on January 31st, 1788, and was buried there.

A very full and interesting account of Prince Charlie is given in Chapters 15 and 16, entitled "The Forty-Five," of Book VI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). A colored plate entitled "A Royal Fugitive" accompanies the chapters. See also *Scotland* by G. E. Mitton in *Peeps at History* (Black) and "The Escape of Prince Charles Edward" in *A Book of Escapes and Hurried Journeys* by John Buchan (Nelson). Many songs and ballads have been written about the prince. The words and music of one of the best of these, "Charlie is My Darling", is found in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage). See also "Will Ye No Come Back Again?" by Lady Nairne on page 55 of Book V of *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent).

PAGE 150—Angus Og. There is so much confusion in the Celtic mythology that it is impossible to give any clear and connected account of Angus Og. He was one of the old gods known to both the Irish and the Scottish branches of the Celts. He is seen only occasionally among men, but whenever he comes he brings joy and gladness. One of the old heroes saw him on one occasion: "On a sudden he saw a stranger, a very comely young man, at the end of the hall; and he knew on the moment it was Angus Og, for he had often heard his people talking of him, but he himself used to be saying he did not believe there was any such person at all. And when his people came back to the hall, he told them how he had seen Angus himself, and had talked with him, and Angus had told him his name, and had foretold what would happen him in the future. 'And he was a beautiful young man,' he said, 'with high looks, and his appearance was more beautiful than all beauty, and there were ornaments

of gold on his dress; in his hand he held a silver harp with strings of red gold, and the sound of its strings was sweeter than all music under the sky; and over the harp were two birds that seemed to be playing on it. He sat beside me pleasantly and played his sweet music to me and in the end he foretold things that put drunkenness on my wits'." See *The Mythology of Ancient Britain and Ireland* by Charles Squire (Constable) and *Gods and Fighting Men* by Lady Gregory (Murray).

Bracken. Fern.

Burn. A brook.

Bog-myrtle. The sweet-gale. It grows in marshy places and has a pleasant, aromatic odor.

PAGE 151—Heather. "The common ling. It grows on moors and commons, and mountain sides in England, Scotland, and Ireland, and in autumn you will find it covering the ground like a carpet, sometimes crowning bushes as high as your knee. The flowers are very tiny, and they vary in color from a pale pink to a deep purple. The leaves are very tiny. They have no stalks, and they grow tightly pressed against the tough, woody-stems." See description with colored illustration in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack) and "Heather" on page 168 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract). "How the Blossoms Came to the Heather" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) may prove of interest to the pupils.

PAGE 152—Scalpa. A small island of the Hebrides, off the east side of the island of Skye.

PAGE 153—Stornoway. A seaport of Scotland, the chief town of the Island of Lewis, one of the Outer Hebrides.

Could not understand. The prince was speaking French to his companions.

PAGE 154—Flintlock. The fire was produced by a flint striking the hammer and igniting the priming in the pan.

Plover. There are two kinds of plover, the ringed plover, and the peewit or lapwing, known as the green plover. The former is found mainly along the sea-shore, while the latter loves the open spaces of the country, and makes his home on the moors and marshes, and stretches of uncultivated land. J. A. Henderson says of the green plover: "In the air no other bird is like him, and you can always know him by his strange flight. The wings are short and rounded at the ends, and they flap slowly and heavily. For a few yards he flies forward, then suddenly he turns over and seems to tumble right down almost to the ground, then another turn and he is flying along close to the ground, or upwards, to descend again suddenly. He scarcely ever flies straight forward, but turns now to one side, now to the other, or downwards or upwards, in the strangest and most

whimsical fashion." The dry of the green plover consists of two notes, the second note higher than the first. On the lonely moor it is wild and melancholy, but is full of the sense of open air and freedom. *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack) has descriptions and colored illustrations of both the ringed and the green plover.

Cotton grass. Rush-like plants, common in marshy places, with spikes resembling tufts of cotton.

PAGE 156—Over the water. To the loyal followers of the Stuarts, there were two kings, the usurper who sat upon the throne, and the rightful king, then in exile in France—over the water. The king "over the water" at this time was the Chevalier de St. George, the son of James II. The Chevalier had made an unsuccessful attempt to secure the throne in 1715. The king's son was, of course, Prince Charles Edward.

The lap of the gods. Only the future will reveal what will take place; in the meantime it is known only to the gods.

PAGE 158—Muckle. Muckle means very large or tremendously big.

Codlings. Young cod, not yet grown.

Versailles. The French king kept his court at Versailles near Paris. The father of Prince Charlie had his residence there also.

St. James. St. James is the palace of the king of Great Britain at London. It was first used as a royal residence by Henry VIII, but is so used no longer. It gives its name officially to the British court.

PAGE 159—My own. The kingdom that was rightly his.

OFF TO THE FISHING GROUND

This selection is taken from the *Poems* of L. M. Montgomery. The author was born in Prince Edward Island and lived there during the early part of her life. The poem is redolent of the sea and of the life of the fishermen who ply their dangerous calling on the waters off the Island Province.

Lucy Maud Montgomery was born at Clifton, Prince Edward Island. She was educated at the district school and at Prince of Wales College in Charlottetown. The publication of her first novel, *Anne of Green Gables*, in 1908 at once made her famous. It was followed the next year by a sequel, *Anne of Avonlea*, and some time later by *Anne of the Island*, and *Anne's House of Dreams*. In 1911 she married the Reverend Ewan MacDonald and since that time has resided in Leaskdale, Ontario. Among her other novels are *Kilmeny of the Orchard*, *The Golden Road*, *Chronicles of Avonlea*, *Rilla of Ingleside*, *Emily of New Moon*, and *The Blue Castle*.

A good companion poem to the selection in the text is *The Fisherman* by John Greenleaf Whittier:

“Hurrah! the seaward breezes
Sweep down the bay amain;
Heave up, my lads, the anchor!
Run up the sail again!
Leave to the lubber landsmen
The rail-car and the steed;
The stars of heaven shall guide us,
The breath of heaven shall speed.

“From the hill-top looks the steeple,
And the lighthouse from the sand;
And the scattered pines are waving
Their farewell from the land.
One glance, my lads, behind us,
For the homes we leave one sigh,
Ere we take the change and chances
Of the ocean and the sky.

“Now, brothers, for the icebergs
Of frozen Labrador,
Floating spectral in the moonshine,
Along the low, black shore!
Where like snow the gannet’s feathers
On Brador’s rocks are shed,
And the noisy murr are flying,
Like black scuds, overhead;

“Where in mist the rock is hiding,
And the sharp reef lurks below,
And the white squall smites in summer,
And the autumn tempests blow;
Where, through gray and rolling vapor,
From evening unto morn,
A thousand boats are hailing,
Horn answering unto horn.

“Hurrah! for the Red Island,
White the white cross on its crown!

Hurrah! for Meccatina,
And its mountains bare and brown!
Where the Caribou's tall antlers
O'er the dwarf-wood freely toss,
And the footstep of the Mickmack
Has no sound upon the moss.

"There we'll drop our lines, and gather
Old Ocean's treasures in,
Where'er the mottled mackerel
Turns up a steel-dark fin.
The sea's our field of harvest,
Its scaly tribes our grain;
We'll reap the teeming waters
As at home they reap the plain!

"Our wet hands spread the carpet,
And light the hearth of home;
From our fish, as in the old time,
The silver coin shall come.
As the demon fled the chamber
Where the fish of Tobit lay,
So ours from all our dwellings
Shall frighten Want away.

"Though the mist upon our jackets
In the bitter air congeals,
And our lines wind stiff and slowly
From off the frozen reels;
Though the fog be dark around us,
And the storm blow high and loud,
We will whistle down the wild wind,
And laugh beneath the cloud!

"In the darkness as in daylight,
On the water as on land,
God's eye is looking on us,
And beneath us is his hand!
Death will find us soon or later,
On the deck or in the cot;
And we cannot meet him better
Than in working out our lot.

“Hurrah.—hurrah!—the west-wind
 Comes freshening down the bay,
 The rising sails are filling,—
 Give way, my lads, give way!
 Leave the coward landsman clinging
 To the dull earth, like a weed,—
 The stars of heaven shall guide us,
 The breath of heaven shall speed!”

The other side of the picture is seen in *The Three Fishers* by Charles Kingsley:

“Three fishers went sailing away to the West,
 Away to the West as the sun went down;
 Each thought on the woman who loved him the best,
 And the children stood watching them out of the town;
 For men must work, and women must weep,
 And there’s little to earn, and many to keep,
 Though the harbor bar be moaning.

“Three wives sat up in the lighthouse tower,
 And they trimmed the lamps as the sun went down;
 They looked at the squall, and they looked at the shower,
 And the night-rack came rolling up ragged and brown.
 But men must work, and women must weep,
 Though storms be sudden, and waters deep,
 And the harbor bar be moaning.

“Three corpses lay out on the shining sands
 In the morning gleam as the tide went down,
 And the women are weeping and wringing their hands
 For those who will never come home to the town;
 For men must work, and women must weep,
 And the sooner it’s over, the sooner to sleep;
 And good-by to the bar and its moaning.”

PAGE 159—**Lapsing tide.** The outgoing tide.

Enticingly. Earnestly coaxing and calling.

PAGE 160—**Harbor bar.** The shoal at the entrance to the harbor.

Orient. Lighted up with the beams of the early morning sun.

Our wake. In the rear of the boat.

Welkin. The sky, the vault of heaven.

Bourne. The end of our journey.

THE FIRST ENGLISH SINGER

This selection is taken from *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering* by Grace H. Kupfer (American Book Co.). The original title is *A Shepherd Who Became a Singer*. Another excellent version of this story is told, with several illustrations, in Book II of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). See also the chapter entitled "The First Great English Song" on page 49 of Book IV of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). This chapter has several very appropriate illustrations which bear on the selection in the text.

Cædmon lived during the seventh century and was probably of Celtic origin. Following the miracle related in the text, he was received into the monastery and became a monk. He lived there for many years, engaged in the production of his poems, and died unexpectedly about 670. After his death, by general consent of his countrymen, he was recognized as one of the saints of the Church. A modern cross in the churchyard of the parish church near the ruins of the monastery commemorates Saint Cædmon. See *The History of Early English Literature* by Stopford A. Brooke (Macmillan).

PAGE 161—**Whitby.** Whitby, in Yorkshire, is beautifully situated at the mouth and on both banks of the River Esk. The old town stands on the steep slope above the river, and a long flight of steps leads up to the ruins of the monastery. In 657 Hilda, a grandniece of Edwin, king of Northumbria, founded this monastery for the religious of both sexes, and governed it as abbess until her death. It was she who recognized the miraculous gift of Cædmon and commanded him to become a monk. "The existing ruins of the monastery comprise part of the early English choir, the north transept, and the richly decorated nave. The west side of the nave fell in 1763 and the tower in 1830. On the south side are foundations of cloisters and domestic buildings." The picture in the text shows the ruins as they were until the month of December, 1914, when the west side was destroyed during a bombardment of Whitby by German armored cruisers. See colored illustration in Book II of *Highroads of Literature*.

PAGE 162—**A beautiful song.** The song, the original manuscript of which is now in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, translated into modern English, is as follows:

"Now must we praise
The Guardian of Heaven's Kingdom,
The Creator's might
And his mind's thought;
Glorious father of men!
As of every wonder He,
Lord Eternal,

Formed the beginning.
 He first framed
 For the children of Earth
 The heaven as a roof;
 Holy Creator!
 Then mid-earth
 The Guardian of Mankind.
 The eternal Lord
 Afterwards produced
 The earth for men,
 Lord Almighty."

PAGE 163—**The abbess.** The abbess was the celebrated Hilda (614-680), the founder of the monastery. Under her rule, Whitby became the most famous religious house in England. She is one of the Saints of the Roman Catholic Church, her day being November 17th.

The songs he wrote. It was only on sacred subjects that he could sing; on all other subjects his gifts deserted him.

THE COLORS OF THE FLAG

This poem was written at Quebec in 1898 and published in 1900 in *Poems: Old and New*. It is a fanciful interpretation, expressed in vigorous verse, of the meaning of the colors of the British flag. It celebrates the deeds of those who have made the Empire great and sounds a strong note of encouragement for the future.

Another pretty idea as to the colors of the flag is given in "The British Flag" by May Byron on page 62 of Book I of *The Young Patriot Readers* (Oxford Press).

The Union Jack in its present state, is made up of the flags of St. George representing England, St. Andrew representing Scotland, and St. Patrick representing Ireland. The flag of St. George is white with a plain red cross, the flag of St. Andrew blue with a white diagonal cross, and the flag of St. Patrick white with a red diagonal cross. When England and Scotland were united in 1707 under the name Great Britain, the flags of St. George and St. Andrew were combined, and the Union Jack of Anne, as it is called, continued to be the flag of Britain until the union with Ireland, under the name Great Britain and Ireland, when the flag of St. Patrick was added to the Union Jack of Anne. The flag then adopted is our present Union Jack. A full history of the Union Jack, with numerous illustrations in color showing the evolution of the flag, is given in *History of the Union Jack: How It Grew and What It Is* by Barlow Cumberland (Ryerson Press).

George, the patron saint of England, is said to have been born in Cappadocia. His parents were noble, highly educated, and Christians, and from them he received a careful religious training. At an early age he became a soldier and rose rapidly in his profession. He is said to have visited Britain in connection with a military expedition. When the Emperor Diocletian began his persecution of the Christians, George sought a personal interview with him, professed his faith, and at once renounced his commission in the army. He was seized, cruelly tortured, and finally put to death at Nicomedia on April 23rd, 303. In 1222 the Council of Oxford ordered that his feast—April 23rd—should be kept as a national festival, but it was not until the reign of Edward III that he was made the patron saint of England. An interesting account of St. George is given in *Stories of Old* by E. L. Hoskyn (Macmillan) and in *St. George of Merry England* prepared by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland, was one of the Twelve Apostles of Jesus. He was born at Bethsaida, on the Lake of Galilee, and had been a disciple of John the Baptist. It is said that after the crucifixion of Christ he preached throughout Asia Minor, and even as far as the Volga River. He was crucified at Patras, in Achæa, on a cross similar in shape to that which ever since has borne his name. It is said that his relics were miraculously brought to Scotland and buried on the spot where St. Andrew's now stands. The stories connected with him are many and are chiefly legendary. About the middle of the 8th century he became the patron saint of Scotland, his day being celebrated on November 30th. See *The Seven Champions of Christendom* prepared by W. H. Webster in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland, was born probably about the year 389. He is said to have been born in Scotland and to have been brought up as a Christian. At the age of sixteen he was carried away to Ireland by a band of Irish marauders and was employed as a cattle-herder. After six years he made his escape and landed in Gaul. Subsequently he returned to Ireland and converted that country to Christianity. He died at Saul, in the north of Ireland, on March 17th, 461, and was buried there. "His grave is with us to this day; the cathedral of Downpatrick has been raised as his tombstone; but what is far better, we have the inspiration of his life and example." He early became the patron saint of Ireland, his day being celebrated on March 17th. A full and interesting account of St. Patrick is given in *Stories of the Irish Saints Told for Children* by the Rev. J. Sinclair Stevenson (Religious Tract). See also E. L. Hoskyn's *Stories of Old*. See also *The Saints of the Union Flag and One More* (McDougall).

PAGE 164—**Guardian ships.** The ships that guard and protect even the most distant parts of the Empire.

Beacon light. A light to guard and direct.

Main. Sea.

Crimsoned sod. Red with the blood of those who have fallen.

ARACHNE

This selection is taken from *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian Stoughton Hyde (Heath). It is one of the Greek nature-myths. In addition to offering an explanation of the origin of the spider, it teaches a lesson in modesty and respect for the gods. In its details the text differs somewhat from the generally accepted story. The father of Arachne, Idmon, was a dyer, not a fisherman, and lived at Colophon, a town of Ionia, in Asia Minor, near the sea-coast. F. A. Farrar in *Old Greek Nature Stories* (Harrap) says: "The story of Arachne arose through the wonderful skill displayed by the spider in making its web. The fineness of the threads surpasses anything that can be made by human spinning, and the web is a wonderfully beautiful and delicate piece of work. In ancient times the spinning and weaving of wool and flax were carried on at home, and this work, with the making of clothes, formed a very important part of the duties of the female part of the household. Even ladies of the highest rank did not think this work beneath them, but took great pride in turning out fine, even threads, and weaving them into beautiful patterns." See *Stories of Old Greece and Rome* by Emilie Kip Baker (Macmillan) and *The Age of Fable* by Thomas Bulfinch in *Everyman's Library* (Dent). A good dramatic version of the story is found on page 106 of *A Dramatic Version of Greek Myths and Hero Tales* by Fanny Comstock (Ginn).

All the books mentioned above are rich in Greek myths similar to "Arachne," which are quite suitable for class-room use: Clytie, Europa, Echo, Eurydice, Circe, Psyche, Aurora, Iris, Daphne, and many others.

PAGE 165—**Little shell-fish.** George Rawlinson in *Phœnicia* in *The Story of the Nations* series (Unwin) says: "The Mediterranean waters off the Phœnician coast, and especially off the tract between Mount Carmel and Tyre, abound with two species of shell-fish capable of furnishing an exquisite dye. The mollusks which inhabit the shells have a receptacle or *sac* behind the head, in which a very minute portion of colorless, creamy fluid is contained, having a strong smell of garlic. If it be carefully extracted by a hook, or a pointed pencil, and applied to wool, linen, or cotton,

and the material be then exposed to a strong light, it becomes successively green, blue red, deep purple-red, and by washing in soap and water, a bright crimson, which last tint is permanent."

PAGE 166—**Tyrian.** Tyre, the capital of Phœnicia in Asia Minor, was situated on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea.

Minerva. H. A. Guerber in *Myths of Greece and Rome* (American Book Co.) says: "Although immortal, the gods were not exempt from physical pain. One day Jupiter, the king of the gods, suffered intensely from a sudden head-ache, and, in hope that some mode of alleviation would be devised, he summoned all the gods to Olympus. Their united efforts were vain, however; and even the remedies suggested by Apollo, god of medicine, proved inefficacious. Unwilling, or perchance unable to endure the racking pain any longer, Jupiter bade one of his sons, Vulcan, cleave his head open with an axe. With cheerful alacrity the dutiful god obeyed; and no sooner was the operation performed than Minerva sprang out of her father's head, full-grown, clad in glittering armor, with poised spear, and chanting a triumphant song of victory. The assembled gods recoiled in fear before this unexpected apparition, while at the same time a mighty commotion over land and sea proclaimed the advent of a great divinity. The goddess who had then joined the inhabitants of Olympus was destined to preside over peace, defensive war, and needlework, and to be the incarnation of wisdom." Her worship was universal throughout the ancient world. Among the Greeks she was known as Pallas and Athene, or as Pallas Athene. See "Minerva, the Goddess of Wisdom" on page 86 of *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn).

PAGE 168—**Olympus.** According to the Greeks their country was situated in the exact centre of the earth, which they supposed to be a disc. In the exact centre of Greece was Mount Olympus, the fabled home of the gods. "The mountain is about a mile and a half high and is covered with pleasant woods, caves, and grottos. On the top there is neither wind, nor rain, nor clouds, but an eternal spring."

THE WRECK OF THE HESPERUS

This ballad was printed in the *New World* on January 14th, 1840. The editor wrote to Longfellow: "Your ballad, *The Wreck of the Hesperus* is grand. Enclosed are twenty-five dollars, the sum you mentioned for it, paid by the proprietors of the *New World*, in which glorious paper it will resplendently coruscate on Saturday next. Of all American journals, the *New World* is alone worthy to contain it." Longfellow in his Journal

for December 30th, 1839, writes: "I wrote last evening a notice of Allston's poems. After which I sat till twelve o'clock by my fire, when suddenly it came into my mind to write the *Ballad of the Schooner Hesperus*; which I accordingly did. Then I went to bed, but could not sleep. New thoughts were running in my mind, and I got up to add them to the ballad. It was three by the clock. I then went to bed and fell asleep. I feel pleased with the ballad. It hardly cost me an effort. It did not come into my mind by lines, but by stanzas."

An excellent companion poem to "The Wreck of the Hesperus" is "Alec Yeaton's Son" by Thomas Bailey Aldrich to be found on page 141 of the Sixth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

PAGE 169—**Hesperus.** The suggestion for the title of the ballad is found in Longfellow's Journal under date of December 6th, 1839: "News of shipwrecks horrible on the coast. Twenty bodies washed ashore near Gloucester, one lashed to a piece of the wreck. There is a reef called Norman's Woe, where many of these wrecks took place; among others the schooner *Hesperus*. Also the *Sea Flower* on Black Rock. Must write a ballad on this."

Skipper. The captain or master of the schooner.

Fairy-flax. The mountain flax, which has a delicate blue flower.

Hawthorn. The hawthorn, or white thorn, has beautiful white blossoms. Mrs. William Starr Dana's *How to Know the Wild Flowers* contains a striking illustration of the flower. See page 78. See also "Hawthorn" on page 122 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

Ope. Open.

Helm. The steering wheel.

Veering flaw. Erratic and sudden gusts of wind.

Spanish Main. The Spanish ocean, off the coast of Central America. The name, however, was popularly applied to the northern South American and the Central American coasts.

Golden ring. A ring around the moon is supposed to portend a storm.

Brine. The salty ocean.

PAGE 170—**Amain.** Violently.

Church-bells. The church bells, the guns, and the gleaming lights were distress signals.

PAGE 171—**Stilled the wave.** See *Luke viii, 24*.

Norman's Woe. A dangerous reef near the entrance to Gloucester harbor on the Massachusetts coast.

Whooping billow. Various terms strictly applicable to animate beings only are frequently applied by the poets to the wind and the waves, such

as "growling," "whining," "muttering," "snoring," etc. The context generally determines the meaning.

PAGE 172—**Shrouds.** Ropes; rigging.

By the board. Over the *board*, or side.

THE UNKNOWN PAINTER

This story is taken from Book IV of *The Royal Readers* (Nelson). It is told in verse by John Godfrey Saxe under the title *Murillo and His Slave: A Legend of Spain*, to be found on page 105 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). See pages 74-94 of Book IV of *The Art-Literature Readers* by Frances E. Chutter (Atkinson).

PAGE 172—**Murillo.** Bartolomé Esteban Murillo was born at Seville about the end of the year 1617. He early exhibited a decided talent for drawing, and this encouraged his parents, although they were in very humble circumstances, to place him under the care of a celebrated artist, Juan del Castillo. He proved an apt pupil and soon outstripped his master. He improved his style by numerous visits to foreign countries, and in a short time became one of the most celebrated painters of his age. He died at Seville, as the result of a fall from a scaffold, on April 3rd, 1682. "He was a man of gentle, winning nature, whom everybody loved. He took his honors simply and had no ambition to extend his fame beyond the borders of his native city. He loved his own country and his own people with passionate loyalty. Above all things else he was a man of sincere piety." "As a colorist he surpassed all other Spanish artists. His productions are remarkable for originality, fidelity to nature, freedom of touch and softness, splendor, and harmony of color. He delighted and excelled in the representation of virgin saints and of beggar-boys at play." Reproductions and descriptions of fifteen of Murillo's most celebrated paintings are found in *Murillo* by Estelle M. Hurl in *The Riverside Art Series* (Houghton). See also *Murillo* by S. L. Susesan in *Masterpieces in Colour* (Jack).

Seville. A famous old city of Spain on the left bank of the Guadalquivir River. It possesses great historical and architectural interest, and is noted particularly for its university and its library. The provincial Museum there contains the largest collection of the paintings of Murillo.

PAGE 174—**The Virgin.** Murillo was specially fond of painting the Virgin Mary. One of his best known paintings, "The Madonna and Child," is described, with a beautiful reproduction, in Estelle M. Hurl's *Murillo*. "Given religious subjects to paint, he imbued his work with the strong emotional character which he shared with his race. The ardent

temperament, the semi-oriental love of color and sensuous beauty characteristic of all Spaniards, was nowhere stronger than in Andalusia, and Murillo was a true son of the soil."

Sebastian. Bryan's *Dictionary of Painters and Engravers* (Macmillan) gives the following account of the slave-boy: "Sebastian Gomez, called *El Mulato de Murillo*, born in 1646, was a mulatto servant of the celebrated Murillo. From witnessing the exercise of his master's talents he conceived a liking for art, and passed his leisure time in efforts to follow it, which were successful. After the death of Murillo, he painted some pictures for the churches and convents at Seville. In the portico of the convent of the Mercenarios Descalzos there is a painting by him of 'The Virgin and Infant Christ'; and at the Capuchins, 'Christ Bound to the Pillar.' There are several other works by him at Seville, where he died in 1690."

Signor. Sir.

PAGE 175—**Classic Italy.** There are very few of Murillo's paintings in Italy. The greater number are to be found in Seville, Madrid, London, and Petrograd. There is only one important picture of Sebastian's outside of Seville, and that is in Petrograd.

A RIDE FOR LIFE

This selection is taken from Chapter IV of *The Man from Glengarry*, published in 1901. The incident related in the text stands by itself; it is not necessary to relate it to the plot of the book as a whole. Ronald Macdonald is the hero of the story; at this time he was a boy of seventeen. Don Cameron, a year older, was his close friend. Mrs. Murray, the wife of the clergyman of the settlement, is really the leading character of the novel. At the time of the incident here told, she was on her way to visit Ronald's father, who had been injured by a falling tree.

The gray wolf, or as he is more generally known, the timber wolf, will weigh, when fully grown, over one hundred and fifty pounds. Ernest Ingersoll in *The Life of Animals: Mammals* (Macmillan) says: "The peaceable summer disposition of the wolf changes as the snow fills the forest, the cold gales moan through the trees, and the long, dark nights enshroud an almost dead world, into hungry ferocity and a force of craft and caution born of the direst need, breeding a daring which at last makes the animal formidable to man himself. Much exaggeration has crept into the popular history of wolves, but basis enough remains to make certain that travellers through the wintry wilderness have more than once been attacked, pulled down, and killed by these beasts, whose boldness, endurance, and persistence in pursuit, when crazed by famine, are almost boundless. Never-

theless more persons have been scared than hurt; and that mainly by the terrific howling which multiplies itself by its rapid, echoing volume, until it seems as though a dozen wolves were clamoring in concert." A very interesting description of wolves, with a colored illustration of the wolf pack attacking a post-sledge in Russia, is found on page 152 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). The article contains several stories of wolves attacking travellers. See also "Wolves" on page 20 of *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack).

PAGE 176—**They were avoiding.** They had taken the longer course around by the Cameron's house in order to avoid the swamp, since the wolves were known to be out.

PAGE 177—**Suspicious nature.** Suspicious of a trap.

PAGE 178—**Dropped it.** This is a favorite device of those who are chased by wolves.

His own back lane. They were on their way to Ranald's home when they were attacked by the wolves.

THE ENCHANTED SHIRT

Two stanzas which are not material to the poem are omitted from the text. In the original, an imitation of the ancient ballads, the poem is divided into three parts:

(1) *Fytte the First: wherein it shall be known how the Truth is too mighty a Drug for such as be of feeble temper.* This includes stanzas 1-7 of the text.

(2) *Fytte the Second: tells of the search of the Shirt and how it was nigh found but was not, for reasons which are said or sung.* This includes stanzas 8-13 of the text.

(3) *Fytte the Third: shewing how His Majesty the King came at last to sleep in a Happy Man his Shirt.* This includes stanzas 14-16 of the text.

John Hay is better known as an historian and a diplomat than as a poet, but he has written some ballads which have gained general acceptance. Among these are *Jim Bludso*, *Little Breeches*, *Banty Tim*, and *Golyer*. One of his best poems is *The Prairie* published in 1858. He was born at Salem, Indiana, on October 8th, 1838. After graduating from Brown University in 1858, he studied law in the office of Abraham Lincoln and was admitted to the Illinois bar in 1861. Soon afterwards he became assistant private secretary to President Lincoln and served in that capacity until the death of the president. Later he was employed in various diplomatic missions, served for a time on the *New York Tribune*, and in 1897 was appointed

United States ambassador to Great Britain. In the next year he became Secretary of State for the United States and retained this position until his death in 1905. He was author, with John G. Nicolay, of *Abraham Lincoln: A History*, a monumental life of the great president. "He was a man of quiet and unassuming disposition, whose training in diplomacy gave a cool and judicious character to his statesmanship."

THE SOWER AND THE SEED

This selection is Verses 1-8 of the 13th Chapter of *Matthew*. The parable is explained in Verses 18-23 of the same chapter. See *The Gospel According to St. Matthew* edited by the Rev. A. Carr in *The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) and *St. Matthew* in *The Century Bible* (Jack).

Similar Bible readings suited to Grade IV are found in Book IV of *Graded Bible Readers* (Nelson).

PAGE 182—**And sat.** The ordinary position of a Jewish teacher.

In parables. "Parables differ from fables in being pictures of possible occurrences—frequently of actual daily occurrences—and in teaching *religious* truths rather than *moral* truths."

By the way-side. On the narrow path between the fields.

Withered away. There was no depth of soil to support life.

Thorns. Weeds, etc.

STARS

This little poem requires no explanation.

A MEETING IN THE RAIN

This selection is taken from *John Halifax's Boyhood told from Mrs. Craik's "John Halifax, Gentleman"* (Nelson). The language is somewhat simplified from that of Mrs. Craik, and a few details of the original story are omitted. To all intents and purposes, however, the story is as written by Mrs. Craik. The whole of *John Halifax's Boyhood* may with advantage be read to the pupils. See also *John Halifax, Gentleman* abridged from Mrs. Craik in *McDougall's Supplementary Readers* (McDougall).

"The hero of this story is one of nature's noblemen, who, beginning life as a poor boy, works his way up to prosperity by means of his high principles, undaunted courage, and nobility of character. Orphaned

at the age of eleven years, from that time he is dependent upon his own resources. He willingly undertakes any kind of honest work, and for three years gains a livelihood by working for farmers, but at the end of that time is taken into the employ of a Mr. Fletcher, a wealthy tanner. This is the beginning of his better fortune, for Phineas Fletcher, his master's invalid son, takes a great fancy to him and aids him with his education. The heroine is Ursula March: and the simple, domestic story includes few minor characters. The interest lies in the development of character; and the author's assertion is that true nobility is of the soul and does not inhere in wealth, in learning, or in position, and that integrity and loftiness of purpose form the character of a true gentleman. The story is fresh, healthful, and full of interest, and gives an ideal picture of home life in England during the past century." The novel was published in 1856.

PAGE 183—Thee need not. Abel Fletcher was a Quaker and a Gloucestershire man and so used the pronoun "thee" instead of "you."

Hand-carriage. Phineas Fletcher was a cripple.

PAGE 184—The tanyard. Mr. Fletcher was engaged in the business of tanning.

Our coarse drawl. The dialect of Gloucestershire.

PAGE 186—A groat. A fourpenny piece coined in England from 1836 to 1856. It is not now in use.

PAGE 187—Miss Ursula. Ursula March is the heroine of the novel.

HEIDI

This selection is taken from Chapters I and II of *Heidi*. The first few paragraphs are adapted, so as to make a continuous narrative.

The editor of the excellent edition of *Heidi* in *Everyman's Library* (Dent) says: "Madame Spyri, like Hans Andersen, had by temperament a peculiar skill in writing the simple histories of an innocent world. In all her stories she shows an underlying desire to preserve children alike from the misunderstanding and the mistaken kindness that frequently hinder the happiness and natural development of their lives and characters. The authoress, as we feel in reading her tales, lived among the scenes and people she described, and the setting of her stories has the charm of the mountain scenery amid which she places her small actors."

An excellent companion selection by the same author is "Moni the Goat Boy" on page 186 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). The selection is preceded by a graphic sketch of Madame Spyri.

The story of *Heidi* is briefly as follows: Heidi, a little Swiss girl, was left an orphan when she was a year old in the care of her grandmother and her Aunt Dete. When she was four her grandmother died. Her Aunt Dete continued to care for her, until she was offered a position where she could not take the child. Accordingly, she took her to her grandfather, who lived among the mountains. The grandfather, called Alm-Uncle, was a solitary man, living in the midst of his mountains, with faith in neither God nor man. But the child at once won his affection, and they lived happily in their humble home. The child spent the summer days on the mountainside watching the goats with Peter, the little herdsman, and the winter days with Peter's blind grandmother, bringing happiness to the old woman. She had a happy time with her grandfather and her simple duties and pleasures. Then Aunt Dete returned and took Heidi away to be companion to a little invalid named Clara in Frankfurt. There she spent nearly two years. She was kindly treated, taught to read and write, and had everything she could wish for, but her heart was lonesome for the mountains. She was taken ill, and the doctor ordered that she should be sent back to her grandfather. On the mountains she was again happy. She made happy also the old grandmother, and her own grandfather softened under her unconscious influence, so that he regained the faith he had lost long before. The doctor visited her in her home, and she was able to console him for the loss of his daughter. The little invalid Clara, who also came to the mountains, was restored to health by the wholesomeness of the air and the care of Heidi and her grandfather. Then Clara's father came to take the former invalid away, but before leaving he provided for Heidi, so that her grandfather need not worry about her future. The doctor himself came to live among the mountains with Alm-Uncle and Heidi. The old grandmother was also provided for, so Heidi and Peter were happy watching the goats on the mountains.

PAGE 191—**On the Alps.** The Swiss Alps are described with illustration on page 73 of Book IV of *Highroads of Geography* (Nelson).

PAGE 195—**Primroses.** See page 69.

Gentians. See page 119.

Rock-roses. The flowers of the rock-rose, or frost-weed, are bright yellow, but very fragile. "Under the influence of the sunshine they open once; by the next day their petals have fallen, and their brief beauty is a thing of the past." A good description of the plant with a colored illustration is given on page 9 of *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). See also a very full description in *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset).

BRUCE AND THE SPIDER

The incident in the text is said to have taken place during the time that the fortunes of Bruce were at their lowest ebb. It was while on the island of Rathlin, when all hope of regaining his kingdom seemed to be gone, that the spider taught him the lesson of perseverance, and so gave him the strength and courage to continue his fight until at length he regained his kingdom.

Robert Bruce was the son of the 7th Robert de Bruce, Earl of Carrick, and the 8th in direct male descent from a Norman baron who went to England with William the Conqueror. His grandfather, Robert Bruce, had disputed with John Baliol the kingship of Scotland, but his claims had been decided against by Edward I of England, who made this dispute a pretext to interfere in the affairs of the northern kingdom.

Bruce was born at Turnberry, Ayrshire, on July 11th, 1274, and his youth is said to have been passed at the court of the English king. In 1292 his father surrendered to him his title, and thenceforth he was known as the Earl of Carrick. In the disputes between Baliol and Edward, Bruce sided with the latter, and for some years continued high in his favor. In 1297, however, he joined with Sir William Wallace in the effort to free his country from the English yoke, but he soon made his peace with Edward and fought with him in Scotland against his own people.

In 1304 Bruce's father died, and this seems to have changed all his plans. He made a secret agreement with some of the Scottish leaders, and, shortly after the capture and execution of Wallace, made his escape from the court of Edward, reaching Scotland in safety. Very soon he met John Comyn, the nephew and heir of John Baliol, in a church at Dumfries, and, after a violent quarrel, stabbed him at the altar. His only rival to the crown now being removed, he collected his adherents, marched to Scone, and was there crowned king of Scotland, on March 27th, 1306. The murder of Comyn, however, drew on him the enmity of the church, and he was placed under the ban.

Now began the great struggle of King Robert to gain possession of his kingdom. At first he met with nothing but disaster; Edward was determined to crush him. Defeat followed defeat, until he was forced to fly to the island of Rathlin in the Irish Sea. His estates were confiscated; his family was captured; three of his brothers were executed. But he did not yield entirely to despair. Once more he took the field and obtained some slight successes. Edward again marched northward during the summer of 1307, but death overtook him on the way.

The death of Edward changed the whole aspect of affairs. Bruce was now opposed to the weak and fickle Edward II. Victory followed victory, until at the end of six years only three fortresses in Scotland were in the hands of the English. These signal successes at last aroused the feeble Edward. He invaded Scotland with a huge army and was met at Bannockburn by Bruce and the Scots on June 24th, 1313. The victory of the Scots was overwhelming, Edward making his escape with great difficulty. The triumph of Bruce was complete. A general Parliament which met at Ayr in 1315 recognized him as the lawful king of Scotland and fixed the succession in his heirs. Soon after, the ban of the church was raised. The war with England dragged on during the reign of Edward II, and it was not until 1328, after Edward III had come to the throne, that England acknowledged the independence of Scotland and recognized Robert as its king. Bruce did not long survive the completion of his life-work. He died at Cardross on June 7th, 1329, from leprosy contracted during the wandering life of his early struggles, and was buried at Dunfermline.

Although Bruce had been forgiven by the church for the murder of Comyn, he had never really forgiven himself, and it was his dearest wish to make war upon the Saracens, as some expiation for his crime. He never had an opportunity, however, to take part in a crusade to recover Jerusalem from the infidels, as the affairs of his kingdom claimed his attention, and, during his later years, his body was very much enfeebled by disease. His heart was, by his dying wish, entrusted to Douglas, one of his favorite and trusted knights, to take to the Holy Land, and so carry out his long desire. After the death of Douglas in Spain, the heart was brought back to Scotland and buried in Melrose Abbey.

In connection with the life of Bruce three books will be found of service: *The Story of Robert the Bruce* by Jeanie Lang in *The Children's Heroes* (Jack), *Stories from Barbour's "Bruce"* edited by John Wood in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), and *The Story of Robert the Bruce* by Lewis Spence in *Herbert Strang's Readers* (Oxford Press).

Eliza Cook, the daughter of a London brassier, was born on December 24th, 1818. She was almost entirely self-educated, although her mother encouraged her fondness for imaginative literature. She began to write poetry at the age of fifteen, and her first volume, *Lays of a Wild Harp*, was published in 1835, when she was only seventeen. Her health was bad during almost all her life, but she continued her literary work. Most of her poems convey a moral lesson. She died on September 23rd, 1889. Her best known poem is, perhaps, *The Old Arm Chair*, a general favorite wherever the English language is known.

BILLY TOPSAIL

This selection is taken from *The Adventures of Billy Topsail* by Norman Duncan, published by the Fleming H. Revell Company, New York. The book contains other interesting stories of the hero quite suitable for pupils of this grade. Norman Duncan's *Billy Topsail with Dr. Luke of the Labrador* (Grosset) relates the further adventures of Billy.

Estelle M. Hurl in *Landseer* in *The Riverside Art Series* says: "The Newfoundland dog is a general favorite for his many good qualities. He is very sagacious and faithful and unites great strength with equal gentleness. He is at once an excellent watchdog and a companionable member of the household. Children are often entrusted to his care: he makes a delightful playmate, submitting good-naturedly to all a child's caprices and apparently enjoying the sport. At the same time he keeps a watchful eye against any danger to his charge, and no suspicious character is allowed to molest. It is possible to train such dogs to all sorts of useful service. They are not only strong swimmers, but also remarkable divers, sometimes keeping their heads under the surface for a considerable time. Nature seems to have fitted them for the rescue of the drowning, and in this humane calling they have made a noble record. Innumerable stories are told of people falling from boats, bridges, or piers, who have been brought safely to land by these dog heroes. The dog seizes the person by some part of the clothing, or perhaps by a limb, and with the weight dragging at his mouth, makes his way to the shore. He seems to take great pains to hold the burden as gently as possible, keeping the head above water with great sagacity. Some one has told of seeing a dog rescue a drowning canary, holding it so lightly in the mouth that it was quite uninjured."

Stories of the faithfulness of dogs in their relation to man are very numerous. One or two may be mentioned: "The Newfoundland Dog's Revenge" on page 90 of Book IV of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan); "Llewellyn and His Dog" by Robert Southey on page 105 and "Fidelity" by William Wordsworth on page 108 of Book II of *The Land of Song* by Katharine H. Shute (Silver); and "A Faithful Dog" by Samuel White Baker on page 77 of *The Out-of-Door Book* selected by Eva March Tappan in *The Children's Hour* series (Houghton). This last is an excellent story for classroom use.

PAGE 201—**Punt.** A boat with a flat bottom and square ends.

PAGE 202—**Fended for himself.** Provided his own food.

Cuddy. Locker.

AN APRIL MORNING

This beautiful nature poem from the pen of Bliss Carman, a native New Brunswicker, is one of the best descriptive poems that we have. PAGE 211—**Plumey.** Feathery.

Golden-wings. This may refer either to the golden-winged woodpecker, also known as the flicker, or to the golden-winged warbler. P. A. Taverner, in *Birds of Western Canada*, describes the flicker as "grayish-fawn on back, with broken bars of black; vinaceous face and throat fading to white below; light underparts and flanks, with many sharp, round, black spots; a black gorget across breast; crown slate gray with red bar across nape. Male with black moustache mark from gape. Under-surface and shafts of flight and tail feathers in all plumages brilliant yellow; rump, white. The Flicker is perhaps the Woodpecker most familiar to the general public. Its loud, characteristic notes of '*Flicker-flicker-flicker*', or long-drawn '*Piew-w-w*', are well known and easily recognizable sounds. It has a habit of clinging to some hollow-sounding tree trunk and rolling out a long, reverberating tattoo that can be heard for long distances." The golden-winged warbler is "white or very light gray below, darkening on the flanks, with yellow cap and wing patch and black cheeks and throat. Though called 'warblers', their song should, as a rule, hardly be dignified by such a term. With few exceptions the songs are only insignificant little notes without much prolonged continuity."

Bluebirds. See page 134.

HUNTING THE CHAMOIS

The illustration on page 213 of the text gives a good, general idea of the chamois. The animal is a chestnut brown in summer, but lighter and grayer in winter. The tail is short and black, the face marked with black and white, and a black strip along the back. The horns are vertical and backwardly hooked. In summer they seek the highest and coldest parts of the mountains for their browsing-ground. In the winter, the chamois feed on the young shoots and buds of the fir and pine trees. A good description of the chamois, with a colored illustration, is given in *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack). An excellent sketch of the chamois to read to the pupils is found on page 231 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson).

PAGE 212—**Alp meadow.** See description in "Heidi" on page 191 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

PAGE 213—**Up-wind.** So that the wind blows from the chamois to the hunter.

PAGE 214—Marvellous scene. "The chamois will not hesitate to hop down twenty or thirty feet, and this it effects with apparent ease by throwing itself forward diagonally and striking its feet several times on its descent against the face of the rock."

MAGGIE AND TOM

This selection is taken from Chapter VII of *The Mill on the Floss* by George Eliot (Mary Ann Evans), published in 1860.

The following synopsis, adapted from *The Library of the World's Best Literature* edited by Charles Dudley Warner (Glasgow, Brook), gives a general idea of the plot of the novel, so far as it concerns the incident related in the text: "Maggie Tulliver, the daughter of the miller of Dorlcote Mill, is from childhood misunderstood and dominated by the coarse-grained, well-meaning people about her. Her brother Tom, a healthy young animal with selfish masculine instincts, accepts her devotion as he would that of a dog. He teases her because she is a girl. He hates her when she eludes him by going into her fairy-land of imagination, whither he cannot follow her. She loves him devotedly, but to her love always brings suffering. She is ill-regulated, and is therefore not a favorite with her aunts, Mrs. Glegg and Mrs. Pullet, who can see no trace of the respectable Dodgson blood about her. Maggie's childhood is a series of conflicts with respectability. In her girlhood the passionate little heart is somewhat subdued to her surroundings. Family troubles are brewing. They culminate in the death of Mr. Tulliver, and in the sale of Dorlcote Mill. Maggie ceases to be a child, becomes a woman. The needs of her nature find satisfaction in the companionship of Philip Wakem, the crippled son of the lawyer who helped to ruin Mr. Tulliver. It is the story of Romeo and Juliet, of the lovers whose families are at feud, translated into homely English life. Maggie must renounce Philip—Tom hates him and his race with all the strength of his uncompromising nature. The next temptation in her way is Stephen Guest who is betrothed to her cousin Lucy Deane. The two are thrown together. She agrees to run away with Stephen, but at the last moment turns back, although she knows she has endangered her good name. From that time she faces the contumely of the little village community. Death, and death only, can reconcile her to the world and to Tom, who has stood as the embodiment of the world's harshest judgment. She and Tom are drowned together in the great flood of the Floss." The youth of Tom and Maggie is well treated in *Tom and Maggie Tulliver told from George Eliot's "Mill on the Floss"* (Nelson). This is an excellent book to read to the pupils.

This selection affords splendid opportunities for character study. Indeed it is that that distinguishes *The Mill on the Floss* among modern novels. "The Dodgson family is hardly surpassed in fiction." Note the general atmosphere of petty criticism that surrounds the gathering. Note the attitude of Aunt Glegg, Aunt Pullet, Aunt Deane, the uncles, Mr. Tulliver, Mrs. Tulliver, and Tom towards Maggie. Note particularly the brutal inconsiderateness of even the beloved brother. Follow throughout the course of Maggie's emotions and note how the child peeps out every few moments.

Homer P. Lewis in *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* (Lippincott) says: "The sketches of Tom and Maggie in *The Mill on the Floss* are descriptions of the author's own childhood. She too had an older brother, just as Maggie had in Tom. And the two Evans children had some uncles and aunts from whom they used to run away, when they asked them too many questions about the right way to behave. She and her brother, Isaac, were great playmates, just as Tom and Maggie were. Then too the little girl had a great deal of very straight rebellious hair, just as Maggie had, which was always getting into her eyes and bothering her very much and troubling her mother still more. Whether she ever cut it off and then saw how much happier she would have been if she had not done so, we do not know. But it is always better for a little girl to remember that her mother knows best about such things. No doubt, her brother Isaac, while he played with her and sometimes took her fishing with him in the canal which was the only river near their home, also teased and scolded his little sister just as Tom teased Maggie and called her 'spit-fire!' But Mary Ann Evans loved her brother very dearly for all that and they were great friends as long as they lived."

PAGE 216—**Cousin Lucy.** Lucy Deane, who later played such an important part in the life of Maggie. Compare the two children so far as they are here portrayed.

PAGE 223—**Had done ill by.** Had not left them well-provided for.

DEVON MEN

This stirring patriotic poem was written during the early days of the Great War and was first published in London *Punch*. Devon has always been renowned for the fighting blood of its people, especially on the sea. Charles Kingsley lays the scene of his *Westward Ho!*, a tale of the fighting seamen of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, in and around Bideford and Appledore. In the poem these two places are taken as representative of Devon. In Charles G. D. Roberts' ballad of *The Laughing Sally*,

to be found in *Selections of Prose and Poetry* (Gage), when the pirates, who have escaped from the English ship of war, look out from their shelter and see the king's ship attacked by two Frenchmen, they immediately rush to the rescue and go down with colors flying:

“Then muttered the mate, ‘I’m a man of Devon!’

And the captain thundered then—

‘There’s English rope that bides for our necks,

But we all be Englishmen’.”

See also “Drake’s Drum” in *Collected Poems* by Sir Henry Newbolt (Nelson). Note carefully the comparison made in the second and third stanzas. As Englishmen were then so are they now.

In Books III and IV of *The Canadian Readers* there are a number of poems which owe their inspiration to the Great War. These were carefully chosen, and each is a masterpiece in itself. However, in the nature of things, only a few such poems could be given a place in the *Readers*. There are many others quite as good and quite as suitable for class reading. The best selection for school use is contained in *The Great War in Verse and Prose* selected and edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto). Archdeacon H. J. Cody says in the preface: “The selections of verse and prose in this book set forth the varying and successive phases of the War, and seek to remind, to inform, and to inspire. The teachers will use them as vehicles of moral and patriotic instruction. The pupils will keep them forever in their hearts and minds.” The most complete collection of Great War poetry is that contained in *Treasury of War Poetry* edited by George Herbert Clarke in two volumes (Houghton). *Poems of the Great War* edited by J. W. Cunliffe (Macmillan) is an excellent collection. About two hundred and twenty poems written by Canadian authors are contained in *Canadian Poems of the Great War* chosen and edited by John W. Garvin (McClelland). See also *Songs and Sonnets for England in War Time* (Lane) and *Fighting Lines and Various Reinforcements* by Harold Begbie (Constable).

PAGE 224—Bideford. A seaport town of Devon on the Torridge, above the estuary of the Taw. It has now about 10,000 inhabitants. Sir Richard Grenville, who fought a Spanish Armada in his single vessel, the *Revenge*, was born at Bideford.

Appledore. A watering-place near Bideford.

Kingcup. The bulbous buttercup. Frederic William Stack in *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* (Grosset) says: “The kingcup is easily identified by its bulbous root, which, from its energy-storing nature, enables its flower to appear first of its kind in the spring. The flowers are large and the sepals are bent downwards, often close to the stem.

The deep, glossy yellow petals usually number five, but often appear in sixes or sevens, and the flower measures over an inch in diameter." A description of the flower with a colored illustration is given on page 2 of *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). See also "The Common Buttercup" on page 126 of Part II of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

Buttercup. The meadow buttercup, common throughout Canada. Frederic William Stack's *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* has a very elaborate description of the plant. The author says: "The finely ribbed and branching stalk grows two or three feet high from fibrous roots. It is erect and generally hairy, hollow, and stout. The conspicuous flower is an inch broad, with five rather wide and rounding bright yellow petals. The inner surface is exceedingly glossy, like enamel, while the outer is dull and paler in color." See also description and colored illustration on page 3 of Janet Harvey Kelman's *Flowers Shown to the Children* and "Buttercups" on page 21 of *Children's Flowers* by S. L. Dyson (Religious Tract). See page 80.

Flout. Jeer at, in the pride of their summer beauty.

Crooked-back and silver-head. The cripples and the feeble old men.

PAGE 225—**Cross-bow.** *The Standard Dictionary* gives the following: "A missile weapon formed by a bow fixed athwart a stock, in which there is a groove or barrel to direct the missile, a notch or catch to hold the string when the bow is bent, and a trigger to release it." It was in general use in Europe during the Middle Ages. It was used by the English chiefly at sea, instead of the ordinary bow pulled by hand.

Falconet. A small canon with a bore of two inches and carrying a shot weighing about a pound and a half.

Tap. Gather in the gold at its source, as the Spanish ships were taking it from the mines to Spain, or even to make a direct attack on the Spanish mining towns.

Dauntless Drake. Sir Francis Drake.

Traffic. The traffic consisted in boarding the Spanish ships and taking from them by force their rich cargoes.

Main. The Spanish Main. See page 186.

Drowsy. Sleepy, slow-sailing.

Galleon. "A large, unwieldy ship, usually having three or four decks, and carrying guns, of a kind formerly used by the Spaniards, especially as a treasure-ship, in their commerce with South America."

Loot the treasure train. Frequently daring bands of Englishmen would land on the coast, move inland, and capture the treasure being transported from the mines to the nearest Spanish town on the coast for removal to Spain.

Subtle gray. So painted as to be almost indistinguishable on the ocean.
Well may fare. They are perfectly safe with steady hearts and strong hands to defend them.

Golden loom. The beautiful colors of summer are as if spun upon a loom of gold.

Tawny. Tanned with the sun and wind.

THE MAID OF ECLUSIER

This selection is taken from Book VI of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson). It is an account of what a brave French girl was able to do for her country during the Great War. Practically the same story is told in Chapter I entitled "Heroines of the Great War" of *The Path of Glory: Heroic Stories of the Great War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson). The story of a very similar incident with an amusing ending is told on page 154 of Volume II of *The Children's Story of the War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson). In Book IV there are four selections dealing with heroic women: Grace Darling, Madeleine de Verchères, Edith Cavell, and Marcelle Semner. Joan of Arc may be added to this list. Interesting comparisons may be made in class. The story of another French heroine entitled "The Heroine of Nancy" is found on page 96 of Book IV of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan). See also "Madame Roland, A Heroine of the French Revolution" by Elvira Daniel Cabell on page 248 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn); "The Little Maid" on page 54 and "Marie's Soldier" on page 64 of Book I, "Deborah's Locket" on page 89 and "Little Matti" on page 119 of Book II, and "The Maid of Saragossa" on page 143 of Book III of *The Young Patriot Readers* (Oxford Press).

PAGE 225—**Joan of Arc.** Joan of Arc, surnamed the Maid of Orleans, was born at Domrèmy in Lorraine about 1411. Her parents were peasants and by no means well to do. Even when very young she was given to long spells of silence and spent much of her time in solitude and prayer. At the early age of thirteen, according to her own account, she first heard the "voices," and very soon afterwards she became convinced that she was divinely commissioned to drive the English from France. Through the influence of a French officer in the neighborhood, she was enabled to set out for the court of Charles, who, although actually king, had not yet been crowned. At this time she was eighteen years of age. Charles became convinced of the truth of her statements and placed her at the head of a body of troops for the relief of Orleans, then besieged by the English. She was successful in her efforts, and within three months Charles had been crowned king in the Cathedral of Reims. As she had

carried out her purpose she begged to be allowed to return home, but the king would not consent, and continued her at the head of the army. She now began to meet with ill-success, and in a sortie near Compiègne she was captured by the Burgundians and handed over to the English. On May 31st, 1421, she was burned at Rouen, as a witch. The French king had made no attempt whatever to save her from her cruel fate. Joan of Arc has long been looked upon as the national heroine of her country. She inspired the men of her time, so they were capable of deeds which before they would have thought impossible. She was made a saint of the Roman Catholic Church at Rome in May 1920. See *The Story of Joan of Arc* by Andrew Lang in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack), *Stories of France in Days of Old* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack), *The Story of Joan of Arc* by Evelyn Ward in *Herbert Strang's Readers* (Oxford Press), and *The Maid Who Saved a Kingdom* (McDougall).

PAGE 226—Canalized river. A river made suitable for use as a canal.

Somme. This little river will always be remembered in the annals of Canada's part in the Great War. It is one hundred and forty miles in length and flows into the English Channel, passing Amiens on the way. It is partly canalized.

Holding the line. This was during the retreat from Mons, shortly after the outbreak of the Great War. The text-book in English History should be consulted, together with a map of the war-zone in France and Belgium such as is found in *The New Dominion Public School Geography* (Gage). A full account of the French and British retreat is given in *How the Fight was Won: A General Sketch of the Great War* by D. E. Hamilton (Department of Education, Toronto) and in *The New Age Encyclopædia* edited by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson). A splendid account of the Battle of the Marne suitable for reading to the pupils is given on page 94 of *Lest We Forget: World War Stories* by John Gilbert Thompson and Inez Bigwood (Silver).

PAGE 227—The drawbridge. The bridge was so constructed that it could be raised to allow boats to pass up and down the canalized river.

Pontoon trains. pontoons are floating bridges constructed of boats, casks, or rafts, fastened by anchors, with planks laid across to form a roadway. As the Germans were in advance of their bridge-building gangs, they were forced to halt.

Found its billet. It is an old saying that "Every bullet has its billet," meaning that "it is appointed beforehand what soldiers will fall in battle; it is no use contending against fate." Marcelle was not fated to be wounded on this occasion.

Shepherded. Note the effectiveness of this word.

Poor fellows. Note the sympathy conveyed by these two words.

PAGE 228—Sentenced to be shot. Compare "Edith Cavell" on page 251 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

PAGE 229—Mentioned in despatches. Her conduct was specially mentioned in the despatches of the commanding general to the Minister of War, thus drawing public attention to her heroism and self-sacrifice. **Legion of Honor.** A French order of merit created in 1802 by Napoleon "for specially recognizing exploits and services both military and civil." The president of France is the grand chancellor of the order. The decoration is a five double-rayed star with oak and laurel wreath.

The Cross of War. A French military and naval decoration instituted on April 8th, 1915, to commemorate the campaign of 1914-1915 in the Great War. It was during the War a much coveted decoration. The French term is "Croix de Guerre." It corresponds to our Military Cross.

SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT

In the original poem as written by Longfellow there are three stanzas at the beginning, which are omitted in the text.

"Southward with fleet of ice
Sailed the corsair Death;
Wild and fast blew the blast,
And the east-wind was his breath.

"His lordly ships of ice
Glisten in the sun;
On each side, like pennons wide,
Flashing crystal streamlets run.

"His sails of white sea-mist
Dripped with silver rain;
But where he passed there were cast
Leaden shadows o'er the main."

In the poem Longfellow obviously adopts the theory that the sinking of Sir Humphrey Gilbert's ship was caused by striking an iceberg. The poet pictures Sir Humphrey sailing back to England from Newfoundland. He has escaped one storm, and he sits on the deck, the Bible in his hand, and utters the words "Heaven is as near by water as by land." But Death is close on his heels. Suddenly the ships of the corsair appear on all sides. They grapple with their victim and bear him swiftly away. The tragedy is complete. Sir Humphrey and his crew have vanished forever.

Longfellow has much the same idea in his poem on the death of the Duke of Wellington, "The Warden of the Cinque Ports." He imagines Death as scaling the walls of the castle, stealing into the room where the old warden lies, and smiting him while he sleeps.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert (1539-1583) was a half-brother of Sir Walter Raleigh. He was educated at Eton and Oxford, and joined the army soon afterwards. He saw active service in France, Flanders, and Ireland, and for a time was governor of Munster. He had always been interested in discovery and exploration, and made an attempt to reach America, but the expedition was a failure. He spent all his own money in preparation for a great venture of colonization and induced many of his friends to assist him in his scheme. On Tuesday, June 11th, 1583, Gilbert sailed from Plymouth with five ships, the *Delight*, the barque *Raleigh*, the *Golden Hind*, the *Swallow*, and the *Squirrel*. The *Raleigh*, two days after sailing, put back to England, but the others sailed on and finally all reached the harbor of St. John.

The *Dictionary of National Biography* has the following account of Gilbert's settlement of Newfoundland and his last days: "On Monday, August 5th, Gilbert took possession in the name of the queen of the harbor of St. John and two hundred leagues every way for himself, his heirs and assigns for ever. Thus was planted the first English colony in North America. Within a fortnight he found himself the governor of a mixed colony of raw adventurers, many of whom were lazy landmen and sailors useless except at sea. Not a few had been taken out of English prisons and intended for servants to the colonists. The best of these begged that they might be taken back to England or anywhere from the lawlessness with which Gilbert was unable to cope. Leaving the *Swallow* to carry home the sick and these who wished to return direct to England, Gilbert left the harbor of St. John with his other three ships on August 20th, with a view to searching the coast towards the south on board the little *Squirrel*. In their attempts to make for Sable Island eight days later the ships fell in with the floes and shoals between Cape Breton Island and the edge of the bank of Newfoundland. On August 29th the largest ship, the *Delight*, struck aground and was lost. Two days later, Gilbert, with his two remaining ships, changed his course for England, intending a speedy return in the following spring. On September 2nd, after sighting Cape Race, Gilbert paid his farewell visit on board the *Golden Hind*, where he was entreated by his friends and followers to stay for his own safety and to abandon his own smaller vessel, the *Squirrel*. This was a craft of ten tons, whose decks were already overloaded with small ordnance and nettings. With his characteristic waywardness he returned to the ill-fated *Squirrel*. On September 9th, in the afternoon,

after emerging from a storm encountered to the south of the Azores, Gilbert was seen sitting aloft the *Squirrel* with a book in his hand; as often as he came within hearing distance of the *Golden Hind*, he was heard to utter the well-known words, 'We are as near to Heaven by sea as by land.' At midnight the watch on board the *Golden Hind*, observing the lights of the *Squirrel* to disappear suddenly, cried out 'the general was cast away,' which was too true; for in that moment the frigate was devoured and swallowed up by the sea." A vivid account of Gilbert's explorations in America is given in the chapter entitled "Gilbert's and Raleigh's American Settlements" in *Famous Voyages of the Great Discoverers* by Eric Wood (Harrap).

PAGE 229—**Campobello.** An island in the Bay of Fundy belonging to New Brunswick.

PAGE 230—**The Book.** The Bible.

Spanish Main. See page 186.

Gulf Stream. The warm current of the Atlantic Ocean.

BLACK BEAUTY'S BREAKING IN

This selection is Chapter III of *Black Beauty: The Autobiography of a Horse*, published in 1877. The book bears as its motto a quotation from *The Life of Charles Kingsley*: "He was a perfect horseman, and never lost his temper with his horse, talking to and reasoning with it if it shied or bolted, as if it had been a rational being, knowing that from the fine organization of the animal, a horse, like a child, will be confused by panic fear, which is only increased by punishment."

The preface to one of the American editions of *Black Beauty* says: "*Black Beauty*, the *Uncle Tom's Cabin* of animal life, was written by an invalid Quaker lady of Yarmouth, England. It has had a larger sale than any other tendency book published in England or America, and has been translated into many languages. Millions of copies have been sold. Miss Sewell wrote the book on a bed of pain; she received one hundred dollars for the copyright; and only lived to see the beginning of its great influence in the world. The volume was published in 1877, and its circulation has never been so large as now. The American Humane Society printed more than half a million copies of the work in a little more than a year. The demand for the book in Latin America is very great. The book was written for an influence to meet a need." See pages 209-227 of Book IV of *The Art-Literature Readers* (Atkinson).

An interesting story of a horse is told in "Skipper" by Sewell Ford on page 80 of Book V of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton). See

also *Heather: The Story of a Dartmoor Pony* by May Wynne (Nelson). A most effective selection to read to the pupils is "The Horse's Prayer" on page 178 of Book IV of *Farm Life Readers* (Silver). This prayer was issued by The Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals, and is a very strong appeal for kindness to and consideration for the horse. See also "The Story of Peggy" on page 78 of Book I of *The Young Patriot Readers* (Oxford Press) and "Midget, the Return Horse" by Enos A. Mills on page 81 of the Sixth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton). An amusing poem in this connection is "The Council of Horses" by John Gay on page 114 of Book II of *The Land of Song* by Katharine H. Shute (Silver).

PAGE 231—**Now beginning.** The first two chapters of *Black Beauty* relate the early history of the colt.

Squire Gordon. It was Squire Gordon who purchased Black Beauty from his first owner, and it was Mrs. Gordon who gave him his name.

PAGE 236—**Many kinds of men.** The story related by Black Beauty in the book illustrates the fact that many kinds of men have to do with horses. "A horse never knows who may buy him, or who may drive him." The whole book is most interesting, and should, if time permits, be read in class.

THE SUN IN THE WOODS

This selection is taken from *The Last Robin: Lyrics and Sonnets* by Ethelwyn Wetherald, published in 1907 by The Ryerson Press. It is, as the title indicates, a picture of the shady forest on a day when the sun is burning up the open spaces with his dazzling beams.

PAGE 236—**Midday moon.** Shines with the softness of the moonbeams.

Gold arrows. Bright beams of sunlight which find their way through the leaves.

Vagrant. Not constant, now shining and now not.

Dusky day. Gloomy within the depths of the forest.

PAGE 237—**Dank-rooted ferns.** Ferns rooted in the damp soil.

Hemlocks. An excellent description of the hemlocks is found on pages 141-144 of *Forests and Trees* by B. J. Hales (Macmillan).

CINCINNATUS

It was during the war with the Æquians that Cincinnatus was made Dictator. The war had been provoked by the Æquians, who had plundered

the lands of some of the allies of Rome and had refused to give satisfaction for the wrong they had done. A Roman army under one of the consuls marched against them, but by a trick, Gracchus, the leader of the Æquians, lured them into a narrow valley, where they were completely surrounded. Before the entrance to the valley was closed, however, five horsemen managed to escape and carried the news to Rome. The other consul was engaged in fighting the Sabines, but he was at once sent for and soon reached Rome. As soon as he arrived a consultation was held, and it was resolved to make Cincinnatus Master of the People, or Dictator. Cincinnatus was at once notified. He hurried to Rome, assumed the command, and in less than a day had relieved the beleaguered Roman army. He was granted a triumph, but immediately this had been celebrated, he gave up his office and returned to his farm. Graphic descriptions of this early episode in Roman history are found in *Stories of Rome in Days of Old* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack) and in *Historical Tales: Roman* by Charles Morris (Lippincott). See also *Famous Men of Rome* by John H. Haaren and A. B. Poland (American Book Co.) and the chapter entitled "The Farmer Hero" in *The Story of the Romans* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

A series of connected stories relating to the Romans, among which is the story of Cincinnatus, is contained in Book II, entitled "The Romans of Old," of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson). The book is beautifully illustrated with colored reproductions of famous paintings relating to Roman history. Suitable stories of Roman history to read to the pupils are found in all of the books mentioned above, particularly in Arthur O. Cooke's *Stories of Rome in Days of Old*.

PAGE 237—The Senate. The governing body of Rome composed mainly of the older and wealthier citizens. *See page 408.*

PAGE 238—Dictator. In times of great danger it was the custom of the Romans to appoint one man as Master of the People, or Dictator. During the six months that his appointment lasted, he had entire control over the city and the army, and had even the power of life and death over the citizens. The Senate could suggest who should be appointed to this high office, but the actual appointment must be made by a consul. In this case Cincinnatus was so appointed.

Cincinnatus. Lucius Quinctus was usually called Cincinnatus, which means "crisp-haired," from the fact that "he let his hair grow long and curled and crised it so carefully as to gain as much fame for his hair as for his wisdom and valor."

Who had retired. Nothing is known of Cincinnatus before his appoint-

ment to the Dictatorship, or as to the reason why the Romans placed such implicit trust in him.

Forum. The public meeting place in Rome, enclosed by the Palatine, Capitoline, and Quirinal hills. It was surrounded on all sides by great public buildings and temples. A beautiful colored illustration of the Forum as it was at the height of Roman power is found on page 11 of Book II of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson). On page 28 of the same book there is a picture of the Forum as it is to-day.

Field of Mars. The Campus Martius, a large field outside the city used as an exercise ground for the Roman youths. It was dedicated to Mars, the god of war. It was beautifully adorned with statues, columns, and arches, and there public assemblies were held and distinguished visitors received.

PAGE 239—**Standard-bearers.** The earliest Roman standard is said to have been a bundle of hay on a pole. Later the eagle was adopted. The illustration in the text shows the eagle at the top of the staff.

PAGE 240—**In triumph.** A distinguished honor granted by the Senate to a Roman commander as a reward for having gained a decisive victory. He entered the city in a car drawn by four horses, preceded by his captives and the standards and spoils taken, and followed by his victorious army. The procession passed along the Sacred Way to the Capitol, where a sacrifice was offered to Jupiter as a thanksgiving. This was the highest honor that could be conferred upon a Roman. A colored illustration entitled "A Triumph at Rome" is found on page 59 of Book II of the *New Age History Readers* (Nelson).

THE CROCUS'S SONG

In this poem the lovely flowers, which spring from the brown earth as soon as the snow is gone and before the grass has even begun to turn green, are used to teach the lesson of hope. The same thought is expressed in "Behind the clouds is the sun still shining" and in "Sorrow endureth for a night, but joy cometh in the morning."

Harriet L. Keeler in *Our Garden Flowers* (Scribner) says: "Instead of a bulb like the daffodil the crocus has a solid corm, which is a depressed and thickened stem. From this corm arise the grass-like leaves in a bundle, the outer series wrapping the inner and giving such support to each other that they really do duty as a stem. The flowers and leaves arrive in the upper world together and like the snowdrop arise early in the year. The flower will open while the frost and snow are still supreme; its own

little spot must be warm, it matters not how much cold there is elsewhere." The flowers of the crocus are purple, yellow, mauve, or white. "They are beautiful anywhere, but especially upon the lawn in the grass, because having only insignificant leaves of their own they look the better for a background of green." An interesting chapter on the crocus is found in *Round the Year* by L. C. Miall (Macmillan).

A recent writer says: "Our association of early spring with the crocus and the daffodil is a memory acquired in gardens; for neither is native to American soil. But to the Greek, whose oneness with nature is still the marvel of the ages, spring comes in the cup of the crocus, in the trumpets of narcissus and amaryllis."

THE FIRST PRINTER

This selection is taken from Book Five of *Story-Hour Readings*, published by the American Book Company, New York. Book Five is an excellent supplementary reader for this grade, as it contains a large number of selections of interest and value to the pupils. It should be remembered that the selection deals with life in certain parts of continental Europe as it was in the early part of the fifteenth century.

There has been for many years a dispute as to the person who really invented the art of printing. The Germans have always upheld the claims of Gutenberg, while the Dutch have been no less insistent that Laurence Coster was the first to use movable types. The story in the text is an effort to reconcile these two conflicting claims. It has little if any foundation in fact, but is none the less interesting on that account. The main point of the selection is that the discovery of printing was a great boon to the world, particularly in that it brought the printed book within the reach of every person at a reasonable price.

PAGE 241—Haarlem. A town in Holland about ten miles west of Amsterdam. It is a very quaint old city, intersected by canals and with long avenues of trees. At this time it was a city of considerable commercial importance.

PAGE 242—John Gutenberg. Gutenberg was born at Mainz, Germany, about the year 1400. His father's name was Gänzfleisch, but he later adopted that of his mother. Practically nothing is known of his life up to the year 1450, when he entered into a partnership with John Faust for the purpose of printing books. Later he quarrelled with Faust, and a lawsuit was the result. He was obliged to surrender his printing plant to

Faust, but later resumed business on his own account. He was appointed an elector of his native city and was raised to the rank of the nobility. He died in 1468. The five hundredth anniversary of his birth was celebrated in many German cities on June 25th, 1900.

Mayence. The French form of Mainz, a city of the first rank on the left bank of the Rhine, in Germany, about twenty-two miles from Frankfort. At this time it contained about 90,000 people.

Genoa, etc. These are all Italian cities. It should be remembered that at the time of this story there was very little travel, so that one who had been to Italy would be an object of some curiosity.

PAGE 243—Laurence Jaonsen. The real name of Coster or Koster was Laurence Janssoen. He was born about 1370 and held various official positions in his native city. He is said to have died during the plague that devastated Haarlem in the years 1439 and 1440.

PAGE 246—Strassburg. A former German city, now included in French territory, situated on the Ill River, two miles from the left bank of the Rhine.

THE WALRUS AND THE CARPENTER

Two books, excellently well suited to this grade, should be familiar to every pupil—*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* and *Through the Looking-Glass*. Helen Rex Keller in *The Reader's Digest of Books* (Macmillan) tells the story: "Alice, a bright well-behaved little girl, quite normal in every way, is the heroine of the fantastic tale *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*, the great charm of which consists in the perfect plausibility of all its impossibilities. By following an extraordinary rabbit down into a rabbit hole, she finds herself in a land where unreal things seem real. But, however absurd the doings of the inhabitants of Wonderland, she is never surprised at them. Her mistakes at first barely save her from drowning in her own tears; but afterwards she meets many queer animal friends besides a crusty old Duchess, a mad Hatter, a sleepy Dormouse, and a March Hare with whom she has strange experiences, and finally they take her to play croquet with the Queen of Hearts. During a trial by jury at the court of the Queen, Alice becomes excited and calls everyone there nothing but a pack of cards. As they rise into the air and come flying down upon her, she awakes and finds herself beside her sister on the bank where she had fallen asleep. The next time Alice dreams, as told in *Through the Looking-Glass*, she steps through the looking-glass; in this land the people are all chessmen, and the country is divided up like a chessboard, with little brooks and hedges marking the squares. She travels extensively

as she moves in the game and is crowned queen at the end. This dream also comes to a climax by the violence of her resentment against so much nonsense, and she wakes suddenly. Besides kings, knights, pawns, and other pieces of the game, there are more eccentric animals and people who have something to say. The careless White Queen and the fiery-tempered Red Queen are very amusing, and Tweedledum and Tweedledee are responsible for the song of 'The Walrus and the Carpenter,' where, to quote the Duchess, one has to 'take care of the sense, and the sounds will take care of themselves.' "

Consult also the notes on "Alice in Wonderland" on page 41 and "Alice and the White Queen" on page 222. The poem in the text is, of course, absurd, and it should be treated as such.

EDITH CAVELL

This selection is based on the story of Edith Cavell as told in Book V of *The Victory Readers* (Nelson). The same story is told in Chapter I, entitled "Heroines of the Great War," of *The Path of Glory: Heroic Stories of the Great War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson). Other accounts are found in *The Post of Honour: Stories of Daring Deeds Done by Men of the British Empire in the Great War* by Richard Wilson (Dent) and in *Lest We Forget: World War Stories* by John Gilbert Thompson and Inez Bigwood (Silver). John Oxenham's poem "Edith Cavell", to be found on page 67 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto), is too difficult for this grade. It should, however, be read by the teacher.

The story of Edith Cavell, as here told, is one of the outstanding patriotic selections contained in *The Canadian Readers*. As a help to the understanding of what patriotism really means, the teacher is strongly recommended to read "What is a Patriot?" on page 7 of Book III and "What is my Country?" by Emile Souvestre on page 9 of Book IV of *The Young Patriot Readers* published by The Oxford University Press. This whole series in four books should be in every school library. Each book is a mine of excellent stories of courage, devotion, and self-sacrifice on behalf of country. Poems are interspersed with prose selections, both being for the most part modern. By way of contrast it would be well to read "The Traitor Girl" on page 41 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

PAGE 251—Jasper National Park. One of the great Canadian National Parks in the Rocky Mountains. It is on the main line of the Canadian

National Railways about 240 miles west of Edmonton. The scenery of the park is very wonderful. Both the animals and the timber in the park are protected. The park contains 2,816 acres.

PAGE 252—**Marched into Brussels.** August 21st, 1914. The city was occupied by the Germans from that time until the end of the war.

Battle of Mons. The British and French offensive against the Germans during August, 1914, is known as the Battle of Mons. The retreat began on the morning of August 24th, 1914. See *How the Fight was Won: A General Sketch of the Great War* by D. E. Hamilton (Department of Education, Toronto) and *The New Age Encyclopaedia* edited by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson).

Escape into Holland. As Holland took no part in the Great War, that country was neutral territory.

PAGE 253—**The United States minister.** Mr. Brand Whitlock of Toledo, Ohio, was the American Minister to Belgium at this time. He made heroic but unavailing efforts to save Miss Cavell. In his official letter to the German Commandant, he said: "Miss Cavell is the head of the Brussels' Surgical Institute. She has spent her life in alleviating the sufferings of others, and her school has turned out many nurses who have watched at the bedside of the sick all the world over, in Germany as in Belgium. At the beginning of the war Miss Cavell bestowed her care as freely on the German soldiers as on others. Even in default of all other reasons, her career as a servant of humanity is such as to inspire the greatest sympathy and to call for pardon. If the information in my possession is correct, Miss Cavell, far from shielding herself, has, with commendable straightforwardness, admitted the truth of all the charges against her, and it is the very information which she herself has furnished, which has aggravated the severity of the sentence passed upon her."

In answer to one of his letters Mr. Whitlock was told that the prisoner had already confessed her guilt. As the event showed, her conviction was already a foregone conclusion. In accordance with the usual procedure of such courts in Germany she was not allowed to see her advocate before the trial, nor was he granted access to the documents in the case. The confession, which she was alleged to have signed on the day previous to the trial, stated that she had actually assisted Belgians of military age to go to the front, and that she had also concealed French and English soldiers, providing them with funds and with guides whereby they had been enabled to cross the Dutch frontier.

PAGE 254—**Calm and resigned.** Mr. Gahan, the British chaplain, afterwards wrote: "I found her perfectly calm and resigned. She said that she wished her friends to know that she willingly gave her life for her country

and said, 'I have no fear nor shrinking; I have seen death so often that it is not strange or fearful to me.' She further said, 'I thank God for this ten weeks' quiet before the end. Life has always been hurried and full of difficulty. This time of rest has been a great mercy. They have all been very kind to me here. But this I would say, standing as I do in view of God and eternity, I realize that patriotism is not enough. I must have no hatred or bitterness towards any one.' We sat quietly talking until it was time for me to go. She gave me parting messages for relations and friends. Then I said, 'Good-bye,' and she smiled and said, 'We shall meet again.'"

A wave of horror. The *Dictionary of National Biography* says: "To many English minds the execution of Miss Cavell was a judicial murder. British tribunals throughout the war avoided passing sentence of death upon women, even when found guilty of the most dangerous espionage. There is no evidence that Miss Cavell was in any sense a spy. She did nothing for pecuniary reward. Charity and the desire to aid the distressed were the mainsprings of her life. But the German military code prescribed the penalty of death for the offence of which she was found guilty. The procedure in this case was the same as that in other courts martial. Deference to her sex and some allowance for honorable motives might have been expected from humane judges. Presumably the judges were afraid to be humane and thought that the obedience of the Belgian population must be assured by severe sentences. The execution then was justified by German standards. But, if legally justifiable, it was assuredly a blunder. Popular opinion in the allied countries considered Nurse Cavell to be a martyr."

St. Paul's. The great cathedral in London built by Sir Christopher Wren. Wellington and Nelson are buried there. A good illustration of St. Paul's is shown facing page 116 of *Architecture Shown to the Children* by Gladys Wynne (Jack).

Westminster Abbey. The famous Abbey in London, the oldest portion of which dates from 1245. There many of the most illustrious Englishmen are buried. It may be considered the national church of the Empire. A beautiful colored illustration of the Abbey is found on page 153 of Book IV of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). See page 164.

Norwich. A cathedral city in Norfolk, about one hundred and fourteen miles north-east of London. A beautiful illustration of the national memorial to Edith Cavell at Norwich is found on page 158 of *Winning a Cause: World War Stories* by John Gilbert Thompson and Inez Bigwood (Silver). It was unveiled by the late Queen Alexandra at the opening of the Nurse Cavell Memorial Home at Norwich.

THE BROOK SONG

This poem was published in 1901. In it the poet imitates the happy spirit of children at play, running along hand in hand and laughing at any little mishap or fancies by the way. Then in the fourth stanza he changes to the effect upon a boy's spirits of the "gurgle and refrain" of the little stream flowing happily along. In closing he prays to the brook to exercise a restful influence on the boy grown to manhood and to bring back to him the dreams of his youth.

Many poets have delighted in writing about the brooks, streams, and rivers. Some of the best of these poems are found in *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand): "The Rivulet" by Lucy Larcom on page 9 of Book IV; "The Toll-Bridge Keeper" by Sam Walter Foss on page 91 and "Song of the River" by Father Ryan on page 210 of Book V; and "The Song of the Chattahoochee" by Sidney Lanier on page 173 of Book VI. "The Song of the Brook" by Lord Tennyson is on page 157 of Book V of *The Canadian Readers*. See also "The River" by Samuel G. Goodrich on page 116 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

PAGE 255—Bumble bee. A large, hairy social bee, of which over sixty species are found on this continent. A capital description of the bumble-bee, with illustrations, is found on page 61 of *British Insects Shown to the Children* by Arthur O. Cooke (Jack). See also *Bees Shown to the Children* by Ellison Hawks (Jack).

Dragon-fly. See page 142.

 ANTONIO CANOVA

This story is a very old one, but without question true. The same incident is told somewhat more fully in *Fifty Famous Stories Retold* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.). A dramatic version of the incident is found on page 154 of *A Dramatic Reader: Book Three* by Ellen Schmidt (Berry). See also "The Boy Who Wanted to be a Sculptor" on page 122 of *Hero Stories* by Carolyn Sherwin Bailey (Milton Bradley).

Antonio Canova was born at Passango, an obscure village in the hills of Asola, on November 1st, 1757. At three years of age his father died, and shortly afterwards his mother married again. The boy went to live with his grandfather and grandmother, who looked after him with the greatest care. Both his grandfather and his father had been stone-cutters, or rather makers of small statues in stone. His grandfather, as soon as the boy could hold a pencil, began to teach him to draw. He proved an apt pupil not only in drawing but also in stone-cutting; indeed, at the age

of nine, he cut two small shrines in marble which are still extant. For many years the senatorial family of Falier, at Venice, had been the patron of the grandfather, and this patronage was now extended to the grandson. For this the incident related in the text is said to have been responsible. Senator Falier placed the boy under the instruction of Torretto, an eminent sculptor who had taken up his residence at Passango. Antonio remained with Torretto from his thirteenth to his fifteenth year when he removed to Venice to continue his work under a nephew of his former master. At the age of sixteen he began to work on his own account. From this time the history of his life is but an enumeration of his various pieces of sculpture and the places where he worked. He went to Rome and continued his studies there in the enjoyment of a pension from the Senate of Venice. He continued to live for the most part at Rome, but once a year, at least, he visited his birthplace. In Passango he erected a magnificent temple, adorned with statues of his own making. He died at Venice on October 13th, 1782, and was buried in the temple at Passango. He was a kindly, loveable man, spending the greater part of the vast fortune he accumulated in works of charity and benevolence.

PAGE 256.—**Asola.** The hills of Asola are in Venetian territory.

A senator. Senator Falier of Venice. His son Guiseppe Falier was a close, personal friend of Canova during his life.

PAGE 259—**Torretto.** His real name was Bernardi, but he was generally called Torretto.

THE WHITETHROAT

The white-throated sparrow is the most beautiful of all the sparrows, and the most famous songster of the northern woods. It is described as follows: "A plump, handsome bird; white throat and crown stripes; back-striped with black, bay, and whitish; rump light olive-brown; bay edgings to wings, and two white cross-bars; under parts gray; yellow spot before eye. Female crown, brown; markings less distinct."

Many interpretations have been given to the sweet and plaintive song of the white-throat. In parts of the United States it is called the Peabody Bird, its song sounding like "Pea-a-peabody, peabody, peabody." In Maine the song is said to be "All-day, whittling, whittling, whittling." Sir James D. Edgar in a note says: "Early settlers heard him echoing their despair with 'Hard times in Canada, Canada, Canada'. Others maintain that he is searching for traces of a dark crime, and unceasingly demands to know 'Who killed Kennedy, Kennedy, Kennedy?' The thrifty farmer detects the words of warning—'Come now, sow-the-wheat,

sow-the-wheat, sow-the-wheat.' The writer has distinctly recognized in the little song the melancholy sentiments indicated in these lines." In the poem in the text two other interpretations are given. Mabel Osgood Wright in *Birdcraft* (Macmillan) points out that "You may take your choice as to the *words*, but pray notice that all these interpretations have the *same accented* value, and so equally imitate the song." See *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa) for a description of the bird, with a beautiful colored illustration. Colored illustrations may be found also in *Bird-Life* by Frank M. Chapman (Appleton) and in *Our Common Birds and How to Know Them* by John B. Grant (Scribner). An excellent illustration in black and white is on page 119 of *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* by Charles W. Nash (Department of Agriculture, Toronto).

A RACE WITH TIME

This selection appeared originally in *The Manitoba Readers* published by Thomas Nelson & Sons, Toronto. The incident happened exactly as related in the text. The places mentioned in the narrative may be located on any map of British Columbia.

APRIL RAIN

The gray, rainy days of April may seem dreary and may make one unhappy and fretful, until the thought comes of the growing things which are to be awakened into life by the rains of spring. "Daffodils and violets and a host of other flowers are all waiting, ready to spring into bloom as soon as the water drops reach their roots and give them the drink of moisture that they need." So each raindrop becomes a flower. Instead of misty air, one sees roses blooming, fields of clover where bees may roam, and violets. Everyone should be happy, because it is not raindrops that are falling, but the lovely flowers of spring.

Good companion poems dealing with rain in spring are found in *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver): "Merry Rain" on page 18, "April Shower" on page 20, and "Who Likes the Rain?" by Clara Doty Bates on page 20.

PAGE 263—**Daffodils.** The daffodil is one of the loveliest of the spring flowers. C. E. Smith says: "The flowers grow singly on tall stalks. Each daffodil is enclosed in a light brown sheath, which stands erect. But when the growing flowers have burst this covering, they droop their heads. Each flower has a short yellow tube, divided about half way down into

six points. These points do not fold back; they enclose a long yellow trumpet, which is beautifully scalloped around the mouth. Inside this trumpet are six stamens with large yellow heads, and the slender stalks of these stamens cling to the sides of the yellow trumpet. There is also a short pillar rising from the fat, green seed-vessel, which you can see outside the colored petals, below the yellow tube." See colored plate in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack) and in *Nature Knowledge Readers; Intermediate* by Vincent T. Murche (Macmillan).

Clover bloom. Twenty varieties of the clover are fully described in *Wild Flowers Every Child Should Know* by Frederic William Stack (Grosset).

Buccaneering bee. The buccaneers were pirates, mostly French and British, who combined to prey upon the Spaniards in North and South America during the latter half of the seventeenth century. The bee is called a buccaneer, because he flits from flower to flower stealing the honey and suddenly darting away.

THE GOLD AND SILVER SHIELD

This selection is an old fable, and is found in different guises in the early stories of most people. It requires no annotation.

PAGE 265—**Druid.** The Druids were the priests among the ancient Britons.

WAVES

This beautiful little poem requires no further explanation than is given in the poem itself.

A WET SHEET AND A FLOWING SEA

This poem first appeared in *The Songs of Scotland, Ancient and Modern* published in 1825. Although written by a landsman, it is one of our best sea songs. J. H. Fowler speaks of it as holding "a permanent place in English Literature." The *Notebook to the Ontario Reader* says: "The theme of the poem is the fierce joy that sailors feel in the war with roaring tempests. The swinging, heaving pitch of the good ship as she dashes on through foaming billows, the splintering flash of the lightning, and the wild shrill music of the piping winds fill him with a joy of mastery altogether kingly; so that the ship becomes his palace and the sea his heritage. As the poem proceeds, the fresh free wind becomes a gale, and the moonrise a tempest." The music of this song is given in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage).

PAGE 266—**Sheet.** The rope by which the sail is handled.

Flowing. With onward-rolling billows.

Follows. Sweeping up from behind the ship.

Rustling. As the sail fills with the wind.

PAGE 267—**Lee.** On the sheltered side.

Snoring. A heavy breeze. Various terms strictly applicable to animate beings are frequently applied to the wind, such as "growling", "whining", "muttering", etc.

Tight. Will not leak.

Hornèd moon. When the horns of the moon are pointed upwards, sailors believe that a storm is sure to follow.

Hollow oak. This poem was written in the days when English ships were built of English oak.

Our heritage. We were born to the sea, and we are destined to rule over it. "English poetry is full of the love of the sea. This is what one would expect in the case of a maritime country whose history, commerce, and life generally are more or less bound up with the close-encircling sea."

AT SCHOOL WITH SHAKESPEARE

This selection, taken from Book IV of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson), gives a vivid picture of the life of a schoolboy in the times of great Elizabeth. Of course, the boy is Shakespeare, and all the events are centered around him, but still the picture presented is true to the life of the time. An interesting comparison may be made between that day and the present, from the standpoint of a boy. A capital story to read to the class in this connection is "The Story of Shakespeare" in *Stories of Great Writers* by Henry Gilbert (Jack).

The complete story of Shakespeare is told in six connected articles, all beautifully illustrated, in Book IV of *Highroads of Literature*: "Stratford-on-Avon," "Shakespeare's Homes and Haunts," "At School with Shakespeare," "Farewell to Stratford," "Shakespeare in London," "Shakespeare at Work and Play." The selection in the text is the third of these articles.

PAGE 267—**On the dial.** The sun dial.

PAGE 268—**Henley Street.** Shakespeare's father lived in Henley Street, Stratford-on-Avon. The street was a thoroughfare leading to the market town of Henley-in-Arden.

His father. John Shakespeare was a dealer in all kinds of agricultural products, corn, wool, meat, malt, skins, and leather. He was a sub-

stantial citizen, having been at one time or another alderman and bailiff of Stratford.

Doublet and hose. Jacket and long stockings.

Charlecote's tall woods. Charlecote was near Stratford. Sir Thomas Lucy had a beautiful park there, and it is said that it was on account of having been caught deer-stealing in this park that Shakespeare was compelled to leave Stratford.

Avon. Stratford is situated on the Avon, a beautiful stream which flows into the River Severn.

Kenilworth. Kenilworth Castle in Warwickshire was given to the Earl of Leicester by Queen Elizabeth. It was destroyed by the Roundheads during the Civil Wars in England. The ruins are very beautiful.

Earl of Leicester. Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester (1531-1588), was a favorite of Queen Elizabeth. He was a soldier as well as a statesman and commanded several military expeditions. He was suspected of having murdered his wife, Amy Robsart, in order that he might be free to marry Queen Elizabeth.

PAGE 269—Princely pleasures. The festivities at Kenilworth Castle on the occasion of the visit of Queen Elizabeth lasted for seventeen days and cost £60,000. Sir Walter Scott has given a brilliant description of them in his novel *Kenilworth*, of which the Earl of Leicester is the central figure.

How wonderful. The chief features of the entertainment were gorgeous pageants representing scenes from all times and all lands.

The boys. It was not until the reign of Charles II that women were seen on the stage in England. Up to that time the female parts were played by boys.

Creeping like a snail. This quotation is from Shakespeare's *As you Like It*, Act II, Scene 7:

"Then the whining school-boy, with his satchel
And shining morning face, creeping like snail
Unwillingly to school."

The hour of six. This seems to us to be a very early hour for school. In Shakespeare's time, however, the day's activities began at a much earlier hour than they do now.

PAGE 270—Outer staircase. This was a more common feature of domestic architecture in Shakespeare's time than it is to-day.

With Solomon. See *Proverbs xiii, 24*.

Lily's grammar. William Lily (1468-1522), the celebrated scholar and grammarian, was the author of a Latin grammar which was long in use in English schools. The edition that Shakespeare used was that of 1574; he quotes from it frequently in his plays.

PAGE 271—**Staves.** Verses; stanzas. The word is now seldom used. **Daisies pied, etc.** The quotation is from Shakespeare's *Love's Labor Lost*, Act V, Scene 2, lines 904-7.

Pied. Variegated.

Lady smocks. "A pretty purplish-white plant, which, during the latter part of April, covers the moist meadows with its silvery-white, which looks at a distance like a white sheet spread over a table."

Cuckoo. It is impossible to tell what flower is here meant. W. J. Rolfe suggests that Shakespeare refers to the buttercup. See page 80.

A LEGEND OF ATHELNEY

This poem relates one of the many legends told concerning Alfred during the time that he was in hiding from the Danes. "King Alfred and the Beggar" on page 11 of *The Story of King Alfred the Great* by Gladys Davidson (Jack) is another poetic version of the same story. It would be worth while to compare the two poems in class.

Alfred, the youngest son of Ethelwulf, king of the West Saxons, was born at Wantage in Berkshire, in 849, although some authorities place the date as 842. He is said to have visited Rome on two occasions, although there is doubt that the second visit really took place. In 868 he married Aleswith, the daughter of the Earl of the Gainas, in Lincolnshire, and in the same year he fought his first battle with the Danes. Three years later he was victorious in the famous battle of Ashdown, and at Easter of the same year he became king. During the first year of his reign he was defeated by the Danes so frequently that he was glad to make peace at almost any price. For four years the land was at rest, and then the conflict began again. From 875 to 879 he was engaged in almost continuous warfare, finally defeating his enemies under Guthrum and concluding a treaty of peace with them at Wedmore. For the next fifteen years there was peace, and he was able to turn his attention to the internal affairs of his kingdom. Under his beneficent rule England prospered greatly, and even a new invasion by the Danes could not destroy the results of his government. He was again victorious, and the Danes were driven out of Wessex. His work was now done. He died in 901. "Almost with one consent historians have pronounced that he comes pretty nearly as close to perfection as a man and a king as any ruler of whom there is record." An excellent little book to read to the pupils is Gladys Davidson's *The Story of King Alfred the Great*. In addition to a well-told story, there are several poems dealing with events in the life of the king.

Interesting accounts of Alfred's life and works are given in *Alfred the Great: His Life and Times* by George F. Bosworth (Macmillan) and

in *First Makers of England* by Lady Magnus (Murray). See also *Stories from the Life of King Alfred* by Charles A. Milford in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), *Historical Tales: English* by Charles Morris (Lippincott), and *Fifty Famous Stories Retold* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.). Three good selections relating to King Alfred, "Alfred's Early Home", "The Danes Raid Winchester," and "Alfred's First Boar-Hunt," all by Eva March Tappan, are found in *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott).

PAGE 272—Stricken field. The battle in which he was defeated.

Sedges. See page 119.

Curlews. J. A. Henderson in *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack) says: "The curlew has its name from its call. It is a clear, ringing whistle of two notes, which can be heard from far away. In the springtime these two notes are repeated three or four times, and then prolonged into a rich, deep trill, repeated again and again. The call is one of the most wonderful sounds of all the bird-world. It is very wild, but rich and musical, with all the mystery and beauty of the lonely moors and hillsides that are the curlew's home." The bird varies from thirteen to twenty-four inches in length and is colored from cream to weak brown. Its bill is long and curled decidedly downward. See colored illustration in M. K. C. Scott's *Birds Shown to the Children*. P. A. Taverner in *Birds of Eastern Canada* (Department of Mines, Ottawa) describes several varieties of the curlew. He points out that unless the bird is more carefully protected in Canada, it will soon become extinct.

Dark the day. The appearance of nature indicates his misfortunes without any gleam of hope for the future.

Guthrum. The leader of the Danish invaders.

His halls. His castles and homes.

Meads and rills. Meadows and streams.

Neatherd. A cow herder.

Mere. A lake.

PAGE 273—Stoup of wine. A vessel or tankard of wine.

Tortured. Tortured with the thoughts of his country's agony.

PAGE 274—Henchmen. Here the word has the meaning of faithful followers or adherents.

Is not dead. The spirit that inspired him still inspires the British peoples.

GRACE DARLING

This selection is adapted from an extended account of Grace Darling by Sir Edward Parrott in *Stories of Famous Men and Women*. The book, however, is now out of print.

Grace Horsley Darling was born November 24th, 1815, at Bamborough, on the Northumberland coast. She was the seventh child of her parents. Her father had been keeper of the lighthouse on the Brownsman, the outermost of the Farne Islands, but in 1826, when Grace was eleven years of age, he was transferred to the lighthouse on the Longstone, another of the same group of islands. The family was a very united one, and the children grew up happy in the midst of their desolate surroundings. Each received a good education, their father, who was a very trustworthy and intelligent man, taking charge of this himself. As time went on the other children left the lighthouse, and Grace was left alone with her parents. She is described as being of about middle size, of fair complexion, and very comely, gentle in aspect, and with an expression of great mildness and benevolence. William Howitt says: "You see that she is a thoroughly good creature, and that under her modest exterior lies a spirit capable of a most exalted devotion, a devotion so entire, that daring is not so much a quality of her nature, as that the most perfect sympathy with suffering or endangered humanity swallows up and annihilates everything like fear or self-consideration,—puts out, in fact, every sentiment but itself." At the time the incident related in the text took place Grace was twenty-two years of age. She did not appear to have suffered from the fearful exposure, although this probably had its effect. She was not at all spoiled with the kindnesses that were showered upon her, but bore up under it all with unaffected modesty. It is sad to tell that she lived only a little more than four years after her heroic deed. She died of consumption at Bamborough, October 20th, 1842, at the early age of twenty-six years, and was buried in Bamborough churchyard.

Grace Darling's heroic conduct in connection with the wreck of the *Forfarshire* was soon noised abroad and awakened the most intense interest in England. A public subscription was started, with the result that she was presented with the sum of £700. The Royal Humane Society forwarded her a vote of thanks, and its president presented her with a silver teapot. The Royal National Institution for the Preservation of Life from Shipwreck voted her a silver medal. The Glasgow Humane Society also sent her an honorary medal with the inscription: "Presented by the Glasgow Humane Society to Miss Grace Horsley Darling, in admiration of her dauntless and heroic conduct in saving (along with her father) the lives of nine persons from the wreck of the *Forfarshire* steamer, 7th September, 1838."

A very interesting account of Grace Darling, written by Rosa Nouchette Carey under the title "The Heroine of the Farne Islands", is published in *Adventures and Achievements* edited by Eva March Tappan in *The Children's Hour* (Houghton). Practically the same story is told in

Stories of Other Lands by James Johonnot (American Book Co.) and in *Heroines Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset). See also the ballad of "Grace Darling" on page 75 of Book IV of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

PAGE 275—**In her teeth.** The ship was driving straight into the wind.

Helm. See page 288.

PAGE 277—**Set strongly.** The tide was rising rapidly and running strongly.

Amidships. The middle of the ship.

Forecastle. The front part of the ship.

PAGE 279—**The Humane Society.** The Royal Humane Society was established in England in 1774.

THE ATHABASKA TRAIL

In the original poem the three stanzas in the text are preceded by three other stanzas. These are as follows:

"My life is gliding downwards: it speeds swifter to the day
When it shoots the last dark canyon to the plains of far away.
But while its stream is running through the years that are to be,
The mighty voice of Canada will ever call to me.

"I shall hear the roar of rivers where the rapids foam and tear,
I shall smell the virgin upland with its balsam-laden air,
And shall dream that I am riding down the winding, woody vale.
With the packer and the pack-horse down the Athabaska Trail.

"I have passed the warden cities at the eastern water-gate,
Where the hero and the martyr laid the corner-stone of State,
The habitant, *coureur-des-bois*, and hardy voyageur—
Where lives a breed more strong at need to venture or endure?"

The complete poem was written by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle during a trip over the old Athabaska Trail in 1922. The Athabaska Trail was for many years the main thoroughfare of travel through the Rockies from the Athabaska River to the Columbia River. Lawrence J. Burpee of Ottawa has published a most interesting book entitled *On the Old Athabaska Trail* (Hurst & Blackett, London) dealing with "the adventures of David Thompson, Ross Cox, Gabriel Franchère, Paul Kane, and other western travellers in the days before the railway swept away a good deal of the romance of the journey."

The Athabaska River rises in the Rocky Mountains in a little lake at the foot of Mount Brown, and, after a course of over 600 miles, flows into the Slave River. The trail, of course, follows only that part of the river that flows through the Rocky Mountains.

PAGE 280—**The gorge of Erie.** The Niagara Falls on the Niagara River between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario.

Inland ocean. Lake Superior, the largest of fresh water lakes.

Packer and pack horse. The illustration on page 281 of the text explains these terms.

Wooden hamlets. Little villages of wooden houses.

FOUR THINGS

This little poem by Henry Van Dyke requires no further explanation than is in the poem itself.

Alice AND THE WHITE QUEEN

This selection is taken from Chapter V of *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*. In Chapter I of the book Alice is sitting talking to her kitten and wondering what is behind the looking-glass. "Let's pretend the glass has got all soft like gauze, so that we can get through. Why it's turning into a sort of mist now, I declare. It'll be easy enough to get through.' She was up on the chimney piece when she said this, though she hardly knew how she got there. And certainly the glass was beginning to melt away, just like a bright silvery mist. In another minute Alice was through the glass and had jumped lightly down into looking-glass room." There she met the chessmen, among others the White Queen. She has just finished her conversation with Tweedledum and Tweedledee when she finds the shawl. *See page 41.*

George Macdonald, the Scottish novelist, has written three books which are quite suited to this grade, and which, in some ways, are similar to Lewis Carroll's stories: *At the Back of the North Wind*, *The Princess and the Goblin*, and *The Princess and Curdie*, all published by the J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia. Good selections from all three of these books are found in *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott).

A SUMMER STORM

This poem was published in 1893 in *The Magic House and Other Poems*. Note that it is not a light summer rain that is here described, but a violent

storm following a prolonged period of drought. The irregularity of the treatment of the rhythm in the first part is in strong contrast to the smoothness of the closing stanza, descriptive of the quiet after the storm.

James Whitcomb Riley's "A Sudden Shower" to be found on page 265 of Book IV of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton), Thomas Buchanan Read's "The Summer Shower" on page 15 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan), and "Rain in Summer" by W. C. Bennett on page 119 of *Nature in Verse* compiled by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver) may usefully be read along with the poem in the text.

PAGE 288—Surly. Refusing to give up their rain.

Sway and beat. So heavy was it with the heat.

Hawks. A full description of the various kinds of hawks with colored illustrations is given in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa) and in *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* by Charles W. Nash (Department of Agriculture, Toronto).

Twanging. Like the sound of a bow.

Leaped roaring. Indicating its suddenness and violence. The storm is pictured as a monster crouching in its lair ready to spring.

Poignard. Usually spelled "poinard". A small, sharp dagger used for stabbing.

Heart's desire. The long drought is over.

The clouds obey. Compare "The Clouds" on page 71 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

PAGE 289—Thrush. The wood thrush is described with colored illustrations in Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. It is distinguished from the other members of the thrush family by "the sharp spots on the pure white breast and the tawsiness of the back." John Burroughes says of the song of the wood thrush: "It is truly a royal minstrel and perhaps contributes more than any other bird to our sylvan melody. One may object that he spends a little too much time in tuning his instruments, yet his careless and uncertain touches reveal its rare compass and power."

The bird is also described by Alexander Wilson with a colored illustration on page 20 of Book II of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand).

White-throat. See page 213.

DAVID AND GOLIATH

This selection is taken from the Chapter XVII of *Ist Samuel*. The narrative is, of course, abridged. Other selections from *The Bible* suited to Grade IV may be found in Book IV of *Graded Bible Readers* (Nelson).

PAGE 289—**Valley of Elah.** A Biblical commentator says: "The Valley Elah runs along the western spurs of the mountains of Judah, down into the plain of Philistia. It is about fifteen miles south-west of Jerusalem. The valley is a quarter of a mile wide and is shut in by ridges rising on each side with an easy slope to an elevation of about five hundred feet. On these the rival armies were encamped opposite to each other at the distance of about one mile. The bottom of the valley is flat and rich; through it winds a torrent-bed covered with rounded smooth stones." The rival armies could see distinctly every movement of their champions and the fall of Goliath.

Philistines. A tribe who dwelt along the Mediterranean, south-west of Palestine. They were frequently at war with the Hebrews.

Champion. Among the eastern nations it was a common custom for one man to stand forth from an army and challenge another from the opposing force, the issue of the battle to depend upon the single combat. See Matthew Arnold's *Sohrab and Rostum*.

Goliath. "Goliath was not a Philistine by genealogy, though he lived among them and was naturalized. He was descended from those Rephaim who in primeval times occupied the whole country, but were conquered by the Philistines. A family of them remained and became the champions of the nation in the days of Saul and David." See *II Samuel xxi, 15-22*.

Six cubits and a span. The cubit was a measure derived from the length of the forearm, and a span was the extent between the tips of the thumb and little finger when extended. We do not know the exact length of these Hebrew measures, but Goliath is generally supposed to have been nine feet six inches in height.

Armed. Clothed.

Coat of mail. The coat of mail worn by Goliath was made of a succession of small plates overlapping at the edges, after the manner of fish scales.

Five thousand shekels. Computed to be one hundred and fifty-six and a quarter pounds.

Greaves. A kind of footless boot for the protection of the leg below the knee.

Target. Armor to protect the back of the neck.

Spear. Keeping everything in proportion, the spear must have been at least twenty feet in length.

Weaver's beam. "A cylindrical piece of wood, making part of a loom, on which weavers wind the warp before weaving."

Spear's head. The head of the spear weighed eighteen and a quarter pounds.

PAGE 290—**In array.** Why should two armies engage when the whole matter can be settled by single combat?

Ephah. A Hebrew dry measure. Its exact size is not known.
Carriage. What he was carrying; his load of provisions.

PAGE 291—**Sling.** This was an ordinary part of a shepherd's equipment. At that time it was a necessity in driving away wild beasts or birds of prey.

Staves. His shepherd's staff.

PAGE 292—**The stone sunk.** "David's trust in his sling and the unerring accuracy of his aim, though strange to us, was nothing new in those days, or in the regions in which he was trained. We read that among the adjoining tribe of Benjamin were seven hundred men, 'every one of whom could sling stones and not miss.' David's sling gave him a great advantage over the giant."

THE EAGLE

This poem first appeared in the edition of Tennyson's *Poems* published in 1851. Below the title is printed the word *Fragment*. "Though a fragment," says Morton Luce, "it brings a fine bit of far-off nature delightfully near to us."

J. A. Henderson in *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack) says: "The golden eagle gets his name from the golden-red feathers of his head and neck and legs; but sometimes the color is very dark, almost black. He is found chiefly in Ireland and Scotland, in the high mountainous districts of the mainland and on the islands and sea-coast of the west and north-west. There he is often seen, high up near the summits of the hills and crags, wheeling round and round in slow wide circles, guiding himself by his tail and scarcely moving his broad wings, which are stretched out with the tips a little turned up. The wings may measure more than eight feet from tip to tip and his body is over three feet long." There is an excellent chapter on the golden eagle with a colored illustration on page 78 of *Beasts Shown to the Children* by Percy J. Billingham (Jack). See also *A Book of Birds* by W. P. Pycraft (Ryerson Press).

PAGE 292—**Crooked hands.** See full-page illustration in Scott's *Birds Shown to the Children*.

Lonely lands. The eagle lives in the most inaccessible regions, far from human habitation.

Ringed with. Surrounded by.

Wrinkled. A powerful epithet descriptive of the sea when seen from the distant height above.

LITTLE BROWN HANDS

This poem draws a picture of boys in the country, who are busy throughout the year either at work or at play. Each stanza describes some interesting task or pleasure. Finally the lesson is taught that busy hands become strong hands, and that frequently the humble and poor who toil become the great ones of the land. A good companion selection is "The Country Boy" by Lucy Larcom to be found on page 280 of *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott).

Edwin Osgood Grover has written "The Country Boy's Creed" as follows: "I believe that the Country which God made is more beautiful than the City which man made; that life out of doors and in touch with the earth is the natural life of man. I believe that work is work wherever we find it, but that work with Nature is more inspiring than work with the most intricate machinery. I believe that the dignity of labour depends not on what you do, but on how you do it; that opportunity comes to a boy on the farm as often as to a boy in the city, that life is larger and freer and happier on the farm than in the town, that my success depends not upon my location, but upon myself—not upon my dreams, but upon what I actually do, not upon luck, but upon pluck. I believe in working when you work and in playing when you play and in giving and demanding a square deal in every act of life."

PAGE 293—**Quail.** The American quail is described as follows: Crown feathers slightly crested. White forehead; eye line and throat patch edged with dark. Above variegated reddish brown flecked with black, white and tawny. Below whitish, warming on the sides to reddish, with dark streaks. In the female the forehead, throat, and eye stripes are buffy. Bill rusty black. The peculiar note of the bird is "Bob-white! Bob-white!" Sometimes also "Poor-Bob-white!" *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa) gives a very full description of the Bob-white, together with a colored illustration. An excellent description by John James Audubon with colored illustration is given on page 76 of Book I of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand). See also *Bird-Life* by Frank M. Chapman (Appleton), *Birdcraft* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan), and *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Mussion). Thomas Cooper has a poem on the quail entitled "Bob White," which is found on page 33 of the Fourth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.).

Snowdrops. In addition to the note on page 80, see "Snowdrop" on page 164 of Part I of *Nature Studies and Fairy Tales* by Catherine I. Dodd (Nelson).

Elder-bloom white. "The elders are shrubby trees with large, fern-like leaves. They lift up flat, white flower clusters, sometimes as large as dinner plates, in June, and in the middle of summer dark red berries are ripening where the flowers were". See *Trees That Every Child Should Know* by Julia Ellen Rogers (Grosset).

PAGE 294—Blackberry-vines. The common blackberry is a shrub that grows from one to six feet high and is armed with stout prickles. The low blackberry, or dewberry, is a trailing shrub, armed with scattered prickles or nearly naked. The fruit of this latter is black, edible, and delicious. See *How to Know the Wild Flowers* by Mrs. William Starr Dana (Scribner).

Oriole's hammock-nest. The Baltimore oriole is described as follows: *Male:* Black head, throat, and upper half of back. Wings black, with white spots and edges; tail quills spotted with yellow. Everywhere else orange-flame. Bill and feet slatish black. *Female:* Paler, the black washed with olive. Below dull orange. The nest is a pensile pocket, woven of milkweed, flax, fine string, or frayings of cotton, rope, etc., suspended at the end of a swaying branch at considerable distance from the ground. Mabel Osgood Wright says: "If the situation is protected from birds of prey, the nest is made quite open at the top; but if it is in a wild and remote region, the structure is more bottle-shaped, with a small opening, which completely hides the sitting bird. This accounts for the great variations in the form of nests found in different localities." *Gray Lady and the Birds* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan) has a beautiful colored illustration of both the male and female birds, together with their nest. See description and colored illustration in Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*, and a very full description with a black and white illustration in *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* by Charles W. Nash (Department of Agriculture, Toronto). See also *American Birds* by William Lovell Finley (Scribner) and *Citizen Bird* by Mabel Osgood Wright and Elliot Coues (Macmillan). An excellent study of the bird by Charles Bendire with colored illustration is found on page 50 of Book I of Clarence Moores Weed's *Bird Life Stories* and by Olive Thorne Miller on page 156 of the Fifth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.). "The Story of the Oriole" in *The Book of Nature Myths* by Florence Holbrook (Houghton) is a very interesting legend of the origin of the bird.

Toil bravely. The following poem entitled "The Boys that Rule the World," the author of which is unknown, may strengthen the impression of the text:

"You can write it down as gospel:
With the flags of peace unfurled,

The boys that run the furrow
Are the boys that rule the world!

“It is written on the hilltops—
In the fields where blossoms blend;
Prosperity is ending
Where the furrow has an end!

“The glory of the battle,
Of clashing swords blood-red,
Is nothing to the warfare
Of the battle hosts of Bread!

“The waving banners of the fields
O'er the broad land unfurled—
The boys that run the furrow
Are the boys that rule the world!”

Sword . . . chisel . . . palette. The soldier, the sculptor, and the painter. They are described by the tools that they use.

THE STORY OF THE McINTOSH RED

This selection was written originally for *The Ontario Readers* and appears in the *Third Reader* of that series. Through the kindness of the Minister of Education for the Province of Ontario it is republished in *The Canadian Readers*. The story in the text does not require any further explanation.

O. J. Stevenson, the author of this selection, is professor of English Literature at the Ontario Agricultural College, Guelph. Before entering on his present work, he had taught in public schools, in the St. Thomas Collegiate Institute, and in the Faculties of Education of Toronto and Queen's Universities. He is the author of numerous books on literary and educational subjects, including *A People's Best* and *Country Life Reader*. The former of these deals with our modern Canadian poets, prose writers, and painters, and the latter with agricultural subjects as they are related to school life in Canada.

PAGE 294—**United Empire Loyalists.** Those persons who remained loyal to Great Britain during the American Revolutionary War, and, who,

after the independence of the thirteen colonies had been acknowledged, prepared to sacrifice everything in their old homes and make new homes for themselves in Canada, where they would be under the British flag. See page 349.

The United Empire Loyalists are referred to many times in *The Canadian Readers*. In this connection, the following poem by Sarah Anne Curzon, entitled *The Loyalists*, may be of interest:

“If ye, who with your blood and sweat
Watered the furrows of this land,
See where upon a nation’s brow,
In honor’s front, ye proudly stand!

“Who for her pride abased your own,
And gladly on her altar laid
All bounty of the older world,
All memories that your glory made,

“And to her service bowed your strength,
Took labor for your shield and crest;
See where upon a nation’s brow,
Her diadem, ye proudly rest!”

PAGE 296—The bluebirds. See page 134.

THE TALENTS

This selection is taken from *Matthew xxv, 14-30*. It is immediately preceded by the parable of the Ten Virgins, wherein the warning is given to the disciples of Christ to watch constantly. “The lesson in the parable of the Talents is still partly of watchfulness; it is still in the first instance for the apostles. But fresh thoughts enter into this parable: (1) There is work to be done in the time of waiting; the watching must not be idle or unemployed; (2) Even the least talented is responsible.” *The Gospel according to St. Matthew* edited by the Rev. A. Carr in *The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) has excellent notes on the parable.

The parable of the Pounds in *Luke xix, 12-27* should be read and compared with that of the Talents. It is as follows:

“A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return.

“And he called his ten servants, and delivered them ten pounds, and said unto them, Occupy till I come.

"But his citizens hated him, and sent a message after him, saying, We will not have this man to reign over us.

"And it came to pass, that, when he was returned, having received the kingdom, then he commanded these servants to be called unto him, to whom he had given the money, that he might know how much every man had gained by trading.

"Then came the first, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained ten pounds.

"And he said unto him, Well, thou good servant: because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities.

"And the second came, saying, Lord, thy pound hath gained five pounds.

"And he said likewise to him, Be thou also over five cities.

"And another came, saying, Lord, behold, here is thy pound, which I have kept laid up in a napkin:

"For I feared thee, because thou art an austere man: thou takest up that thou layedst not down, and reapest that thou didst not sow.

"And he saith unto him, Out of thine own mouth will I judge thee, thou wicked servant. Thou knewest that I was an austere man, taking up that I laid not down, and reaping that I did not sow:

"Wherefore then gavest not thou my money into the bank, that at my coming I might have required mine own with usury?

"And he said unto them that stood by, Take from him the pound, and give it to him that hath ten pounds.

("And they said unto him, Lord, he hath ten pounds.)

"For I say unto you, That unto every one which hath shall be given; and from him that hath not, even that he hath shall be taken away from him.

"But those mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay them before me."

PAGE 298—**His goods.** "A great deal of the commerce of antiquity was managed by slaves, who were thus often entrusted with responsible functions. In this case they are expected to use their Master's money in trade or in cultivation of the soil, and to make as large an increase as possible."—*Carr.*

Five talents. "Here the truth is indicated that there is variety in the services wrought for God in respect of dignity and of difficulty. More will be required of the influential and the enlightened than of the ignorant and poor."

Went and traded. Went on a journey and traded with the money entrusted to him.

Reckoneth with them. So that he might have his due share of the profits.
Joy of thy lord. Carr explains: "Either share the life of happiness which thy lord enjoys, and which shall be the reward of thy zeal, or the joyous feast."

Hast not strawed. Gathering into the garner from another's threshing-floor what thou hast not winnowed. He would exact interest where he had invested no money.

PAGE 299—**Therefore.** For the very reasons that you yourself have stated.

Exchangers. Bankers.

Usury. The word here means simply "interest," not an extortionate amount.

Every one that hath. "Talents not used pass away from their possessor, and the strenuous worker seems to gather to himself what is lost by the idle." A great Greek thinker said: "The possessions of the negligent belong of right to those who will endure toil and danger."

JOHN GILPIN

This poem was first printed anonymously on November 14th, 1782, in the *Public Advertiser*. The full title is *The Diverting History of John Gilpin: Showing how he went Farther than he Intended and came Safe Home Again*. "It is written in the conventional ballad metre, and preserves many expressions characteristic of the primitive English ballad style."

Thomas Wright in *The Life of William Cowper* says: "One evening, in the famous parlor, the three friends being seated, a droll tale, that she had heard when a girl, came into Lady Austen's mind, and she proposed to tell it. Mrs. Unwin readily assented, but Cowper was silent, for by this time he had got into that pitiable state in which nothing seemed to interest him. This was not very encouraging to Lady Austen, but she began her story, and told how a certain citizen 'of famous London town, rode out to celebrate the twentieth anniversary of his wedding—how he went farther than he intended, and all his misadventures.' The poet, indifferent at first, and apparently paying no attention to what was going on, gradually grew interested as the story proceeded, and Lady Austen, seeing his face brighten, and delighted with her success, wound up the story with all the skill at her command. Cowper could now no longer control himself but burst out into a loud and hearty peal of laughter. The ladies joined

in the mirth, and the merriment had scarcely subsided by supper-time. The story made such an impression on his mind that at night he could not sleep; and his thoughts having taken the form of rhyme, he sprang from bed, and committed them to paper, and in the morning brought down to Mrs. Unwin the crude outline of *John Gilpin*. All that day and for several days he secluded himself in the greenhouse, and went on with the task of polishing and improving what he had written. As he filled his slips of paper he sent them across the market-place to Mr. Wilson, to the great delight and merriment of that jocular barber, who on several other occasions had been favored with the first sight of some of Cowper's smaller poems." Later, however, he regretted having written the poem. He says: "The grinners at *John Gilpin* little dream what the author sometimes suffers. How I hated myself yesterday for ever having written it."

Selections dealing with famous rides are "Lochinvar" on page 330 and "How They Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix" on page 341 of Book V of *The Canadian Readers*. Similar selections are "The Cavalier's Escape" by George Walter Thornbury on page 125 of Book VI of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand), "Sheridan's Ride" by Thomas Buchanan Read on page 172 of Book II of *The Land of Song* by Katharine H. Shute (Silver), "Paul Revere's Ride" by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow on page 117 of Book III of *A Child's Own Book of Verse* (Macmillan), and "A Legend of Bregenz" by Adelaide Procter on page 78 of Book III A of *The Progressive Road to Reading* (Gage).

PAGE 299—John Gilpin. A real character known to Cowper. Thomas Wright says: "Mr. John Gilpin, or, to give him his correct name, Mr. John Beyer, was born in 1693, and carried on business as a linen-draper at No. 3, Cheapside, the north-east corner. He was well known, superlatively polite, and inclined to obesity. He died May 11th, 1791, at the advanced age of ninety-eight, and his business was afterwards carried on by one Martha Beyer, who may have been his widow."

Train-band. W. F. Webb says: "The train-bands were militia enrolled for the protection of the City of London. They consisted of twelve regiments of infantry and two regiments of cavalry, and their drilling place was Mile-End. They were ridiculed by the Cavaliers at the outbreak of the Civil War of 1642, as being composed of apprentices, artizans, and shopkeepers, but they did good service in the early battles of the war. They were, in consequence, disbanded by Charles II, but were afterwards reorganized, and continued for many years."

Eke. Also.

PAGE 300—The Bell at Edmonton. The Bell inn at Edmonton, a village in Middlesex a few miles north of London.

All. Just. The use of the word in this sense is now archaic.

Chaise and pair. A four-wheeled carriage drawn by two horses.

We. The wrong pronoun is used here, so that the word will rhyme with "thee" in the second line.

All the world. Everybody.

The calender. One whose business it is to calender cloth—to make it smooth and glossy by passing it through heavy rollers.

For that. Because.

PAGE 301—**Agog.** Excited; nervously anxious.

Cheapside. A famous street in London. It extends through the central part of the city from east to west.

Saddletree. The wooden frame-work of the saddle, but here the saddle itself.

PAGE 302—**Good-lack.** Alas. The expression is archaic and implies surprise.

Quoth. Said.

PAGE 303—**Neck or nought.** Neck or nothing; recklessly.

Running such a rig. Acting so frivolously; cutting such a caper.

PAGE 304—**Carries weight.** In a horse-race the jockey, if he is below the required weight, must carry weights.

In a trice. In an instant.

Turnpike-men. The keepers of the toll-gates. At this time in England very few of the main roads were free. Fees collected by men stationed at gates, placed at intervals along the roads, were paid for their use.

Reeking. Perspiring.

Page 305—**Islington.** At that time a village near London, now forming part of the city.

Wash. Elizabeth Lee explains: "A portion of the road sometimes covered with water, which transforms it into a shallow pond." Edmonton is on a branch of the river Lea.

Trundling. Whirling, revolving.

Ware. A village in Hertfordshire, about fifteen miles north of London.

PAGE 307—**Merry pin.** In jovial humor; good spirits.

Case. Condition.

PAGE 308—**Bootless.** Useless.

Posting. Riding so rapidly.

Amain. At full speed.

PAGE 309—**Postboy.** The driver of the post-chaise.

Hue and cry. The pursuit of a rogue with cries to give the alarm.

TENT HOUSE

This selection is taken from *The Swiss Family Robinson: Adventures of a Shipwrecked Family on a Desert Island*. The book was originally outlined by John David Wyss, a Swiss clergyman, who lived in Berne, Switzerland. "He had once heard the story of a Russian sea-captain, who had been cruising around in the neighborhood of Australia and had found on an island there, a Swiss pastor and his family. They had been shipwrecked but had managed to get ashore safely, though all the other people in the ship were drowned. Mr. Wyss thought how interesting it would be to know just how this family had got along on their island, what strange plants and animals they had found, and what exciting exploring expeditions they had made. So he decided to write a story about it. Their island was situated near what we now call New Guinea, in the tropical regions." Wyss merely outlined the story which was written by his son Johann Rudolph Wyss (1781-1830), a noted Professor of Natural Philosophy at the Academy of Berne. Later it was translated into French by the Baroness Montolieu, who added much material of her own. Several other persons have made alterations and additions, so that there is in English no standard edition.

An excellent abridgment for school use prepared by Alfonzo Gardiner is found in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). A complete edition is published by Thomas Nelson & Sons. *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott) has two selections describing the two residences of the family other than Tent House: "The Building of Eagle Nest" on page 184 and "The Discovery of Rock Castle" on page 195. *Blake Island* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson) and *Masterman Ready* by Captain Marryat in *Everyman's Library* (Dent) are companion stories. In the text the names of the boys differ from those generally employed.

The Swiss Family Robinson is an entertaining tale written for young people, after the style of *Robinson Crusoe*, from which the author is supposed to have derived many of his ideas. It deals with the experiences of a shipwrecked family, a Swiss clergyman, his wife, and four sons, who, deserted by the captain and crew of the vessel on which they are passengers, finally reach land in safety. They exhibit wonderful ingenuity in the use they make of everything which comes to hand, and manage to subsist on what articles of food they find on the island, combined with the edibles which they are able to rescue from the ship. They have various experiences with wild beasts and reptiles, but emerge from all encounters in safety. They build a very remarkable habitation in a large tree, which is reached by means of a hidden staircase in the trunk; and in this retreat they are secure from the attacks of ferocious animals. They continue

to thrive and prosper for several years, until finally a ship touches at the island and they are once again enabled to communicate with the mainland. By this time, however, they are so well pleased with their primitive life that they refuse to leave the island home."

PAGE 310—**Wrecked ship.** After the captain and crew had deserted the ship, the storm quieted, and the family managed to construct a raft, by means of which they reached shore.

PAGE 311—**Cocoa-nut trees.** The trees which yield the cocoa-nuts of commerce. The interior of the nut contains a thin, watery liquid, which has a very sweet taste.

Shrimp. The shrimp is described with a colored illustration on page 86 of *The Sea-Shore Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

PAGE 313—**Lobster.** See page 63.

PAGE 314—**The fox, etc.** A reference to Æsop's fable of the fox and the stork. The fox subsequently had his revenge, when he served soup to the stork in a very shallow plate. The stork has a very long bill.

Oyster. See "The Oyster" on page 36 of Janet Harvey Kelman's *The Sea-Shore Shown to the Children*.

THE WHITE SHIP

This selection is taken from Chapter X of *A Child's History of England*. The history appeared originally in *Household Words* from 1851 to 1853 and was published in book form in 1854.

Henry I had been in Normandy for over three years. In May, 1120, he sent for his son William, in order that he might have him acknowledged by the Norman nobles as his successor in the dukedom and that the marriage that had been arranged with Matilda, the infant daughter of Fulk, Count of Anjou, one of the divisions of France, might be celebrated. The marriage took place, and on November 25th in the same year Henry returned to England. The disaster described in the text took place that night. Another version of the same story is given in *Stories for the Nine-Year-Old* selected by Louey Chisholm (Jack) and in more extended form in *Our Island Story* by H. E. Marshall (Jack). See also *Historical Tales: English* by Charles Morris (Lippincott). Mrs. Hemans's poem "He Never Smiled Again" on page 167 of *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott) and Dante Gabriel Rossetti's ballad "The White Ship" in *English Narrative Poems in Pocket Classics* (Macmillan) may be read to the class in connection with the selection.

PAGE 316—Prince William. William was the only son of Henry I and his first wife, Matilda of Scotland, and was born in 1103. He was regarded by the English people as the lawful heir to the realm, as his mother was a descendant of the old Saxon line of kings. He was proud and fond of splendor, but perhaps these were his worst faults.

Voyage home. They embarked from the harbor of Harfleur, sixteen miles east of Cherbourg.

Your father. William the Conqueror.

Golden boy. The ship was presented to William, Duke of Normandy, by his wife, Matilda, the daughter of the Count of Flanders. "When the Norman vessels sailed, William's own ship, named the *Mora*, the fastest of the fleet, had a lantern at the masthead to serve as a signal to her consorts, a vane above the lantern to show the direction of the wind, and on the prow a bronze figure of a child with bow and arrow aiming for England."

PAGE 317—Like oxen. There is absolutely no historical authority for this statement; the exact reverse is probably nearer the truth.

PAGE 318—Sober seaman. Stephen, Earl of Blois, who succeeded Henry I on the throne of England, was to have sailed on *The White Ship*, but, when he saw the condition of the sailors, he withdrew to another vessel and so was saved.

Struck upon a rock. This is a well-known rock, near the mouth of the harbor and about a mile and a half from land.

His sister. His half-sister, Marie, the wife of the Count of Perche.

Gilbert. Gilbert de L'Aigle.

PAGE 319—His brother. His half-brother, Richard.

CANADA ! MAPLE LAND !

This is decidedly one of our best patriotic poems. While dwelling on the material greatness of the country, the writer at the same time recognizes that we must go forward not in our own strength, but in that of God, to whom we owe everything of good and great that we have. The verse is serious and dignified, and entirely suited to the elevated plane on which the poem is written. Rudyard Kipling's *Recessional* on page 415 of Book V of *The Canadian Readers* has a somewhat similar thought.

In addition to the patriotic poems of Canada appearing in *The Canadian Readers* and those mentioned in the notes on "Dominion Hymn"

on page 115, there are quite a number of other poems which will well repay class study: "Canadian Born" by E. Pauline Johnson on page 41 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent); "The First Dominion Day" by John Reade on page 75, "Canada" by Charles G. D. Roberts on page 79, "The Native Born" by Jean Blewett on page 95, "Canadian Over All" by W. H. Drummond on page 124, and "Canada" by Harold Boulton on page 126 of *Poems of the Love of Country* edited by J. E. Wetherell in *Macmillan's Literature Series* (Macmillan); "Song for Canada" by Charles Sangster on page 25, "Here's to the Land" by William Wye Smith on page 27, "An Ode for the Canadian Confederacy" by Charles G. D. Roberts on page 30, and "Collect for Dominion Day" by Charles G. D. Roberts on page 32 of *Songs of the Great Dominion* edited by W. D. Lighthall (Scott); and "A Song of Canada" by Robert Reid on page 140 of Book III of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

In connection with "Canada! Maple Land!" and other patriotic poems in *The Canadian Readers*, the following extract from an address by George William Curtis may prove suggestive: "Right and wrong, justice and crime, exist independently of our country. A public wrong is not a private right for any citizen. The citizen is a man bound to know and do the right, and the nation is but an aggregation of citizens. If a man should shout, 'My country, by whatever means extended and bounded; my country, right or wrong!' he merely repeats the words of the thief who steals in the street, or of the trader who swears falsely at the custom-house, both of them chuckling, 'My fortune, however acquired.'

"Thus, we see that a man's country is not a certain area of land,— of mountains, rivers, and woods,— but it is principle; and patriotism is loyalty to that principle.

"In poetic minds and in popular enthusiasm, this feeling becomes closely associated with the soil and symbols of the country. But the secret sanctification of the soil and the symbol is the idea which they represent; and this idea the patriot worships through the name and the symbol.

"So, through all history from the beginning, a noble army of martyrs has fought fiercely and fallen bravely for that unseen mistress, their country. So, through all history to the end, as long as men believe in God, that army must still march and fight and fall,—recruited only from the flower of mankind, cheered only by their own hope of humanity, strong only in their confidence in their cause."

PAGE 320—**Hearts that are large.** A kindly, generous spirit.

Thy fear. "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge."—*Proverbs i, 7.*

Humility. Not puffed up with pride at the greatness of our heritage.

Base. Cowardly.

Unstained. There are times in which even the blessings of peace are purchased at too great a price. When it is a case of condoning an absolute wrong, then peace is not to be desired.

Thy name. "The Lord is my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in Him and I am helped."—*Psalms xxviii, 7.*

Shame. Disgrace brought upon us by our own actions.

Value our birthright. See *Genesis xxv, 29-34.*

Book V

THE CHILDREN'S SONG

This selection is the last poem in *Puck of Pook's Hill*, published in 1906. W. Arthur Young in *A Dictionary of the Characters and Scenes in the Stories and Poems of Rudyard Kipling, 1886-1911* (Routledge) says: "*Puck of Pook's Hill* contains ten stories with sixteen poems and songs interspersed. Two children, Dan and Una, living on the Sussex countryside play a home-made version of *A Midsummer Night's Dream* on Midsummer Eve. There enters Puck himself, who allows them to take from him ownership of all Old England. This is the beginning of meetings and adventures, in which the past, with its many heroes, is introduced to the children. The series is continued in *Rewards and Fairies*." The poem itself is a prayer for help and guidance, so that the children may be best able to devote all their energies to the service of their country.

An interesting selection from the French of Emile Souvestre might be read to the pupils in this connection:

"When I was fifteen years of age," said a French veteran, "I began to visit an old uncle who had lost a leg in the wars, and who was now pensioned off.

"One day I found him looking very grave. 'Jerome,' he said, 'knowest thou what goes on at the frontier?' 'No, uncle,' I answered.

"'Well then,' he went on very solemnly, 'the fatherland is in peril.'

"Then seeing that I did not quite understand, he laid his hand on my shoulder and said, 'Thou hast never thought, perhaps, what the *fatherland* means. It means everything that surrounds thee, everything that has reared and nourished thee, everything thou hast loved.

"'That green country thou seest, those trees, those young girls passing and laughing yonder—that is the *fatherland*!

"'The laws which protect thee, the bread that pays thee for thy work, the words thou exchangest, the joy and the sadness which come to thee from the people and things amongst which thou livest—that is the *fatherland*!

"'The little room where thou used to see thy mother, the memories she has left behind her, the ground in which she rests—that is the *fatherland*!

“Thou seest it, thou breathest it everywhere! Picture to thyself thy rights and thy duties, thy affections and thy needs, thy recollections and thy gratitude; join all these under a single name, and that name will be the *fatherland!*”

Two stanzas from a poem by Adelaide Anne Proctor entitled “Now” might also be read:

“Rise! for the day is passing,
 And you lie dreaming on;
 The others have buckled their armor,
 And forth to the fight are gone:
 A place in the ranks awaits you,
 Each man has some part to play;
 The Past and the Future are nothing,
 In the face of the stern To-day.

“Rise from your dreams of the Future—
 Of gaining some hard-fought field:
 Of storming some airy fortress,
 Or bidding some giant yield;
 Your Future has deeds of glory,
 Of honor (God grant it may!)
 But your arm will never be stronger,
 Or the need so great as To-day.”

PAGE 9—Love and toil. By doing their work faithfully and honestly and to the best of their ability, they are doing the best service to their country.
An undefiled heritage. “That we may hand down to those who come after us the glorious name derived from our forefathers unstained by dishonorable word or deed.”

The yoke in youth. We are children of a great nation and must take upon us our responsibilities as such. Compare Kipling’s “The White Man’s Burden.”

The Truth, etc. “Righteousness exalteth a nation: but sin is a reproach to any people.”—*Proverbs xiv, 34.*

Rule ourselves. “He that is slow to anger is better than the mighty; and he that ruleth his spirit than he that taketh a city.”—*Proverbs xvi, 32.*

Worthless sacrifice. “And he said unto Aaron, take thee a young calf for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering, without blemish, and offer them before the Lord.”—*Leviticus ix, 2.* If we would give our best service to our country, we must ourselves be pure and clean.

For judge. In matters of right and wrong we should depend on our own conscience, and not on the opinions of others, no matter on what terms of friendship we may be with them.

PAGE 10—Teach us the Strength, etc. Help us to be helpful to others.

Simple things. To be content with what we have.

Bitter springs. Cheerfulness that has no malice in it.

THE MOONLIGHT SONATA

This selection appeared anonymously some years ago in *The Wide-Awake Magazine*. "It has long been a favorite in readers and volumes of selections. It may or may not be a true account of something that really happened at Bonn. But it is, at any rate, true to the spirit of what we know of Beethoven, and puts us into the proper mood for listening sympathetically to his music. We like to believe that great art can come only out of great character, and character is nowhere better tested than in its reactions towards the sincere efforts of less highly gifted individuals. Because we admire so completely the kindly sympathy shown towards the poor lovers of music, we feel that the sonata which grew out of this experience must necessarily embody some of the characteristics of the incident itself."

Ludwig Van Beethoven was born at Bonn, in Prussia, on December 16th, 1770. His father, a tenor singer at the court of the Archbishop of Cologne, was a man of very dissipated habits, and, as a consequence, was very poor. Early perceiving the undoubted musical talents of his son, and wishing to profit by these, he put him through a very severe course of training, especially on the violin. Soon the boy passed beyond his father's instruction, and was placed under the care of other teachers, who took a great interest in developing his wonderful gifts. In 1783 his first compositions were published, and in the next year, at the age of fourteen, he was appointed assistant to the court organist. In 1792, at the expense of the Archbishop of Cologne, he was sent to Vienna to continue his education, and while there took several lessons from Mozart. After a stay of three months at Vienna he was compelled to return to Bonn, as he was needed by his family; from the age of fifteen he was practically their sole support. In 1792, again through the kindness of the Archbishop, he went once more to Vienna, and there he resided, with the exception of a few years spent in Rome, during the remainder of his life. The years prior to 1800 were his happiest and most hopeful period, but a great disaster

was impending. Signs of deafness, early noticed, were becoming more pronounced, and shortly after 1806 he became totally deaf. An unfortunate love affair, an unworthy nephew who betrayed his trust, and the greed and neglect of his relatives generally, rendered his later life unhappy; but through all he continued to produce his unrivalled compositions. He died at Vienna on March 26th, 1827. An excellent sketch of Beethoven is given in *Stories of Great Musicians* by Kathrine Lois Scobey and Olive Browne Horne (American Book Co.). See also *A Day with Beethoven* by Mary Byron (Hodder).

Beethoven's "Moonlight Sonata" was given to the world in 1802. It consists of three movements, the first slow and graceful, the second brisk and sprightly, the third very swift and emotional. The Sonata grew out of circumstances connected with the life of the composer. Louis Nohl says: "And now began for Beethoven a period of severe trials, brought upon him by himself. Absorbed in work, he neglected to take sufficient care of his physical health. His trouble with his hearing was increasing, but he paid no attention to it. His carelessness in this regard reduced him to a condition in which he would have found no alleviation and no joy, were it not for the inexhaustible resources he possessed within himself. But to understand him fully we must read what he wrote himself in June 1801, to his friend Amenda, who had left Vienna two years before. He says: 'Your own dear Beethoven is very unhappy. He is in conflict with nature and with God. You must know that what was most precious to me, my hearing, has been, in great part, lost. How sad my life is! All that was dear to me, all that I loved, is gone! How happy would I now be if I could only hear as I used to hear. If I could I would fly to thee, but, as it is, I must stay away. My best years will fly, and I shall not have fulfilled the promise of my youth, nor accomplish in my art what I fondly hoped I would. I must now take refuge in the sadness of resignation.' We have here the words to the long-drawn, funereal tones of a song as we find it at the beginning of the celebrated Moonlight Sonata, which belongs to this period. The direct incentive to its composition was Seumes' poem, *Die Beterin*, in which he gives us the description of a daughter praying for her noble father, who has been condemned to death. But in this painful struggle with self, we also hear the storm of passion in words as well as tones. Beethoven's life at this time was one of sorrow. He writes: 'I can say that I am living a miserable life. I have more than once execrated my existence. But if possible I shall bid defiance to fate, although there will be, I know, moments in my life when I shall be God's most unhappy creature.' The thunders of power may be heard in the finale of that Sonata."

PAGE 10—Bonn. A town of Prussia, on the left bank of the Rhine, fifteen miles from Cologne. It is noted as the birthplace of Beethoven.

A walk. Beethoven was generally careless of his health and neglected exercise almost entirely. See *Introduction*.

Sonata in F. This celebrated Sonata was written in 1804 in honor of Napoleon Bonaparte, but was not published until 1806. When the news came that Napoleon had had himself proclaimed emperor of the French, the composer was so disappointed and angry that his friends could with difficulty restrain him from tearing up the score. "It is still the longest extant perfect design in instrumental music." A sonata is a musical composition for a single instrument, consisting of three or four movements.

PAGE 11—Cologne. A city of Prussia, on the west bank of the Rhine, famous for its beautiful and stately cathedral.

Excited. He had evidently found one who could sympathize with him in his passion for music—a kindred soul.

Harpsichord. An old-fashioned stringed musical instrument, in shape something like a modern grand piano.

Spell. The awkwardness of the situation.

PAGE 12—Your pardon. Beethoven was even this early haunted with the fear of loss of his hearing, so that he could, perhaps, more than others sympathize with the affliction of the young girl.

Brühl. A town of Prussia, about eight miles from Cologne.

PAGE 13—Massive figure. "His statues, busts, and portraits represent him with a massive head, broad brow, dignified, sombre expression of countenance, and features of harsh but heroic cast."

Lovely movement. A beautiful interpretation of each of the three movements of the Sonata is found in Frances Ridley Havergal's poem "The Moonlight Sonata."

COPPERFIELD AND THE WAITER

This selection is taken from Chapter V, Volume I, of *The Personal History of David Copperfield* published in 1850. The story was originally given to the world in monthly parts during 1849 and 1850 under the title: *The Personal History, Adventures, Experience, and Observations of David Copperfield, the Younger, of Blunderstone Rookery*.

Suitable editions of the novel for class-room use are *David Copperfield Re-told for Children* by Alice F. Jackson in *The Children's Dickens* (Jack), *David Copperfield's Boyhood* in the *Golden River* series (Nelson), and *David Copperfield* by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

Gilbert A. Pierce in *The Dickens Dictionary* (Houghton) summarizes the story of *David Copperfield* as follows: "David Copperfield is a posthumous child, having been born six months after his father's death. His mother, young, beautiful, inexperienced, loving and lovable, not long afterwards marries a handsome and plausible, but hard and stern man, Mr. Murdstone by name, who soon crushes her gentle spirit by his exacting tyranny and by his cruel treatment of her boy. After being for some time instructed at home by his mother, and reduced to a state of dullness and sullen desperation by his step-father, David is sent from home. He is sent to a villainous school, near London, kept by one Creakle, where he receives more stripes than lessons. Here he is kept until the death of his mother, when his step-father sends him, he being now ten years old, to London, to be employed in Murdstone and Grinby's warehouse in washing out empty wine-bottles, pasting labels on them when filled, and the like, at a salary of six shillings a week. But such is the secret agony of his soul at sinking into companionship with the boys with whom he is forced to associate, that he at length resolves to run away, and throw himself upon the kindness of a great-aunt, Miss Betsy Trotwood, whom he has never seen, but of whose eccentric habits and singular manner he has often heard. She receives him much better than he had expected, and soon adopts him, and sends him to school in the neighboring town of Canterbury. He does well here and finally graduates with high honors. Having made up his mind to become a proctor, he enters the office of Mr. Spenlow, in London. Soon after this his aunt loses the greater part of her property; and David, being compelled to look about him for the means of subsistence, learns the art of stenography, and supports himself comfortably by reporting the debates in Parliament. In the meantime he has fallen desperately in love with Dora, the daughter of Mr. Spenlow, but has been discouraged in his suit by the young lady's father. Mr. Spenlow dying, however, he becomes an accepted suitor. Turning his attention soon after to authorship, he acquires a reputation, and obtains employment on magazines and periodicals. He now marries Dora, a pretty, captivating, affectionate girl, but utterly ignorant of everything practical. At length she falls into a decline and dies. After her death David goes abroad, passing through many weary phases of mental distress. During his absence Agnes Wickfield, a dear friend of Dora's and of himself, writes to him. When three years have passed, he returns to England, where his few works have already made him famous. But more than all else he values the praise and encouragement he receives from Agnes, whom he has come to think the better angel of his life, and whom he would gladly make his wife. He discovers at last that she loves him and they are soon united."

A great deal of interest attaches to David Copperfield, owing to the fact that the novel is largely autobiographical. John Forster in *The Life of Charles Dickens* (Chapman) has a very full discussion on this point. See also Pierce's *A Dickens Dictionary* and *The Dickens Originals* by Edwin Pugh (Foulis). For teachers' reference the biographical and critical study entitled *Charles Dickens* by Sidney Dark in *The People's Books* (Jack) will be found very useful.

PAGE 14—**Mr. Barkis.** The Yarmouth carrier who takes David from Blunderstone to Yarmouth. It was he who uttered the immortal phrase, "Barkis is willin'," having reference to his willingness to marry Clara Peggotty, David's nurse. He subsequently married Peggotty, and made her a very good husband indeed. See Pierce's *The Dickens Dictionary*.
PAGE 15—**Blunderstone.** Blunderstone Rookery in Suffolk was the name of David's home.

Murdstone. David's mother, after the death of her husband, married Edward Murdstone. See *Who's Who in Dickens* by T. A. Fyfe (Hodder).

Surprised. David evidently regarded the waiter as a person of importance.

Casters. Small bottles for holding salt, pepper, etc.

PAGE 16—**My eye.** "An exclamation of surprise and admiration often employed ironically, as though the sight were endangered by beholding the object."

Topsawyer. Of course, a mythical personage.

Choker. Necktie.

Melancholy accident. David was completely taken in by the waiter.

PAGE 19—**Peggotty.** Clara Peggotty, Mrs. Copperfield's servant, David's early nurse, and his life-long friend. She ultimately married Mr. Barkis.

PAGE 20—**The cow-pock.** Cowpox, an eruptive disease which attacks the udders of cows.

Broken wittles. Fragments left over from the meals.

PAGE 21—**He'll burst.** In the original the paragraph concludes as follows: "and from observing that the women-servants who were about the place came out to look and giggle at me as a young phenomenon. My unfortunate friend, the waiter, who had quite recovered his spirits, did not appear to be disturbed by this, but joined in the general admiration without being at all confused. If I had any doubt of him, I suppose this half awakened it; but I am inclined to believe that with the simple confidence of a child, and the natural reliance of a child upon superior years (qualities I am very sorry any children should prematurely change for worldly wisdom), I had no serious mistrust of him, on the whole, even then."

HOME, SWEET HOME!

S. J. Adair Fitz-Gerald in *Stories of Famous Songs* says: "‘Home, Sweet Home,’ which is so essentially an English song in sentiment and feeling, was, curiously enough, written by an American, John Howard Payne. The song was first sung in an English opera entitled ‘Clari, the Maid of Milan,’ the words being written by John Howard Payne, and the music composed and arranged by Sir Henry Bishop, who was decidedly English. Of this song it has been well asserted by Dr. Charles Mackay that ‘it is not too much to say that it has done more than statesmanship or legislation to keep alive in the hearts of the people the virtues that flourish at the fireside, and to recall to its hallowed circle the wanderers who stray from it.’ The sweet sadness that pervades this simple little domestic poem is exquisitely expressive of the melancholy felt by poor Payne when he penned the lines alone in a foreign country (he was stranded in Paris at the time) away from all that he held dear."

The poem as originally written consisted of four stanzas as follows:

“Mid pleasures and palaces, though we may roam,
Be it ever so humble, there’s no place like home;
A charm from the sky seems to carry us there,
Which, seek through the world, is not met with elsewhere.

Home ! home ! sweet, sweet home !
There’s no place like home, there’s no place like home.

“An exile from home splendor dazzles in vain;
Oh, give me my lowly thatched cottage again;
The birds sing gaily that came at my call—
Give me them with the peace of mind dearer than all,

Home ! home ! sweet, sweet home !
There’s no place like home, there’s no place like home.

“How sweet, too, to sit ’neath a fond father’s smile,
And the cares of a mother to soothe and beguile,
Let others delight ’mid new pleasures to roam,
But give me, oh, give me ! the pleasures of home !

Home ! home ! sweet, sweet home !
There’s no place like home, there’s no place like home.

“To thee I’ll return, overburdened with care;
The heart’s dearest face will smile on me there;
No more from that cottage again will I roam,

Be it ever so humble, there's no place like home.

Home ! home ! sweet, sweet home !

There's no place like home, there's no place like home."

The *Philadelphia Record* relates a pleasing incident in connection with the poem: "No common poet ever received a more enviable compliment than one paid to John Howard Payne by Jenny Lind, on his last visit to his native land. It was in the great National Hall of the city of Washington, where the most distinguished audience that had ever been seen in the capital of the republic was assembled. The matchless singer entranced the vast throng with her most exquisite melodies, but the great feature of the occasion seemed to be an inspiration. The singer suddenly turned her face to the part of the auditorium where Payne was sitting and sang 'Home, Sweet Home' with such pathos and power that a whirlwind of excitement and enthusiasm swept through the vast audience. One might readily imagine that Payne thrilled with rapture at this unexpected and magnificent rendition of his immortal lyric."

THE SONG-SPARROW

This poem is taken from *The Builders and Other Poems* by Henry van Dyke, published in 1907 by Charles Scribner's Sons, New York.

Another excellent poem on the bird is "The Song Sparrow" by Lynn Tew Sprague on page 323 of *Gray Lady and the Birds* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan).

Charles W. Nash in *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* (Department of Agriculture, Toronto) describes the song sparrow as follows: "Crown reddish brown, with a grayish medium line; a grayish line over eye; a reddish brown line from behind eye to the nape; feathers of the back streaked with black and margined with brown and gray; greater wing coverts with black spots at their tips; tail reddish brown, the middle feathers darker along their shafts; sides of the throat with blackish streaks; breast with wedge-shaped streaks of black and dark brown which tend to form a large blotch on the centre; sides washed with brownish and streaked with dark brown." An excellent description of the song sparrow with colored illustration is found in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also colored illustration in *Our Common Birds and How to Know Them* by John B. Grant (Scribner).

Frank M. Chapman in *Bird-Life* (Appleton) says: "It is the song sparrow who in February opens the season of song, and it is the song

sparrow who in November sings its closing notes; nor, except during a part of August, has his voice once been missing from the choir. His modest chant always suggests good cheer and contentment, but, heard in silent February, it seems the divinest bird lay to which mortal ever listened. The magic of his voice bridges the cold months of early spring; as we listen to him the brown fields seem green, flowers bloom, and the bare branches become clad with softly rustling leaves. You cannot go far afield without meeting this singer. Generally you will find him on or near the ground at the border of some undergrowth, and if there be water near-by his presence is assured." Henry David Thoreau in *Walden* (Macmillan) translates the call of the song sparrow as "Olit, olit, olit—chip, chip, chip, chechar—che-wiss, wiss, wiss!" Many interpretations are suggested by various writers, the one in the text being very suitable.

PAGE 22—**Very merry cheer.** Mabel Osgood Wright in *Birdcraft* (Macmillan) has a beautiful appreciation of the song sparrow throughout the year.

In March. In some localities the song sparrow begins his song as early as February.

PAGE 23—**Joseph's-coat.** See *Genesis xxxvii, 3.*

Quaker brown and gray. The Quakers, or members of the Society of Friends, dress in quiet, sober colors.

Well-dressed throng. The question of the color of birds in relation to their song is a most interesting one, but general statements must be avoided. Many different theories are held by careful students of birds, but the conclusions reached are by no means definite.

A lofty place. Mabel Osgood Wright says: "He is seldom seen feeding on the ground, but loves the shelter of low bushes, from which he gives his warning cry, and then flies out with a jerking motion of the tail, and, never going high into the air, perches on another bush. If he wishes to sing, he climbs from the dense lower branches to a spray well above the others, as if he needed plenty of air and light for the effort, and bubbles into song."

CAPTAIN SCOTT'S LAST JOURNEY

This selection is taken from *The Story of Captain Scott* by Mary McGregor (Nelson). The entire story of the expedition in which Scott lost his life is told for young people in *South with Scott* by Captain Edward R. G. R. Evans (Collins). See also Chapter LXXIII entitled "The Quest for the South Pole" in *A Book of Discovery* by M. B. Synge (Jack).

Robert Falcon Scott was born on June 6th, 1868, at Davenport, England. At the age of twelve he entered the navy, and rapidly passed through the various grades, until in 1900 he was appointed commander. In this year he was selected to command an expedition organized by the Royal Geographical Society and the Royal Society for the purpose of exploring the ice barrier around the South Pole. The expedition left England in 1901 and returned in 1904, having made during its long absence many important geographical and scientific discoveries. On his return Scott was appointed captain and returned to his naval duties. For some years he held various commands and in 1909 was appointed naval assistant to the second sea lord of the Admiralty. In the same year he announced his plans for a second expedition to the Antarctic, with the further purpose of attempting to reach the South Pole. In June, 1910, in the *Terra Nova*, he set out on his last expedition. The result is told in the text.

The expedition in the *Terra Nova* consisted of sixty-four officers,¹ scientists, and men, in addition to Scott himself. It was thoroughly equipped in every respect for the purpose for which it was intended. When the ice barrier was reached, the journey to the pole over the ice began. Depots for the return trip were established on the outward route. Supporting parties accompanied Scott as he advanced, but these were sent back from time to time as the depots were established. The last supporting party, under Lieutenant Evans, returned when 146 miles from the pole. The dogs were also sent back, and Scott and his four companions proceeded on foot dragging their sledges. This was on January 4th, 1912. On January 18th they reached the pole, only to find that Amundsen and his party had arrived four days earlier and had immediately turned back. The story of Scotts' return journey is told in the text.

PAGE 24—The Royal Geographical Society. One of the most famous of the British Societies. It has its headquarters at London. Many great expeditions have been sent out under its auspices. It adjudicates upon the claims of explorers and scientists as to what they have accomplished in their expeditions.

Amundsen. See page 319. When Scott reached the Pole he found the following letter from Amundsen awaiting him:

Poleheim,

15th December, 1911

Dear Captain Scott,—As you probably are the first to reach this area after us, I will ask you kindly to forward this letter to King Haakon VII.

If you can use any of the articles left in the tent please do not hesitate to do so. The sledge left outside may be of use to you. With kind regards I wish you a safe return.

Yours truly,

Roald Amundsen.

Necessary observations. To verify the fact that they had reached the South Pole. Their observations were similar to those of Amundsen.

Captain Scott's diary. This has since been published in *Scotts' Last Expedition*. It is, of course, the only source of our information as to what took place.

PAGE 25—Evans. Petty Officer Edgar Evans is described by Scott: "A giant worker with a really remarkable headpiece—he is responsible for every sledge, every sledge-fitting, tents, sleeping-bags, harness, and when we cannot recall a single expression of dissatisfaction with any one of these items, it shows what an invaluable assistant he has been."

Oates. Lawrence Edward Grace Oates (1880-1912). As a boy he was very delicate, but in 1898 he joined the militia and later was posted to the 6th Dragoons. He served with distinction in the South African War, was wounded, but later returned to his regiment. He served also in Africa, Egypt, and India, finally attaining the rank of Captain. He had always had a passion for the sea, and, when in 1910 Scott was organizing his Antarctic Expedition, he applied for a post. He was put in charge of the ponies which were to be used for sledge haulage. Scott says: "Oates has his invaluable period with the ponies: now he is a foot slogger and goes hard the whole time, does his share of camp work and stands the hardship as well as any of us. I would not like to be without him."

PAGE 26—Saw him no more. The body of Oates was never found. Near the spot where he left the tent was erected a cairn and cross bearing the inscription: "Hereabouts died a very gallant gentleman, Captain L. E. G. Oates, of the Inniskilling Dragoons. In March, 1912, returning from the Pole, he walked willingly to his death in a blizzard, to try and save his comrades, beset by hardships."

Wilson. Edward Adrian Wilson (1872-1912) was educated at Cheltenham College and Cambridge and later studied medicine. In 1900 he accompanied Scott on his final expedition to the Antarctic as junior surgeon and zoologist. In 1910 he was invited by Scott to accompany him on his second expedition, this time as chief of the scientific staff. Scott says of him: "Quick, careful, and dexterous, ever thinking of some fresh expedient to help the camp life; tough as steel on the traces, never wavering from start to finish."

Bowers. Scott says of Lieutenant Henry R. Bowers: "Little Bowers remains a marvel—he is thoroughly enjoying himself. I leave all the provision arrangements in his hands, and at all times he knows exactly how we stand. Nothing comes amiss to him, and no work is too hard." PAGE 27—**His last appeal.** The last section of Scott's message was as follows: "We are weak, writing is difficult, but for my own sake I do not regret this journey, which has shown that Englishmen can endure hardships, help one another, and meet death with as great a fortitude as ever in the past. We took risks, we knew we took them; things have come out against us and therefore we have no cause for complaint, but bow to the will of Providence, determined still to do our best to the last. But if we have been willing to give our lives to this enterprise, which is for the honor of our country, I appeal to our countrymen to see that those who depend on us are properly cared for. . . . These rough notes and our dead bodies must tell the tale, but surely, a great rich country like ours will see that those who are dependent on us are properly provided for."

Government pensions were granted to the dependants of those who had perished. Scott's widow was given the title and precedence of the wife of a knight commander of the Bath. A fund was raised through the Lord Mayor of London, which was devoted largely to the publication of accounts of the Expedition and its scientific results.

THE CHEERFUL LOCKSMITH

This selection is taken from Chapter XLI of *Barnaby Rudge*. The Golden Key is the workshop of Gabriel Varden, a London locksmith, one of the leading characters of the novel. It is not at all necessary to connect the text with the story as a whole. The selection is simply a bit of cheerful descriptive writing and should be treated accordingly.

YE MARINERS OF ENGLAND

This poem was first published in the *Morning Chronicle*. Dr. Beattie in *Life of Thomas Campbell* says: "Mrs. Ireland, who saw much of Campbell at this time (1799), mentions that it was in the musical evenings at her mother's house that he appeared to derive the greatest enjoyment. At these soirées his favorite song was 'Ye Gentlemen of England,' with the music of which he was particularly struck, and determined to write new words for it. Hence this noble and stirring lyric of 'Ye Mariners of England,' part of which, if not all, he is said to have composed after one of these family parties. It was not, however, until after he had retired to

Ratisbon, and felt his patriotism kindled by the announcement of war with Denmark that he finished the original sketch." The poem was finished at Altona, in Germany, where Campbell had gone on a visit. This was in 1800, at the time the Armed Neutrality League was being formed under the guiding hand of Napoleon. The poet was still at Altona, when Sir Hyde Parker's fleet sailed from England for Denmark, and he was obliged to return hurriedly, as his place of residence was not safe for an Englishman. On his return to England he was arrested for high treason, on the ground that he had been conspiring with the French general, Moreau, to bring about a French invasion of Ireland. His baggage was seized, but nothing more incriminating was found than the draft of "Ye Mariners of England." The charge of treason was dropped.

Campbell is the author of two other celebrated poems of a similar nature, "The Battle of the Baltic" and "Hohenlinden." Both of these are to be found in *A Book of English Poetry* (Jack). Other familiar poems by the same author well worth reading to the pupils are: "The Exile of Erin," "Lord Ullin's Daughter," "The Harper," "Glenara," "Men of England," and "The Soldier's Dream."

PAGE 29—Our native seas. The sea is considered the home of the Englishman.

A thousand years. Alfred the Great is generally regarded as the founder of the British navy. The flag, however, has changed several times since then; but it is "the same old flag."

Launch. "Fling forth to the breeze."

Another foe. The poem was written at the time the Armed Neutrality League was being formed. *See Introduction.*

PAGE 30—Blake. The famous admiral of Cromwellian days.

Mighty Nelson. When the poem was first published this line read: "When Blake, the boast of freedom, fell." After the death of Nelson at Trafalgar the change was made to the present reading. *See page 86.*

Shall glow. With pride and patriotism.

Towers. At this time England was in a constant state of terror from the fear of an invasion by Napoleon. Preparations for defence, which included the building of Martello towers along the coast, were being rapidly pushed forward.

Mountain-waves. Napoleon may march his armies over the mountains with incredible rapidity; Britain marches over the mountains also, but the mountains are the mighty waves of the ocean.

On the deep. The poet is evidently of the opinion that so long as the supremacy of the British navy is maintained, the Empire has nothing to fear in the way of attack.

Native oak. This was before the day of ironclads. The ships were constructed of oak grown in England. The statement is still true, however, in the sense that the best defence of England is Englishmen.

Meteor flag. As the meteor was supposed to portend disaster, so the flag of England, flying swiftly hither and thither, would bring destruction on all who dared oppose it.

Terrific. Bringing terror to its enemies.

Troubled night. Until the war with Napoleon should be over. Napoleon was known in England as "the great shadow" menacing the safety of the country.

HOW ROBINSON CRUSOE MADE BREAD

This selection is taken from Chapter VI of *The Life and Strange Surprising Adventures of Robinson Crusoe, of York, Mariner*, published in 1719. See notes on "Robinson Crusoe" on page 88. The story of the book is told on page 143 of Book III of *The Canadian Readers*. An excellent sketch of the author, particularly in relation to *Robinson Crusoe*, is given on page 272 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). The sketch is accompanied by several complete extracts from the book.

In describing the attempts of Robinson Crusoe to make pottery, Defoe was quite at home, as he himself for a time was the manager of a large pottery and was thoroughly familiar with its workings.

In this grade it might be well to read to the pupils Sir Richard Steele's account of Alexander Selkirk, the seaman whose adventures formed the basis for the story of Robinson Crusoe and also William Cowper's lines on Selkirk. The former of these is to be found on page 41 of *Treasure Trove* edited by Richard Wilson (Dent) and the latter on page 46 of the same book.

PAGE 31—**Corn.** Corn, of course, means wheat.

THE CHARGE OF THE LIGHT BRIGADE

Hallam Tennyson in *Lord Tennyson: A Memoir* (Macmillan) says: "On December 2nd, he wrote *The Charge of the Light Brigade* in a few minutes, after reading the description in the *Times* in which occurred the phrase 'some one had blundered,' and this was the origin of the metre of the poem." When finished, the lines were sent to the *Examiner* and published in that paper December 9th, 1854. During the next summer Tennyson had a thousand copies of the poem struck off and sent to the

soldiers in the Crimea, with the following note: "Having heard that the brave soldiers before Sebastopol, whom I am proud to call my countrymen, have a liking for my ballad on the charge of the Light Brigade at Balaklava, I have ordered a thousand copies of it to be printed for them. No writing of mine can add to the glory they have acquired in the Crimea; but if what I have heard be true they will not be displeased to receive these copies from me, and to know that those who sit at home love and honor them."

Stopford Brooke, speaking of this poem, says: "Steady obedience, cool self-sacrifice, disbelief in the impossible, courage which rises higher the nearer death is at hand, are some of the things which have made England. They made her glory in this deed of war."

The charge of the Light Brigade took place during the Battle of Balaklava about 11 o'clock on the morning of October 25th, 1854. William Maxwell in *British Battles* (Letts) says: "History has no finer example of romantic courage and devotion than the charge of the Six Hundred. How it came about is a mystery. Some one had blundered—that is the only explanation. When Lord Lucan received the order he put the question, 'Where are we to advance?' Captain Nolan, who was the bearer of General Avery's commands, pointed to the Russian army posted behind thirty heavy guns, and Lord Lucan reluctantly ordered Lord Cardigan to advance with the Light Brigade. Greater discipline and daring no men have shown than this handful of horsemen who rode into the valley of death. Before them stretched a plain one and a half miles long, and beyond it lay the Russian army with their heavy artillery in front and on both flanks. To cross that plain meant death, swift and terrible. But the Light Brigade shrank not from the attempt. The morning sun gleamed on lance and sabre as the troopers closed ranks and turned their faces towards the enemy. They rode forward in two lines, regardless of the guns that raked them from a redoubt on the right. On they swept proudly—the flower of three Kingdoms. 'Cannon to right of them, cannon to left of them, volleyed and thundered,' yet they rode on. Shot and shell tore through the ranks, but the gaps were filled with never a halt. Nearer and nearer they came to the enemy, and darker and denser grew the shadow of death pierced by the lightning of cannon. Thick and fast they fell, but still they rode on, Lord Cardigan leading with drawn sword like a Paladin of old. Above the din of battle was heard Lord George Paget's cry, 'Now, my brave lads, for Old England! Conquer or die!' With a cheer, that was the death knell of many a brave fellow, they threw themselves upon the gaping muzzles of the guns, sabring the gunners as they stood. Then on again, their desperate course unchecked by the mass of Russian cavalry through which they rode with

blood and wounds in their train. A column of infantry was scattered like chaff before a whirlwind, and then came the order to retire. Out of the valley of death rode not two hundred. Once again they had to run the gauntlet of cannon to right, and left, and rear. Nor was that all. Cavalry charged them on the flank, but the 8th Hussars arrested this movement, heading straight for the enemy until friend and foe were a struggling heap on which the Russians turned their remorseless guns. 'Men! it is a mad-brained trick, but no fault of mine!' exclaimed Lord Cardigan. Of the six hundred and seventy-three, only one hundred and ninety-five came back to the British lines. Of one hundred and twelve Light Dragoons—the 13th—only ten remained in the saddle after the charge, and of the 17th Lancers only thirty-four."

An inspiring account of the incident is given in *Fights for the Flag* by W. H. Fitchett (Smith, Elder). In *Survivors' Tales of Great Events* (Cassell) Walter Wood retells the story of the charge told to him by Sergeant Herbert of the 4th Light Dragoons, who himself took part in the desperate struggle. A good account of the setting of the poem is given in "The Crimean War," on page 256 of Book VI of *Highroads of History* (Nelson). Westland Marston's poem "The Death Ride" is found in *Ballads of the Brave* edited by Frederick Langbridge (Methuen).

The charge of the Heavy Brigade which took place during the same battle has been celebrated by Gerald Massey in a vigorous poem entitled, "Scarlett's Three Hundred" to be found on page 75 of *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson). See also "The Charge of the Heavy Brigade at Balaklava" by Lord Tennyson. A good companion poem, one dealing with an episode of the Great War, is "Death Song of the 9th Lancers" on page 110 of *At Vancouver's Well and Other Poems of South and North* by J. Laurence Rentoul (Macmillan).

PAGE 36—Valley of Death. "Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil."—*Psalms xxxiii, 4*. Hereford B. George says: "The strip of plain along which they advanced might well be called 'the valley of death.' There was Russian artillery on higher ground to right and left, with riflemen in front of the guns; at the eastern end more artillery and all the Russian cavalry."

PAGE 38—Jaws of Death. On the return they had to cut their way through a squadron of Russian cavalry that had attempted to cut off their retreat.

They turn'd. Referring to the sabres.

Cossack. Russian light horsemen from the steppes in the neighborhood of the River Don.

A ROMAN'S HONOR

This selection is taken from Chapter IX, entitled *Regulus*, of *A Book of Golden Deeds*, published in 1864. The book consists of a series of chapters, each one devoted to one or more persons who have performed some great deed or deeds of self-devotion. Chapter I explains what the author means by a "golden deed."

In 264 B.C., the First Punic War broke out between Rome and Carthage. Both were powerful cities, both had ambitions to become mistress of the world, and both had strong forces behind them. Carthage, which had under her control almost the entire southern coast of the Mediterranean, seized the island of Sicily, and this served as a cause of war. Regulus, one of the Roman consuls, was sent to Africa with a strong force, and was at first successful. The Carthaginians were prepared for peace, but they would not submit to the terms imposed by the Romans. They called in Xanthippus, a famous Greek general, who reorganized their army and led them to victory. Thirty thousand Romans were killed on the field, and Regulus and fifteen thousand men were captured. After their defeat at Panormus, the Carthaginians sent Regulus to Rome on the mission described in the text. In the end, the Romans were victorious over their enemies.

PAGE 39—Regulus. In his second consulship Regulus had defeated the Carthaginians in a naval battle, sinking thirty and capturing thirty-four of the enemy's ships.

Senator. The governing body of the Roman republic was the Senate, which was in early times composed of the elder men of the city.

Carthage. A celebrated city in northern Africa, founded by the Phoenicians about 860 B.C. It grew very powerful by its commerce, but was finally completely destroyed by the Romans.

Their god. The horrible god Moloch, to whom human sacrifices were offered.

A victory. In 250 B.C. Caecilius Metellus defeated the Carthaginians at Panormus. Thirteen generals and one hundred and twenty elephants were captured.

PAGE 40—The barbarian's slave. The Romans considered all other nations as barbarians.

The little farm. Near Tarentum in southern Italy, a very fertile district.

Campagna. The flat plain lying to the east and south of Rome.

Conscript fathers. *Patres et Conscripti*, fathers and conscripts. The latter were the plebeian senators. As the word implies, their names were recorded in a register.

PAGE 41—**Even to Romans.** To whom sacrifice for the love of country was no new thing.

Had been wrested. An oath compelled is of no legal effect.

To dishonor me. By making me break my word.

His wife. After the death of Regulus, the Senate handed over to Marcia two Carthaginian generals, whom she treated so cruelly that one of them died, and the Senate was compelled to interfere to save the other.

Chains and death. Horrible stories are told of the cruelties that the Carthaginians, in their rage and disappointment, inflicted on Regulus. The author says: "It is not the tortures he may have endured that make him one of the noblest characters in history, but the resolution that would neither let him save himself at the risk of his country's prosperity, nor forfeit the word that he had pledged."

THE COUREUR-DE-BOIS

The author of this selection Samuel Mathewson Baylis resides at Ottawa. He has written several poems that have had wide acceptance.

The word *coureur-de-bois* means literally "runners of the woods," and refers to the outlaw hunters and trappers of the Old Régime, as the early days of the French rule in Canada are named. The best description of the *coureur-de-bois* is found in Chapter XX of *The Old Régime in Canada* by Francis Parkman (Little, Brown). See also *A History of Canada* by Charles G. D. Roberts (Page).

NOVEMBER

In this poem the author describes the woods in autumn, when all nature is preparing for its winter rest. The "down to sleep" which ends each stanza is a reference to the child's prayer, "Now I lay me down to sleep." In the last stanza the author turns from the autumn of nature to the autumn of life, with a wish that our eternal sleep may be as tenderly prepared for us as is the sleep of nature.

Two excellent companion poems are found in Book IV of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton): "In November" by Archibald Lampman on page 102 and "Autumn Woods" by William Cullen Bryant on page 103.

WORK OR PLAY

This selection is taken from Chapter II of *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*, published in 1876. William P. Trent says: "With the publication

of this volume Mark Twain ceased to be primarily a humorist and became one of the greatest living writers of the fiction of blended humor, adventure, and realistic description of characters and places." The extract in the text, complete in itself, is a shrewd blending of humor and knowledge of human nature. "The humor of exaggeration is employed; but more effective are the delightful touches in which he depicts the peculiarities, the likes and dislikes of his boys, and the singular felicity of his idiomatic boy-talk." It is not necessary to connect the extract with the book of which it forms a part.

Mark Twain says in his preface to *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*, dated at Hartford in 1876: "Most of the adventures recorded in this book really occurred; one or two were experiences of my own, the rest those of boys who were schoolmates of mine. Huck Finn is drawn from life; Tom Sawyer also, but not from an individual—he is a combination of the characteristics of three boys whom I knew, and, therefore, belongs to the composite order of architecture. The odd superstitions touched upon were all prevalent among children and slaves in the West at the period of this story—that is to say, thirty or forty years ago. Although my book is intended mainly for the entertainment of boys and girls, I hope it will not be shunned by men and women on that account, for part of my plan has been to try pleasantly to remind adults of what they once were themselves, and of how they felt and thought and talked, and what queer enterprises they sometimes engaged in."

PAGE 44—The locust trees. The locust trees bloom in June. At this time their ugly limbs are covered with a cataract of white, pea-like blossoms in large clusters. See *Getting Acquainted with the Trees* by J. Horace McFarland (Macmillan).

Continent. Indicating Tom's opinion of the immense extent of the fence to be whitewashed.

PAGE 45—Personating a steamboat. Pretending he was a steamboat. Mark Twain was quite at home in such a character, as for some time he worked on one of these craft on the Mississippi. See his *Life on the Mississippi*.

PAGE 46—Aunt Polly. The aunt of Tom and Sid, with whom they lived.

Jim. Aunt Polly's negro servant.

Sid. Tom's half-brother, who was very studiously inclined.

PAGE 47—More innocents. A reference to the massacre of the children by Herod. See *Matthew ii, 16-18*.

Came to jeer. A humorous parody of the line from Oliver Goldsmith's *The Deserted Village*: "And fools, who came to scoff, remain'd to pray."

Bought in. Borrowed from the language of the stock-exchange.

AN ADJUDGED CASE

The complete title of this poem is "Report of an Adjudged Case not to be Found in any of the Books." Cowper, in sending the manuscript of the poem to one of his friends, says: "I have heard of common law judgments before now, indeed have been present at the delivery of some that, according to my poor apprehension, while they paid the utmost respect to the delivery of a statute, have departed widely from the spirit of it; and being governed entirely by the point of law, have left equity, reason, and common sense behind them at an infinite distance. You will judge whether the following report of a case, drawn up by myself, be not a proof and illustration of this satirical assertion."

Although the poem was written as a satire on the decisions of the law courts, yet this may be disregarded entirely in treating it in class, and its humorous side alone considered. The grave manner in which the case is presented and decided adds to its absurdity. An "adjudged case" is one decided by a judge or court of law.

PAGE 49—Chief Baron. The title, not now used, of the head of the Exchequer Court in England.

Time out of mind. From time immemorial.

PAGE 50—Without one "if" or "but." Absolutely, without any reservation whatever.

THE BEGINNING OF ROME

The Romans were fond of tracing their origin to Aeneas, the Trojan hero, who, after the fall of Troy, took refuge in Italy. There he was kindly received by Latinus, one of the petty kings of the country, who gave him as wife, his daughter Lavinia. Aeneas built himself a town, which he called Lavinium in token of his love for his wife. On his death his son, Ascanius, succeeded him, but, not content with Lavinium, built himself a city called Alba Longa, or the Long White Town. There his descendants reigned for many years. One of the last of these had two sons, Numitor and Amulius, the elder of whom, Numitor, succeeded to the throne. Amulius, however, was not content to remain in second place. He drove his brother from the throne, killing his sons and imprisoning his daughter, Sylvia. Two children born to her he ordered to be drowned, but they were saved in the miraculous manner related in the text.

The early mythical story of Rome is told in a series of chapters, quite suited for reading in this grade, in *Stories of Rome in Days of Old* by

Arthur O. Cooke (Jack). The first chapter entitled "The Founding of Rome" relates in more detail the story told in the text. Another interesting series of stories is found in *Stories of Roman History* by Lena Dalkeith (Jack). See also Book II of *The New Age History Readers* (Nelson). Further details of the early history of Rome are given in the notes on "Horatius" on page 403.

PAGE 50—Many stories. See notes on "Horatius" on page 403.

PAGE 51—Rightful king. Numitor. See *Introduction*.

His brother. Amulius.

His daughter. Her name was Sylvia. It had been foretold that Amulius should meet his death at the hands of a son of Sylvia.

Tiber River. See pages 408 and 411.

Seven low hills. The seven famous hills of Rome.

A shepherd. Faustulus. He was the keeper of the royal herds.

PAGE 52—Wolves and woodpeckers. The Romans believed that Mars had sent the she-wolf and the woodpeckers to the rescue of his children.

Mars. The son of Jupiter and Juno, and the Roman god of war. According to the Roman legends, Mars was the father of Romulus and Remus. They therefore traced the origin of their city not only to Aeneas, who was the son of Anchises and the goddess Venus, but also to Mars himself, the father of Romulus. Mars was held in high repute by the ancient Romans and was worshipped with high honors. See "Mars and Vulcan" on page 115 of *Stories of Old Greece and Rome* by Emilie Kip Baker (Macmillan).

His wife. Her name was Laurentia.

True king. Numitor was at this time living quietly in Alba Longa. It was his flocks that Remus was charged with stealing.

PAGE 53—The Palatine. One of the seven hills of Rome. See page 411.

It was Romulus who chose the Palatine Hill. Remus preferred the Aventine, but yielded to his brother.

Flight of birds. The Romans were firm believers in signs and omens. One of the ways in which they believed that the gods indicated their wishes was by the flight of birds.

Vultures. Repulsive-looking birds of prey, with the crown of the head and often the neck bare of feathers. They feed on garbage and carrion.

The founder. Remus was forced to yield place to Romulus, but he did it with a very bad grace. After the walls of the new city were built, Romulus proclaimed them sacred and commanded that all citizens should enter by the gates. Remus, in derision, leaped the wall and was slain by the enraged guard in charge. Thus Romulus became sole king.

MIRIAM'S SONG

This poem was published in 1816 in *Sacred Song*. It is based on *Exodus xv, 20-21.*: "And Miriam, the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances. And Miriam answered them, Sing ye to the Lord, for he hath triumphed gloriously; the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea." The theme of the poem is the awful power of Jehovah, as shown by His total destruction of the Egyptians, who were following after the children of Israel in their exodus from the country.

Theron Brown and Hezekiah Butterworth in *The Story of Hymns and Tunes* (American Tract) comment on the poem: "One would scarcely guess that this bravura hymn of victory and 'Come, Ye Disconsolate' were written by the same person, but both are by Thomas Moore. The song has all the vigor and vivacity of his 'Harp That Once Through Tara's Halls', without its pathos. The Irish poet chose the song of Miriam instead of the song of Deborah, doubtless, because the sentiment and strain of the first of these two great female patriots lent themselves more musically to his lyric verse—and his poem is certainly martial enough to convey the spirit of both."

PAGE 54—Timbrel. A kind of tambourine.

Egypt's dark sea. The Red Sea.

Sunk in the wave. See *Exodus xiv, 27-28.*

Arrow . . . sword. The power of Jehovah was our weapon.

PAGE 55—Hour of her pride. When her pride and confidence in her power was at its height.

Pillar of glory. See *Exodus xiv, 19, 20, and 24.*

Dashed. Overwhelmed.

 UP THE OTTAWA RIVER

This selection is taken from Chapter II of *Pathfinders of the Plains* in the *Chronicles of Canada*, published by Glasgow, Brook & Co. of Toronto. The book tells the story of La Vérendrye and his sons in their efforts to explore the then great unknown western territory, now included in the three great provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta.

As La Vérendrye and his sons were the first of the explorers to venture into the unknown wilderness west of Lake Superior, a somewhat extended sketch of their labors is given:

Pierre Gaultier de la Vérendrye was born at Three Rivers, on the St. Lawrence, on November 17th, 1685. At the age of twelve he entered the army as a cadet, but nothing is known of his military service until

1704, when he took part in the raid by the French on Deerfield, Massachusetts, and a little later in another raid on the English settlements in Newfoundland. In 1706 he was appointed an ensign in the Grenadiers serving in Flanders. For three years he remained with his regiment, and at Malplaquet was severely wounded, receiving no less than nine wounds. For his bravery in this battle he was made a lieutenant. He was unable to accept the promotion and returned to Canada, as an ensign in a colonial regiment; but finding that there was little hope of further promotion, he resigned from the army and engaged in the fur-trade.

Soon after returning to Canada, La Vérendrye married and made his home on the island of Dupas, near Three Rivers. Here four sons were born to him—Jean, Pierre, François, and Louis—all of whom were afterwards distinguished as explorers. After being for some time in charge of the trading-post of La Gabelle on the St. Maurice River, he was appointed in 1726 to the command of a post on Lake Nipigon, north of Lake Superior. Here he began to lay his plans for western exploration, a project in which he was interested from his boyhood. He tried, through the governor of Canada, to obtain aid from the king, but no money was forthcoming. He did succeed, however, in securing a grant of the monopoly of the fur-trade in the West, and by this means managed to interest a number of the Montreal merchants in his plans.

At last, after innumerable delays, his preparations were complete, and on June 8th, 1731, La Vérendrye, accompanied by three of his sons—Jean, Pierre, and François—set out on his long and toilsome journey to discover the Western Sea.

Late in August the expedition reached the Grand Portage, about 45 miles from Kaministikwia, but there was trouble with the men. They mutinied, and it was with great difficulty that La Vérendrye succeeded in inducing half of them to proceed to Rainy Lake with La Jemeraye, his nephew, while he himself with the remainder stayed behind at Kaministikwia for the winter. In the spring the explorer proceeded westward to the Lake of the Woods, staying for a short time at Fort St. Pierre, which had been built by La Jemeraye during the winter, and on the southwest side of the Lake he erected Fort St. Charles. Here he remained for some time engaged in the fur-trade, and sending to Montreal huge bales of furs to redeem his promises to the merchants who had advanced the money for the expedition. In the meantime, Jean and Pierre had pushed on as far as Lake Winnipeg, where they built Fort Maurepas, near the mouth of the Winnipeg River.

But La Vérendrye had almost reached the limit of his resources. He himself was deeply in debt; the merchants refused further supplies; and

the king would not advance any money. It became necessary for him to return to Montreal. This he did in 1734 and finally succeeded in making terms with the merchants. Once more, in 1735, he set out for the west. When he reached Fort St. Charles, he was met with the sad tidings that La Jemeraye was dead. It became necessary to bring up supplies at once from Kaministikwia. Jean was entrusted with the expedition. On the way Jean and twenty-three of his men, including the Jesuit missionary, Father Alneau, were ambushed and massacred by the Sioux Indians. This was a crushing blow, but the explorer did not quail. It simply made him more determined to find the Western Sea.

In the summer of 1738, leaving Pierre in charge of Fort St. Charles, La Vérendrye, with François and Louis, set out on a visit to the far western tribes. They travelled down the Winnipeg River, stayed for a few days at Fort Maurepas, and finally reached the junction of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers, where Winnipeg now stands. The explorer then proceeded up the Assiniboine, where he built Fort La Reine, near the present site of Portage la Prairie. While he was building this fort, one of his men, De Louvière, was engaged in erecting Fort Rouge near the junction of the Red and the Assiniboine Rivers. This fort, however, was abandoned after a year or two. La Vérendrye then set out over the prairie to visit the Mandan Indians on the Missouri.

In December, 1738, La Vérendrye returned to Fort La Reine, leaving two of his men with the Mandans to find out what they could about the Western Sea. These men did not return until the autumn of 1739, and they had learned so much that the explorer determined to send his son, Pierre, to pick up more information. Pierre, however, did not gain much further knowledge, but was again sent to the Mandans in the spring of 1742, this time accompanied by his brother, François. The two young men pursued their explorations further westward and finally reached the foot-hills of the Rocky Mountains, returning to Fort La Reine after an absence of more than a year. During the next few years François built Fort Dauphin on Lake Manitoba and Fort Bourbon on Cedar Lake. Later he ascended the Saskatchewan as far as the Forks, where the North and South Branches join, and later still he built Fort Paskoyac on the Saskatchewan at the place now known as The Pas. Thus the sons of La Vérendrye became the discoverers of the Rocky Mountains and the Saskatchewan.

While his sons were engaged in exploring the far West, La Vérendrye himself was busy looking after the fur-trade and directing the expeditions sent out. But his enemies were not idle. He was accused of neglecting the work of exploration in order that he might enrich himself with the

profits of the fur-trade. Finally in 1746 he was ordered to return to Montreal, with his sons, and others were entrusted with his work. After over two years' delay the explorer was completely vindicated. He was given the rank of captain, decorated with the Cross of St. Louis, and again placed in a position to continue his life work. But it was too late. In 1749, just as he had completed his arrangements to leave once again for the West, he died, worn out by his exertions and the worries of his later years. His sons made preparations to carry out the work their father had begun, but they were not permitted to do so. Their appeals were disregarded, and they dropped out of history.

The complete story of La Vérendrye and his sons is best told in the book from which the selection in the text is taken. A brilliant sketch of the explorer is given in *Knights Errant of the Wilderness* by Morden H. Long (Macmillan). Another excellent sketch is found in "The Shining Mountains" on page 73 of *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada* by W. S. Wallace (Oxford Press). See also *Pathfinders of the West* by Agnes C. Laut (Macmillan), *The Search for the Western Sea* by Lawrence J. Burpee (Musson), and *Empire Day, 1914*, a pamphlet issued by the Department of Education for Manitoba.

PAGE 55—Everything was ready. Ready to set out on the first exploring expedition to the great unknown West.

Canoes. See page 152.

Champlain. The founder of Quebec and the first explorer of the interior of Canada. See *History of Canada* by I. Gammell (Gage), *Canada's Story* by H. E. Marshall (Jack), *Canada* by Beckles Willson (Nelson), and W. S. Wallace's *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada*.

Nicolas Vignau. Francis Parkman in *Pioneers of France in the New World* (Little, Brown) says: "Three years before, after Champlain's second fight with the Iroquois, a young man of his company had boldly volunteered to join the Indians on their homeward journey, and winter among them. Champlain gladly assented, and in the following summer the adventurer returned. Another young man, one Nicolas de Vignau next offered himself; and he also, embarking in the Algonquin canoes, passed up the Ottawa and was seen no more for a twelvemonth. In 1612 he reappeared in Paris, bringing a tale of wonders; for, says Champlain, 'he was the most impudent liar that has been seen for many a day.' He averred that at the sources of the Ottawa he had found a great lake; that he had crossed it and discovered a river flowing northward; that he had descended this river and reached the shores of the sea; that here he

had seen the wreck of an English ship, whose crew escaping to land, had been killed by the Indians; and that this sea was distant from Montreal only seventeen days by canoe. The clearness, consistency, and apparent simplicity of his story deceived Champlain." The result was that the explorer, early in the spring of 1613, set out on an expedition up the Ottawa River to visit this unknown sea. It was not long before he was convinced of the utter untruthfulness of Vignau.

Cathay China. It was the dream of all the early Canadian explorers that somewhere through the heart of the continent there was a direct passage by water to China, India, and the East.

St. Anne's. See page 265.

PAGE 57—The heroic Dollard. See "The Heroes of the Long Sault" on page 308 of the text.

PAGE 58—Curtain-like. Rideau is the French word for curtain.

Chaudière. The Chaudière Falls at the city of Ottawa have a drop of forty feet. Below the falls is a whirlpool in which the water boils as in a cauldron or kettle.

Indian example. This was an invariable custom of the Indians in passing the whirlpool below the Chaudière. If there were many Indians present, the ceremony was attended with solemn dances and speeches, a contribution of tobacco being first presented on a dish.

Windigo. The word means in the Indian tongue "cannibal". It is generally applied to an evil spirit who frequents a certain place.

Portage. The path around an obstruction to navigation in a river, over which the voyageurs had to carry their canoes.

Western Sea. It was not so much the desire of exploring the territory to the west of Lake Superior that urged La Vérendrye on, but rather the hope of finding the Western Sea. Lawrence J. Burpee says: "One day there came to him from the Kaministikwia River an Indian named Ochagach. Ochagach had travelled, according to his own story, far towards the setting sun, until he came to a great lake, out of which flowed a river to the westward. He said that he had paddled down this river until he came to where the water ebbed and flowed. He had not gone to the mouth of the river, through fear of the savage tribes that inhabited its shores, but he had been told that it emptied into a great salt lake or sea, upon the coasts of which dwelt men of terrifying mien, who lived in fortified towns and wore armor; that the men rode on horseback; and that great ships visited these coast towns." It was the hope of realizing this story and of identifying the "great salt lake" as the Western Sea that urged the explorer forward.

A CANADIAN BOAT-SONG

This poem, written shortly after a visit paid to Canada in 1804, was published in 1806 in *Epistles, Odes, and other Poems*. In the previous year it had been set to music and issued as a single publication.

Speaking of "A Canadian Boat Song," Moore says: "I wrote these words to an air which our boatmen sang to us frequently. The wind was so unfavorable that they were obliged to row all the way, and we were five days in descending the river from Kingston to Montreal, exposed to an intense sun during the day, and at night forced to take shelter from the dews in any miserable hut upon the banks that would receive us. But the magnificent scenery of the St. Lawrence repays all these difficulties. Our *voyageurs* had good voices and sang perfectly in tune together. The original words of the air to which I adapted these stanzas appeared to be a long, incoherent story, of which I could understand little. I ventured to harmonize this air, and have published it. Without that charm which association gives to every little memorial of scenes or feelings that are past, the melody may perhaps be thought common or trifling; but I remember, when we have entered at sunset upon one of these beautiful lakes, my feelings of pleasure which the finest compositions of the first masters have never given me, and there is not a note of it which does not recall to my memory the dip of our oars in the St. Lawrence, the flight of our boat down the Rapids, and all those new and fanciful impressions to which my heart was alive during this interesting voyage."

There is another poem commonly called by the same title as Moore's song. It may be found under the title "The Highland Exiles' Lament" on page 82 of *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson). One stanza is famous:

"From the lone shieling of the misty island
Mountains divide us, and the waste of seas—
Yet still the blood is strong, the heart is Highland,
And we in dreams behold the Hebrides."

There is much dispute as to the authorship of this poem, but it is generally attributed to John Galt, the Scottish-Canadian novelist and colonizer. An interesting discussion of the authorship is found on page 81 of *The Canadian Magazine* for November, 1921.

Another good poem to read in this connection is "The Voyageur's Song" by John F. McDonnell on page 58 of Wilfred Campbell's *Poems of Loyalty*.

PAGE 58—Evening chime. The bells at evening calling to prayer. "As" here means "whilst."

St. Anne's. Ste. Anne de Bellevue, where was the last church on the Island of Montreal. Here they were obliged to remove everything from their boat before attempting the rapid.

Parting hymn. As they were leaving Ste. Anne's.

Rapids. The Cedar Rapids, a short distance above Montreal.

Weary oar. The boatmen were rowing down the St. Lawrence to its junction with the Ottawa.

PAGE 59—**Utawa's tide.** The Ottawa River.

Saint. Ste. Anne, the patron saint of the fertile Island of Montreal.

Favouring airs. Favorable breezes.

RULE, BRITANNIA

S. J. Adair Fitzgerald in *Stories of Famous Songs* (Nimmo) says: "The authorship of 'Rule, Britannia' has been disputed, some authorities at one time inclining to the belief that as David Mallet was concerned with James Thomson in writing the masque of *Alfred*, in which the ode was originally sung, he was the writer. I will quote from Chappell's *National English Airs*: "'Rule, Britannia,' from the masque of *Alfred*, was composed by Dr. Arne. This masque was written by James Thomson and David Mallet, and was performed in the gardens of Cliefden House, the residence of the Prince of Wales, in commemoration of the accession of George I, and in honor of the birthday of the Princess of Brunswick on August 1st, 1740. The words of "Rule, Britannia" were, however, written by Thomson. It was already a celebrated song in 1745, for, during the Jacobite Rebellion in the north of that year, the Jacobites took the lay, and altered the words to suit their cause and termed it their *National Song*.'" It is worthy of note that "Rule, Britannia" and "God Save the King" were produced in the same year, within a few months of each other.

The music of "Rule, Britannia" is given in *School and Community Song Book* by A. S. Vogt and Healey Willan (Gage).

PAGE 59—**Azure main.** Blue ocean.

Charter. The liberties and privileges of the land.

Rule the waves. The refrain of "Rule, Britannia" is frequently printed as follows:

"Rule, Britannia! Britannia rules the waves!
Britons never shall be slaves!"

This is absurdly incorrect. The refrain is rather a prayer than a foolish

boast. The idea is that Britons of their own volition never will submit to tyranny.

More dreadful. More to be dreaded.

Foreign stroke. Each attack made by some foreign nation.

Root thy native oak. The fiercer the blast the more firmly is the oak embedded in the soil.

The Muses. In Greek and Roman mythology the muses were nine goddesses, the daughters of Jupiter (Zeus) and Mnemosyne (Memory), who presided over music, poetry, dancing, and the liberal arts. Their worship was general, although no sacrifices were offered to them.

With freedom found. The thought is that poetry and the liberal arts cannot exist except in a land that is free.

The fair. Fair ones.

THE TIDAL BORE

This selection is taken from the volume entitled *Lost in the Fog* in the *Brotherhood of the White Cross* (B.O.W.C.), a series of books for boys by James DeMille.

Henry M. Ami in *Canada and Newfoundland* (Stanford) says: "The tides in the Bay of Fundy are noted for their height. In St. John harbor the spring tide rises 27 feet; at Sackville, 45 feet; at Fort Cumberland, 45 feet; at the mouth of the Shubenacadie River in the Minas Basin, 50 feet, rising constantly higher towards the upper reaches of the bay. The cause is apparent on the map. The tidal wave sweeps in from the ocean with a broad front, extending from Cape Sable in Nova Scotia to the Maine coast, and, as the shores of the bay draw together and the depth decreases in the upper reaches, the wave rises in height, and its current becomes swifter. At Cape Sable it runs at the rate of three miles an hour, but rapidly accelerates its speed until, in Chignecto Bay and the Minas Basin, it rushes at the rate of six or seven miles an hour with a bore or crest up the funnel-like estuaries. The bore arrives, the foremost wave curling some four to six feet high, and it covers almost instantly the broad flats at the head of the bay. At such points as Windsor, or Moncton, or Amherst, the spectator at low tide will see only a vast expanse of smooth red mud and far away in the middle little rivulets such as the Salmon, the Avon, the Missiguash, the Petitcodiac, trickling in a thin stream of fresh water. Suddenly will arrive a rush of waters, and these little rivers have spread out to a width of two or three miles, and the water brims up in all the little brooklets and ditches." The bore of the Petitcodiac at Moncton, as illustrated on page 62 of the text, reaches

a height of five feet four inches. See the article on "Tides" in *New Age Encyclopaedia* edited by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson).

PAGE 61—**Petitcodiac.** The river enters the Bay of Fundy at the head of the bay.

THE MINSTREL BOY

This poem is one of Moore's *Irish Melodies*, the publication of which began in 1808. They were issued at irregular intervals in ten numbers, each containing twelve songs, except the last, which contained fourteen; and the publication did not cease until 1834.

A writer in Chambers's *Papers for the People* says: "Moore had long cherished a hope of allying his poetry with the expressive music of Ireland; of perpetuating the music and poetry and romance of his country in distant climes; of giving appropriate vocal utterance to the strains which had broken fitfully from out the tumults and trappings of centuries of unblest rule. A noble task! in which even partial success demands great powers and deserves high praise. The execution of the long design now commenced; and the *Melodies*, as they appeared, obtained immense and well-deserved popularity. It is upon these that his fame as a poet mainly rests; and no one can deny that, as a whole, they exhibit great felicity of expression and much graceful tenderness of thought and feeling, frequently relieved by flashes of gay and genial wit and humor." See *Thomas Moore* by Stephen Gwynn in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan).

There is no historical basis for the incidents in this poem. The lesson, expressed in musical language, is that of devotion to country even in the face of death. His country is in the hands of the conqueror; the boy will sing no longer; and, rather than use his beloved harp for the pleasure or the glory of the victors, he destroys it. "We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof. For there they that carried us away captive required of us a song; and they that wasted us required of us mirth, saying, Sing us one of the songs of Zion."—*Psalms cxxvii*, 2-3. Compare with the poem in the text "The Harp That Once Through Tara's Halls" on page 174 of Book IV of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

The poetry of Thomas Moore is well represented in *The Canadian Readers*. Other poems by Moore which may be read in class with advantage are: "The Meeting of the Waters" on page 97 of Book III of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton) and "Oft in the Stilly Night" on page 173 and

"The Harp That Once Through Tara's Halls" on page 174 of Book IV of the same series.

PAGE 63—Ranks of death. Those who are doomed to die.

Wild harp. Referring to the wild, untaught melodies produced from the harp.

Land of song. Ireland, his country.

Betrays thee. "I am ready to fight for my country even if I must fight alone."

Bring . . . under. Though his body was in captivity the victors could not subdue his proud spirit.

PAGE 64—In slavery. Being conquered and no longer free, he and his countrymen were nothing but slaves.

THE RIVER

This little poem, taken from *Poems* by the author, requires no explanation, other than what is contained within itself. It is a beautiful nature poem, instinct with true religious feeling.

PAGE 64—The brine. The salty ocean.

The mead. The meadow.

Tribute stream. Little streams flowing into the larger river.

PAGE 65—Music of the stars. "When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy."—*Job xxxviii, 7.*

THE ROUND-UP

This selection is taken from *The Little Knight of the X-Bar-B*, published in 1910. The extract in the text, however, has no particular connection with the story and may be treated as an independent whole. With the advance of civilization such scenes are rapidly becoming things of the past. In Alberta not many years ago a "round-up" was one of the events of the year. The description in the text may be taken as accurate in every detail. See the chapter entitled "On a Western Cattle Ranch" in *How the World is Fed* by Frank George Carpenter (American Book Co.).

The hero of *The Little Knight of the X-Bar-B* is Jack Devereau, who was kidnapped as a boy of seven and taken to a ranch in Wyoming. The book describes the happenings of his life while there, until his restoration to his mother. The men mentioned in the text come into the story in various ways—Bill Buck, as the owner of the ranch; Red Burdick as the foreman; Limping Johnny as the cook of the outfit and the sympathetic

friend of Jack; Thad Sawyer, Shorty, Broncho Joe, and Big Pete as cowboys who had more or less influence on the career of the hero. The book is very interesting and should prove a valuable addition to the school library.

A capital poem to read in connection with this selection is "The Cowboy" by John Antrobus to be found on page 75 of the Seventh Reader of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand).

PAGE 65—Bucked. A horse is said to "buck" when it makes "a violent effort to throw off a rider by means of rapid plunging jumps, performed by springing into the air, arching the back, and coming down with the fore legs perfectly stiff, the head being commonly held as low as possible."

PAGE 67—Night-wrangler. The cowboy who has charge of the string of ponies during the night.

Meadow-lark. The meadow-lark is very common on the prairies. Its general color is brown, with brown and black streaks on the crown, and the tail black with white outer quills. "While they are feeding they constantly give their calling song, varying the intonation and accent in a way which is very expressive—'Spring o' the *Y-e-a-r*, *Spring* o' the Year.' It has a breezy sound, as fresh and wild as if the wind were blowing through a flute." Excellent descriptions of the meadow-lark, together with colored illustrations, are found on page 14 of Book II of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand) and in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also a very interesting chapter entitled "The Meadow Larks," accompanied by a colored illustration, on page 127 of *Our Bird Friends* by George F. Burba (Musson).

Coyote. See page 337.

Chuck-wagons. The camp supply wagons.

PAGE 68—Lariats. The ropes used by the cowboys in lassoing the cattle.

PAGE 70—Mavericks. Theodore Roosevelt says: "Unbranded animals are called *mavericks* and when found on the round-up are either branded by the owner of the range on which they are, or are sold for the benefit of the cattle association."

KITCHENER OF KHARTOUM

This poem was written almost immediately after the death of Lord Kitchener and published in a newspaper. Later it was included in the volume entitled *Kitchener and Other Poems*, published by The Musson Book Company, Limited, Toronto.

Among the poems written in memory of Lord Kitchener, "Kitchener of Khartoum" undoubtedly takes the highest rank. It must be a great gratification to every Canadian that such a poem should have been written by one of ourselves. In the almost stunned surprise with which the news of Kitchener's untimely death at sea was received throughout the Empire, general regret was everywhere expressed that his body had not been recovered. It was felt that it would have been fitting to have paid to his mortal remains the highest honors that a grateful nation could lavish on its hero. Mr. Stead, however, struck a deeper and truer note. He holds that "England's glory is the sea" and that the proper resting place for the Empire's greatest son is among "the men who made us free." R. E. Vernèdes' beautiful poem "The Sea is His" on page 96 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto) might be read in this connection. If at all possible, the teacher should read to the pupils the poem entitled "Kitchener's Men" on page 137 of *At Vancouver's Well and Other Poems of South and North* by J. Laurence Rentoul (Macmillan). This magnificent ballad has a swing about it which carries the hearer along with it, and it truly interprets the life-work of the great organizer and leader. The last stanza is as follows:

"Where does he rest 'neath the restless tide?—
By the black-ribbed rocks or the white-ridged sand?
His Ocean-tomb is great and wide,
As his field of battle was wide on land.
His task was done! And he died just then
When the bugle called for Kitchener's men!"

Two companion poems are found in J. E. Wetherell's *The Great War in Verse and Prose*: "To the Memory of Field-Marshal Earl Kitchener" by Sir Owen Seaman on page 79 and "Kitchener's March" by Amelia Josephine Burr on page 81. See also *The Story of Lord Kitchener* by Arthur O. Cooke in *Herbert Strang's Readers* (Oxford Press).

Horatio Herbert Kitchener was born at Gunsborough House, near Tralee, County Kerry, Ireland, on June 24th, 1850. His boyhood was not marked by exceptional precocity. Athletics did not attract him; swimming was the only sport of which he was fond and in which he became an expert. However, he read widely and carefully, acquiring a vast amount of well-digested information. In his reading he showed that capacity for mastering detail which was always an outstanding feature of his work.

After spending some time at a private school in Switzerland, he returned to England at the age of seventeen to prepare for entrance to the Royal Military Academy. He was successful in his examinations

and entered Woolwich on January 31st, 1868. While he was still a cadet there, the Franco-Prussian War broke out. When vacation came he went straight to France, enlisted in the French army, and served with a battalion of infantry until the severity of the campaign broke his health and resulted in his being invalided home. When taken to task by the Duke of Cambridge, the commander-in-chief, for his action, his reply was: "I understood that I should not be wanted for some time, and I could not be idle. I thought I might learn something." This reply shows that the two great qualities which contributed more than anything else to his success were already developing. He could not be idle and something of value might be learned. Untiring industry and thirst for useful knowledge, coupled with administrative ability of the highest order, brought him rapidly to the front.

In 1874 Kitchener was sent to Palestine as second in command of an expedition to make a thorough survey of the Holy Land. There he began the study of Arabic, an acquisition which proved of the greatest value to him in after life. Three years later he was put in charge of the survey and completed his work in 1878, receiving high praise for his ability, efficiency, and careful management. Soon after, he was given a similar commission to survey the island of Cyprus. He remained there until 1882, when trouble broke out in Egypt. At once he obtained a furlough and went to the seat of war.

The British forces in Egypt were under the command of Sir Garnet Wolseley. Owing to his ability to speak Arabic like a native, Kitchener was immediately given his commission as major. So well did he acquit himself during the campaign that, when in the following year Sir Evelyn Wood was sent to organize and train a new Egyptian army, he was appointed second in command of the cavalry. A little later General Gordon found himself shut up in Khartoum and besieged by the forces of the Mahdi. A British expedition sent to his relief arrived too late to save him and his men. In this army Kitchener served as intelligence officer.

After the fall of Khartoum, Kitchener returned to England and was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-colonel. In 1886 he was sent back to Egypt as governor-general of Eastern Sudan, serving later as adjutant-general of the Egyptian army. During the campaign against Osman Digma under Sir Francis Grenfell, he commanded the cavalry and greatly distinguished himself.

After a few years of quiet but effective work in reorganizing the Egyptian police, Kitchener succeeded Sir Francis Grenfell in 1892, and soon after was authorized to reconquer the Sudan. The years following were spent in the most careful preparatory work; railways were built,

transport was organized, and the Egyptian army whipped into magnificent shape. This careful preparation enabled him to conduct a short but extremely brilliant campaign against the Mahdists in 1898, culminating in the battle of Omdurman. The Mahdists were completely crushed, and Gordon's death was avenged. For his splendid work Kitchener was raised to the peerage as Baron Kitchener of Khartoum, made Grand Commander of the Bath, thanked for his services by Lords and Commons, and given a grant of £30,000.

Meanwhile the South African War was raging, but was going badly for the British. In 1899 Lord Roberts was appointed to the supreme command, with Kitchener as his chief of staff. From then on, the situation improved. Lord Roberts handled his troops with consummate skill, while Kitchener laid the foundations of success by his thorough organization of transport. After the resignation of Lord Roberts, Kitchener was left in control, and, by May 31st, 1902, through his organizing ability and diplomatic skill he had brought the Boers to terms. He was rewarded by Parliament with a grant of £50,000.

After seven uneventful years as commander-in-chief in India, Kitchener returned to England and was raised to the rank of field marshal. In 1911 he was sent to Egypt as British agent and consul-general. There he was a strong factor in maintaining peace in that turbulent country.

The momentous month of August, 1914, found him in England. When the Government announced, on August 5th, that Lord Kitchener had been appointed Secretary of State for War, the whole empire felt that he was the right man in the right place. No British soldier had shown greater genius for organization upon a large scale; such genius was the first essential of success in the task confronting Britain. No soldier had taken greater hold upon the public imagination; his stern, unbending reticence made of him a man of mysterious power, his achievements made his name a name to conjure with throughout the Empire.

It was fortunate for Britain that her organization for war was entrusted to the man who alone foresaw the length and magnitude of the struggle. He at once began to lay vast foundations for a huge army; the magic of his name drew hundreds of thousands to the colors, and when voluntary enlistment no longer gave the numbers needed, he fathered the Military Service Bill, which ensured sufficient troops to win the war. His name will ever be associated with the army which smashed the German hordes at the Somme, at Vimy, and at Passchendaele, and finally in August, 1918, began the drive which won the war.

On June 5th, 1916, Lord Kitchener and his staff journeyed to the North of Scotland. At 7 p.m. they embarked upon the cruiser *Hampshire*,

which was assigned to take them to Russia on a secret mission. An hour after her departure she struck a mine and sank. The sea was very wild, and only twelve survivors reached the shore. None of these could tell what had become of Lord Kitchener; one seaman, who had seen him standing on the deck, thought that he had gone down with the ship. For days the whole allied world watched and prayed for the glad tidings that "K. of K." was saved. At last, no hope remained, and the great soldier was mourned in every corner of the world where flies the Union Jack.

At the hour of his death he was undoubtedly the most outstanding figure in Britain and the strongest personality in the Empire. His splendid presence, his impressive countenance, his taciturnity, his surprising record had made of him a hero of romance. His immense and deserved popular prestige gave him the complete confidence of the nation. He was the one man to whom the whole Empire turned in the gloomy days of August, 1914; he alone made possible Britain's stupendous military effort, without which civilization would have been crushed beneath the iron heel of Germany.

A very discerning appreciation of the character of Lord Kitchener is to be found on page 51 of Vol. III of the Second Edition of *History of the War* by John Buchan (Nelson).

PAGE 72—Khartoum. The capital of the Sudan, Egypt, near the junction of the Blue and White Niles. Kitchener took his title from the town after he had retaken it from the forces of the Mahdi in 1898. See *Introduction*. The best account of the famous expedition to Khartoum is given in *With Kitchener to Khartoum* by G. W. Steevens in *Nelson's Edinburgh Library* (Nelson).

Master mind. The correctness of this expression may be gathered from the brief sketch of Lord Kitchener's life given above. See also Arthur O. Cooke's *The Story of Lord Kitchener*.

PAGE 73—And ashes laid, etc. See the fifth stanza of "The Burial of Moses" on page 296 of the text. See also "Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington" by Lord Tennyson, the first stanza of which is as follows:

"Bury the Great Duke
 With an empire's lamentation,
 Let us bury the Great Duke
 To the noise of the mourning of a mighty nation.
 Mourning when their leaders fall,
 Warriors carry the warrior's pall,
 And sorrow darkens hamlet and hall."

Tomb of State. The great burial place of the good and great of the British Empire is in Westminster Abbey, London, but both Wellington, the soldier, and Nelson, the sailor, are buried in St. Paul's Cathedral. See pages 124 and 164.

Bier—bed. The sea.

ALAN McLEOD, V.C.

This selection was written specially for *The Canadian Readers* by Dr. D. E. Hamilton. It relates a story of coolness, daring, and self-sacrificing bravery which is beyond all praise. Note that the Victoria Cross was awarded to McLeod for his successful efforts to save his observer, whom he refused to leave in his helpless condition. The record of the flight should be taken up point by point.

The story of McLeod's bravery is told also in *V.C.'s of the Air; The Glorious Record of Men of the British Empire Air Force Awarded the Victoria Cross for Valour* by Gilbert Barnett (Burrow). A record of daring deeds of other Canadians who won the Victoria Cross is given in *Thirty Canadian V.C.'s* compiled by the Canadian War Records Office (Skeffington). See also *The Path of Glory* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson), *The Long Road to Victory* by John Buchan (Nelson), and *Children's Story of the War* by Sir Edward Parrott (Nelson).

PAGE 74—The Victoria Cross. See page 170.

Toronto. Toronto was the Canadian headquarters of the Royal Air Force. **March 21st, 1918.** See your Public School History.

Amiens. On the River Somme. It was occupied by the Germans on September 4th, 1914, but recaptured by the Allies and held by them until the end of the war. During the fighting in March, 1918, the Germans came within eight miles of the town.

PAGE 76—Bethune. About twenty miles from Lille. It was an important point in the British line of communication, being occupied by the General Headquarter's Staff of the British army. It was heavily bombarded in 1918, when the Germans succeeded in advancing to within three miles of the place.

Albert. The town was occupied by the Germans in 1918, but it soon became untenable by either side. It was almost totally destroyed.

Khaki and gray. The British were in khaki, the Germans in gray.

PAGE 77—Petrol. Gasoline.

PAGE 78—He dragged Hammond. Lieutenant Hammond was given the Military Cross for his splendid part in this glorious achievement.

JACQUES CARTIER

This poem was published in 1858 in *Canadian Ballads*. It refers to the second of the four voyages made by Jacques Cartier to Canada. On his return from his first expedition Cartier was kindly received by the French king, who at once commissioned him to equip ships and engage men for a second voyage of discovery. In the spring of 1535 everything was ready. The expedition, equipped and provisioned for fifteen months, consisted of three ships, the *Grande Hermine* of 126 tons burden, the *Petite Hermine* of 60 tons, and the *Emerillon* of 40 tons. In all, 112 persons were on board. The ships set sail from St. Malo on May 19th, 1535, and after wintering in Canada, two of them returned on July 6th, 1536, the *Petite Hermine* having been abandoned in the new land.

Good accounts of the voyages of Cartier are given in the chapter entitled "How a Breton Sailor Came to Canada" in *Canada's Story Told to Boys and Girls* by H. E. Marshall (Jack), in *Canada* by Beckles Willson (Jack), in "The Secret of the St. Lawrence" on page 25 of *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada* by W. S. Wallace (Oxford Press), and in *The Mariner of St. Malo* by Stephen Leacock in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook). See also *Jacques Cartier and his Four Voyages to Canada* by Hiram B. Stephens (Musson).

Jacques Cartier was born at St. Malo in 1491. He early became a sailor and is said to have made several voyages to Newfoundland. There is also some evidence that he made one voyage to Brazil. At the date of his marriage, 1519, he was a master-pilot in the service of the French king. In 1534 he first visited Canada, and subsequently made three other voyages, during which he extended his explorations. After his return from his fourth voyage he settled at St. Malo, and passed his last days peacefully, either at his home in the town or at his country residence of Limoilon some miles distant. He died September 1st, 1557. Stephen Leacock says: "Jacques Cartier, as much perhaps as any man of his time, embodied in himself all that was highest in the spirit of his age. He shows us the daring of the adventurer with nothing of the dark cruelty by which it was disfigured. He brought to his task the simple faith of the Christian whose devout fear of God renders him fearless of the perils of sea and storm. He came to these coasts to find a pathway to the empire of the East. He found instead a country vast and beautiful beyond his dreams. The enthusiasm of it entered into his soul. Asia was forgotten before the reality of Canada."

PAGE 79—**St. Malo.** A seaport of Brittany, in France, near the lower end of the English Channel.

Old cathedral. Before sailing the whole company repaired to the Cathedral Church of St. Malo, where they confessed their sins and received the benediction of the bishop.

Undiscovered seas. On his first voyage Cartier had discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but the country was practically unknown.

Pinnacle and pier. The points most exposed to the wind.

PAGE 80—Vigils. Night-watches, generally of a religious character.

Mount Royal. The mountain on the Island of Montreal; so named by Cartier.

Fleur-de-lis. The emblem of France. "Louis VII adopted the *Iris* as his badge when he formed the crusade, which led to its being called *Fleur-de-Louis*; this in the course of time has been corrupted to *fleur-de-lis*." See note on "stately flags" on page 85.

Cross. The emblem of the Christian religion. By the raising of the cross, having at the centre a shield decorated with *fleur-de-lis*, Cartier emblematically took possession of the country in the name of the king of France and the Christian religion. There is, however, no record of this having been done at Hochelaga. On his first voyage Cartier had raised the cross, with appropriate ceremonies, at the point of entrance to the harbor at the Bay of Gaspé.

Hard, etc. This is a description of the country as it was at the time of Cartier.

Seas of pearl. It should be remembered that the early explorers expected to find in the new world all the gold and precious stones of the East.

Thule. An island in the far north regarded by the ancients as the most northerly part of the habitable world.

PAGE 81—Winter causeway. The frozen rivers were used as highways in winter.

Magic wand. The change is so sudden that it seems almost as if some fairy had waved her magic wand over the scene.

Dry bones, etc. The comparison is neither beautiful nor appropriate.

Algonquin braves. Indian warriors. One of the Indian tribes occupying the valley of the St. Lawrence.

Rocks her child. The baby, or papoose, is laced in a cradle and swung from the limb of a tree.

To breathe upon. The Indians at Hochelaga seem to have regarded Cartier as a deity, and brought to him their sick and injured to be healed. "For it seemed unto them that God had descended and come down from Heaven to heal them."

Gospel of St. John. "Our captain, seeing the misery and devotion of this poor people, recited the Gospel of St. John, that is to say, *In the*

beginning was the Word, touching everyone that was diseased, praying to God that it would please Him to open the hearts of the poor people and to make them know His Holy Word, and that they might receive baptism and christendom."

The river. The St. Lawrence.

Its freshness. Scarcely in accordance with fact.

Hochelaga's height. Mount Royal. The site of the Indian village of Hochelaga on the Island of Montreal, which Cartier visited, is not now known. When Champlain landed on the island, less than a hundred years later, the village had completely disappeared. At the time of Cartier's expedition the inhabitants numbered about one thousand.

Fortress cliff. Quebec, then known as Stadacona.

THE MIRACULOUS PITCHER

This selection is abridged from the section of the same name in Hawthorne's *A Wonder-Book for Boys and Girls*. The story of Philemon and Baucis, as here told, differs in many particulars from the Greek legend, but perhaps it is just as well to ignore these differences and to accept the story as related by Hawthorne. *See page 95.*

Good school editions of *A Wonder-Book* and its companion volume *Tanglewood Tales* are found in *Pocket Classics* series (Macmillan). A good selection from both books under the title *Tanglewood Tales Told to the Children* by C. E. Smith is published by T. C. and E. C. Jack. All these stories by Hawthorne make admirable reading for this grade and may with advantage be taken up with the pupils. The last mentioned book contains, in addition to "Philemon and Baucis," the stories of Pandora, Cadmus, Proserpine, and Midas.

Another version of the story of Philemon and Baucis is given on page 145 of *Classic Myths* by Mary Catherine Judd (Rand) under the title "The Linden and the Oak." See also "Philemon and Baucis" on page 184 of *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian S. Hyde (Heath). Good dramatic versions are found on page 50 of *A Dramatic Version of Greek Myths and Hero Tales* by Fanny Comstock (Ginn) and in *Dramatic Reader for Grammar Grades* by Marietta Knight (American Book Co.). Both these books contain additional classical material in dramatic form well suited to pupils of this grade.

PAGE 82—**Cottage door.** The home of Philemon and Baucis was in Phrygia in Asia Minor.

PAGE 83—**This staff.** The Caduceus. In the picture on page 49 of Book III of *The Canadian Readers* the Caduceus is seen in the hands of Mercury.

PAGE 84—**Quicksilver.** The god Mercury. The reason for the name invented by Hawthorne is obvious. Mercury, the son of Jupiter, was the god of the wind and the messenger of the gods. In return for a present of the lyre, Apollo, the god of the sun, presented him with a magic rod, surmounted with a pair of wings, which had the power of reconciling all warring elements. One day Mercury touched with this rod two snakes who were fighting, and, in token of amity, the snakes at once twined themselves around the rod, in the form of two equal semi-circles. The god was so pleased with their appearance that he bade them remain there always. This rod was known as *Caduceus*. As Mercury was the messenger of the gods, Jupiter presented him with a pair of winged sandals, called *Talaria*, which endowed him with marvellous power of motion, and a cap, called *Petanus*, provided with wings, which still further increased his speed. The rod, the sandals and the cap are referred to in the text. See the chapter entitled "Mercury and Iris" on page 132 of *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn).

PAGE 85—**Ask the thunder.** Jupiter, the king of the gods, was also the god of thunder. He is frequently represented in his statues as hurling the thunderbolts. See page 166. See also Chapters I and II of Robert Edward Francillon's *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter*.

Nectar and ambrosia. The food of the immortals, according to the Greek and Roman legends. In the celestial regions the gods fed on ambrosia and drank nectar.

In great confusion. Note the modern touch.

PAGE 89—**Linden.** The linden is a tall, stately tree, with slender branches closely covered with leaves. See *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

THE RED RIVER VOYAGEUR

This poem was written by Whittier after reading in a newspaper an account of the Roman Catholic Mission at St. Boniface, at the junction of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers. On the occasion of the celebration of the poet's eightieth birthday, the bells of St. Boniface were rung as a special tribute to the aged poet. On this fact being communicated to Whittier by the United States consul at Winnipeg, he sent a graceful letter of acknowledgment to the Archbishop of St. Boniface.

PAGE 91—Cloud-rack. Thin, broken clouds floating aimlessly in the sky.
Assiniboins. A tribe of Indians living in the vicinity of the present city of Winnipeg. See page 323.

Upon the shore. See *Revelation x, 1-6*.

Angel of Shadow. The angel of death.

Vesper. The bell calling to evening prayer.

St. Boniface. The city of St. Boniface is situated across the Red River from Winnipeg.

PAGE 92—Roman Mission. The settlement of St. Boniface, on the east bank of the Red River, dates from 1817, when the Catholic Meurons, auxiliary Swiss troops in the service of England during the war of 1812, and under Lord Selkirk, accepted grants of land in return for their military services. The German origin of these soldiers explains the choice of the patron saint, St. Boniface, the apostle of Germany. In 1818 the Rev. N. B. Provencher, accompanied by the Rev. S. Dumoulin, arrived at St. Boniface to minister to the Catholics there and to evangelize the Indians. Father Dumoulin made his headquarters at Pembina, while Father Provencher took charge of St. Boniface and the neighboring Red River settlements. In 1822 the latter was consecrated Bishop, with jurisdiction extending over the North-West Territories as far as Hudson Bay. Shortly after his arrival in the settlement, he had erected, in 1818, a small wooden building, which served as a dwelling, school-house, and chapel, the first chapel in the country. Five years later Bishop Provencher raised a more spacious construction, and in 1832 he laid the foundation stone of the handsome cathedral "with turrets twain," which was destroyed by fire on December 14th, 1860.

Turrets twain. The old cathedral was surmounted by two towers.

Mortal journey. Journey through life.

Bitter north winds. Troubles and anxieties crowd upon us.

As oarsmen. Tired with the weary struggle.

His release. When death comes.

THE HEROINE OF VERCHÈRES

This selection is taken from Chapter XIV of *Count Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV*, published in 1877. The text is somewhat shortened, some of the incidents of the siege being cut out, and in other places there are changes from the original. The narrative, however, is substantially as given by Parkman. The historian draws his information from the "Narrative of the heroic deeds of Mlle. Marie Madeleine de

Verchères aged 14 years, against the Iroquois, in the year 1696, on October 22nd, at 8 o'clock in the morning." This account was taken down from the lips of Madeleine herself by order of the Marquis de Beauharnais, governor of Canada. The complete narrative was published in 1899, in the *Supplement to Dr. Brymner's Report on Canadian Archives*. It will be noted that Parkman gives the date as 1692, while Madeleine's story makes the date 1696. It is not of much importance, however, as the main point is that the girl at the time was but fourteen years of age.

Marie Madeleine Jarret, the daughter of the seignior of Verchères was born at her father's seigniorship in April, 1678. Her heroic defence of the fort against the Iroquois took place in 1692, when she was but fourteen years of age. She was married twice; first in 1706 to Thomas de la Naudière, and again in 1722 to M. de la Pèrade. In her later years she received a pension for life from the French government. The date of her death is unknown.

Subsequent to her second marriage in 1722, Madeleine was the heroine of another adventure with the Indians. One day two giant Abenakis entered the house with the object of picking a quarrel with her husband. De la Pèrade ordered them out, and they departed fiercely angry. In a few moments they returned, armed with a tomahawk and a hatchet, and made a rush at him. He closed with one of the Indians, but was on the point of being overpowered, when a settler, who happened to be passing, came to his aid. The other Indian aimed a blow with his tomahawk at de la Pèrade, but Madeleine wrenched the weapon from his grasp and felled him to the ground. Just then, to her utter surprise, she found herself in the hands of four squaws. One of them seized her by the throat and another by the hair, after tearing off her cap. The other two seized her round the body in order to throw her into the fire. Seeing her desperate condition, her twelve-year-old son grasped a weapon and beat the squaws until they were compelled to let her go. They then turned their attack upon de la Pèrade, who had grasped the first Indian by the hair and was about to slay him. The Indian begged for his life, and the squaws, now badly frightened, joined in his entreaties. The settler interceded for him, and thinking it more prudent to spare the Indian than to slay him, de la Pèrade allowed the party to leave without further injury. "Thus," says Madeleine, "it was that I saved my husband's life, and that my son, who was but twelve years old, saved that of his mother."

A graphic account of Madeleine de Verchères is given in *Maids and Matrons of New France* by Mary Sifton Pepper (Little Brown). See also *The Heroines of Canadian History* by W. S. Herrington (Ryerson

Press) and *An American Book of Golden Deeds* by James Baldwin (American Book Co.). John Read's *Madeleine de Verchères*, published in *Songs of the Great Dominion* edited by W. D. Lighthall (Scott), is an interesting poem to read in connection with the prose narrative in the text. See also "The Story of Madeleine de Verchères" in *Canada's Story* by H. E. Marshall (Jack). This selection is accompanied by a good colored illustration and, in addition, has a number of stanzas from W. H. Drummond's poem.

PAGE 92—Frontenac. Louis de Buade, Comte de Frontenac, was born in France in 1620. He had a distinguished military career in France, and in 1672 was sent to Canada as governor; but his constant quarrels with the other officials caused his recall in 1682. His successor, however, proved too weak to control the Indians, and in 1689 he again became governor. He continued in office until his death in 1698. Parkman says of him: "From the moment when the Canadians found a chief whom they could trust and the firm old hands of Frontenac grasped the reins of their destiny, a spirit of hardihood and energy grew up in all this rugged population; and they faced their stern fortunes with a stubborn daring and endurance that merit respect and admiration." See *Canadian Types of the old Régime* by Charles W. Colby (Holt), *The Story of the British People* (Nelson), and *A History of Canada* by Charles G. D. Roberts (Macmillan).

The fort at Vercherès. The fort at Verchères was generally known as "Castle Dangerous." It lay directly in the path of the Indian raids on Montreal and the settlements in the neighborhood, and many times had withstood sieges and attacks by the Indians. Two years before the incident related in the text, Madeleine's mother had found herself beset in the fort with only three or four armed men, and had heroically defended herself against the Iroquois for two days until help arrived.

Seignior. In French Canada large grants of land were made by the king to certain persons, generally retired army officers, on condition of their performing certain services. The land so granted was called a *seignior* and the holder a *seignior*. See the chapter on "The Colonist-Hébert" in Colby's *Canadian Types of the Old Régime*. Madeleine's father was a former officer of the Carignan Regiment, who, when the regiment was ordered back to France in 1668, chose to remain in Canada and was granted the seignior of Verchères.

PAGE 93—Blockhouse. See page 44.

On duty. Military duty required by the governor.

The landing-place. About four hundred paces from the fort.

The Iroquois. The confederacy of Indian tribes known as Iroquois or the

Five Nations was composed of five tribes—Cayugas, Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, and Senecas. In 1722 they were joined by the Tuscaroras, and from that time they were known as the Six Nations. They lived for the most part south of Lakes Ontario and Erie in what is now the State of New York. Soon after the French arrived in Canada Champlain assisted the Algonquins and Hurons in a raid on the Iroquois, thus incurring the deadly enmity of the confederacy. The story of their raids on Canada takes up a large part of the history of the early French occupation of the country. See *A History of Canada* by I. Gammell (Gage).

Palisades. A palisade is a wall constructed of large stakes stuck upright into the ground. The word is frequently applied to the individual stakes of which the wall is made up.

PAGE 95—Miserable coward. It should be remembered that if the soldier were taken he would have had to endure the awful horrors of Indian torture.

Putting on a hat. So that the watching Indians might think that she was a man.

Two brothers. One of the boys afterwards joined the French army and was killed at the attack on Haverhill in 1708. In a letter written some years later Madeleine states that one of her brothers had been captured and burned by the Indians. It is not clear, however, whether or not it was one of these boys.

Our country, etc. The English, assisted by the Iroquois, were at the time of Frontenac's second administration engaged in a severe struggle with the French. Hand in hand with the desire to acquire new territory went the desire of the French to convert the Indians to Christianity. So Madeleine might well say to her two brothers that they were fighting for their country and their religion.

A fortified place. This was characteristic of the Iroquois.

PAGE 96—Lurking. Hidden, but active and vigilant.

Show of fight. Parkman illustrates this point by a further incident that took place at this time: "One evening a bachelor of the parish of La Chesnagne made a visit to a neighboring widow, taking with him his gun and a small dog. As he was taking his leave his hostess, whose husband had been killed the year before, told him that she was afraid to be left alone and begged him to remain with her—an invitation which he accepted. Towards morning, the barking of his dog roused him, when, going out, he saw the night lighted up by the blaze of burning houses, and heard the usual firing and screeching of an Iroquois attack. He went back to his frightened companion, who also had a gun. Placing himself at the corner of the house, he told her to stand behind him. A number of Iroquois soon

appeared, on which he fired at them, and, taking her gun, repeated the shot, giving her his own to load. The warriors returned his fire from a safe distance, and in the morning withdrew altogether, on which the pair emerged from their shelter and succeeded in reaching the fort. The other inhabitants were all killed or captured."

Bastions. Projecting towers at the corners of the fort, so arranged as to command two approaches to it.

Were behaving. She was afraid that the soldiers might attempt to steal away in the darkness.

PAGE 97--**Gallantly.** Chivalrously.

THE UNBROKEN SONG

This selection is the first two stanzas of a longer poem entitled *Christmas Bells*, published in the volume *Flower-de-Luce*. The remaining stanzas are as follows:

- "Till, ringing, singing on its way,
 The world revolved from night to day,
 A voice, a chime,
 A chant sublime,
 Of peace on earth, good-will to men!
- "Then from each black, accursed mouth
 The cannon thundered in the South,
 And with the sound
 The carols drowned
 Of peace on earth, good-will to men!
- "It was as if an earthquake rent
 The hearth-stones of a continent,
 And made forlorn
 The households born
 Of peace on earth, good-will to men!
- "And in despair I bowed my head:
 'There is no peace on earth,' I said;
 'For hate is strong
 And mocks the song
 Of peace on earth, good-will to men!'"

“Then pealed the bells more loud and deep;
 ‘God is not dead; nor doth He sleep!
 The Wrong shall fail,
 The Right prevail,
 With peace on earth, good-will to men!’ ”

The completed poem was, of course, written during the bitter civil war between the North and the South in the United States. The war lasted for almost five years, and caused untold suffering and loss of life. It finally ended in the triumph of the Northern armies.

THE SONG MY PADDLE SINGS

This poem was published in 1894 in *The White Wampum*. In reading the poems of Pauline Johnson we always expect to be near nature's heart. In this poem she breathes out her love to the paddle that has so often helped her in calm and storm. It is impossible not to observe the susceptibility of the rhythm to the theme, the effort to make the sound harmonize with the sense, the wise use of personification, and the loving sympathy with nature in all her moods. In studying this poem the student should see a succession of beautiful pictures. He should feel in a measure the joy and exultation of the canoeist, and should appreciate the triumph of the paddle, which not only conquered the stream, but also sang the wind to rest and caused the trees to join in its lullaby.

A good companion selection is “The Canoe” by Isabella Valancey Crawford on page 177 of *Songs of the Great Dominion* edited by W. D. Lighthall (Scott). An admirable description to read to the pupils is “In a Canoe” by Lord Dunraven on page 282 of *Selections of Prose and Poetry* (Gage).

A number of excellent specimens of the poems of Pauline Johnson are found in *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent): “Lullaby of the Iroquois” on page 9, “The Maple” on page 13, “The Indian Corn Planter” on page 19, “The Riders of the Plains” on page 21, “As Red Men Die” on page 25, “The Legend of Qu'Appelle Valley” on page 36, “Canadian Born” on page 41, “The Corn Husker” on page 60, and “Erie Waters” on page 77.

PAGE 98—Lateen. A triangular sail.

MOSES AT THE FAIR

This selection is taken, with some changes and omissions, from Chapters XII and XIII of *The Vicar of Wakefield*, published in 1776. Evelyn

Smith says: "While living in the Temple, Dr. Johnson received a desperate message from Goldsmith one morning. He could not pay his rent, and the bailiffs were coming. The doctor at once sent him money; and, following his messenger, found that Goldsmith had bought a bottle of wine and was abusing his landlady over it. Johnson persuaded him to talk seriously over his financial difficulties; Goldsmith gave him a novel in manuscript; Johnson carried it off to a bookseller and sold it for sixty pounds. Goldsmith's debts were cleared, and one of the most popular of the eighteenth century novels was thus published."

Good school editions of the novel are found in *Nelson's Classics* (Nelson) and in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). A dramatized version is contained in *Form-Room Plays: Senior Book* compiled by Evelyn Smith (Dent). Other selections from the book suitable for this grade are in Book V of *Highroads of Literature* (Nelson). A dramatized version of the selection in the text entitled "Moses Goes to the Fair" is given on page 83 of the Sixth Reader of *The Merrill Readers* (Merrill).

Henry W. Boynton says: "The moral truth expressed in *The Vicar of Wakefield* is identical with that of the *Book of Job*: the triumph of steadfast virtue and piety against 'the slings and arrows of outrageous fortune.' In spite of some minor moral obliquities in character and situation, the general effect of the story is one of wholesomeness; it rings true, for its keynote is love. Its power is not likely to wane; it is the sort of book from which, while human nature remains the same, the race cannot grow away."

A knowledge of the story of *The Vicar of Wakefield* is not necessary in connection with the extract in the text. The novel relates the everyday happenings in the life of the vicar, Dr. Primrose, and his family, and the trials and difficulties through which they pass. The family consists of Mrs. Primrose, two daughters, Olivia and Sophia, and four sons, William, Moses, and two younger boys. The plot is somewhat complicated, there are many improbabilities in the narrative, and parts are tediously drawn out, but the story is on the whole well told, interesting, and, in the main, true to life. A careful outline of the plot of the novel is given in *Fifty English Classics Briefly Outlined* by Melvin Hix (Hinds).

PAGE 100—Hold up our heads. Take a higher position in society. At this time the family, especially Mrs. Primrose, had been much gratified by the notice taken of them by some of the distinguished people in the neighborhood.

Grown old. The colt had been nine years in the family, lacked a tail, had never been broken, and had many vicious tricks.

Single or double. So that either one person or two might ride upon the horse.

My antagonist. Mrs. Primrose was the vicar's strongest opponent.

Happened. Was to be held.

Persuaded me. Mrs. Primrose had not much confidence in the vicar's business ability.

Stands out. Holds out.

Higgles. Haggles or argues; beats down.

Some opinion. Had a good deal of confidence in his prudence.

Fitting out Moses. H. W. Boynton explains: "His hair, which he usually allows to hang unkempt about his shoulders, is trimmed and caught into a queue; his shoe-buckles and knee-buckles are polished; and his broad-brimmed hat is converted by a pin or two into something like the fashionable three-cornered hat of the period."

Deal. Pine.

Thunder and lightning. A mixture of dark and light colors; "pepper-and-salt."

Gosling green. Yellowish green, the same color as the down of a gosling.

PAGE 101—**Sell his hen.** Make a bad bargain; hens look their worst on a rainy day, owing to their bedraggled appearance.

As I live. As sure as I live; an exclamation of surprise.

PAGE 102—**Shagreen.** A rough, untanned leather.

Dead bargain. A perfect bargain.

PAGE 103—**A murrain.** The word means "a cattle plague." Plague take such useless stuff!

His figure. His simple appearance, made more conspicuous by his dress.

PAGE 104—**Mr. Flamborough.** One of the vicar's neighbors, a good-natured but very talkative man.

Talked him up. Wheedled him.

"WHILE SHEPHERDS WATCHED THEIR FLOCKS"

This beautiful poem by Margaret Deland is a description of the scene near Bethlehem on the night that Christ was born. Note the beauty of the imagery throughout and the sweetness of the verse. The whole account is based on *Luke ii, 8-20*.

A splendid selection of Christmas poems is given in the section entitled "Carols, Hymns, and Sacred Verse" in *The Golden Staircase: Poems and Verses for Children* chosen by Louey Chisholm (Jack). See particularly "A Christmas Carol" by James Russell Lowell on page 325, "A Christmas Carol" by Christina G. Rossetti on page 326, "The Three Kings of Cologne"

by Eugene Field on page 327, "A Christmas Hymn" by Cecil Frances Alexander on page 328, and "The Child of Bethlehem" by Phillips Brooks on page 329. See also "A Christmas Hymn" by Alfred Domett on page 400 of Book IV of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton). Two good Christmas selections may also be mentioned: "Christmas in Other Lands" by Alice Woodworth Cooley on page 74 of the Sixth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.) and "Going Home for Christmas" by Washington Irving on page 90 of the Seventh Year of the same series.

PAGE 104—**Dusky olives.** See page 118.

THE BUFFALO

This selection is taken from Chapter XX of *The Great Lone Land* by Lieutenant-General Sir William Francis Butler, published in 1872. The book is a description of a trip made by the author during 1870-71 through what is now the prairie section of Western Canada. The extract in the text has no necessary connection with the book as a whole and may be considered independently of its context.

A good description of the buffalo, or American bison, is given in the chapter entitled "Buffaloes" on page 22 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). A colored illustration accompanies the text. See also the chapter entitled "Monarchs in Exile" in *Stories of Birds and Beasts* by Mabel Osgood Wright (Macmillan). The best description of a buffalo hunt is found in Chapter XXIV entitled "The Chase" of *The Oregon Trail* by Francis Parkman in *Pocket Classics* series (Macmillan). See also "The One That Lives in a Crowd" by Julia A. Schwartz on page 24 of *Lippincott's Fourth Reader* by Homer P. Lewis (Lippincott); this is an excellent account of the life of a buffalo calf.

A few paragraphs from *The Riders of the Plains* by A. L. Haydon (Melrose) form an excellent commentary on the text: "To the red man of Canada the bison was God's greatest gift. It supplied him at once with food and clothing, with most of the essentials and comforts of his life. Its skin provided tents as well as garments; the undressed hide was converted into a boat. From the sinews came strings for the bow; from the short, curved horn a powder flask, and from the tanned leather the stout lariat for bridle and rein. Its flesh, either eaten fresh or pounded down and mixed with fat into 'pemmican', afforded the best of food. From first to last the bison was the Indian's friend in need, for even when the savage descended into the grave it was a buffalo robe that served him as a shroud.

“At the present time, when only a few hundreds of these creatures are alive, carefully guarded in special reservations, it is difficult to comprehend the extent of the immense herds which formerly ranged over the prairies. In bygone days, according to travellers’ reports, the plains were literally black with them. It was not unusual for a waggon train to be compelled to camp one or two days to allow a herd of buffalo to pass. One might ride, as once did Colonel Dodge, through an unbroken line of them for twenty-five miles. On that day he computed he saw half a million buffaloes. A restless tide of bison was for ever surging to and fro between the plains of the Saskatchewan and the Assiniboine, and those of the Missouri, Mississippi, and Ohio. The great prairies were their principal feeding-grounds; they left these only for the pasture afforded by the gorges of the Rockies.

“By the year 1870, following on the completion of the Union Pacific Railway, the once universal herd which roamed across the whole continent had been broken up into two portions, a northern and a southern herd. The former kept to the north-west, the latter to Texas and other western States of America. The war of extermination began almost immediately. Hardly more than four years later the southern herd was blotted out, Indians and whites alike butchering the buffaloes without restraint.

“In the Canadian territory the same senseless, wasteful annihilation was going on. Thanks to American traders, the Indians were now armed with breech-loading rifles, which did far more deadly execution than their bows and arrows. Moreover, both for meat and for robes cows were shot down in preference to bulls. At this period the northern herd was itself divided. One portion ranged eastward from Regina to the Red River, the other westward from Regina to the base of the Rocky Mountains. The first of these herds came down from the north, following the course of the Assiniboine, and found its way into the Dakotas; the second browsed along the flanks of the mountains in Alberta and as far as the rich grass lands of Montana, returning to winter in the hills by Calgary.

“Although the years 1880-83 were responsible for the greatest wanton slaughter, the decimation of the southern herd had been in progress for some considerable time before. Within a comparatively short period the bison were reduced to an insignificant number. The construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway may be said to have sealed their doom, for by its means the buffalo were made accessible at all points. Eventually only some small isolated bands of the animals escaped to find refuge in the vastnesses of the mountains or in the ‘barren lands’ north of Athabaska.”

PAGE 105—De Soto. One of the early Spanish explorers of North America. He was born about 1500 and served with Pizarro in Peru. In 1538 he led an expedition to Florida, discovered the Mississippi River, and died in Louisiana in 1542, while making his way out of the country. See *Stories of American Discoverers* by Rose Lucia (American Book Co.).

Rio del Norte. The Rio Grande del Norte, a river flowing into the Gulf of Mexico. For a great part of its course it forms the boundary between Texas and Mexico.

PAGE 107—Crees. See note on "Kristinots" on page 324.

Medicine man. Certain men among the Indians who professed to have supernatural powers which enabled them to cure diseases, control the weather, drive out evil spirits, and do many other wonderful things. See *People of the Plains* by Amelia M. Paget (Ryerson Press) and Chapter III of *Indian Stories* by Cicero Newell (Silver).

PAGE 108—Fort Kearney. A small town in Nebraska, about 200 miles from Omaha.

Mustang. The wild horse of the prairie.

PAGE 111—Bid defiance to man. The Canadian government maintains a large herd of buffalo at Wainwright National Park in Alberta. There are about fifteen hundred of the animals in their natural wild state ranging to the west of Fort Smith in the North-West Territories. These wild herds are carefully protected and are in charge of a buffalo patrol service composed of an inspector and eight men. Bulletin No. 11 of Vol. I (December, 1922) of *National Resources: Canada* (Department of Interior, Ottawa) gives an interesting sketch of the wild buffalo herds.

THE SEA

This poem is purely impersonal and has no relation to the actual life of the author. As a matter of fact the poet never even crossed the English Channel. His biographer states that "the only time he was ever on the sea it made him very sick."

An excellent collection of poems and songs of the sea is found in *Songs of the Sea*, published by Thomas Nelson & Sons.

A writer in *The Book of Knowledge* (Grolier) says: "The spirit of freedom which one seems to absorb when in the full delight of a voyage over the sparkling sea has never been better rendered than in this poem. In this case it is supposed to be an old sailor who is speaking, but the salty breeze, which the poet has so cleverly suggested by the swift movement of his verse, is familiar to us all. There is a certain infectious quality of actual pleasure in this song of the sea that makes us for the

moment sharers of the old sailor's love for the life of the ocean, though we may be conscious that there is another side to it less attractive."

PAGE 112—**Mocks the skies.** Dashes its foam in the face of the skies.
Cradled creature. The sea in calm.

The world below. The very secrets of the world under the ocean seem to be laid bare.

South-west blasts. The ship rides so high on the waves that the origin of the wind is revealed.

PAGE 113—**Red the morn.** A warning of a coming storm.

Porpoise. See page 64.

Dolphins. The dolphin measures generally from twenty to twenty-five feet in length. A wide dorsal fin of a yellow-gold color extends almost the whole length of the back. See *Natural History* by Alfred H. Miles. F. A. Farrar says: "The dolphin is a curious animal of the whale family, which drew the attention of sailors in very early times. It is a powerful swimmer, and herds of these creatures may often be seen gambolling on the surface of the sea and playing around ships, as though delighting in the company of men. They fling themselves out of the water to such a height that they have been known to fall on the decks of vessels. There has always been an idea, too, that they are fond of music, and give signs of their delight by their movements, and by following vessels when they hear it." See *Old Greek Nature Stories* by F. A. Farrar (Harrap).

THE LAWS OF THE LAND

This selection is taken from *The Young Citizen* by Charles F. Dole, published by D. C. Heath & Co., Boston. It is purely didactic, intended to teach respect for law and order, and giving sound reasons therefor.

The whole book consists of a series of lessons in citizenship and, although dealing with the United States and its institutions, the greater part of it is as valuable for the boys and girls of Canada as it is for the boys and girls of the country to the south of the international boundary.

Similar lessons may be found in *Citizens of the Empire* by Irene L. Plunket (Oxford Press). Although dealing particularly with Great Britain the book is equally applicable to Canada. See also *Lessons on Citizenship* by A. J. Waldegrave (Nelson).

THE OUTPOST

This poem originally appeared under the title "The Prairie School" in *Fires of Driftwood*, published by McClelland & Stuart, Limited,

Toronto. When granting permission for the inclusion of the poem in Book V of *The Canadian Readers*, Mrs. MacKay revised it thoroughly, entirely rewriting the last stanza. The thought of the poem is the supreme importance of the prairie school, the outpost of civilization, in the life of the nation.

A number of other poems by Mrs. MacKay, quite suited to this grade, are found in *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent): "The Wonderful Fishing of Peterkin Spray" on page 11, "The Wish" on page 14, "The Tell Tale" on page 18, and "A Springtime Wish" on page 44.

PAGE 117—A break. The school lies in the midst of the wheat-fields.

Prairie trail. The trail winds across the prairie, does not follow the road allowances.

Four winds meet. The idea seems to be that the children are now starting out in life towards a goal which will never be reached.

PAGE 118—Thrush's note. See pages 15 and 223.

The army. The army of children who will pass through the school and become the future citizens of the country.

Rending veil. When the future becomes the present.

Well-tramped earth. The playground around the school.

Gopher. Three species of the gopher are found in Canada, the gray, the yellow, and the striped. They resemble the chipmunk in form and habits, but are slightly larger in size. They live in holes in the ground and store up supplies for the winter. They are very destructive to the grain and in the Prairie Provinces are ruthlessly hunted and destroyed. The gophers are very bold and will frequently enter a schoolroom where the children are seated, in search of crumbs from the lunches brought to school. A full description of the gophers, with two colored illustrations is given on pages 426-428 of *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan). The gopher must not be confused with the prairie dog; the two are quite different.

Flag flies up. The flag is flown during the time that the school is in session.

One and one are two. Knowledge is power, and only through education can the children fit themselves to battle with and to conquer the world.

The frost, etc. Time is flying. It is now winter, when before it was autumn.

Always Was. The school is the link between the past and the future.

Widening. Ever widening to admit future generations.

Legacy. This blessing should be passed on by each generation.

THE LOSS OF THE BRIG

This selection is taken from Chapter XIII of *Kidnapped*, published in 1886. The *Library of the World's Best Literature* says: "*Kidnapped* by Robert Louis Stevenson was published in 1886, when the author was thirty-six, and was his seventh work of fiction. In his own opinion it was his best novel; and it is generally regarded as one of his finest performances in romantic story-telling. The full title reads: 'Kidnapped: Being Memoirs of the Adventures of David Balfour in the Year 1751,' and the contents of the tale are further indicated on the title-page thus: 'How he was Kidnapped and Cast away; his Sufferings in a Desert Isle; his journey in the Wild Highlands; his Acquaintance with Alan Breck Stewart and other notorious Jacobite Highlanders; with all that he Suffered at the Hands of his Uncle, Ebenezer Balfour of Shaws, falsely so called.' David, on his father's death visits his uncle near Edinburgh, and finds him a miser and villain, who, to get rid of his nephew, packs him off on the brig *Covenant*, intending to have him sold in America. On ship-board he falls in with Alan, the daredevil Jacobite, one of the most spirited and vivid characterizations of Stevenson. David espouses the Stuart cause, and, in company with Alan, has a series of lively experiences narrated with great swing and color. The fight in the round-house of the brig, the flight in the heather from the red-coat's of King George, and other scenes are conceived and carried out in the finest vein of romance. After these wanderings, David, circumventing his rascally uncle, comes into his own."

Both *Kidnapped* and its sequel *David Balfour* are admirably suited to the pupils of this grade. Both books should, if possible, be placed in their hands. *Treasure Island* should also be read, if not already taken up in a lower grade.

PAGE 119—Iona. The most famous of the Hebrides Islands, off the west coast of Scotland.

Mull. One of the Hebrides Islands, separated from the mainland by a narrow strait. At its closest point it is about a mile and a quarter from Iona.

The brig. The *Covenant*, on which David Balfour had been kidnapped at the instigation of his uncle, with the purpose of selling him as a slave on the plantations in Carolina.

Helm. The steering wheel. It is attached to a drum around which are two ropes wound in opposite directions. The other ends of the ropes are attached to the tiller and move it to right and left as the wheel is turned.

Tiller. The stout wooden bar fixed to the head of the rudder and serving as a lever to turn it to left or right.

Keep her away, etc. Keep the ship away one point of the compass; there is a reef on the side from which the wind is blowing.

Dunch. A provincial Scottish word meaning push, or jog.

Larboard. The side of the ship on the left hand side of a person facing the bow. This word is now almost obsolete, its place being taken by "port."

PAGE 120—**Amidships.** The middle of the ship.

Hamper. A nautical term meaning certain things which, though necessary to the navigation of a ship, are most of the time in the way.

The wounded. A short time before the wreck, the captain and crew had attacked Alan Breck Stewart and David in the round-house of the brig, but had been signally defeated. Many of the sailors were badly wounded in the struggle.

Fore-scuttle. A scuttle is a hatchway or opening in the deck, with a lid for covering it. The fore-scuttle is the hatchway in the front part of the ship.

Shrouds. One of a set of strong ropes extending from the masthead to each side of the ship to support the mast.

Bulwarks. The boarding or railing around the side of the ship above the deck.

PAGE 121—**Yard.** A spar slung crossways to a mast.

Heather. See page 176.

Mica. The mineral occurs in crystals.

PAGE 122—**Mortally.** Deadly.

THE OVERLAND MAIL

This poem was originally published in 1886 at Lahore, India, in a volume entitled *On Her Majesty's Service Only, Departmental Ditties and Other Verses*. The book was subsequently published in England under the title *Departmental Ditties*. In the original the poem has the sub-title *Foot-service to the Hills*. The subject, of course, is the native mail-carrier, forcing his way in spite of all obstacles to his destination among the northern hills of India, where the exiles are waiting eagerly for letters from the home-land.

The *Teacher's Notebook for The Holton-Curry Seventh Reader* says: "Few things seem more important to us than to keep open the means of communication. Even the 'Lords of the Jungle' must not interfere with the mail. 'Let the robber retreat,'—or we will make it hard on the

robber. And the messenger must be reliable,—“The Service admits not a “but” or an “if.” Private affairs may be postponed or the schedule changed at will,—but the mail must get through on time. We see the greatness of a government in the way in which it carries to the farthest and most difficult parts of its territory this efficient organization of its mail service. Kipling makes us feel all this in his poem. There is a sense of constant, irresistible movement in it. We are made to picture the runner as he mounts, through various difficulties up the hills towards his destination. We even feel that the exaggeration is pardonable that insists that the ‘great sun himself’ is not more certain in his movements.”

PAGE 122—**Empress of India.** This poem was written while Queen Victoria was still alive.

Lords of the Jungle. The animals who prowl in and lord it over the jungle, and the even more lawless men who make it their home.

PAGE 123—**In spate.** In flood.

The Service. The Post Office Department.

Rose-oak. A tree that grows above the foot-hills of the Himalayas.

THE RAPID

This poem was published in 1860 in *Hesperus and Other Poems and Lyrics*. It has as a sub-title *St. Lawrence*, but it is impossible to say that any particular rapid is meant. The suiting of the metre and expression to the thought is an outstanding feature of the poem.

PAGE 124—**Bateau.** The bateau was a flat bottomed boat, formerly much used on Canadian rivers. “It was sharp at both ends, wall-sided, and fitted with oars, poles, and a square sail. The bottom had some sheer—that is, it was curved up at each end—but less than the top.” It was usually rowed by four men, while a fifth steered, and was capable of carrying a cargo of three tons. See *All Afloat: A Chronicle of Craft and Waterways* by William Wood in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook).

THE TREASURE HOUSE OF MAMMON

This section tells the story of Canto VII of Book II of *The Faerie Queene*. The whole book deals with the legend of Sir Guyon, who represents *Temperance*, and describes the various temptations that assailed him and how these were overcome. The story in the text tells of the determined effort to tempt the knight from the straight path made by Mammon, who here stands for the “love of gold”, and how Sir Guyon

successfully resisted his allurements. It is best to treat this selection just as it stands, without any attempt to connect it with *The Faerie Queene*, or with anything that either precedes or follows in the original. If so treated it is a distinctly moral lesson, showing how the knight withstood, with unshaken constancy, the tremendous temptation to which he was subjected, the most powerful perhaps in the world, the lust for gold and all that its possession means to the holder. The various steps in the temptation should be carefully studied. An excellent book to read in this connection is *Children's Stories in English Literature from Taliesin to Shakespeare* by Henrietta Christian Wright (Scribner). An excellent sketch of the life of Spenser, with particular reference to *The Faerie Queene*, is given on page 198 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). The story of "The Red Cross Knight and the Dragon" accompanies the text.

The story of "The Treasure House of Mammon" is but one of a number of somewhat similar stories to be found in *The Faerie Queene*. In *Stories from The Faerie Queene* by Jeanie Lang in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack) are told in a very interesting way the following: "Una and the Lion," "St. George and the Dragon," "Britomart and the Magic Mirror," "The Quest of Sir Guyon," "Pastorella," "Cambell and Triamond," "Marinell," and "Florimell and the Witch." *Stories from Spenser Retold from The Faerie Queene* (Nelson) gives somewhat in detail the stories of "Una and the Red Cross Knight" and "Sir Calidore and the Blatant Beast." See also *Stories from the Faerie Queene Retold from Spenser* by Lawrence H. Dawson (Harrap), *The Adventures of the Red Cross Knight* (McDougall), and *Stories of Great Adventures* by Carolyn Sherwin Bailey (Milton Bradley). This last book contains the stories of "Una and the Red Cross Knight" on page 183, "The Red Cross Knight's Last Battle" on page 193, and "Sir Guyon's Great Adventure" on page 202.

PAGE 125—**Mammon**. Note that Mammon describes himself as "the god of this world and of worldly men." This is the key-thought of the selection.

Uncouth. Awkward, clumsy.

PAGE 127—**To tempt me**. The thought expressed by Sir Guyon is that the attainment of vast wealth is not the highest ideal of man. He himself was aiming at another and higher goal. The knight stands for "temperance in all things."

PAGE 128—**Knight-errant**. A wandering knight, one "who rode abroad redressing human wrongs."

Renown and honor. Note that in each step in the temptation Mammon tries to turn the knight's own words back on himself. He endeavors to

show Sir Guyon that no matter what his ideal may be, he may achieve it by the possession of wealth.

PAGE 129—**Anxious sentinel.** The possession of wealth involves unceasing anxiety and care.

Horrible spirit. The least suspicion of greed or covetousness means a yielding to the lure of gold, and a surrender to its power.

PAGE 131—**Disdain.** The passion for accumulating wealth leads to disdain for all that is highest and best in the world, and even for mankind.

PAGE 132—**Ambition.** The most subtle temptation to which the knight has yet been exposed, and held by Mammon until the last.

Steadfast knight. The more steadfastly the temptation is resisted the sooner does it lose any appeal it may have.

PAGE 133—**Another good knight.** Arthur, who stands for *Magnificence*, the possessor of all the virtues. Spenser makes him the hero of his *The Faerie Queene*. See page 135.

THE LOSS OF THE BIRKENHEAD

This poem was published in 1866 in *The Return of the Guards and Other Poems*. As originally printed it contained two additional stanzas:

“If that day’s work no clasp or medal mark;
 If each proud heart no cross of bronze may press,
 Nor cannon thunder loud from Tower or Park,
 This feel we none the less:—

“That those whom God’s high grace there saved from ill,
 Those also left His martyrs in the bay,
 Though not by siege, though not in battle, still
 Full well had earned their pay.”

It would be well to read this selection along with “The Charge of the Light Brigade” on page 36 of the text. Both poems deal with the discipline and courage of the British soldier, but shown under circumstances entirely different. A few lines from Sir Henry Yule’s “The Loss of the Birkenhead” well illustrate this difference:

“Not with the cheer of battle in the throat,
 Or cannon-glare and din to stir their blood,
 But, roused from dreams of home to find their boat
 Fast sinking, mustered on the deck they stood,
 Biding God’s pleasure and their chief’s command.
 Calm was the sea, but not less calm that band
 Close-ranged upon the poop, with bated breath
 . . . But flinching not though eye to eye with Death!”

The troopship *Birkenhead* was on her way to the Cape of Good Hope, when she struck on an uncharted rock off Simon's Bay on the night of February 27th, 1852. There were on board about 630 persons, 132 being her own crew, the remainder detachments from the 12th, 74th, and 91st Regiments, and the wives and children of the soldiers. The officers and men immediately hurried on deck and were formed up by Colonel Seton, the officer in command. The men were told off to various duties, the steadiest discipline being maintained. The women and children were sent off first, and then the ship began to break up. The commander of the *Birkenhead*, Captain Salmond, who had acted coolly and heroically throughout, called on the men to jump overboard and save themselves; but the soldiers, rather than endanger the safety of the women and children in the boats, remained in their ranks and went down with the ship. The distance was not far from shore, less than two miles, but the water was infested with sharks and the surf was heavy. Some were picked up by the boats, a few drifted or swam ashore, but the greater number were lost. Out of all those on board only 192 were saved.

The editor of the *Teachers' Notebook for the Hollon-Curry Seventh Reader* says: "The story-teller makes perfectly clear the whole scene, the beautiful evening, the wild shriek of the women, the breaking away of the timbers beneath the keel, the awful dark shapes of the 'great fierce fish' in the quiet waters, the colonel's order to form in line given amidst the frantic confusion, the shout of some panic-stricken ship's officer of 'All to the boats!' The speaker wants us especially to know that no soldier gave such a command and that no soldier obeyed it. The soldier's notion of his duty is stated in lines 31-40. And we can all agree with his reflections in the last four stanzas on the nobility of the self-sacrifice by which the weaker ones were saved."

A graphic description of the loss of the vessel is given in *Survivors' Tales of Great Events* retold by Walter Wood (Cassell). The teller of the story, Corporal Smith of the 12th Foot, survived the wreck after being in the water for eighteen hours, and relates his terrible experiences in a simple, manly fashion that impresses on the reader the splendid heroism displayed by the soldiers in the hour of trial. See also *A Book of Golden Deeds* by Charlotte M. Yonge (Nelson). "The Loss of the *Birkenhead*" by Sir Henry Yule in *Poetry of Empire* edited by John and Jean Lang (Jack) and "The *Birkenhead*" by John A. Goodchild in *Ballads of the Brave* edited by Frederick Langbridge (Methuen) may with advantage be read in class.

A good companion poem is "The Wreck of the Orpheus" by C. A. L. on page 184 of Book III of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton). See also "The Burning of the 'Goliath'" by Dean Stanley on page 52 of the same

book. Kipling's poem "Soldier and Sailor Too" might be read in this connection.

PAGE 133—Sun went down. The ship struck at 2 o'clock in the morning, not at sunset.

Without hope. From the very first all knew that the ship was doomed.

PAGE 134—Fierce fish. The sharks. Corporal Smith says in his narrative: "What is that strange object which is moving stealthily and swiftly through the water near me? It disappears suddenly, and I know that it is a fin of a shark, which has turned on his back for his savage and always sure attack. There is a piercing cry, and a tinging red of the sea—and the number of survivors is lessened. Time after time that awful drama is played, and the senses are dulled until even such a death is robbed of terror."

All to the boats. See Introduction.

PAGE 136—Like stars. Honorable decorations won by distinguished bravery.

Joint-heirs. See *Romans viii, 16-17*.

THE BLUEJAY

This selection is a humorous story written by Samuel Langhorne Clemens, or, as he is better known, Mark Twain. The text requires no further explanation.

The bluejay is described as follows: "Above, purplish blue; below, pale purplish gray, lighter on throat and tail-coverts; wings and tail bright blue barred with black; wing-coverts, secondaries, and most of tail-feathers broadly tipped with white. Head conspicuously crested; tail wedge-shaped. Length eleven to twelve and a half inches." See Taverner's *Birds of Western Canada*, published by the Department of Mines, Ottawa.

Thomas Nuttall in *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* (Musson) says of the bluejay: "The bluejay is a constant inhabitant both of the wooded wilderness and the vicinity of the settled farm, though more familiar at the approach of winter than at any other season. These wanderings or limited migrations are induced by necessity alone; his hoards of grain, nuts, and acorns either have failed or are forgotten; for, like other misers, he is more assiduous to amass than to expend or enjoy his stores, and the fruits of his labors very frequently either devolve to the rats or squirrels, or accidentally assist in the replanting of the forest. His visits at this time are not unfrequent in the garden and orchard, and his usual petulant address of *djay*, jay, jay, and other harsh and trumpeting articulations, soon make his retreat known to all in his

neighborhood. So habitual is this sentinel cry of alarm, and so expressive, that all the birds within call, as well as other wild animals, are instantly on the alert.

"His more complaisant notes, when undisturbed, though guttural and echoing, are by no means unpleasant. His accents of blandishment are low and musical, so as to be scarcely heard beyond the thick branches where he sits concealed; but as soon as discovered, he bursts out into notes of rage and reproach, accompanying his voice by jerks of defiance."

Neltje Blanchan in *Birds Worth Knowing* (Doubleday) says of the bluejay: "This vivacious, dashing fellow, harsh-voiced and noisy, cannot be overlooked; for when a bright, grayish-blue bird, about a foot long, roves about the neighborhood with a troop of screaming relatives, everybody knows it. In summer he may keep quiet, but he throws off all restraint in autumn. Hear him hammering at an acorn some frosty morning! How vigorous his motions, how alert and independent! His beautiful military blue, black, and white feathers, and crested head, give him distinction.

"Jays are fearful teasers. How they love to chase about some poor, blinking, bewildered owl, in the daylight! *Jay-jay-jay*, you may hear them scream through the woods. They mimic the hawk's cry for no better reason, perhaps, than that they may laugh at the panic into which timid little birds are thrown at the terrifying sound. Mischievous as a monkey, deft at hiding as a squirrel, a pet jay will carry all its beech nuts to a piazza roof, wedge them between the shingles, and open them there with ease. An interesting array of hair pins, matches, buttons, a thimble, and a silver spoon were raked out of one such favorite cache under the eaves."

A FOREST FIRE

This selection is taken from *Roughing it in the Bush*, a record of the actual experience of the author as a pioneer, along with her husband and children, in the bush of what is now the province of Ontario. The book was published in London in 1852, but had before that appeared in the *Literary Garland*, Montreal.

Susannah Strickland was born at Bungay, Suffolk, England, on December 6th, 1803. Her two sisters Agnes Strickland and Mrs. Catherine Parr Traill made their mark in the literary world. In 1831 she married Lieutenant J. W. D. Moodie of the 21st Fusiliers, and in the next year removed with him to Upper Canada, settling first near Cobourg and later in the bush north of Peterborough. There they endured all the hardships of pioneer life in a new country. In 1839 her husband was appointed sheriff

of Hastings county, and the family removed to Belleville. On the death of her husband in 1869, Mrs. Moodie took up her residence in Toronto, where she died on April 8th, 1885. In addition to *Roughing it in the Bush* she wrote *Life in the Clearings*, *Mark Hurdlestone*, *Dorothy Chance*, and *Enthusiasm and Other Poems*.

THE BUGLE SONG

This poem occurs between the 3rd and 4th Cantos of *The Princess: A Medley*, published in its original form in 1847; the intercalary lyrics were added subsequently. It may be treated entirely independently of the longer poem of which it forms a part. Tennyson says: "The poem was written after hearing the echoes at Killarney in 1848. When I was there I heard a bugle blown beneath the 'Eagle's Nest' and eight distinct echoes." Anne Thackeray Ritchie in *Records of Tennyson, Ruskin, and Browning* (Macmillan) furnishes an interesting comment in this connection: "Here is a reminiscence of Tennyson's about the echo at Killarney, where he said to the boatman, 'When I last was here I heard eight echoes, and now I only hear one.' To which the man, who had heard people quoting the bugle song, replied, 'Why you must be the gentleman that brought all the money to the place.'"

Aubrey de Vere in *Alfred Lord Tennyson: A Memoir* by Hallam Tennyson (Macmillan) gives a graphic description of Tennyson's visit to Ireland in 1848: "Afterwards Tennyson visited Killarney, but remained there only a few days; yet that visit bequeathed a memorial. The echoes of the bugle at Killarney on that loveliest of lakes inspired the song introduced into the second edition of his 'Princess,' beginning

"The splendor falls on castle walls."

It is but due to Killarney that *both* the parents of that lyric should be remembered in connection with 'that fair child between them born'; and through that song Killarney will be recalled to the memory of many who have seen yet half forgotten it. When they read those stanzas, and yet more when they hear them fittingly sung, they will see again, as in a dream, the reach of its violet-coloured waters where they reflect the 'Purple Mountain,' the 'Elfland' of its Black Valley, 'Croom-a-doof,' the silver river that winds and flashes through wood and rock, connecting the mystic 'Upper Lake' and the beetling rock of the 'Eagle's Nest' with the two larger and sunnier but not lovelier lakes. Before them again will rise Dinis Island, with its embowered coves and their golden sands, the mountain gardens of Glenna haunted by murmurs of the cascade, not distant, but shrouded by the primeval oak woods. They will look again

on that island, majestic at once and mournful, Inisfallen, its gray-stemmed and solemn groves, its undulating lawns, which embosom the ruins of that Abbey, the shelter from century to century of Ireland's Annalists. They will muse again in the yew-roofed cloister of Muckross, and glide once more by its caverned and fantastic rocks, and promontories fringed by arbutus brakes, with their dark yet shining leaves, their scarlet berries, and their waxen flowers. Whatever is fairest in other lakes they will see here combined, as if Nature had amused herself by publishing a volume of poetic selections from all her works. As the vision fades, their eyes will rest long on the far mountains that girdle all that beauty, mountains here and there dark with those yew forests through which the wild deer of old escaped from the stag-hounds of MacCarthy more. It is marvellous that so many of the chief characteristics of Killarney should have found place in a poem so short." See *Killarney* by Mary Gorges in *Beautiful Ireland* series (Macmillan) and *Ireland* by Katharine Tynan in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black).

Mr. Stopford Brooke says: " 'The Bugle Song' is the noblest of the songs in *The Princess*, a clear, uplifted, softly ringing song. It sings, in its short compass, of four worlds, of ancient chivalry, of wild nature, of romance where the horns of Elfland blow, and of the greater future of mankind. And in singing of the last, it touches the main subject of love, love not of person to person, but of each life to all the lives that follow it:

'Our echoes roll from soul to soul,
And grow forever and forever.'

Yet it is the lover who tells this to his sweetheart, and the universal element is made delicate by its union with the personal love of these two happy creatures. It is well that the soul of man should enter into the close of the song, but the greatest poetical beauty has been reached in the second verse, where by a magical employment of words the whole world of Elfland is created, and with it all the romantic tales echo in the ear."

PAGE 143—Castle walls. Ross Castle stands on the shores of Lake Killarney.

Long light shakes. The path of light from the setting sun broken by the waves.

Scar. A steep bank.

The horns of Elfland. P. M. Wallace says: "From their peculiar character, faint yet clear, derived from no visible source, and as transitory as unsubstantial, echoes not unnaturally suggest the idea of fairy agency."

Grow. Mr. S. E. Dawson, of Montreal, says: "The theme of the poem is a sharp antithesis, arising out of a surface analogy between the echoes of a

bugle on a mountain lake, and the influences of soul upon soul through growing distances of time. The stress of meaning is on the word *grow*. The song is evidently one of married love, and the growing echoes reverberate from generation to generation, from grandparent to parent and grandchild."

DON QUIXOTE AND THE WINDMILLS

This selection is an abridgment of the adventure of Don Quixote with the windmills, taken from an English translation of the Spanish romance, *The Achievements of the Ingenious Gentleman, Don Quixote de la Mancha*. The original book was published in two parts, the first in 1605, and the second in 1615. The aim of the author, Miguel de Cervantes, was not alone to amuse the reader, but also to make fun of the tedious and foolish romances of chivalry which at that time were current. The publication of *Don Quixote* had a great deal to do with the decline of knight-errantry and the popular romances dealing with chivalry. The book itself ranks as one of the great romances of the world. "The story is so simple that everyone can understand it, and yet it has in it so much wisdom that the wisest may derive pleasure from it. It touches the sense of humor in every heart. It moves to pity rather than ridicule, and to tears as well as laughter. And herein lies its chief claim to greatness, that it seems to have been written not for one country nor for one age alone, but to give delight to all mankind." See the chapter entitled "Cervantes" on page 93 of *A History of Story-Telling* by Arthur Ransome (Jack).

The story of *Don Quixote* is briefly as follows: Don Quixote, a gentleman of small means, lived in the village of La Mancha in Spain. His head had become turned with constant reading of tales of chivalry, and he determined to dress himself in armor and to set out upon his horse Rosinante in search of adventure, choosing as his "ladye fair" a village maiden, whom he fancifully named Dulcinea. On his first sally as a knight he came to an inn, which he mistook for a castle, the innkeeper for the lord of the place, and the two serving maids for the ladies of the household. These people, falling in with his fancies, consented to allow him to keep the customary knightly vigil at their "castle." They placed him in the courtyard to spend the night in guarding his armor, and the herdsmen who came to water their herd set upon and abused him greatly, to the amusement of those watching from the windows. In the morning the innkeeper dubbed him knight, and advised him to get money and clean shirts and also to choose a squire to accompany him. Acting

upon this advice, he returned home and chose one Sancho Panza, who was willing to accompany him upon his donkey Dapple. The knight's two friends, the parson and the barber-surgeon, and his household, which consisted of his housekeeper and a niece, tried to prevent his second departure by burning his library of tales of chivalry, but without success.

The second series of adventures included a fight with windmills; an encounter with a band of merchants, in which the knight and his horse fared badly; a stop at an inn where Sancho was caught and tossed in a blanket by some mischievous fellows; an adventure with two flocks of sheep, which the knight fancied were two opposing armies; and an attack upon a barber journeying from one village to another and the capture of his brass basin. After these unfortunate happenings, Don Quixote called himself "The Knight of the Sorrowful Countenance."

The parson and the barber-surgeon set out to bring the Don home. They met him at an inn, where they disguised themselves and pretended to enchant him. They succeeded in their plan, and engaged a waggoner to carry him home. There he remained for more than a month, but, becoming restless, he again set out, accompanied by Sancho Panza, and, meeting some men taking a pair of lions to the king, he insisted on their opening the cage that he might fight the beasts. But the lions were in a lazy mood and refused to leave the cage. The knight took this as a tribute to his courage and went on his way well satisfied.

The next day the knight and his squire met a Duchess, who invited them to make a long stay at her castle, expecting much fun at their expense. The Duke gratified Sancho's ambition by appointing him "Perpetual Governor of the Island of Baarataria," and planned so many things for his discomfiture that poor Sancho decided to leave the sword and return to the sickle. Soon after Don Quixote met a knight, who unhorsed him and suggested to him that he banish himself to his own village for a year. Soon after his return home he became ill with fever and died. Before his death he gave up his fancies and became a worthy gentleman.

Excellent abridgments of *Don Quixote* are found in *Stories from Don Quixote* by John Lang in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack) and in *Don Quixote* edited by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). More complete editions are edited by Clifton Johnson (Macmillan), and by James Baldwin (American Book Co.). See also *The Adventures of Don Quixote* adapted by Emily Underdown (Nelson) and *Don Quixote* retold by Edith Roberts in *Stories for the Children* (Ward). A capital sketch of the life of Cervantes, particularly in relation to *Don Quixote*, is given on page 213 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn). Two selections from the book accompany the sketch.

PAGE 144—Clown. The word here is used in its old sense of a peasant.
Squire. It was necessary according to the rules of chivalry that every knight on his expeditions abroad should be accompanied by a squire to wait upon him and do his bidding. The squire, or more correctly "esquire," was generally of the same social class as the knight and was himself an aspirant to knighthood.

Target. A shield or buckler.

Headpiece. Helmet.

Beaver. A protection for the lower part of the face and cheeks, fixed securely to the armor of the neck and breast, and sufficiently large to allow the head to turn behind it.

PAGE 145—Knight-errant. Wandering knight, one who rode abroad seeking adventures for his lance and sword.

His niece. See Introduction.

Make shift. Manage in some way or other.

PAGE 146—Outrageous. Monstrous.

PAGE 148—Sensible of. Was he aware of, did he perceive.

Briareus. A famous giant, son of Coelus (heaven) and Terra (earth). He had one hundred hands and fifty heads. He took part with the giants in their wars against the Gods and was overthrown by the thunderbolts of Zeus (Jupiter). As a punishment he was buried under Mount Etna.

Lady Dulcinea. According to the chivalry of the time it was necessary that each knight should choose some lady to whom he paid his devotions and for whom he fought on all occasions. Don Quixote chose a village maiden for his lady and gave her the fanciful name of Dulcinea. See *Introduction*. Dulcinea is described as "a coarse and homely female with a broad face, flat nose, and a great laughing mouth."

Couching his lance. "Setting it in position for attack. The right side of the breastplate had a projection to receive the shaft of the spear, which when thus placed was said to be couched or in rest." The mediaeval lance was about ten feet in length.

Presently. Almost at once.

Shivers. Splinters.

PAGE 149—Mercy o' me. May the saints have mercy on me.

In his head. His head is in a topsy-turvy condition.

Verily. Truly.

Enchanter. When his housekeeper and his niece wrecked his study and burned his books, the knight persuaded himself that this was the work of an enchanter.

Shoulder-slipped. Lame in the shoulder.

NATURE'S SONG

This beautiful little nature poem requires no further explanation. Many poems of a similar nature may be found in *Nature in Verse* by Mary I. Lovejoy (Silver).

Julius Madison Cawein was born at Louisville, Kentucky, on March 23rd, 1865. He was educated at the High School, Louisville, and resided there all his life, devoting himself to literature. His works include poems, prose, and drama. Among them are *Blooms of the Berry*, *Lyrics and Idyls*, *Poems of Nature and Love*, *Kentucky Poems*, *Nature Notes and Impressions*, and *The Shadow Garden and Three Other Plays*.

THE DOG CRUSOE

This selection is taken from *The Dog Crusoe* published in 1860. The text is somewhat modified from the original, but remains substantially the same.

The story in the text has no necessary connection with the book as a whole. Dick Varley is a trapper and hunter living in a frontier settlement in the western United States. On one occasion, while stopping for a while near an Indian encampment, he noticed a squaw about to kill a small dog in order to stew it for the family meal. Dick rescued the pup, who is the "Crusoe" of the selection. The dog repaid his master with unwavering devotion. The story in the text tells how Dick began the training of his newly-acquired companion.

The notes on "Billy Topsail" on page 195 give several poems relating to dogs, which might be reviewed in this connection.

Robert Michael Ballantyne was born at Edinburgh, Scotland, on April 24th, 1885. The Dictionary of National Biography says: "When a boy of sixteen he was apprenticed by his father as a clerk in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company, with a salary commencing at twenty pounds a year. He went out to Ruperts Land in 1841 and spent six years, for the most part in trading with the Indians. He kept a rough diary of his doings, and on his return to Scotland in 1848 this was published as *Hudson's Bay, or Life in the Wilds of North America*. For the next seven years he occupied a post in the printing and publishing firm of Thomas Constable, Edinburgh. In November, 1855, Nelson, the Edinburgh publisher, suggested to him that he should write a book for boys, embodying some of his experiences in the 'great, lone land.' This was rapidly composed and successfully issued in 1856 as *Snowflakes and Sunbeams; or The Young Fur Traders*, the first part of the title being dropped in subsequent editions." From that day until the end of his life he made his living by writing story

books for young readers. He was extraordinarily accurate in the information contained in his books, taking great pains to verify his statements from the best procurable authorities. He also achieved some success as a painter, several of his water-colors being judged worthy of a place in the Royal Scottish Academy. His later years were spent at Harrow. He died at Rome on February 8th, 1894. During forty years he produced more than eighty volumes. The best known of his books, in addition to those already mentioned are *The World of Ice*, *Ungava*, *The Gorilla Hunters*, *Erling the Bold*, *The Iron Horse*, *Black Ivory*, *Deep Down*, *The Lighthouse*, *The Pirate City*, *The Settler and the Savage*, and *Fighting the Flames*. All of these books are excellent reading for young people.

PAGE 150—The shooting-match. This was a shooting-match held among the settlers and trappers, the prize being a silver mounted rifle. Dick was one of the contestants, and to his amazement bore away the prize.

Prelude. Something said preparatory to feeding him.

THE CHRIST OF THE ANDES

This selection was written specially for The Canadian Readers by the Rev. Dr. Sclater of Toronto.

The *Encyclopaedia Britannica* says: "The aggressive attitude of Chile towards Bolivia was causing considerable anxiety, and Argentina and Brazil wished to show that they were united in disapproving a policy which aimed at acquiring an extension of territory by force of arms. The feeling of enmity between Chile and Argentina was indeed anything but extinct. The delay of the arbitration tribunal in London in giving its decision in the matter of the disputed boundary in Patagonia led to a crop of wild rumors being disseminated and to a revival of animosity between the two peoples. In December, 1901, warlike preparations were being carried on in both states, and the outbreak of active hostilities appeared to be imminent. At the critical moment, the British government, urged to move in the matter by the British residents in both countries, who feared that war would be the financial ruin of both Chile and Argentina, used its utmost influence both at Santiago and Buenos Aires to allay the misunderstandings; and negotiations were set on foot which ended in a treaty for the cessation of further armaments being signed, June, 1902. The award of King Edward VII upon the delimitation of the boundary was given a few months later, and was received without controversy and ratified by both governments."

The *Literary Digest* has the following: "After quarrelling for generations over the boundary-line, Chile and Argentina finally settled the question by arbitration. As the emblem of their peace and pledge of its permanence, the two countries united in the erection of the famous heroic statue of Christ on the highest Andean peak on the border-line. This historic event inspires Edwin Markham to write a poem that is particularly appropriate in these days of the Peace Conference. It is published in *The Christian Herald* (New York) and as a foot-note the famous poet writes: "The out-stretched hands of the Christ are the only possible shelter over the world!" "

THE CHRIST OF THE ANDES

"After volcanoes hushed with snows,
Up where the wide-winged condor goes,
Great Aconcagua, hushed and high,
Sends down the ancient peace of the sky.

"So, poised in clean Andean air,
Where bleak with cliffs, the grim peaks stare,
Christ, reaching out His sacred hands,
Sheds His brave peace upon the lands.

"There once of old wild battles roared
And brother-blood was on the sword;
Now all the fields are rich with grain
And only roses redden the plain.

"Torn were the peoples with feuds and hates—
Fear on the mountain-walls, death at the gates;
Then through the glamor of arms was heard
A whisper of the Master's word.

"Fling down your swords: be friends again:
Ye are not wolf-packs: ye are men.
Let brother-counsel be the Law:
Not serpent fang, not tiger claw.'

"Chile and Argentina heard:
The great hopes in their spirits stirred;
The red swords from their clenched fists fell,
And heaven shone out where once was hell!

"They hurled their cannons into flame
And out of the forge the strong Christ came.
'Twas thus they molded in happy fire
The tall Christ of their heart's desire. . . .

"O Christ of Olivet, You hushed the wars
Under the far Andean stars;
Lift now Your strong nail-wounded hands
Over all peoples, over all lands—
Stretch out those comrade hands to be
A shelter over land and sea!"

This selection should be read side by side with "The Hope of the World" on page 332 of Book V. In this connection the following from *A New World, or The League of Nations* may be of interest:

"Another reason for war has been armaments. If two people quarrel and they have guns, the latter are likely to go off. So is it with nations. Therefore, there was a tremendous demand for disarmament as a result of the War. The Allied statesmen began by forcing Germany to disarm, but, at the same time, they said that this was only the beginning of a general disarmament, and they laid down the principle in Article VIII of the Covenant. Though there has been much talk of this general disarmament, little has been done because it is so difficult. Some countries are more exposed to danger than others and therefore need more protection. No country has exactly the same kind or quality of armaments as any other country. How many soldiers equal a tank or an aeroplane? How many men with poor rifles equal one man with a good one? How many destroyers equal a battle cruiser? How many battalions of infantry equal one battleship? Behind all such questions lies a deeper one. Why are there armaments at all? Because countries feel that they need them! Here is the root of the problem. No great state, and it is they who set the pace in this murderous race of armaments, will discard them until it feels that it will not need them. The key to the situation lies in security. The League has given much security, but there are holes in the Covenant through which war may break forth. For example, the Council of the League may find it impossible to reach a unanimous decision in a dispute submitted to it. Various schemes have been proposed to stop these holes in the Covenant which its framers saw but did not know how to block. The most ambitious plan was the Geneva protocol, drawn up by the Assembly in 1924, which provided for the compulsory arbitration of all disputes. This was rejected as not practical at the present time. However, the Locarno Pact which

came into force with the admission of Germany into the League is a particular application of the Geneva Protocol where it was most needed around the borders of Germany and has given such security that some further limitations of armaments may be possible. Disarmament will come of itself just in proportion as nations feel secure, for they are not anxious to spend huge sums upon armies and navies that they do not require; and as they disarm, they will fear one another less and therefore be able to proceed further along this peaceful path. It is quite possible that the disarmament conference which is to assemble may hasten this progress toward a securer world."

John Robert Paterson Selater was born of Scottish parents in Manchester, England, on April 9th, 1876. He attended school in his native city and spent two years at the university there before entering Emmanuel College, Cambridge. He graduated from Cambridge in 1889 with honors in Philosophy. During his final year there he was elected to the office of president of the Cambridge Union and subsequently edited *Granta*, the undergraduates' paper, and the *Cambridge Review*. After graduating from Westminster Theological College in 1902 he became minister of the English Presbyterian Church, Derby. In 1907 he was appointed to the New North Church, Edinburgh, where for sixteen years he carried on the work among the students begun by Professor Henry Drummond. He received his degree of Master of Arts from Cambridge University in 1902 and Doctor of Divinity from St. Andrew's University in 1917. During the Great War he served as a chaplain at home and in France. In 1921 he was appointed Warwick lecturer to the Scottish Theological Colleges, and in 1927 Lyman Beecher lecturer at Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. In 1923 he came to Canada and took up his residence at Toronto, where he is minister of Old St. Andrew's Church. He is the author of a number of theological books, among which are *Sons of Strength*, *The Enterprise of Life*, *The River of Content*, *Modernist Fundamentalism*, and *The Perfect Worship of God*.

PAGE 154—Prince of Peace. "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace."—*Isaiah ix, 6*.

Rules forever. "And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end."—*Luke i, 33*.

PAGE 156—Two seas. The Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans.

Buenos Aires. The capital of Argentina.

Mendoza. The city is 655 miles from Buenos Aires, at a height of 2320

feet above sea-level. It is on the line of the Transandean Railway, which now connects Buenos Aires with Santiago, Chile, on the Pacific coast.

La Cumbre. A pass across the Andes between Mendoza and Santiago. The name means "the summit." It is on the line of the Transandean Railway at an elevation of 12,795 feet. The railway passes through a tunnel three miles in length at a height of 10,300 feet.

PAGE 157—**No weeping.** "And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying."—*Isaiah lxx, 19.*

War should slay. "And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."—*Isaiah ii, 4.*

Herdsmen's shed. "And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger."—*Luke ii, 12.*

THE SONG OF THE BROOK

This lyric is found in *The Brook* published in 1855 in *Maud and Other Poems*. W. J. Sykes summarizes the story of the poem as follows: "Lawrence Aylmer, returned to his English home after twenty years of absence in India, seated on the stile, revolves the memories of his old life. He thinks of his dearest brother, the poet Edmund, who left England when he did, but left it only to die; of the brook he loved, now prattling before him, and of the poem Edmund wrote describing it. As the poem sings its way through his memory, Lawrence recalls the scenes and persons associated with the stream,—old farmer Philip Willows, his pretty daughter Katie, and James Willows her betrothed; how, too, he had once carried off old Philip, and endured the torment of his endless talk, so that the lovers might make up a lovers' quarrel. He thinks how time has scattered all these,—old Philip now buried in the churchyard and the happy lovers far off in Australia; when suddenly he looks up, and before him, a veritable Katie Willows, in form, face, and name, as he knew one twenty years before! How fresh the past streams back, what happy explanations follow, and with what joy old friends are once more united!" The poem in the text occurs in four sections throughout the narrative, each section ending with the refrain:

"For men may come and men may go
But I go on forever."

PAGE 157—Coot. An aquatic bird, commonly known as the mud-hen, slate-gray in color, with a broad white shield on the forehead, found chiefly in reedy places, or on the margins of small lakes. It is an admirable diver, but it has not webbed feet, although its toes are provided with broad lobes of skin along their sides. A colored illustration of the coot is found in *A Book of Birds* by W. P. Pycraft (Ryerson Press). See *British Birds* by F. B. Kirkman in *The People's Books* (Jack) and *Living Creatures* by John Monteith (American Book Co.).

Hern. The heron. J. A. Henderson says: "The heron is the largest of our common birds and is to be found all over the country. It is easy to recognize his tall gray figure, as he stands on the shore; and it is also easy to recognize him when he flies. His long legs are stretched out behind, and the neck is curved so that the head is close to the shoulders. He can fly many miles a day with those great wings." A colored illustration of the heron is found in *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack).

Bicker. Here expresses "the tremulous agitation of the stream."

Thorps. Villages.

PAGE 159—Philip's farm. See Introduction.

Sharps and trebles. High notes.

Fret. Eat away.

Fallow. Ground plowed but not in seed.

Fairy foreland. Miniature promontory.

Willow-weed. W. J. Sykes quotes Pratt's *Flowering Plants*: "Our stream-sides receive an additional ornament when, during July and August, the willow-herb grows there in profusion. Most of the rills, and streams, and stagnant ditches can then boast this ornament. Often the purple blossoms waving at a distance invite the wanderer to some cool sequestered spot. The foliage is of grayish-green tint, and the large blossoms are reddish purple."

Mallow. The common mallow is plentiful in England during the summer and autumn. The petals of the flower are a beautiful pale mauve streaked with purple. The plant grows on marshy or moist soil. A colored illustration of the common mallow is found in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

Grayling. A fish of the salmon family, with a large, dorsal fin. "It haunts clear and rapid streams, and particularly such as flow through mountainous countries." Arthur Tysilio Johnson in *In the Land of Beautiful Trout* (Fowles) describes a shoal of graylings: "The elegant formation of their bodies, the finely modelled heads, the silvery blue of the scales, the rainbow hues of the great dorsal fins, gently waving, make a combination beautiful to look at. Presently a big fellow of more than

a pound weight comes sailing by, and the smaller crew respectfully make way for him. A purple sheen infuses his steely flanks, and the softly fanning fins betray delicate tones of olive-green, yellow, and red."

Waterbreak. Ripple.

PAGE 160—**Hazel covers.** Hazel thickets.

Gloom, glance. The stream in shadow and sunshine.

Netted sunbeams. The light playing through the ripples makes a network on the sandy bottom.

Shingly bars. Ridges of gravel obstructing the stream.

Cresses. Water-cresses, impeding the course of the current. The cress is an edible water plant with a pungent taste.

BRUIN AND THE COOK

This selection was first published in 1896 in *Round the Camp Fire*. Good companion selections are "The Bear as a Humorist" by Joaquin Miller on page 48 of Book VI of *The Holton-Curry Readers* (Rand), "The Story of Moween" on page 155 of the Fourth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.), "Twin Babies" by Joaquin Miller on page 185 and "The Bear That Had a Bank Account" by Hjalmar H. Boyesen on page 263 of Book V of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton), "Baby Sylvester" by Bret Harte on page 2 of the Sixth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton), and "Ben, the Black Bear" by William H. Wright on page 88 of Book VII of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner). See page 78 for material dealing with the bears.

LAURA SECORD

This selection is taken from *Poems* by Charles Edwin Jakeway, published by The Ryerson Press.

Laura Secord was born in December, 1775. She was the daughter of Thomas Ingersoll and his wife, Sarah, who was a sister of General John Whiting of Great Barrington, Massachusetts. At the close of the Revolutionary War Thomas Ingersoll, at the invitation of Governor Simcoe, removed with his family to Upper Canada, where he founded the town that bears his name. His daughter Laura married James Secord, and at the outbreak of the War of 1812, she and her husband were living at Queenston. The family at that time consisted of four daughters and one son, but two daughters were born subsequently. She died at Chippawa on October 16th, 1868, and is buried in the burying-ground at Lundy's Lane. Her husband, James Secord, was a member of

a devoted Loyalist family. His mother with her children came to Upper Canada in a wagon, without food, furniture, or clothing, while her husband remained behind to take part in the war. After his marriage he settled at first at St. David's, about three miles from the Niagara River, but subsequently removed to Queenston, where he engaged in business as a merchant. Until just before the outbreak of the War of 1812, he held the rank of captain in the Lincoln Militia, but resigned in anger at some action of his superior officer. When the invasion took place, he volunteered for service and was wounded at Queenston Heights. Before being wounded, however, he had helped to carry the body of General Brock from the battlefield. He never fully recovered from the effect of the wound. He was afterwards made collector of customs at Chippawa, a position which he held until his death in 1841.

The monument erected over Laura Secord's grave bears the following inscription: "To perpetuate the name and fame of Laura Secord, who, on the 23rd of June, 1813, walked alone, nearly 20 miles by a circuitous, difficult and perilous route, through woods and swamps, over dirty roads to warn a British outpost at De Cew's Falls of intended attack, and thereby enabled Lieut. FitzGibbon, on the 24th of June, 1813, with less than 50 men of His Majesty's 49th Regiment, about 15 militiamen, and a similar force of Six Nation and other Indians, under Captains William Johnson Kerr and Dominique Ducharme, to surprise and attack the enemy at Beechwood (or Beaver Dams), and, after a short engagement, to capture Col. Boerstler of the U. S. army, and his entire force of 542 men, with two field pieces. This monument, erected by the Ontario Historical Society from contributions of schools, societies, Her Majesty's 49th Regiment, other militia organizations and private individuals, was unveiled June 22nd, 1901." Another monument has lately been erected in her honor at Queenston Heights, not far from the monument to Sir Isaac Brock.

The following account taken from *The War with the United States* by William Wood in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook) and based on all the available sources of information, may be taken as absolutely accurate: "But the American commanders had reckoned on surprising FitzGibbon without hiding their preparations from the vigilant eyes of the Indian scouts or the equally vigilant ears of Laura Secord, the wife of an ardent U. E. Loyalist, James Secord, who was still disabled by wounds he had received while fighting under Brock at Queenston Heights. Early in the morning of the 23rd, while Laura Secord was going out to milk the cows, she overheard some Americans talking about the surprise in store for FitzGibbon next day. Without giving the slightest sign she quietly drove the cattle in behind the nearest fence, hid her

milkpail, and started to thread her perilous way through twenty miles of bewildering by-paths to the Beaver Dams. Keeping off the beaten tracks and always in the shadow of the full-leaved trees, she stole along through the American lines, crossed the no-man's land between the two desperate enemies, and managed to get inside the ever-shifting fringe of Indian scouts without being seen by friend or foe. The heat was intense; and the whole forest steamed with it after the tropical rain. But she held her course without a pause, over the swollen streams on fallen tree trunks, through the dense underbrush, and in and out of the mazes of the forest, where a bullet might come from any side without a moment's warning. As she neared the end of her journey, a savage yell told her she was at last discovered by the Indians. She and they were on the same side; but she had hard work to persuade them that she only wished to warn FitzGibbon. Then came what, to a lesser patriot, would have been a crowning disappointment. For when, half dead with fatigue, she told him her story, she found he had already heard it from the scouts. But just because this forestalment was no disappointment to her, it makes her the Anglo-Canadian heroine, whose fame for bravery in war is worthiest of being remembered with that of her French-Canadian sister, Madeleine de Verchères."

A full account of Laura Secord, accompanied by some very interesting reproductions of photographs and documents, is found in *The Story of Laura Secord and Canadian Reminiscences* by Emma A. Currie (Ryerson Press). See also *Heroines of Canadian History* by W. S. Herrington (Ryerson Press), *Brief Biographies Supplementing Canadian History* by T. G. Marquis (Copp, Clark), and *Canada's Story* by H. E. Marshall (Jack). Poems in celebration of the heroine have been written by Charles Mair in his "A Ballad for Brave Women" to be found on page 32 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent), and by Mrs. Currie and Miss Agnes Machar. These last may be found in the Poems of these authors.

PAGE 167—Wolf. "A Ride for Life" on page 176 of Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*, might be read in this connection.

Lynx. The Canadian lynx is fully described with an illustration on pages 142-145 of *The Life of Animals: Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan). Alfred H. Miles in *Natural History* (Dodd) says: "The Canada lynx preys largely upon the hare, which it is well qualified to hunt. It is distinguished by a peculiar gait, for unlike other animals, it bounds with and alights upon all four feet at once. The ears are erect and tipped with a long pencil of black hair. The long and thick fur is of a pale gray color, with a reddish tinge, marked with dusky spots on

the upper part of the body. The under parts are white." The lynx is not nearly so dangerous to men as is commonly supposed.

THE TREASURE VALLEY

This selection forms Chapter I of *The King of the Golden River or The Black Brothers* published in 1851. It was written in 1841 for Effie Gray, one of Ruskin's little friends, as a birthday present. The little girl was given her choice between an ornament and a fairy-tale written specially for her: she chose the latter. "It is a charming tale, and, like all Ruskin's writings, contains moral teaching of the highest order, for it shows that greed of gold brings its own punishment, and self-sacrificing goodness its own reward."

Good school editions of *The King of the Golden River*, are found in the *Golden River* series (Nelson) and in the *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

PAGE 169—Styria. A Duchy in Austria, lying to the east of Hungary. It is a mountainous district, but well watered. The inhabitants are German and speak the German language.

PAGE 170—Gluck. The word means "good luck."

PAGE 171—Turnspit. The spit was a contrivance for roasting meat in front of the fire.

Dry blows. Hard knocks.

Black blight. A disease in plants, generally appearing as black spots, that causes them to wither and so become unfruitful.

PAGE 175—Hob. The projection at the side of the fire-place where things are put to be kept warm.

PAGE 176—Knuckle. Near the end of the knee-joint.

INCIDENT OF THE FRENCH CAMP

This poem was published in 1842 in *Dramatic Lyrics*. The incident actually took place, but the hero was a man, not a boy. The editor of *Selected Poems in Riverside Literature Series* (Houghton) says: "Although the background of this poem is the whole history of Napoleon's fifth war with Austria in general, or the battle of Ratisbon in particular, Browning's interest is to choose for his theme the one dramatic moment in the life of a boy-soldier in the ranks. Browning's theory of poetry was that its province is human life and action, and its theme any intense, dramatic, personal act whether of the great or the humble.

‘ Take the least man of all mankind, as I,
 Look at his head and heart, find how and why
 He differs from his fellows utterly.’

he says, and there the poet has his material. The theme of all his short dramatic poems is such a disclosure of a man's soul in a second. So here the whole of Napoleon's ambition flashes out in two lines, the boy's devotion in a single stanza, and his sacrifice in three words. The Browning note of realism is evident in the description of Napoleon; and that optimism which marked him from contemporary poets speaks bravely in the boy's spiritual victory, completely won, though at a dear cost. So this vivid dramatic bit in its material, theme, and rapid treatment is a fair type of the art of Browning's short poems." Valuable hints for the study of the poem are given in *Introduction to Browning* by Ella B. Hallock (Macmillan).

Early in 1809, while Napoleon was in Spain, engaged in the pursuit of the army of Sir John Moore, the Austrians, who had remained quiet since their crushing defeat at Austerlitz in 1805, again took the field against their conqueror. Napoleon at once turned over the command in the Peninsula to Marshal Soult, and hurried to the Danube to take charge of his forces in person, with the determination to crush the enemy once for all. The Austrian armies, under the Archduke Charles, as commander-in-chief, were concentrating near Ratisbon, but Napoleon by his rapid marches and daring attacks compelled them to retreat. Protected by the garrison in Ratisbon, one of the Austrian armies succeeded in crossing the Danube. It was of the utmost importance to Napoleon that Ratisbon should at once be taken; it was impossible to await the result of a regular siege. Under the leadership of Marshal Lannes, the French made a desperate assault upon the town and carried it by storm.

PAGE 183—**You know.** Note the vividness imparted to the poem by the familiar way in which the story is told. The incident may be supposed to be related by an old soldier of Napoleon's army who had himself taken part in the storming of Ratisbon and was proud of the victory.

Ratisbon. A town of Bavaria, in Germany, on the right bank of the Danube, opposite the mouth of the Regen, about 67 miles from Munich. The German name of Ratisbon is Regensburg.

Napoleon. See page 400.

Stood. This is not correct. Napoleon, who on that day received the only wound he ever suffered during all his numerous campaigns, was on horseback during the whole of the storming.

Neck out-thrust, etc. These four lines give a vivid picture of Napoleon in his favorite attitude. It is thus he is seen in some of his best known portraits.

Prone. Hanging forward.

My plans. To follow the retreating Austrians and inflict on them a crushing blow, thus ensuring his domination on the Continent. As a matter of fact Napoleon's plans did succeed. Although badly defeated a few days later at Aspern, he recovered and won a decisive victory at Wagram, after which Austrian resistance was at an end.

Lannes. Jean Lannes, one of the ablest of Napoleon's marshals, was born at Lectour, a small town in Normandy, on April 11th, 1769. His father kept a livery stable and he himself was apprenticed to a dyer. On the outbreak of the war with Spain in 1792, he joined a battalion of volunteers, with the rank of sergeant-major. By the end of 1794, his extraordinary abilities had raised him to the position of chief of a brigade. In the next year he lost his rank; but, not content to remain inactive, he joined the army in Italy as a simple volunteer. Again he fought his way to the front, being given the command of a brigade by Napoleon himself. He accompanied Napoleon to Egypt, where he served with distinguished honor. In 1800 he commanded the advance guard in the crossing of the Alps, was the main cause of the victory at Montebello, and bore the brunt of the battle at Marengo. At the formation of the Empire he was made a marshal of France. In 1808 he was commander-in-chief in Spain, and in the next year, after a desperate struggle, succeeded in the capture of Saragossa. For this exploit he was created Duke of Montebello. He led the assault at the capture of Ratisbon in the campaign against the Austrians, but shortly afterwards, during the retreat from the disastrous field of Aspern, he was mortally wounded. He died at Vienna on May 30th, 1809. Lannes was a soldier of reckless daring and a general of splendid ability. He was perhaps the best beloved of all Napoleon's commanders; for him the emperor had a deep and true affection. See *Napoleon and his Marshals* by Joel Tyler Headley (Scribner).

Yonder wall. Joel Tyler Headley says: "In the storming of Ratisbon, Lannes exhibited one of those impulsive deeds which characterized him. Seeing a house leaning against the ramparts, he immediately ordered the artillery against it, which soon broke down the walls, and left them a sort of stepping-stones to the tops of the walls of the city. But such a destructive fire was kept up by the Austrians on the space between the French and it, that they could not be induced to cross it. At length Lannes seized a scaling-ladder, and, rushing into and through the tempests

of balls that swept every foot of the ground, planted it firmly against the ruined house, and summoned his men to follow. Rushing through the fire, they rallied around him, scaled the walls, and poured into the city, and opened the gates to the army." As Lannes rushed across the fire-swept space, he shouted to his men, "I'll show you that I've not forgotten I was once a grenadier!"

PAGE 184—The Marshal. Marshal Lannes.

Flag-bird. The eagle that surmounted the imperial standards. The eagle was the ensign of the Roman legions and was adopted by Napoleon, after he became emperor.

Vans. Fans or wings.

Flashed . . . softened. Flashed with the joy of victory and the thought of what it meant to him; softened with pity for the wounded soldier.

Sire. A form of "sir"; a title used in addressing a king or emperor.

Smiling. Glad that he was permitted to die in the presence of his beloved leader.

A LIFE OF FEAR

This selection forms a portion of Chapter XV of *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers* by John Burroughs, published by Houghton, Mifflin Company, Boston. The whole chapter should, if possible, be read to the pupils. *Wild Neighbors* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan) contains many good companion stories of the smaller wild animals.

PAGE 184—Red squirrel. See page 48.

PAGE 185—The hawk. The many varieties of hawks are fully described with colored illustrations in *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture* by Charles W. Nash (Department of Agriculture, Toronto).

The owl. See P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada* and Charles W. Nash's *Birds of Ontario in Relation to Agriculture*.

Chipmunk. See page 48.

PAGE 186—Turtle. See *Modern Nature Study* by Sidney Silcox and O. J. Stevenson (Macmillan).

Raccoon. The raccoon is grayish-black in color, with sharp, flexible nose, black face-markings, flat solid feet, arched hindquarters, and long tail tipped with black and marked with five black rings. He lives principally in the tree-tops and makes his den in a hollow trunk. He descends to the ground to procure his food. The raccoon is much hunted on account of his fur. See Silcox and Stevenson's *Modern Nature Study* and *Life of Animals: Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan). See

also an excellent chapter entitled "A Little Brother to the Bear" in Ernest Ingersoll's *Wild Neighbors*. In addition to describing the animal, the chapter gives a graphic account of a "coon hunt." John Burroughs' *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers* contains a good chapter on the raccoon.

The fox. A good descriptive chapter on the fox is found on page 53 of John Burroughs' *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers*.

PAGE 187—Rabbit. A good description of the gray or cottontail rabbit is found on page 13 of Silcox and Stevenson's *Modern Nature Study*. The authors point out that properly speaking we have no rabbits in Canada. The cottontail is really the wood hare, while we have also the northern hare. See also John Burroughs' "The Rabbit and the Hare" on page 38 of *Squirrels and Other Fur-Bearers*.

THE UNNAMED LAKE

This poem was published in 1897 in *The Unnamed Lake and Other Poems*. It was written among the mountains behind St. Raymond, Quebec, a little place on the Lake St. John Railway. The poet while wandering there came upon an unknown lake, lying deep amidst the hills. The quiet and beauty of the scene so impressed him that he took his leave of the lake without even giving it a name.

PAGE 188—Nature's music. The sounds of nature.

Silences of God. Where man has never intruded.

Wanton. Free.

Ageless. That have existed through the ages.

PAGE 189—Heron. See page 307.

Fish-hawk. The American Osprey. Mabel Osgood Wright in *Bird-craft* (Macmillan) says: "This familiar, brown, eagle-like bird, with very large talons, is seen hovering over sound, creek, and river, particularly in spring and early fall. The fish-hawk, as it is popularly called, follows schools of fish, and, dashing from considerable height, seizes its prey with its stout claws. If the fish is small, it is immediately swallowed; if it is large, it is taken to a convenient bluff or tree and torn to bits. Sometimes the fish-hawk dives quite deep, and, when he emerges, shakes a shower of spray from his wings, and rises slowly. Occasionally the osprey is carried under and drowned, and large fish have been washed ashore with these birds fastened to them by their claws, though it usually feeds upon fish of little value." A full-page colored illustration of the bird is found in *Bird-Life* by Frank M. Chapman (Appleton).

A TRUE FAIRY TALE

This selection is taken from Chapter VI of *Madame How and Lady Why, or First Lessons in Earth Lore for Children* published in 1869. The selection tells in an interesting way the story of the past history of the earth. Further information may be obtained in *Man and his Ancestors* by Charles Morris (Macmillan), in *The Story of Primitive Man* by Edward Clodd (Newnes), and in *How Man Conquered Nature* by Minnie J. Reynolds in *Everychild Series* (Macmillan). A most interesting and valuable story to read in this connection is *A Tale of the Time of the Cave Men* by Stanley Waterloo (Macmillan).

A very informing series of books connected with the study of primitive man is contained in the *Industrial and Social History Series* by Katharine Elizabeth Dopp, published by Rand, McNally & Company, Chicago. Book I of the series, *The Tree Dwellers: The Age of Fear*, with 14 full-page and 46 text drawings, makes clear to the pupils how people lived before they had fire, how and why they conquered it, and the changes wrought in society by its use. Book II, *The Early Cave-Men: The Age of Combat*, with 16 full-page and 71 text drawings, helps the pupils to realize that it is necessary not only to know how to use fire, but also to know how to make it. It shows the importance of fire in defending the caves in which man was compelled to take refuge from the cold, and deals with improvements in clothing, tools, and weapons. Book III, *The Later Cave-Men: The Age of the Chase*, with 27 full-page and 87 text drawings, portrays the influence of man's presence upon wild animals and shows how these animals were hunted and trapped. It also shows how and why men began to gather together and form themselves into communities. Book IV, *The Early Sea People: First Steps in the Conquest of the Waters*, with 21 full-page and 117 text drawings, depicts the life of the fishing people in contrast to that of the hunters. It shows how man adapted himself to his surroundings and made use of material at hand for his advancement. The whole series is magnificently illustrated and contains many pictures of the animals of the time. Books I and II are too elementary for this grade, but the illustrations are very valuable for class use. The four books, which are written specially for schools, should be in every school library.

PAGE 189—**Buck-bean.** A plant which grows in moist and boggy places.

PAGE 190—**Beavers.** See page 133.

PAGE 192—**It grew, etc.** This quotation is from Coleridge's *The Ancient Mariner*.

The age of ice. For a full discussion of the Ice Age see *Elementary Physical Geography* by R. S. Tarr (Macmillan).

PAGE 193—**Enormous bears, etc.** See *Mighty Animals* by Jennie Irene Mix (American Book Co.) and *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan).

PAGE 194—**Flint weapons.** See Edward Clodd's *The Story of Primitive Man*.

Breccia. Fragments of rocks united by a matrix or cement.

Stalagmite. Caused by the filtration of water containing carbonate of lime through fissures and pores of rocks.

THE LEGEND OF SAINT CHRISTOPHER

This selection is taken from the *Poems* of Helen Hunt Jackson.

The *Encyclopaedia Britannica* says: "St. Christopher is a saint honored in the Roman Catholic Church on July 25th. Nothing that is authentic is known about him. He appears to have been originally a pagan and to have been born in Syria. He was baptized by the Bishop of Antioch; preached with much success in Lycia; and was martyred about A.D. 250 during the persecution under the emperor Decius. Round this small nucleus of possibility, however, a vast mass of legendary matter gradually collected. All accounts agree that he was of great stature and singularly handsome, and that this helped him not a little in his evangelistic work. But according to one of the stories, Christopher was originally a hideous man-eating ogre, with a dog's face, and only received his human semblance, with his Christian name, at baptism. He thrusts his staff into the ground; whereupon it sprouts into a date palm and thousands are converted. The Roman governor is confounded by his insensibility to the most refined and ingenious tortures. He is roasted over a slow fire and basted with boiling oil, but tells his tormentors that by the grace of Jesus Christ he feels nothing. When at last, in despair, they cut off his head, he had converted 48,000 people.

"The most conspicuous of the legends concerning Christopher is told in *The Golden Legend*. According to this Christopher—or rather Reprobis, as he was then called—was a giant of vast stature who was in search of a man stronger than himself, whom he might serve. He left the service of the king of Canaan because the king feared the Devil, and that of the Devil because the Devil feared the Cross. He was converted by a hermit, but as he had neither the gift of fasting nor that of prayer, he decided to devote himself to works of charity and set himself to carry wayfarers across a

bridgeless river." The story in the text is the continuation of this legend. "It was this story that gave Christopher his immense popularity throughout Western Christendom." The name of the saint means "Christ bearer." The entire legend is told in Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan).

CAPTAIN COOK

This selection was written by Miss Margaret Bemister specially for Book IV of *The Canadian Readers*.

The life of Captain Cook is told fully in the text. The best short biography of the explorer is *The Story of Captain Cook* by John Lang in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack). A capital abridgment of his voyages is that by James Broadbent Marshall entitled *Captain Cook's Voyages of Discovery in Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

Cook's discoveries at once call up the names of other great discoverers and explorers—Marco Polo, Diaz, Vasco da Gama, Balboa, Magellan, Cabot, Cartier, Hudson, Champlain, Behring, Bruce, Mungo Park, Parry, Franklin, Sturt, Livingstone, Speke, Baker, and many others. Excellent sketches of all of these men, quite suitable to read to pupils in Grade IV, may be found in *A Book of Discovery* by M. B. Synge (Jack). This book gives the history of the world's exploration from the earliest times to the finding of the south pole. Cook's voyages are treated in Chapters XLV and XLVI.

PAGE 201—Admiral Saunders. Sir Charles Saunders (1713-1775) had a distinguished career in the British navy. In 1759, as vice-admiral, he was appointed to the command of the fleet which was to co-operate with Wolfe in the taking of Quebec. The most friendly feeling prevailed between the two commanders, and Saunders was able to be of great assistance to Wolfe. He was on several occasions a member of Parliament and for a time was First Lord of the Admiralty. See *Flag and Fleet* by William Wood (Macmillan).

General Wolfe. James Wolfe (1726-1759) the distinguished English soldier, who closed a brilliant career by the taking of Quebec. See *History of Canada* by I. Gammell (Gage), *Heroes of England* by J. G. Edgar (Dent), and *Wolfe* by A. G. Bradley in *English Men of Action* series (Macmillan).

The expedition. See chapter entitled "Pitt's Imperial War" in William Wood's *Flag and Fleet*.

Island of Orleans. An island in the St. Lawrence above Quebec, where the British were encamped during the siege of the town.

PAGE 203—Tahiti. A volcanic island in the Pacific, the principal member of the Society Islands group. It belongs to France.

The planet Venus. Venus is the most brilliant of all the planets, and is the second from the sun. In diameter it is a little smaller than the earth. The passing of Venus between the earth and the sun is called "the transit of Venus." See the chapter entitled "Mercury and Venus" on page 21 of *Stars Shown to the Children* by Ellison Hawks (Jack).

PAGE 204—Captain Amundsen. Roald Amundsen (1870-1928) was a Norwegian explorer. His most noted exploits were his sailing through the North-West Passage in his expedition of 1903-06 and his discovery of the South Pole in 1911. Later he flew over the North Pole in an aeroplane. He perished in 1928 in an attempt by aeroplane to rescue the Italian aviator, General Nobile, who had been marooned in the Arctic ice.

Captain Scott. See page 248.

North-West Passage. It was long the dream of English navigators that a passage existed between the Atlantic and the Pacific either through Hudson Bay or to the north of the continent. The voyages of Hearne and Mackenzie proved that there was no such passage through Hudson Bay. Many daring navigators still continued to search for a passage to the north of the continent. Captain Amundsen, in his expedition of 1903-06, sailed from the one ocean to the other, thus proving that there is water all the way, but that the passage is choked with ice and is commercially impossible. See *The Story of the North-West Passage* by C. G. Cash (Nelson).

PAGE 205—Nootka. Nootka is an island on the west side of Vancouver Island. Agnes C. Laut in *Vikings of the Pacific* (Macmillan) describes the experiences of Cook at Nootka: "All night a hard gale drove them northward. When the weather cleared, permitting them to approach the coast again, high mountains, covered with snow and forests, jagged through the clouds like tent peaks. Tremendous breakers roared over sunken rocks. Then the wind suddenly fell; and the ships were becalmed directly opposite the narrow entrance of a two-horned cove sheltered by the mountains. The small boats had all been mustered out to tow the two ships in, when a slight breeze sprang up. The flotilla drifted inland just as three canoes, carved in bizarre shapes of birds' heads and eagle claws, came paddling across the inlet. Three savages were in one, six in the other, ten in the third. They came slowly over the water, singing some song of welcome, beating time with their paddles, scattering downy white feathers on the air, at intervals standing up to harangue a

welcome to the newcomers. Soon thirty canoes were around the ships with some ten warriors in each. Still they came, shoals of them, like fish, with savages almost naked, the harbor smooth as glass, the great chief of the tribes standing erect shouting a welcome, with long elf-locks streaming down his back. Women and children now appeared in the canoes. That meant peace. The women were chattering like magpies; the men gurgling and spluttering their surprise at the white visitors.

“Three armed boats at once proceeded from the ships to explore and sound the inlet. The entrance had been between two rocky points four miles apart between a chain of sunken rocks. Except in the north-west corner of the inlet the water was too deep for anchorage; so the two ships were moored to trees, the masts unrigged, the iron forge set to work on the shore; and the men began cutting timber for the new masts. And still the tiny specks, dancing over the waves carrying canoe loads of savages to the English ships, continued to multiply till the harbor seemed alive with warriors—two thousand there must have been by the first week in April after Cook’s arrival. Some of the savages wore brightly painted wooden masks as part of their gala attire. By way of showing their prowess, some even offered the white men human skulls from which the flesh had not yet been taken. By this Cook knew that the people were cannibals.

“To these deep-sea wanderers of Cook’s crews, the harbor was as a fairy-land. Snow still covered the mountain tops; but a tangled forest of dank growth, with roots awash in the ripple of the sea, stretched down the hillsides. Red cedar, spruce, fir,—of enormous growth, broader in growth than a cart and wagon in length,—cypress with twisted and gnarled knots red against the rank green; masses swinging from branch to branch in snaky coils wherever the clouds settled and rested; islands studding the sea like emerald gems; grouse drumming their spring song through the dark underbrush; sea-mew and Mother Carey’s chickens screaming and clacking overhead; the snowy summits red as wine in the sunset glow—all made up an April scene long cherished by these adventurers of the North.

“Early one morning in April the men cutting timber inland were startled to notice the underbrush alive with warriors armed. The first fear was of an ambush. Cook ordered the men to an isolated rock ready for defence; but the grand chief explained by signs that his tribe was only keeping off another tribe that wanted to trade with the white men. The worst trouble was from the inordinate thieving propensities of the natives. Iron, nails, belaying pins, rudders, anchors, bits of sails, a spike that could be pulled from the rotten wood of the outer keel by the teeth of a chief

paddling below—anything, everything was snatched by the light-fingered gentry. When caught in theft, they did not betray as much sense of guilt as a dog stealing a bone.

“By the end of April the ships had been overhauled, and Cook was ready to sail. Porpoises were coursing the sea like greyhounds, and the stormy petrels in a clatter; but Cook was not to be delayed by storm. Barely had the two ships cleared the harbor, when such a squall broke loose that they could do nothing but scud for open sea, turn tails to the wind, and lie helpless as logs, heads south. If it had not been for this storm Cook would certainly have discovered that Nootka was on an island, not on the coast of the mainland.”

The mainland. The mainland of Vancouver Island.

After this. He left Nootka, because he began to suspect that the Indians were plotting to gain possession of his ship.

Sandwich Islands. This was the name given to the islands by Captain Cook in honor of Lord Sandwich of the Admiralty. They are now known as the Hawaiian Islands, a territory of the United States since 1898.

PAGE 206—Surveyed, etc. The charts prepared by Cook are still recognized as extremely accurate.

A PSALM OF DAVID

This selection is Psalm No. 24 in *The Book of Psalms*. The Rev. A. F. Kirkpatrick in *The Book of Psalms in The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) says: “The impregnable stronghold of Zion had fallen. David was master of his future capital. But it was not in his own strength, nor for his own glory, that the victory had been won. The city of David was to be ‘the city of the Lord of Hosts’. Its true owner and king must now enter and take possession. The Ark, which was the symbol of His Presence, must be solemnly brought up and installed in the tent which David had prepared for it. For this unique occasion, the greatest day in David’s life, this Psalm appears to have been written. Jehovah comes as a victorious warrior, fresh from the conquest of the impregnable fortress. The opening assertion of His universal sovereignty as the creator of the world offers a fitting caution not to suppose that, because He has chosen one city for His special dwelling-place, His presence and activity are limited to it; the inquiry what must be the character of His worshippers, appropriate in any case, gains fresh point in view of the disasters which had for a while deferred the ceremony. See *II Samuel vi*, 9.” See pages 128-132 of Vol. I of *The*

Psalms edited by Professor W. T. Davison in *The Century Bible* (Jack).

The first stanza of the selection deals with "the unique majesty of Him who comes to take possession of His dwelling-place. His sovereignty is not limited to a single nation or a single country. He is the Lord of all the world, for He is its creator." The second stanza inquires into "the normal conditions required for access into the presence of so great a God." In the remaining part of the Psalm, "The procession has reached the ancient gates of Zion. They are summoned to open high and wide to admit their true king."

PAGE 207—Upon the floods. The old idea was that the land rested upon the water from which it rose.

Stand. Appear and stand his ground.

Clean hands, etc. Innocent of wrong in deed and thought.

Who hath not lifted, etc. "Who is true and faithful to Jehovah and who has not set his heart upon what is false and sinful."

Sworn deceitfully. Sworn to deceive his neighbor.

Lift up your heads, etc. "A bold apostrophe. The hoary gates of the heathen fortress are represented as unwilling to receive the conquering Lord, or the highest of them is too low for His standard to pass under. They are to bow themselves down, or lift themselves up, to make themselves higher and wider—in every way to make room for Him who comes to reign in Jerusalem."

King of glory. "The King who is glorious, who does glorious things, and who rules over a glorious kingdom. The warders at the gate ask for the credentials of those who boldly throw down this challenge. What is the name, what the claim to authority of Him who seeks to enter? The answer first given is that the Lord, who is 'a mighty hero' has already proved His strength in granting victory to His servant David and has come to claim His own."

The Lord of hosts. The Sovereign of the universe.

LOVE OF COUNTRY

This selection is the opening section of Canto VI of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, published in 1805. At the close of Canto V of the poem, the ladies who were listening to the minstrel praised his skill and asked him why he remained in Scotland, where his skill was so poorly rewarded, when he might win wealth and fame in England. The old minstrel, loving Scotland with a passionate intensity, could not bear to hear his native land thus slighted and gives vent to the genuine outburst of feeling

in the text. He loves his country because it is the land of his birth, and, as such, all his affection goes out towards it. He sinks himself in his devotion to the country in which he was born.

G. H. Stuart says: "Had Scott not written the Sixth Canto of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, we should have lost, perhaps, the noble verses on the love of country with which it opens. Scott, one of the manliest of poets, was nothing if not patriotic, and nowhere in English poetry does the spirit of patriotism speak in more genuine and more manly tones than in these spirited stanzas."

James Montgomery's "My Country" on page 19 and Lord Tennyson's "Hands all Round" on page 40 of *Poems of the Love of Country* edited by J. E. Wetherell in *Macmillan's Literature Series* (Macmillan) may be read in this connection, as may also James Russell Lowell's "The Fatherland." Each presents a different point of view. Tennyson insists strongly on the thought that

"That man's the best Cosmopolite
Who loves his native country best."

PAGE 209—Breathes there the man. Is it possible that there is living such a man?

Soul so dead. So wanting in spirit and in real feeling.

Strand. Country.

Minstrel raptures. "The ecstasy felt by the minstrel when he sings of brave exploits and heroic deeds."

Pelf. Wealth.

Concentred all in self. Entirely selfish.

Doubly dying. Dead, and buried in oblivion.

Vile dust. Here an expression of contempt: "The Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground"—*Genesis ii, 7*.

THE WHITE HORSE PLAIN

This selection is a translation by the Rev. Lewis Drummond from the French of the Hon. L. A. Prud'homme made specially for Book IV of *The Victorian Readers*. Mr. Prud'homme has written many similar stories and articles in French magazines and periodicals, but so far these have not been translated into English.

PAGE 209—Assiniboins. A large tribe of the Sioux family, who separated from the parent stem about 1640. This separation took place while the tribe resided somewhere in the region about the headwaters of the Mississippi. From there they moved to the neighborhood of the

Lake of the Woods, whence they drifted northward to the region about Lake Winnipeg. In 1775 Henry found them scattered along the Assiniboine and the Saskatchewan. From the time they separated from the parent stem and joined the Crees, they were almost constantly at war with the Sioux. Physically they do not differ much from the parent stock. They are now gathered into reservations in Manitoba and Saskatchewan.

Sioux. A very numerous family of Indians divided into many tribes with widely-differing customs and dialects. The Dakotas or Western Sioux lived mainly in what are now the states of Minnesota and Dakota. They were very fierce and warlike, constantly at war with neighboring tribes. In Canada and the United States there are at present about forty thousand Sioux.

PAGE 210—Kristinots. The Cree Indians. The word Cree is contracted from *Kristinaux*, the French form of *Kenistenoag*, given as one of their own names. They were an Algonquin tribe, who lived formerly between the Red and Saskatchewan Rivers. Many of their bands were nomadic, following the buffalo as they roamed. "At some comparatively recent time, the Assiniboins, a branch of the Sioux, in consequence of a quarrel, broke away from their brethren and sought alliance with the Crees. The latter received them cordially and granted them a home in their territory, thereby forming friendly relations that have continued until the present day. The united tribes attacked and drove southwestward the Siksika and allied tribes who formerly dwelt along the Saskatchewan. The enmity between these tribes and both the Siksika and the Sioux has ever since continued." See *Handbook of Indians of Canada* (Geographic Board, Ottawa).

English forts. The forts of the Hudson's Bay Company. See page 154.

PAGE 212—St. François Xavier. About twenty miles from Winnipeg.

Manitous. The gods of the Indians. See page 57.

Happy hunting-grounds. The Indian imagined that in the future state he would find himself in a place always abundantly supplied with game, and that his time would be spent continuously in the chase.

THE LORD IS MY SHEPHERD

Professor Davison says in *The Psalms* in *The Century Bible* (Nelson): "The charm of this Psalm of Psalms lies in its combined simplicity of diction, beauty of conception, and wealth of religious significance. These are blended with an art that is beyond art, attainable only by the trustful human spirit guided by the Divine. The chief figure in the picture, that of the shepherd, is one which appeals to all ages and to all nations, though

it suggests itself most naturally to dwellers in the pastoral countries of the East. The secondary metaphor, that of the host at the banquet of life, must not be slighted, though it is inevitably thrown into the background by the superior beauty and suggestiveness of the primary thought. The meaning and helpfulness of this perfect little Psalm can never be exhausted so long as men, like sheep, wander and need guidance, and so long as they learn to find it in God their Shepherd."

Professor Moulton also says: "In this most popular of sacred lyrics, the thought of Jehovah's protection is developed, first by the single image of the shepherd and his flock, expanded in detail; then by a rapid succession of images; the plentiful supply of food in spite of a blackening enemy; the hospitable feast, with its wine and its anointing, and (perhaps) the stream of goodness following the singer through the desert of life."

PAGE 212—My shepherd. "Whilst the tenderness of the figure suggested by the close personal care of the shepherd over his sheep is not to be forgotten, the wisdom and strength and authority of the true Leader of men is its prominent element."

PAGE 213—Restoreth. Professor Davison interprets: "Not brings back as a wanderer from the right path, but revives the weary and fainting who need refreshment."

For his name's sake. That God may be true to His own character.

Death. The word here really means "deep gloom." It would perhaps be better to interpret the phrase as "the valley of the dark shadow."

Thy rod and thy staff. The rod was a kind of club used for defence, and the staff a pole to assist in walking and climbing.

Preparest a table. "Provision for my needs, festive rejoicing, the bestowment of dignity, abounding grace, more than sufficient for all contingencies—such are the suggestions of this verse, in which the Psalmist is a guest at the banquet of life, with Jehovah for a bountiful host."

With oil. The neglect to provide oil on a festal occasion is regarded as a breach of hospitality in the East.

My cup, etc. My cup—abundance.

Goodness. The provision of all good things.

DOUBTING CASTLE AND GIANT DESPAIR

This selection is taken with some omissions and changes from the first part of *The Pilgrim's Progress*, published in 1678. The full title of the book is "The Pilgrim's Progress from this World to that which is to come, delivered under the Similitude of a Dream, wherein is discovered the Manner of his setting out, his dangerous Journey, and his safe Arrival

at the desired Country." The portion of the narrative referring to *Diffidence* was not in the first edition, but was added subsequently.

An excellent abridgment of the story of *The Pilgrim's Progress* is given in *Children's Stories in English Literature: Shakespeare to Tennyson* by Henrietta Christian Wright (Scribner). A good school edition, edited with an introduction and notes by James Hugh Moffatt, is published in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). See also *The Pilgrim's Progress* by Mary MacGregor in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), *The Pilgrim's Progress* in *Nelson's Classics* (Nelson), and a complete and beautifully illustrated edition published by T. C. & E. C. Jack.

William Vaughan Moody says of *The Pilgrim's Progress*: "But perhaps the strongest appeal which the book makes to us today lies in the charm of its style. We have already lost much of our interest in it as allegory, and the enormous development of the art of fiction since it was published has taken away much of its interest as narrative; but nothing can take away its interest as a treasury of precious English. Bunyan had no suspicion that he was producing a masterpiece. He was a simple man, with only the rudiments of an education, writing for men simpler than himself, so that there is hardly a word in the whole tale which would not have been readily intelligible to a Bedfordshire carter or plough-boy. It is a rough homespun diction, made up largely of Anglo-Saxon roots and abounding in monosyllables. But, for all this, it becomes in Bunyan's hands an instrument of wide compass, capable not only of graphic force, of humorous directness, but also of very tender and gorgeous lyrical effects. Much of its power is due, of course, to the fact that Bunyan's memory, like that of so many of his contemporaries, was stored with the diction of the Bible; but much, too, comes from the nervous blunt speech of the Midland peasantry. The blend produced a vehicle of expression thoroughly strong and supple, the very crudities of which, mellowed by time and disuse, take on an air of rich ingenuous charm. For any one who has the sense of language, to whom words have a subtle individuality of their own, who can linger over and taste a phrase, the pages of *The Pilgrim's Progress* will possess an enduring fascination." See *Great Books* by Frederick W. Farrar (Crowell).

Christian and Hopeful on their journey to the *Celestial City* came to the *River of the Water of Life*. The path by the side of the river was very pleasant, and the travellers proceeded along it for several days. At last, however, the path and the river parted for a time, and as the way was rough they became greatly discouraged. In a short time they came to a meadow on the side of the path and a stile to go over into it. This was called *Bypath Meadow*, through which another path led. Christian persuaded Hopeful to cross over the stile and to try the new path.

At first they found the travelling delightful, and were further assured that they were on the right road by *Vain-confidence*, whom they saw before them on the way. But night came on, and the travelling became very difficult. It began to rain and the path was flooded. They tried to retrace their steps, but were almost drowned in the attempt. With all their efforts they could not reach the stile and were compelled to lie down to rest. Being weary, they fell asleep, and in the morning, when they awoke, they found themselves in the power of Giant Despair.

Commenting on the selection in the text a recent editor says: "This is an allegory or continued metaphor—Christian life represented as a pilgrimage; its trials, as giants, dungeons, etc. Note the fact that their bewilderment at being lost occasions despair (figured as a giant); they are filled with doubt; Diffidence (distrust in one's power) urges on Despair (utter loss of courage and hope), which afflicts them with many blows, so that they sigh and lament. In their diffidence and despair they debate the question of suicide. 'In sunshiny weather he fell into fits' (in sunshiny, cheerful moods of the soul, despair is powerless). When Christian and Hopeful are escaping from Doubt, note that Despair has his fit of powerlessness come over him. (When we see our way clearly, despair no longer molests us.)"

PAGE 215—**Rating.** Scolding.

PAGE 217—**Picklocks.** Instruments for picking locks.

Dungeon door. See *Acts xii, 7-10*.

PAGE 218—**Consented.** Agreed.

THE MAPLE

In the poem the author expresses his preference for the maple above all the other trees of the forest, rejoices in its beauty of foliage in spring and fall and the richness of its shade in summer, and then dwells upon the memories it recalls. It should be compared with "The Maple" by H. F. Darnell to be found on page 25 of *Poems of Loyalty by British and Canadian Authors* selected by Wilfred Campbell (Nelson) and with "The Maple" by E. Pauline Johnson on page 13 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent).

It would be well for the teacher, before handling this selection with her class, to read the chapter entitled "A Story of Some Maples" on page 3 of *Getting Acquainted with the Trees* by J. Horace McFarland (Macmillan). The author deals exhaustively with the various maples found on this continent, particularly with the silver and the sugar maples. The chapter is well illustrated. See also "The Maple Family" on page

154 of *Trees That Every Child Should Know* by Julia E. Rogers (Grosset) and "The Maple Family" on page 186 of *Forests and Trees* by B. J. Hales (Macmillan).

B. J. Hales says: "No trees are so closely connected with Canadian traditions and history as the maples. If we can be said to have a national tree it is the maple. There are a number of maples, all noble trees, with broad, palmately lobed leaves, and just which one should be considered as furnishing the maple leaf of Canada is a matter of some confusion. There seems little doubt, however, that the tree which so impressed the early settlers that it became closely associated with the growing colony was the hard or sugar maple. It was the most prevalent on the eastern side of the continent, where it formed extensive forests. Its wood soon became regarded as the most valuable fuel, and from its sap was made the maple sugar of the pioneer days. In the fall its leaves became brilliant crimson or gold, giving color on a scale never furnished by any other tree. No tree touched the lives of the people at so many points, or was so likely to be regarded by the immigrant as standing for the land of his adoption."

George Sherwood Hodgins in *Heraldry of Canada* (Birks) says: "The origin of the maple leaf as the floral emblem of Canada practically dates from 1860, when Edward VII, then Prince of Wales, visited this country, though the first actual and authoritative use of the maple leaf was by the Imperial Government in 1859. A representation of this device was placed on the regimental colors of the 100th Regiment. This corps was raised in Canada and was called The Prince of Wales Royal Canadian Regiment. The colors were presented by the Prince in January, 1859. The first use of the maple leaf in Canada was at the reception of the Prince of Wales (Edward VII). A procession was being provided for, in which the various national societies had been requested to take part. A meeting was held in Toronto on August 21st, 1860, to arrange matters, and a motion was introduced by the late Dr. J. H. Richardson, at one time lecturer in anatomy in the Toronto School of Medicine: 'That all native Canadians joining the procession, whether identified with the national societies or not, should wear the maple leaf as an emblem of the land of their birth.' This motion, seconded by Mr. F. H. Heward, was adopted. From the account given in the *Toronto Globe* of September 8th, 1860, we learn that the Canadians took part in the procession, some wearing silver maple leaves, and others with those supplied by nature. Thus the floral emblem of Canada had its origin, and these leaves, which were even then turning to the golden hues of autumn, have in this color been accorded a place on the escutcheon of the province where they were first used. The maple leaf and the maple wreath have since

received official sanction. It is the leaf of the silver maple that is usually taken as our emblem, and Ontario bears on its escutcheon the memory of those early autumn days when, as expressed in happy phrase by the late Rev. Dr. John McCaul, then President of Toronto University, 'the hope of the province salutes the hope of the Empire.' "

PAGE 218—Glooms. Shadows caused by the various tall trees.

Beeches. The beech is described on page 132.

Willow. See the chapter entitled "The Willow Family" on page 163 of Julia Ellen Rogers' *Trees That Every Child Should Know* and "The Willows" on page 158 of B. J. Hales' *Forests and Trees*.

Pines. The pines are described on page 142. The poet imagines the pine as standing tall and erect as an orator prepared to address an assemblage.

Elms. See the chapter entitled "The American Elm and its Kin" on page 150 of Julia Ellen Rogers' *Trees That Every Child Should Know*.

Birch. See the chapter entitled "Some Other Trees" in J. Horace McFarland's *Getting Acquainted with the Trees*. A good illustration of the yellow birch accompanies the text. See page 132.

Hawthorne. See page 78.

Linden. See page 278.

Locust tree. See page 256.

PAGE 219—When pale, etc. Before the richer colors of spring have arrived.

Towers of flame. The editor of *Notes on the Ontario Readers* says: "A beautiful metaphor involving an allusion to the fires kindled in olden times on high watch-towers to give warning of the approach of a foe. These lines, perhaps, better than anything else in the poem indicate the poetical bent of Roberts' genius."

Summer canopy sifted. The light shining through the trees and glinting on the ground in light and shade. A lovely poetical expression.

And oh! "Note the fulness of suggestion in this line."

THE LARK AT THE DIGGINGS

This selection is taken from Chapters LXIII and LXIV of *It is Never too Late to Mend*, published in 1856. The text is in some places adapted from the original.

The plot of the novel is briefly as follows: George Fielding, a young farmer, was compelled to emigrate to Australia. Before going, he became engaged to Susan Merton, who was also loved by Mr. Meadows, a prosperous and respected, but unscrupulous money-lender. In the absence

of George, Mr. Meadows endeavored to undermine Susan's love for him, and finally, by stopping her mail, and spreading a false report of the marriage of her lover, secured the promise of her hand. On the day that George left for Australia, a man named Robinson, who had been lodging with him, was arrested as a thief and sent to a model prison, presided over by a model governor, a brute in human form, named Hawes. Robinson underwent awful tortures in the jail, but at last Hawes was dismissed through the efforts of the chaplain, Mr. Eden, and Robinson was sent to Australia by the kind-hearted chaplain to hunt up George Fielding. Farming had proved a failure, and when Robinson reached him, George was in the last stages of a severe illness. They discovered gold, and soon made their fortunes as miners. It was while digging for gold, surrounded by hundreds of rough miners, and far from home and loved ones, that the excursion related in the text took place. Meadows, however, was still at work. He despatched a tool of his to Australia, who did everything in his power to thwart George and almost succeeded in his purpose. By the assistance of Mr. Levi, an enemy of Meadows, George finally triumphed and married Susan.

PAGE 219—Was written on it. The pupils should note carefully the significant details of this bit of England in the Australian bush. The author has drawn the picture with great care.

Furze-bush. A low much-branched shrub, spiny, and with yellow flowers. It grows in barren heathy districts. It is used for fuel, while the young shoots are useful for fodder. It is also cultivated as an ornamental shrub, especially the double-flowered variety.

Ash. A good description of the ash is given on page 39 of *Trees Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack). An attractive colored plate accompanies the text.

Most of them diggers. The diggers were out of place in the English scene.

PAGE 220—Gigantic cage. To give the bird more freedom of movement, and thus a sense of freedom.

The lark. A slang phrase for a piece of sport.

A lark. The back and wings of the English skylark are mottled with different shades of brown. The breast is yellowish with long brown spots. J. A. Henderson in *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack) says: "Everybody knows the song of the skylark. With all sorts and conditions of men it is the favorite among the glad sounds of early spring. The lark begins to sing very early in the year, as soon as bright days in February have given him the least encouragement. But as the sun becomes more powerful, the song is finer and more frequent, and through early summer it ceases only on the stormiest days. Very

early in the day, too, he begins, and even on the longest day he is up before the sun. 'Hark, hark, the lark at Heaven's gate sings,' Shakespeare said; and truly it sounds as if sheer joy carried him there always, to give thanks because it is so good to be alive. As he sings he soars up and up and up until the eye can follow him no further; then gradually coming down again he sings until he is close to the ground, dropping to his nest 'those quivering wings composed, that music still.'" John Burroughs says: "The wonder of the English skylark's song is its copiousness and sustained strength. There is no theme, no beginning or end, like most of the best bird-songs, and a perfect swarm of notes pouring out like bees from a hive. We have many more melodious songsters; the bobolink in the meadows, the vesper sparrow in the pastures, the purple finch in the groves, the winter wren, or any of the thrushes in the woods, or the wood wagtail. But our birds all stop where the English skylark has only just begun. Away he goes on quivering wing, inflating his throat fuller and fuller, mounting and mounting, and turning to all points of the compass as if to embrace the whole landscape in his song, the notes still raining upon you as distinct as ever, after you have left him far behind. The English skylark also sings long after all the other birds are silent—as if he had perpetual spring in his heart."

Other end of the camp. The famous Ballarat gold-field, about eighty miles west of Melbourne, Victoria, was opened up in August, 1851, during the great Australian gold rush. Thousands of miners were soon on the scene. The camp was several miles in length, so that it is not strange that the other miners were unknown to Fielding and Robinson.

Like most singers. A sly hit on the part of the author.

Ancient cadences. The notes of the song it used to sing among the English meadows.

PAGE 222—Out burst. Shelley speaks of the song of the lark as "a rain of melody."

First soared from. The lark builds its nest under a tuft of grass in the open meadow.

They. The miners.

Songshine. "A beautiful coinage from sunshine."

PAGE 223—Such a flat. So stupid.

THE SPLENDOR OF THE DAYS

This poem was published in 1907 in *The Cornflower and Other Poems*. Mrs. Blewett says: "This is a pen picture of a favorite playground on an Ontario homestead, as it looked in that lovely season called Indian Sum-

mer. The farmer had broken our ragged old meadow, and had planted it with corn. The children led me out to view what they sadly called 'their plowed up playground.' 'Poor meadow!' I said to them, 'the farmer took its green cloak away that it might wear a grand golden one; then he took that and left it naked with the mist and sun.' They clamored that I should put what I had told them into a real story, a story that 'rhymed.' This I have done, and because they love it other children may love it too."

The poem is a picture of the autumn days of October, when the harvest has been gathered in and the woods are turning crimson and brown. Although the ground is stripped bare and the hills and lakes are seen through a hazy autumn light, yet the cricket chirps gaily and there is a happy feeling of the fulfilled promise of spring and summer.

PAGE 225—**Crickets.** There are various kinds of crickets found in Canada. A full description of these with illustrations is given in *Modern Nature Study* by Sidney Silcox and O. J. Stevenson (Macmillan). See also *Living Creatures of Water, Land, and Air* by John Monteith (American Book Co.).

DICKENS IN CAMP

This poem was written in memory of Charles Dickens and was published in July 1870, in *The Overland Monthly*, San Francisco. Dickens had died on June 9th, but Bret Harte, who was absent in Santa Barbara, had not heard of the death of the great novelist, until he saw the report in a local newspaper. Shutting himself up in his room he composed the poem in two hours, and immediately sent it to San Francisco for publication in *The Overland Monthly*, of which he was editor, and the issue of which was delayed for two days to receive the poem. It is a curious coincidence that on his return to San Francisco Bret Harte found waiting him a letter from Dickens complimenting him upon his story *The Luck of Roaring Camp*, which had been published in London a short time before.

John Forster in his *Life of Dickens* says: "Of the innumerable tributes *The Old Curiosity Shop* has received, and to none other by Dickens have more or more various been paid, there is one, the very last, which has much affected me. Not many months before my friend's death, he had sent me two *Overland Monthlies* containing two sketches by a young American writer far away in California, 'The Luck of Roaring Camp,' and 'The Outcasts of Poker Flat,' in which he had found such subtle strokes of character as he had not anywhere else in late years discovered; the manner resembling himself, but the matter fresh to a degree that had

surprised him; the painting in all respects masterly; and the wild rude thing painted, a quite wonderful reality. I have rarely known him more honestly moved. A few months passed; telegraph wires flashed over the world that he had passed away on the 9th of June (1870); and the young writer of whom he had then written to me, all unconscious of that praise, put his tribute of gratefulness and sorrow into the form of a poem called 'Dickens in Camp.' It embodies the same kind of incident which had so affected the 'master' himself, in the papers to which I have referred; it shows the gentler influences, which, even in those Californian wilds, can restore outlawed 'roaring camps' to silence and humanity; and there is hardly any form of posthumous tribute, which I can imagine likely to have better satisfied his desire of fame, than one which should thus connect with the special favorite among all his heroines the restraints and authority exerted by his genius over the rudest and least civilized of competitors in that far fierce race for wealth."

The story of the poem is told in *The Ontario Public School Manuals: Literature* as follows: "In a canyon of the Sierras, a group of rough miners were gathered about a camp-fire. Around them stood the stately pines, above which the moon was slowly rising; below, at the bottom of the canyon, a river sang, as it threaded its way among the boulders; and, far in the distance, the mountains reared their snow-covered summits to the evening sky. The flickering camp-fire played strange tricks upon those gathered round it, for it gave to the care-worn faces and bent forms of the miners the appearance of freshness and health. One of the miners, a mere youth, opened his pack, drew therefrom a copy of Dickens's *Old Curiosity Shop*, and began to read aloud. At once, all other occupations were suspended, and everybody drew near to listen to the story. The whole camp yielded itself to the fascination of the tale, and in its absorbing interest they forgot themselves and their surroundings, their ills, their hardships, and their cares. One might almost fancy that the very pines and cedars became silent, and that the fir trees drew closer to hear the story of 'Little Nell.' Dickens, the 'Master,' has gone, but, among the many tributes that are paid to his power as a writer, let this little tale of the Western mining camp be added to illustrate the universal nature of his influence."

PAGE 225—Above the pines. The scene of the poem is laid in a rude mining-camp in the Sierras. The California pines grow very tall.

Minarets. Slender, lofty towers.

Fierce race for wealth. The famous California gold rush took place in 1849. *The Old Curiosity Shop* was published in 1841-42, and Dickens visited America in the latter year.

Pack. His dunnage bag, the bundle in which he kept all his belongings.

Hoarded. Treasured.

Listless leisure. Playing cards simply to pass the time.

Anew. It had been read and read again.

The Master. Charles Dickens.

Little Nell. The heroine of *The Old Curiosity Shop*. See *Ten Girls from Dickens* by Kate Dickinson Sweetster (Duffield).

PAGE 226—The reader. It is generally taken for granted that the incident related was a personal experience and that the reader was Bret Harte himself.

A silence. The softening and humanizing influence of the great master is the characteristic on which the poet lays stress.

Gathering closer. "The pines, firs, and cedars seemed to the 'boyish fancy' of the reader to gather as their shadows deepened in the gloom of the waning firelight and to still the motion of their every spray to hear the marvellous tale."

Lost their way. Some of the finest incidents in the novel grow out of Little Nell and her grandfather having lost their way on the journey from London.

He who wrought. Dickens died on June 9th, 1870, at Gadshill Place, his residence near Rochester, in Kent.

One tale. The camp is dispersed and Dickens is dead.

Fragrant story. Both the fragrance of the woods that surrounded the camp and the odors from the Kentish hop-vines seem to be a kind of incense to the memory of the dead Master.

Pensive glory. Derived from the memory of the great one who has gone.

Oak and holly and laurel. The oak as the emblem of England, the holly as emblematic of the Christmas season that Dickens loved so well, and the laurel to signify his mastery of his art. The great poets were crowned with laurel leaves.

Too presumptuous. It is but a simple offering among other and greater tributes, but perhaps it may not be considered presumption to present it.

Spray of Western pine. The present poem sent from the far West.

THE STORY OF ABSALOM

This selection forms verses 6 to 33, with the omission of 18 to 23, of Chapter XVIII and verses 2 and 4 of Chapter XIX of *II Samuel*. Absalom had rebelled against his father, King David, and had drawn away a large number of the people with him. David was determined to take the field himself, but his loyal followers urged him to remain in his palace,

and allow his generals to take charge. Joab, Abishai, and Ittai were in command of the troops of the king.

PAGE 227—The wood of Ephraim. This wood was probably beyond the Jordan.

The wood devoured. "From ignorance of the nature of the ground we cannot tell how the wood *devoured* so many; but precipices, pits, morasses, or even prickly shrubs and trees, many of which are sufficient to empale either man or beast, may account for such destruction in a fleeing army. Some, however, attribute the devouring to wild beasts, which may also be partly true."

His head. "And when he polled his head (for it was at every year's end that he polled it; because the hair was heavy on him, therefore he polled it) he weighed the hair of his head at two hundred shekels, after the king's weight."—*II Samuel xiv*, 26.

Ten shekels of silver. About \$7.50.

The king charged thee. See *II Samuel xviii*, 5.

Three darts. Three javelins. Probably he took the javelins instead of a sword, so that he might throw them from a distance and be less suspected, in case the king should call him to account for his disobedience.

PAGE 228—Two gates. Mahanaim, where David remained, was a walled city. The entrance was by an archway, with a gate at each end, between which the king sat, the whole surmounted by a flat-roofed tower, from which the watchman made his observations.

PAGE 229—That young man. Although he was the king's son, yet he was an enemy and a rebel.

IMMORTALITY

This selection, taken from *Canadian Singers and their Songs*, is one of our best Canadian poems of the Great War. Two other poems emphasize the thought the author wishes to convey: "In Memoriam" by Helen Gray Cone on page 85 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto) and "For the Fallen" by Laurence Binyon on page 363 of this *Handbook*.

TO AN ORIOLE

This selection is a fanciful little poem dealing with the oriole. A full description of the oriole is given on page 227. See also "The Baltimore Oriole" by Charles Bendire in Book I of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence

Moores Weed (Rand) and "The Oriole" with a colored illustration, on page 149 of *Our Bird Friends* by George F. Burba (Musson).

PAGE 230—**Orange lily.** The orange, or tiger lily, came originally from eastern Asia. The color of the flower is bright red-orange, thickly dotted with large dark spots. See *Our Garden Flowers* by Harriet L. Keeler (Scribner).

I DIG A DITCH

This selection is taken from *Adventures in Contentment*, published by Doubleday, Doran & Co., New York and Toronto.

David Grayson is the pen-name of Ray Stannard Baker, who was born at Lansing, Michigan, on April 17th, 1870. He graduated from Michigan State College in 1889 and later pursued his studies in literature and law at the University of Michigan. He was for five years a reporter and sub-editor of the *Chicago Record* and subsequently edited *McClure's Magazine* and *The American Magazine*. In 1918 he was appointed special commissioner of the Department of State to Great Britain, France, and Italy, and the following year was made director of the Press Bureau of the American Commission to Negotiate Peace, at Paris. His home is in Amherst, Massachusetts. He is the author of a number of books, including *Seen in Germany*, *Following the Color Line*, *Woodrow Wilson and World Settlement*, *a History of the Peace Conference*, *Adventures in Contentment*, *Adventures in Friendship*, *The Friendly Road*, *Great Possessions*, and *Adventures in Understanding*.

PAGE 232—**Turkey buzzard.** The turkey buzzard is about two feet in length, brownish black in color, head bare of feathers and bright red, with a white bill. "When not engaged in acts of necessity, they amuse themselves on fine clear days, even at the coolest season of the year, by soaring slowly and majestically into the higher regions of the atmosphere; rising gently, but rapidly, in vast spiral circles, they sometimes disappear beyond the thinnest clouds." See *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Musson).

THE SPIRES OF OXFORD

This poem, taken from *The Spires of Oxford* published by E. P. Dutton and Company, New York, has in the original beneath the title the words: "Seen from the train." It would be well to read along with "The Spires

of Oxford" the poem entitled "Subalterns: A Song of Oxford" on page 93 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto). See also "Immortality" on page 229 of the text.

PAGE 233—**Spires of Oxford.** The towers of the colleges.

PAGE 234—**Hoary Colleges.** Hoary with age.

Peaceful river. Oxford is situated at the junction of the Cherwell and the Thames.

The quad. The quadrangle.

Shaven lawns. The lawns closely mown.

THE COYOTE

This selection is taken from *Roughing It*, published in 1872. Ernest Ingersoll in *Wild Neighbors* (Macmillan) describes the coyote as follows: "The coyote is a wolf, about two-thirds the size of the well-known European species represented in North America by the big gray or timber wolf. He has a long lean body; legs a trifle short, but strong and active; a head more fox-like than wolfish, for the nose is long and pointed; yellow eyes set in spectacle frames of black eyelids; and hanging, tan trimmed-ears that may be erected, giving an air of alertness to their wearer; a tail (straight as a pointer's) also fox-like, for it is bushy; and a shaggy, large-maned, wind-ruffled, dust-gathering coat of dingy white, touched with tawny brown, or often decidedly brindled." Mabel Osgood Wright in *Stories of Birds and Beasts* (Macmillan) tells the familiar Indian story of the prairie wolf. She says: "There were some smaller wolves, who were less savage and less swift of foot than their brothers, more doglike and talkative, who babbled the secrets of the tribe and liked to hang about the homes of House People, rather than live in woods or caves. The larger wolves disliked them, because they were afraid lest they should tell tribe secrets; so they turned these small ones out to be a tribe apart, to feed on meaner game, and snatch and steal in open places. These small wolves were given charge over sheep, rabbits, and such timid things, and men called them coyotes (ground burrowers). But the coyote is also a cunning huntsman and lays his own traps and chases antelopes on the plains; and yet to-day there is hatred between the two tribes, and, if a hungry timber wolf meets his little brother, he will often eat him. The coyote is little more than a vagabond wild dog, who barks and howls around the edges of settlements, licking his lips when a lamb bleats."

The humor of this extract consists, of course, in its exaggeration, and in the attributing of human thoughts and feelings to both the coyote and the dog.

THE COYOTE

This poem should be read in connection with the previous selection with the same title. It is a poetical treatment of the same subject. Some of the most outstanding characteristics of the coyote are admirably described.

PAGE 237—Deny their own kin. The dog is closely related to the prairie wolf. See *Beasts: Thumb-nail Studies in Pets* by Wardlaw Kennedy (Macmillan).

SCOTS, WHA HAE

The sub-title of this poem is "Robert Bruce's Address to His Army before the Battle of Bannockburn." Burns says: "There is a tradition that the old air *Hey tuttie taitie* was Robert Bruce's march at the battle of Bannockburn. This thought, in my solitary wanderings, has warmed me to a pitch of enthusiasm on the theme of liberty and independence which I have thrown into a kind of Scottish ode, fitted to the air, that one might suppose to be the gallant Scot's address to his heroic followers on that eventful morning." The poem was written in 1793, after a thunderstorm during which the poet, while out walking with a friend, had received a thorough drenching. Thomas Carlyle says: "So long as there is warm blood in the heart of Scotchman or man, it will move in fierce thrills under this war ode,—the best, we believe, that was ever written by any pen." The music of the song is found in *Songs of All Lands* by W. S. B. Mathews (American Book Co.). Other celebrated national songs will readily occur to the teacher.

During the spring of 1313, Bruce with the Scottish army was besieging Stirling Castle. The English commander made a compact with Bruce that if the castle were not relieved by midsummer of the next year, he would surrender it to the Scots. Stung into action by the danger of this last stronghold of his power in Scotland, Edward II levied an army of over 100,000 men and marched northwards. The two armies met at Bannockburn near Stirling on June 24th, 1314. The Scottish army did not exceed 20,000 fighting men, but they were united in the defence of their country, and were led by men in whom they had every confidence. Bruce had chosen his battle-ground and had made every preparation for the discomfiture of the enemy. Pits were dug, filled with sharpened stakes, and the ground again covered over, so that the heavy cavalry of the enemy would tumble into them. The battle was stubborn, but the English began to show signs of yielding. The Scots raised the cry, "On them! They fail!" This cry was heard by about 15,000 Scottish camp

followers and countrymen, who had been sent to encamp on a neighboring hill, and they took this as a token that the victory was assured. Eager to share in the plunder, they rushed down from the hill. The English, supposing this to be another army that had been held in reserve, were panic-stricken. They broke their ranks and fled in hopeless disorder. The day was lost for England. It is said that 30,000 Englishmen fell on the field of battle. Edward himself escaped with difficulty, pursued vengefully by the Black Douglas. Immense spoils were taken by the Scots, including provisions, arms, and treasure of all descriptions. The immediate result of the battle was the surrender of Stirling Castle, and ultimately the acknowledgment of Scottish independence.

A vivid description of the battle of Bannockburn is given in *Robert Bruce* by Jeanie Lang in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack). See also *Fields of Fame in England and Scotland* by J. E. Wetherell (Gage), *The Tales of a Grandfather* by Sir Walter Scott (Macmillan), *Ten Great Events in History* by James Johonnot (American Book Co.), and *Stories from Barbour's "Bruce"* prepared by John Wood in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

PAGE 237—**Wallace.** Sir William Wallace, the second son of Sir Malcolm Wallace of Ellerslie, was born about 1270. He was brought up by his uncle, who taught him an enthusiastic love of liberty. The slaying of a young Englishman who had insulted him caused him to be proclaimed an outlaw. Later on at Lanark he slew another Englishman who had wantonly insulted him, and for this the governor of Lanark exacted bitter vengeance. His house was burned, and his wife and servants were cruelly slain. This act of the governor set fire to the intense patriotism of Wallace. He determined to free his country from the English yoke and soon had gathered around him a large company of followers. No mercy was given to Englishmen in arms. On one occasion he trapped a band of them at Ayr and, setting fire to the buildings, burned them all. The rebellion had now assumed such proportions that he was joined by a number of the leading nobles, and warfare on a large scale was begun. A strong English force under the Earl of Surrey was sent against him, but at Stirling he met and defeated them with great slaughter. Edward I, when he heard of this disaster, was furious. He hurried back from Flanders and himself took the field. At Falkirk on July 22nd, 1298, the two armies met, and Wallace was signally defeated. He steadily refused, however, to submit, and for some years, with the assistance of a few faithful followers, he held out against all the power of the English. At last he was treacherously betrayed into the hands of Edward by a Scotsman named Sir John Menteith. He was tried at London and sentenced to be hanged as a

traitor. The adventures of Wallace are told in an interesting way in Blind Harry's *The Story of Wallace Wight* edited by John Wood in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). See also Sir Walter Scott's *The Tales of a Grandfather* and Morris's *Historical Tales: English*. Jane Porter's famous story *The Scottish Chiefs* tells the story of Sir William Wallace. Thomas Campbell is the author of a well-known poem entitled "Dirge of Wallace." **Bruce.** See page 193.

PAGE 238—**Lour.** Threaten.

Edward. Edward II of England.

Turn and flee. Jeanie Lang says: "When mass was done, the Bruce rode over the field to see that all was ready. He found all as he wished, and had his army drawn up before him in full battle array. 'All you,' said he, 'who cannot trust yourselves to hold out until we win all, or to die with honor, now is the time for you to leave me. I wish none to stay with me but those who are ready to stand with me to the end, and to take the grace that God will send.' From every one of those Scottish men came a great shout like the voice of one man speaking—'We will win or die.'"

THE OASIS

In 1846 George William Curtis spent some time travelling in the East. This selection in the text is adapted from an incident taken from the sketches that he subsequently wrote describing his various journeyings.

Good companion selections are "An Adventure in a Desert" by Tudor Jenks on page 60 of Book VII of *The Carroll and Brooks Readers* (Appleton) and "A Desert Journey" by A. W. Kinglake on page 213 of *In King's Gardens* (McDougall).

PAGE 241—**Salaams.** Low, respectful bows.

El Harish. A town on the border of the Sahara.

Infidel. In the eyes of Mohammedans all others are infidels and unbelievers.

Muezzin. A Mohammedan priest whose duty it is at certain hours to call the faithful to prayer.

Minaret. Here a tower on a Mohammedan mosque.

PAGE 242—**Homer's sea.** The Mediterranean, the great "middle sea" of the ancients. It was over this sea that the Greeks sailed to and from Troy, and on it Ulysses met with his many adventures. Homer was the great Epic poet of the Greeks, the author of *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*. Nothing is known of the facts of his life. See *Myths of Greece and Rome* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

Helen. The daughter of Tyndarus and Leda, and the most beautiful woman of her time. She had many suitors, and as her father had great difficulty in making up his mind she was allowed her own free choice. She chose Menelaus, king of Sparta, and lived happily with him for some time. But Paris, son of the king of Troy, who paid a visit to Sparta, persuaded her to leave her husband and to fly with him. Menelaus at once took steps to recover his wife, called all her former suitors to his aid, and sailed with a great expedition against Troy. After a siege of ten years the city was captured, and Helen was restored to her husband. After her death she was worshipped by the Spartans, who erected a temple in her honor. In the world after death, she is said to have become the wife of Achilles, the famous hero of the Trojan war. See *Stories of the Golden Age* by Mary Gooch Anderson (Macmillan) and *The Story of the Odyssey* by Alfred J. Church in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

The Argonauts. A band of heroes who sailed across the Mediterranean and through the Black Sea to Colchis, under the leadership of Jason, to bring back to Greece the celebrated Golden Fleece. Their many and varied adventures are fully described in *The Heroes* by Charles Kingsley (Macmillan). Kingsley's narrative is reprinted in *Myths Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset). See also *Favorite Greek Myths* by Lilian S. Hyde (Heath).

Columbus. Columbus was a native of Genoa. See page 144.

Carthage. A celebrated city founded by the Phœnicians on the northern coast of Africa. For many years Carthage was the chief maritime power of the world, but the city was finally destroyed by the Romans. See *Historical Tales: Roman* by Charles Morris (Lippincott) and *Famous Men of Rome* by John H. Haaren and A. B. Poland (American Book Co.).

The sirens. Three sea nymphs "who charmed so much by their melodious voices, that all forgot their employments to listen with more attention, and at last died for want of food." Various accounts are given of their origin, some writers describing them as beautiful maidens, while others hold that they were monsters in form. They lived on an island in the Mediterranean, and were fabled to sing so entrancingly that sailors would jump from passing vessels to reach them, and meet their death on the rocks that lined the shore. When passing their island Ulysses stuffed the ears of his men with wax so they could not hear the voices, and himself, securely tied to the mast, heard the song. The sirens were so disappointed at the trick of Ulysses that they threw themselves into the sea and were drowned. See Church's *The Story of the Odyssey*, H. A. Guerber's *Myths of Greece and Rome*, and *The Age of Fable* by Thomas Bulfinch (Dent).

BOADICEA

The following historical account of Boadicea is abridged from the *Dictionary of National Biography* (Oxford Press). It may be taken as strictly accurate, according to the information available. Boadicea was the wife of Prasutagus, king of the Iceni, a people of the Britons who occupied the district which now forms the counties of Norfolk and Suffolk. The Iceni were a powerful and warlike race, who, however, had come to terms with the Romans as early as the time of Caesar. About the year 50 the harsh policy of the Romans led to a revolt, speedily quelled, and the Iceni were reduced to the status of tributaries to the Romans, Prasutagus, however, being allowed to retain his rank as king. Prasutagus, who was very wealthy, died about the year 60, and, hoping to secure his kingdom and his family from the greed of the Romans, divided his wealth equally between the Roman emperor and his daughters. The Romans, however, claimed the whole property as their own. Boadicea, the widow of Prasutagus, was flogged, his daughters were brutally treated, and other members of his family were enslaved.

Roused to desperation by this treatment, the Iceni, under the leadership of Boadicea, rose in revolt. They were joined by the Trinobanti and soon had a formidable force. Suetonius, the Roman governor, was absent in a distant part of Britain, so that the Iceni swept everything before them. Camulodunum, Londinium, and other places were totally destroyed. No prisoners were taken. Seventy thousand Romans were massacred by the enraged Britons.

But Boadicea's triumph was of short duration. Suetonius soon gathered a force of ten thousand men and, choosing a favorable position, gave battle to the army of the Britons, which numbered about two hundred thousand. Boadicea, accompanied by her daughters, drove in her chariot through the lines of her army, reminding them of the wrongs they had suffered at the hands of the Romans and of the horrible insults to which she and her daughters had been subjected, and inciting them to revenge. The battle was of short duration. The Britons were signally defeated. Eighty thousand of their army were slain, while only four hundred Romans fell. Boadicea, in despair at the crushing nature of her defeat, destroyed her life by poison. This battle finally established the Roman supremacy in Great Britain.

A good account of Boadicea is given in "Boadicea the Brave" on page 29 of *The Brave Days of Old* (McDougall). See also "A Warrior Queen," with a full page illustration of the statue of Boadicea by Thorneycroft, on page 9 of Book III of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

An excellent selection of English patriotic poems is found in *Poems*

of *England: A Selection of English Patriotic Poetry* by H. B. George and Arthur Sidgwick (Macmillan). See also *Poems of the Love of Country* edited by J. E. Wetherell in *Macmillan's Literature Series* (Macmillan).

PAGE 242—Bleeding. She had been brutally flogged by the Romans. **The Druid.** The Druids were prophets as well as priests among the Britons. **All the terrors.** They are so angry that they are speechless and thus prevented from uttering their awful prophecies.

The Gaul. Cowper is here mistaken. It was the Goths who destroyed the Roman power.

PAGE 243—Sounds, etc. The Romans' path to fame shall be through music and poetry, not through the profession of arms.

Armed, etc. The future generations of Britons will have ships of war, armed with guns and propelled by sails. They will be great and victorious on the sea. The Roman galleys were mainly propelled by oars and never, if they could prevent it, went far from the sight of land.

Caesar. Julius Caesar, who made two expeditions to Britain and received the submission of the Britons.

Eagles. The Roman standard. *See page 314.*

They. Thy posterity; the Britons of the future.

PAGE 244—Pregnant with, etc. Filled with fire from Heaven.

Lyre. A stringed instrument in use among the ancient priests and prophets.

Rushed to battle. See Introduction.

Empire, etc. She could safely leave vengeance to future generations.

OLIVER CROMWELL AT HOME

This selection is taken from Chapter XX of *After Worcester: The Story of a Royal Fugitive* by E. Everett-Green. The author says in her preface: "The incidents of the flight of Charles the Second from the field of Worcester, and the events of the six weeks of his subsequent wanderings and final escape, are all authentic. Jane Lane and Juliana Coningsby, the Lane and Wyndham families, all played the parts here related. But, in order to avoid the introduction of a number of minor characters appearing and disappearing in confusing fashion as the king journeyed from place to place, the author has given their parts in the drama to Basil Coningsby and Upton Coghill, and has allotted to them the rewards which the king bestowed upon those who really assisted him at the various crises of his journey." A very interesting historical account of the whole incident is found in "The Escape of King Charles after

Worcester" on page 59 of *A Book of Escapes and Hurried Journeys* by John Buchan (Nelson).

The scene of the story of *After Worcester* is laid in the time of the Civil War between the Roundheads, followers of Oliver Cromwell, and the Royalists, supporters of Charles, afterwards King Charles II. Charles had been crowned king in Scotland and gathering a few Scots around him had crossed the border to claim the throne of England. War-weary and, for the most part, reduced to absolute poverty, the Royalists failed to rally to his support in sufficient numbers, and Charles was defeated at Worcester and forced to flee from the country. The young king, however, had still a few loyal supporters, chief among whom were Upton Coghill, whose father had been killed in the Battle of Naseby, Jane Lane, in whose home Charles sought refuge for a time, and Juliana Coningsby and her brother, Basil, who had been robbed of their home and fortune by a follower of Cromwell. Under the guidance of Upton and Basil, after many thrilling adventures, King Charles reached the border between England and Wales, but all entrances to the latter country were blocked, and he was forced to turn back. He finally made his escape to the coast, and thence to France, by playing first the rôle of servant to Jane Lane, riding double with her when she went to visit her sister at Abbotsleigh, and later that of lover to Juliana Coningsby, with whom he pretended to be eloping in order to escape the wrath of an angry parent. With the news of the King's safe arrival in France came the word of the capture of Upton and Basil, and their imprisonment in London. Juliana and Jane lost no time in attempting to secure the release of their lovers and by rare good fortune were successful in obtaining the interview with Mrs. Cromwell, described in the text. After relating the marriages of Jane and Basil, and Juliana and Upton, the story passes over ten years. On September 3rd, 1658, Cromwell died, the monarchy was restored, and King Charles returned to England, where he liberally rewarded the faithful friends who had helped him in his need. The character of Charles is somewhat idealized in the story.

Oliver Cromwell was born at Huntingdon, England, on April 25th, 1599. In 1616 he entered Cambridge, where he remained for over a year until the death of his father. For a time he studied law in London. In 1620 he married Elizabeth Bourchier and settled down on his hereditary estate at Huntingdon. In 1628 he represented his borough in the Parliament that passed the Petition of Right. In 1637, in company with his cousin John Hampden, he was preparing to embark for America, when the ship in which they were to sail was stopped by order-in-council. They were, therefore, compelled to remain in England. In 1640 and succeeding years he represented Cambridge in Parliament. After the

break between the king and the Parliament, Cromwell entered the army with the rank of captain of cavalry and distinguished himself by his strict discipline, his military skill, and his dauntless courage. In 1644 he commanded the left wing at the battle of Marston Moor, the victory being won chiefly through the irresistible charge of his Ironsides, as his cavalry were called. In the next year he commanded the right wing at the decisive battle of Naseby. He was now recognized as the leader of the Independents, who controlled the army. In 1648 he won the battle of Preston, inflicting a severe defeat on the Royalists. He was a member of the court which tried King Charles and, as such, he signed the warrant for his execution. In 1650 he defeated the Scots at Dunbar and in the next year at Worcester he again routed the royal forces. In 1654 he was formally proclaimed Protector of the Commonwealth. Two years later he refused the crown. He died of fever on September 3rd, 1658, the anniversary of his two great victories of Dunbar and Worcester. See *The Story of Cromwell* by H. E. Marshall in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack).

PAGE 244—A very old lady. Cromwell's mother was the daughter of William Steward, who was a tenant-farmer of the abbey of Ely. They were a very ancient family of Norfolk.

Placid-faced matron. Cromwell's wife, Elizabeth, was the daughter of Sir James Bouchier, a member of a family of London merchants. Sir James was a large land owner in Essex. Mrs. Cromwell survived her husband for seven years.

Young maidens. Cromwell's daughters were named Bridget, Elizabeth, Mary, and Frances. Frances married Robert Rich, and, after his death, Sir John Russell.

PAGE 245—Trow. Believe.

PAGE 246—Charles Stuart. Afterwards Charles II, the son of Charles I, who had been executed by the Parliament.

Worcester. On January 1st, 1651, Charles had been crowned king of Scotland. Cromwell took the field against him in June. Charles was forced by the skill of his great opponent to make a dash for England. Cromwell overtook him at Worcester on September 3rd and won a decisive victory. Over three thousand of the Scots were slain and seven thousand taken prisoners. The Parliamentary loss was about two hundred. A brilliant description of the battle is given on page 88 of Part II of *Fields of Fame in England and Scotland* by J. E. Wetherell (Gage).

Shoreham. A seaport of Sussex.

Lord Wilmot. Henry Wilmot, first Earl of Rochester (1612-1658), was a distinguished general in the royal army. He took part in the battle of

Worcester, accompanied his royal master in his wanderings, and escaped with him to France. After the Restoration he was high in the confidence of the king.

Ingle. The nook by the fireplace.

Second sin. The first was his consent to the execution of Charles I.

PAGE 247—Blessed are the merciful. See *Matthew v, 7*.

Arras. Curtain.

Westminster. The houses of Parliament were at Westminster.

The books. The books of judgment.

PAGE 248—Vengeance is mine, etc. See *Romans xii, 19*.

Newgate. A famous London prison.

PAGE 251.—Saw. A moral maxim.

Wench. Girl.

THE TORCH OF LIFE

The title of this poem in *Admirals All*, in which it was first published in 1897, is *Vitāi Lampada*. The title here used is a literal translation of the original. The ideas seem to have been borrowed from the Greek *Lampadedromia*, or torch-race. Harry Thurston Peck says: "The race was usually run on foot, but sometimes on horses. The torches were of two kinds—one a sort of candlestick, and the other one of a more conventional kind. There were two different methods of conducting the race. The first or earlier system required lines of runners posted at intervals, the first in each line who receives the torch, or takes it from the altar, running at his best speed and handing it to the second in his own line, and the second to the third, until the last in the line is reached, who runs with it up to the appointed spot. Of course, if any torch went out the line to which it belonged was out of the race. The victory fell to the line of runners whose torch first reached the goal alight. Each person in the line shared the victory."

Sir Henry Newbolt has written a large number of inspiring ballads. In this grade the pupils may well read "Drake's Drum," "Gillespie," "Serangapatam," "A Ballad of John Nicholson," "The Guides at Cabul," "The Gay Gordons," and "He Fell among Thieves." All of these are to be found in *Collected Poems, 1897-1907* by Sir Henry Newbolt, published by Thomas Nelson & Sons.

PAGE 252—Breathless hush. All are holding their breaths in suspense, as the match is closely contested and time is nearly up.

Close. The enclosed space in which the game is being played.

Bumping pitch. Making hard hitting very difficult, and time will soon be called.

Blinding light. The batter is facing the glare of the setting sun.

Ribboned coat. Not for the sake of the cricket blazer won for his proficiency in the game.

Play up! Play for the honor of the school and on account of the duty he owes to his comrades.

Wreck of a square. The regiment has been formed into a square to resist attack, but the enemy has broken the close-formed ranks and is now fighting within the square.

Gatling. A rapid-firing machine-gun.

Jammed. Has become unworkable.

Colonel dead. The regiment has no commanding officer from whom to take orders.

River of death. Indicates the fearful slaughter.

Honor a name! Why fight for England? It is far away! Honor is nothing more than a name! Life is more precious!

Schoolboy. Not a mere boy from school, but one who has had his training in the Public Schools of England. He is now putting into practice, in the stern school of war, the lessons he has learned on the playing-ground of his school at home. He is doing his best for the sake of the honor of his regiment and from the strong sense of the duty he owes to his country.

The word. The last line of each stanza.

PAGE 253—**Play the game.** The two illustrations in the text well illustrate the thought of the poem. Everything we learn at school is but a preparation for life and the more thoroughly we learn the lesson of "honor and duty" the better it will be for us and for the world.

MR. WINKLE ON SKATES

This selection, slightly abridged from the original, is taken from Chapter II, Part II of *The Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club*, first published in complete form in 1837. Mr. Pickwick, his three friends and his servant Sam Weller, Mr. Benjamin Allen and his sister Arabella, and Mr. Bob Sawyer were spending Christmas with Mr. Wardle at Manor Farm. The party attended the parish church on Christmas morning, and after luncheon proceeded to enjoy themselves on the ice. The incident related in the text is complete in itself.

The Pickwick Papers, as the book is generally called, is a series of sketches relating to Mr. Pickwick and the members of the Pickwick Club. It is an almost perfect specimen of the strictly English quality

of fun, Richard Grant White says: "Humor was Mr. Dickens's great distinctive trait; and for humor, pure and simple, he produced in all his life nothing quite equal to *Pickwick*—nothing so sustained, so varied, so unrestrained." See *A Dickens Dictionary* by Gilbert A. Pierce (Houghton).

In commenting on this selection the editor of *Notes on The Ontario Readers* says: "Humor consists essentially in bringing into strong light some oddity or incongruity; in order to do this it employs caricature. It must, at the same time, be entirely free from malice or ill-nature. It looks upon the weaknesses it discloses with indulgence. While we laugh at Mr. Winkle's distress, we do not want to see him too severely punished, for his little weakness is not his alone. To illustrate, there is a very great incongruity between Mr. Winkle's profession and his performance, between the art as described by the young ladies and as illustrated by him, between his ostensible and his real motive for detaining Sam, between his method of putting on skates and the more conventional one, between the 'mystic evolutions' and the name assigned to them, etc., etc. The writer employs caricature in his representation of the pretty little emphatic commonplaces of the young ladies, in the comparison of Mr. Snodgrass to a Hindoo, in the exhibition of the medical student's overmastering desire to bleed somebody, in the exaggerated gravity of the language 'raised him to his feet' instead of 'lifted him up', 'bore reference to a demonstration', and perhaps in the exaggerated Cockney dialect of Mr. Weller. There is, in short, scarcely a single line or phrase in the whole selection not replete with humor, and it is to win some appreciation of this that the teacher must direct his energy. Expressive reading, the teacher's manner, a suggestive word or hint dropped in the right place can do much; formed rules, long explanations, can do nothing at all. It is perhaps futile to call the attention of any one not familiar with the whole work to the rich Pickwickianism of Mr. Pickwick's concluding phrase: 'I will speak plainer, if you wish it. An impostor, sir.'"

PAGE 253—The fat boy. Mr. Wardle's servant.

THE SHIPS OF ST. JOHN

Bliss Carman was born and grew up in New Brunswick, and when the reflective mood is upon him his thoughts turn back to his native province.

PAGE 258—Gray St. John. "The dun city rears its gray mass high on the clustered knobs of rock which form the peninsula on which the main part of St. John is built."

Shingly. Abounding with gravel.

Evening star. The name applied to the planet Venus when it is visible in the west just after sunset. J. N. Lockyer in *Elementary Astronomy*, says: "A few days after it ceases to be visible in the morning it appears after sunset; it was then styled Hesperus or Vesper by the ancients, and is distinguished by us as the *Evening Star*." See page 319.

PAGE 259—**Tides of Fundy** See page 266.

Headland. Partridge Island, on the west, and Red Head, on the mainland to the east, are the outposts at the approach to St. John by sea.

Loyalists. St. John is known as "The Loyalist City." When the thirteen colonies in America rose in rebellion in 1775, many of the colonists remained loyal to Great Britain and fought beside the British regulars for a united empire. When peace was declared and the independence of the colonies was acknowledged, all Loyalists who had borne arms were proclaimed traitors, and many of them were reduced to beggary. Discouraged but still strong in loyalty, large numbers of them migrated to the north to make new homes for themselves under the British flag. In 1783 many settlements were made on the northern shores of the Bay of Fundy. The largest was at the mouth of the St. John River and was named Parrtown after Governor Parr. The following year when the province of New Brunswick was created, Parrtown was made the capital, and its name was changed to St. John. In the centre of Market Square is a rough, natural boulder, some six feet high, set there by the Dominion Government to mark the historic site where the first contingent of Loyalists landed in 1783 and knelt to give thanks for their safe arrival in British territory. The city reflects the grim, determined, steadfast character of its founders.

Wreath of maple. Mr. F. Edward Hulme, in *The Flags of the World* (Frederick Warne & Co.) says: "Governors of Her Majesty's Dominions in foreign parts, and governors of all ranks and denominations administering the governments of British Colonies and Dependencies shall—as set forth in 'Queen's Regulations'—'fly the Union Jack with the arms or badge of the Colony emblazoned in the centre thereof.' The Governor-General of Canada has in the centre of his flag the arms of the Dominion, while the Lieutenant-Governors of Quebec, Ontario, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Manitoba, British Columbia, and Prince Edward Island have in the centre of their flags the arms of their province alone. These arms in each case are placed on a shield within a white circle, and surrounded by a wreath. The Admiralty requirements are that the Colonial badge on the governor's flag should be placed within a 'green garland,' and this is understood to be of laurel; but in 1870 Canada received the Imperial sanction to substitute the leaves of the maple."

Port of heroes. Samuel de Champlain and the Sieur de Monts were the first to explore the coast of the Bay of Fundy and to make an attempt at settlement early in the 17th century. Since their day many a hero, his name perhaps not so well known but his actions none the less heroic, has passed through the port of St. John.

PAGE 260—Light house. The light house is situated on Partridge Island at the mouth of the harbor.

Nun-buoy. A buoy shaped like two cones joined at their bases.

THE BARREN LANDS

This selection is taken from Chapter XI of *Greater Canada: The Past, Present, and Future of the Canadian North-West* by E. B. Osborn, published by Chatto and Windus, London. *Notes on the Ontario Readers* says: "The first paragraph prepares the readers to conceive the general appearance of the Barren Lands, so different in their general aspect from the landscape with which he is familiar. The reader is led northward from the skirts of the forest regions through wastes of decrepit scrub trees to a region where branchless stems, scarcely to be identified as trees at all, give place to that vast tract where even these disappear beneath the gray carpet of mosses and lichens, the characteristic vegetation of the Barren Grounds. The second paragraph deals with the winter silences of the Barren Grounds. The first sentence of the paragraph is misleading. One expects that the writer is about to describe the appearance of the region. As in the first paragraph he leads gradually from the country of forests to the Barrens. In the next three paragraphs the contrast with the winter silence is skilfully employed. The last paragraph deals with the animal life in the Barren Grounds; and the matter is introduced as in the first two paragraphs." See *Through the Sub-Arctics of Canada* by J. B. Tyrrell (Ryerson Press).

PAGE 260—Except by courtesy. It is more than is due them to call them forests at all.

Black and white spruce. The black spruce is described on page 132 and the white spruce on page 130 of *Forests and Trees* by B. J. Hales (Macmillan). The white spruce at its best reaches frequently a height of one hundred feet, with a base diameter of three feet.

Canadian larch. The tamarack. An excellent description of the tamarack is given on page 144 of B. J. Hales' *Forests and Trees*.

Willow. See pages 157-160 of B. J. Hales' *Forests and Trees*.

Alder. "Represented here by dense growths along the rivers and in swamps

in company with scrub birch." See page 172 of B. J. Hales' *Forests and Trees*. See also page 121.

PAGE 261—**Sordidness.** Miserable appearance.

Lichens. A fungus usually of a greenish-gray or yellowish tint which grows on rocks or tree-trunks.

Blighted buds. Undeveloped branches.

Crows. The crows are fully described with colored illustrations on pages 155-156 of *Birds of Eastern Canada* by P. A. Taverner (Department of Mines, Ottawa). See also *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Musson).

Jack-rabbit. The northern varying hare, so-called, because "its brown summer coat when shed as usual on the approach of winter is replaced by one which is white." See page 249 of *Through the Mackenzie Basin* by Charles Mair (Ryerson Press).

Coyotes. See page 337.

The snow-owl. The snowy owl is a large white owl, with short, sharp, dark-brown barring practically all over and without perceptible ear-tufts. Adult birds which have reached maturity may be almost perfectly white. The snowy owl lives in the Arctic regions of North America, migrating south in winter to the latitude of the Great Lakes across the continent. See page 134 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*.

Shifting Northern lights. The Aurora Borealis. The lights are in constant motion, waving or shooting along the sky.

PAGE 262—**Instinct.** See "To a Waterfowl" by William Cullen Bryant.

Sub-Arctic. Almost within the Arctic regions.

Snow-geese. The greater snow goose is fully described on pages 281-283 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*. The bird is sometimes known as the wavey or white brant. Its breeding ground is in the Barren Lands. Its flesh is said to be much superior as food to that of the Canada goose.

Eider-duck. The American eider duck is described on pages 324-329 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*. Its breeding ground is in the far north. The bird lines its nest with its own down. See also page 73 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*.

Great northern black-and-red-throated divers. The black-throated and the red-throated loons. Both these birds are fully described, with a colored illustration of the former, on pages 44-45 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. See also pages 391-394 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*. A capital descriptive article on the great northern diver by S. T. Wood is found on page 192 of Book IV of *The Ontario Readers*.

Pin-tail ducks. A good description of the pin-tail duck is given on page 307 of Charles Mair's *Through the Mackenzie Basin*.

Long-tail ducks. The long-tailed duck, or old squaw, is fully described on page 72 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. See also page 355 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*.

Eagles. See page 225.

Hawks. See page 223.

Ptarmigan. "The ptarmigan are more northern grouse and are notable for their remarkable seasonable change in plumage. In winter they are pure white; in summer barred with various shades of red, brown, and ochre, with the reddish usually prevailing. Their feet are feathered to the ends of the toes and they perform definite and long migrations." See pages 109-110 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada* and pages 43-48 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*.

Snow-bunting. The snow-bunting is fully described, with a colored illustration of the bird in its winter plumage on page 169 of P. A. Taverner's *Birds of Eastern Canada*. See also page 300 of Part II of Thomas Nuttall's *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States*.

Lengthening summer's day. In midsummer the sun is scarcely below the horizon at midnight.

Caribou. An excellent description of the Barren Grounds caribou is given on pages 321-323 of *The Life of Animals: Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan). Tyrrell says: "Probably no animal is so easily approached as are these Barren Grounds caribou in summer time, and enormous numbers are slain every year, so many, indeed, that it would seem that the race must become extinct in a comparatively brief period. In their dispositions they are not unlike sheep in some particulars, especially in following a leader; and sometimes a herd will run the gauntlet of a line of hunters simply because one stupid animal has gone that way and the rest are determined to follow the lead set them. So many caribou have been slaughtered on the barrens and tundras of the Arctic regions, both east and west of the mountains, that in certain districts their numbers have been greatly reduced, and in some the animals have disappeared altogether." The caribou migrate in herds literally tens of thousands in numbers. See J. B. Tyrrell's *Through the Sub-Arctics of Canada*.

Buffalo-land. See page 283.

PAGE 263—**Moose-land.** The moose is described with a good illustration on pages 216-219 of Ernest Ingersoll's *The Life of Animals: Mammals*. See also "The Moose" on page 110 of *The Story Natural History* by Ethel Talbot (Nelson). An excellent colored illustration accompanies the text.

Rebellion of 1885. The Saskatchewan Rebellion of 1885 under Louis Riel. See *History of Canada* by I. Gammell (Gage).

Tundra. Wastes, barrens.

Eskimos. The most northerly native inhabitants of Canada. See page 11 of *The New Dominion Public School Geography* (Gage).

Mosquito-haunted. The millions of mosquitoes are the torment of travellers through the Barren Grounds during the summer months.

Musk-ox. The musk-ox is described with two excellent illustrations on pages 265-268 of Ernest Ingersoll's *The Life of Animals: The Mammals*. Hornaday says: "In it one sees an oblong mass of very long and wavy brown hair, four and a half feet high by six and a half feet long, supported on very short and post-like legs, that are half hidden by the sweeping pilage of the body. The three inch tail is so very small and short that it is quite invisible. There is a blunt and hairy muzzle, round and shining eyes, but the ears are almost invisible. The whole top of the head is covered by a pair of horns enormously flattened at the base and meeting each other in the centre line of the body. From the meeting point they sweep downward over the edge of the cranium, close to the cheeks, but finally recurve upward before coming to a point. The outer hair is a foot or more in length and often touches the snow when the animal walks. The name is due to a musky odor, useful in enabling the animals to find one another and keep together during the winter darkness and storms of their terrible home, which is perceptible to human nostrils at a considerable distance, but does not taint, if the flesh of a carcass is quickly and properly disemboweled; and the meat is excellent." See pages 170-176 of Charles Mair's *Through the Mackenzie Basin*.

Half sheep, half ox. This is purely imaginary. The musk-ox is in no sense a connecting link between the ox and the sheep. It is a distinct species of mammal.

Antelope. The antelopes are fully described with colored illustrations in the section beginning on page 268 of Ernest Ingersoll's *The Life of Animals: The Mammals*.

A SCENE FROM "WILLIAM TELL"

This selection is taken from *William Tell* by James Sheridan Knowles published in 1825.

In the latter part of the 14th century the people of the three forest cantons of Switzerland—Unterwalden, Schwyz, and Uri—were greatly oppressed by Albert, the emperor of Austria, who placed over them stewards, or lieutenant-governors, with strict injunctions to hold them

severely in check. Perhaps the most tyrannical of these stewards was Gessler, who was intensely hated by the people. So oppressive did his rule become that leading men of the three cantons met in secret, and swore to free their country from the tyrant. At the very moment that they were completing their arrangements for the revolt, the incident related in the text took place. Tell was a hunter of the canton of Uri and the son-in-law of one of the leaders of the rebellion. The act of the governor and Tell's swift vengeance set the cantons in a blaze. The canton of Zurich joined the alliance. A war for freedom followed which lasted many years, but ended finally in victory for the Swiss. The most celebrated battle during the long struggle was fought at Morgarten. Mrs. Heman's spirited poem "Song of the Battle of Morgarten" may be read in this connection. A full account of the Swiss struggle for independence is given in the chapter entitled "Defence of Freedom in Alpine Passes" in *Ten Great Events in History* by James Johonnot (American Book Co.) and in *Switzerland* by John Finnemore in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black).

The following account taken from *Switzerland* by Lina Hug and Richard Stead in *Story of the Nations* series (Unwin) gives the generally accepted version of the Tell story: "In the meantime a very remarkable event had happened at the town of Altorf in Uri. Gessler had placed a hat on a pole in the market-place, with strict orders that passers-by should do it reverence, for he wished to test their obedience. William Tell scorned this piece of overbearing tyranny, and proudly marched past without making obeisance to the hat. He was seized, and Gessler, riding up, demanded why he had disobeyed the order. 'From thoughtlessness,' he replied, 'for if I were witty my name were not Tell.' [Tell was called "der Thall," or the slow-witted man.] The governor, in a fury, ordered Tell to shoot an apple from the head of his son, for Gessler knew Tell to be a most skilful archer, and, moreover, to have fine children. Tell's entreaties that some other form of punishment should be substituted for this were of no avail. Pierced to the heart, the archer took two arrows, and, placing one in his quiver, took aim with the other, and cleft the apple. Foiled in his design, Gessler inquired the meaning of the second arrow. Tell hesitated, but, on being assured that his life would be spared, instantly replied, 'Had I injured my child, this second shaft should not have missed thy heart.' 'Good!' exclaimed the enraged governor, 'I have promised thee thy life, but I will throw thee into a dungeon where neither sun nor moon shall shine on thee.' Tell was chained, and placed in a barge, his bow and arrows being put at his back. As they rowed towards Axenstein, suddenly there arose a fearful storm, and the crew, fearing they would be lost, suggested that Tell, an expert

boatman, could save them. Gessler had him unbound, and he steered towards Axenberg, where there was a natural landing-stage formed by a flat rock—*Tellenplatte*. Seizing his bow and arrows, he flung the boat against the rock, and leapt ashore, leaving its occupants to their fate. Woe betide him, however, should the governor escape death on the lake! Tell hurried on to Schwyz, and thence to the 'hollow way' near Kusnach, through which Gessler must come if he returned to his castle. Hiding in the thicket lining the road, Tell waited, and presently, seeing the tyrant riding past, took aim, and shot him through the heart. Gessler's last words were, "This is Tell's shaft."

In connection with the exploits of William Tell it is difficult to separate truth from fiction. Indeed it is held by many reputable historians that the whole series of incidents is a myth. But, whether the story is true or false, Tell will continue to be regarded as the great national hero of Switzerland, and a patriot whose example should ever be held up to succeeding generations. See *Curious Myths* by S. Baring-Gould (Chatto).

The story of Tell's life and deeds is given in *Stories of William Tell and His Friends* by H. E. Marshall in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), in *The Story of William Tell* by J. B. Marshall in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan), and in *Historical Tales: German* by Charles Morris (Lippincott). See also *Heroic Legends* by Agnes Crozier Herbertson (Blackie) and *Heroes Every Child Should Know* edited by Hamilton Wright Mabie (Grosset).

Friedrich von Schiller, the German dramatist, is the author of *William Tell*. It is a very strong drama and has been many times translated into English. The scene which deals with the incident of the trial of Tell's skill is to be found on page 373 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn). It would be well to read this selection in class; a very interesting comparison may be made between the treatments of the same incident by Schiller and Knowles. See also *Dramatic Reader for Grammar Grades* by Marietta Knight (American Book Co.) for an abridgment of Knowles' drama.

PAGE 265—Gust. Taste, relish.

PAGE 269—The common cause. The cause for which the confederates were banded together, the freeing of the cantons from the Austrian yoke.

DOMINIQUE

This poem is taken from *The Voyageur and Other Poems*, published by G. P. Putnam's Sons. The volume is made up of poems written for the most part in the dialect of the French-Canadian *habitant*. The dialect

is not at all difficult to read, provided it is pronounced exactly as it is spelled. In Drummond's three volumes—*The Habitant*, *Johnnie Courteau*, and *The Voyageur*—there are many poems quite suitable for pupils in this grade. Among others "Leetle Bateese" and "Johnnie Courteau" may be mentioned. These two poems are also to be found on pages 27 and 28 of *The Canadian Poetry Book* chosen by D. J. Dickie in *The Temple Poetry Books* (Dent). A little practice will enable the pupils to read the poems without any difficulty. The effort to read them will be well repaid.

THE RESCUE

This selection is taken from Chapter XLII entitled "The Great Winter" of *Lorna Doone: A Romance of Exmoor*, published in 1869. A synopsis of the novel is given on page 156.

Good companion selections are "Snowed In" by Paul Du Chaillu on page 180 of Book VII of *The Howe Readers* (Scribner) and "Caught in a Blizzard" on page 334 of Book IV of *The Manitoba Readers* (Nelson).

PAGE 275—**Snowed most wonderfully.** The description of the snow-storm in the novel is matchless of its kind.

Master Stickle. An officer of the Court of King's Bench and a great friend of John Ridd.

John Fry. An old servant of the Ridd family.

PAGE 276—**Chine.** The edge or rim.

PAGE 278—**Hoggets.** Sheep that have passed their first year.

Lawyer's wig. When pleading before the English courts barristers are obliged to wear wigs.

THE ROMANCE OF MARQUIS WHEAT

This selection was written by Dr. O. J. Stevenson, Professor of English Literature in the Ontario Agricultural College, Guelph, originally for *The Ontario Readers* and appears in Book IV of that series. It is reproduced, with some slight changes, in *The Canadian Readers* through the courtesy of the Minister of Education for Ontario. Further and very interesting information regarding Marquis wheat is found in *Essays on Wheat* by Professor A. R. H. Buller, published by The Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited, Toronto.

PAGE 279—**Peterborough.** In the province of Ontario.

Danzig. On the left bank or the western bank of the Vistula River four miles from the Gulf of Danzig, an inlet of the Baltic Sea. It was formerly

the capital of West Prussia, but since the Great War it is, together with several hundred miles of surrounding territory, a free city. Before the War it was one of the great wheat-exporting parts of the world, but latterly its trade in grain, owing to the disorganization of Russia and Poland, has very much fallen off.

PAGE 280—Spring wheat. Wheat which may be planted in the spring and is ready for the harvest early in the fall.

Rusted. One of the great dangers to which a wheat crop is subject.

Galicia. The province lies to the north of the Carpathian Mountains. It is now included in the republic of Poland.

PAGE 281—As good as Red Fife. As good for milling purposes.

PAGE 282—Dr. William Saunders. William Saunders was born in Devonshire, England, on June 16th, 1836, and came to Canada with his parents at the age of twelve years. He became interested in industrial chemistry, and in 1868 he purchased a farm for the purpose of making scientific experiments in agriculture. Twenty years later he was appointed director of the Experimental Farms Branch of the Department of Agriculture at Ottawa. He continued to occupy this position until he retired in 1911. In 1882 he became a charter member of the Royal Society of Canada, and in 1906 he became its president. He died at London, Ontario, on September 13th, 1914. During his life, he originated many promising varieties of fruits and grains, and wrote many valuable scientific papers and reports.

PAGE 283—Dr. Charles Saunders. Charles Edward Saunders carried on the work of his father as Dominion Cerealist at the Central Experimental Farm, Ottawa.

PAGE 284—Verily, etc. See *John xii, 24.*

TO A SPARROW

The bird referred to in the poem is the house sparrow, or English Sparrow. P. A. Taverner in *Birds of Western Canada* (King's Printer, Ottawa) describes it as follows: "Male: striped with chestnut and black on back; crown and broad bar from eyes to shoulders, slate; cheeks and below, white, with extensive black throat and breast patch. Female: general dull olive or dirty white below; back streaked with olive and brown; a white wing bar."

Taverner says: "The bird is not native to America, but it is one of our most undesirable importations from Europe. In spite of its obvious seed-eating habits and structure, it was originally introduced as a caterpillar destroyer. It does, of course, like nearly all birds, sometimes eat caterpillars, but does not approximate in this direction the capacity of

the birds it has displaced. Being a bird of cities and barnyards, most of its activities are in localities where there is plenty of food of non-insectivorous character, garbage, waste grain, etc. In the autumn, it makes excursions into the country and visits fields in large flocks, mostly after harvest when waste grain is abundant, but occasionally before, and then causes considerable loss. Its food habits thus are harmful or not according to circumstances, and perhaps the balance lies well in its favor. The principal other objections to the House Sparrow are two in number. It drives more useful species away, and it is very dirty about buildings.

"The House Sparrows drive other birds away by three methods: monopolizing the food supply; occupying their nesting places; and by pugnacious and bulldozing habits. During the nesting season, while the young are being fed, they come into direct competition with other species depending for the support of their young on the same insect forms. The House Sparrows are with us all through the winter, showing no tendency to migrate, hence they are on the ground in the early spring, and when our native summer residents, which are with only one or two exceptions more or less migratory, arrive, they find the most attractive nesting sites already occupied. They are quarrelsome, also, and though, when once established, most native species are quite able to hold their own against aggressors, they do not like the constant turmoil in which they must engage when in the vicinity of the House Sparrow.

"To-day one of the important problems in architectural offices is to design satisfactory detail that will not harbor sparrows, whose dirt disfigures the most careful design and disintegrates the material of which the building is composed.

"Without a doubt the introduction of the House Sparrow into America was a mistake. It was known in its original home as an undesirable species and unfitted for the work it was brought over to perform. In this country, removed from the natural checks that kept it under control, it has multiplied beyond all reason, and though its objectionable features have increased, its commendable ones have not. However, the House Sparrow is here to stay."

Thomas Nuttall in *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* gives some interesting information in regard to the introduction of the House Sparrow into America. The first batch was brought over in 1851 and liberated in Brooklyn, New York. This first batch did not thrive, so about a hundred others were brought over during 1852 and 1853. In 1854 Colonel Rhodes of Quebec brought a number from England and liberated some in Portland, Maine, the remainder being taken to Quebec. During the following ten years a few hundred were brought from Europe and scattered between Portland and New York. About 1869, a

thousand or so were taken to Philadelphia, and several cities in the interior of the United States received each a few pairs. "From these imported birds have sprung the hosts of 'ruffians in feathers' that have taken possession of every town and village in the country."

It should be noted that the poet ignores entirely what is objectionable in the sparrow and draws attention simply to its cheerfulness, its industry, and its total disregard of unpleasant surroundings, and on these characteristics he builds the lesson of the poem.

John Peter Sjolander was born at Hudiksvall, Sweden, on March 25th, 1851. He received only a public school education, but was tutored privately and read widely at home. In 1871 he emigrated to the United States and took up farming near Cedar Bayou, Texas. He has contributed verse, stories, and articles on agricultural subjects to various publications in Europe and the United States.

"CANADIANS—CANADIANS—THAT'S ALL!"

This selection is made up of extracts taken from Chapter XXIII of *Private Peat* by Harold R. Peat, published by The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Indianapolis. The complete chapter should, if possible, be read to the class. The whole book is well worth having in the school library.

The following brief account of the Second Battle of Ypres, as it is generally called, is taken from *How the Fight Was Won: A General Sketch of the Great War* by D. E. Hamilton (Department of Education, Toronto): "On March 10th, 1915, Sir John French attempted an offensive against the Aubers Ridge, which dominates the important city of Lille. The new British levies showed splendid courage, managed to advance a mile or two on a narrow front, and took the village of Neuve Chappelle. In this operation, so meagre in its results, they suffered over 13,000 casualties, an indication of how costly an attack upon a well-constructed trench system must be unless the attacking force has a tremendous preponderance in artillery, which at that time the British did not possess. A smaller engagement was fought at St. Eloi on March 15th, in which the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry especially distinguished themselves.

"The British army was soon forced to relinquish the offensive. On April 22nd heavy German attacks were made on the Ypres salient, just at the junction of the French and British armies. Two brigades of the Canadians were holding the extreme left of the British line at the point of the salient. Early in the morning they saw a curious bank of greenish vapor swirling down upon them from the German lines. For the first time poison gas was used in battle. The French Colonial troops upon their

left reeled under that deadly wave, then broke and fled, leaving a breach in the line four miles wide. The Canadians held their ground and formed a new alignment to face the Germans who rushed to the attack in the wake of the gas. For a week the Canadians fought against overwhelming odds. They were gased again on April 24th, but in spite of that held their position. Five days later they were relieved, after holding at bay for seven days four picked German divisions. It was their first great achievement, the beginning of that glorious series of exploits which won for the Canadian Corps a reputation second to none in the Allied armies. After the first week the fighting at Ypres ebbed away in a series of minor engagements, and ended on May 13th with the British line still unbroken." See also Chapters III and IV of *The British Campaign in France and Flanders: 1915* by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (Hodder).

It would be well for the teacher in this connection to impress upon the pupils the part played by Canada in the Great War and the lessons of the war for Canadians. *A Book of Canadian Prose and Verse* compiled and edited by Edmund Kemper Broadus and Eleanor Hammond Broadus (Macmillan) affords excellent material for reading to the class. Two selections from this book are of interest: "Canada in the Great War" by Sir Wilfred Laurier and "Lessons of the War" by Sir Robert Borden.

An excellent poem to read to the pupils in this connection, although it refers to the British army as a whole, is *The Living Line: March, 1918* by Harold Begbie:

"As long as faith and freedom last,
And earth goes round the sun,
This stands—The British line held fast
And so the fight was won.

"The greatest fight that ever yet
Brought all the world to dearth;
A fight of two great nations set
To battle for the earth.

"And one was there with blood aflame
To make the earth his tool;
And one was there in freedom's name
That mercy still should rule.

"It was a line, a living line
Of Britain's gallant youth
That fought the Prussian one to nine
And saved the world for truth.

“That bleeding line, that falling fence,
That stubborn ebbing wave,
That string of suffering human sense,
Shuddered, but never gave.

“A living line of human flesh,
It quivered like a brain;
Swarm after swarm came on afresh
And crashed, but crashed in vain.

“Outnumbered by the mightiest foe
That ever sought to put
The world in chains, they met the blow
And fought him foot by foot.

“They fought his masses, falling back,
They poured their blood like wine.
And never once the vast attack
Smashed through that living line.

“It held, it held, while all the world
Looked on with strangled breath;
It held; again, again it hurl'd
Man's memory to death.

“Bleeding and sleepless, dazed and spent,
And bending like a bow,
Backward the lads of Britain went,
Their faces to the blow.

“And day went by, and night came in,
And when the moon was gone
Murder burst out with fiercer din,
And still the fight went on.

“Day after day, night after night,
Outnumbered nine to one,
In agony that none may write
Those young men held the Hun.

“And this is their abiding praise
No future shall undo:
Not once in all those staggering days
The avalanche broke thro'.

“Retreat, retreat, yea, still retreat,
 But fighting one to nine,
 Just knowing there was no defeat
 If they but held the line.

“Ah, never yet did men more true
 Or souls more finely wrought
 From Crecy down to Waterloo
 Fight as these young men fought;

“On whose great hearts the fate of all
 Mankind was poised that hour
 Which saw the Prussian War God fall
 And Christ restored to pow’r.

“The world shall tell how they stood fast,
 And how the fight was won,
 As long as faith and freedom last
 And earth goes round the sun.”

Perhaps, as Canadians, we are somewhat apt to forget that other parts of the British Empire also took part in the Great War, and distinguished themselves as brilliantly as did our own Canadian troops. The following poem, entitled *Australians to the Front*, by John Sandes, published in *Poems of the Great War* selected by J. W. Cunliffe (Macmillan), will illustrate the spirit which animated the Australian troops. The sub-title is “Captain Cook hears the Drums.” Of course, Cook, as the discoverer of Australia, is honored in the Commonwealth, and his statue adorns many of the public parks and gardens. This explains the reference in the third stanza.

“From the Scheldt to the Niemen,
 Hark, the music of the drums!
 Not unthrilled the souls of freemen
 When that instant message comes.
 Rolling east the wild fantasia
 Stirs the Orient blood to flame;
 And the drums call Austral-asia
 And she answers to her name.

“Far away from hosts in battle,
 Yet in time with marching feet.
 Here and now the war-drums rattle
 In the sunbright city street.

Horse and foot in martial manner,
 Swift commands, and glances high,
 Naked steel and silken banner;
 Thus the ranks go proudly by.

“But within the gardens spacious,
 Not a stone’s throw from the crowd
 One who fronts the landscape gracious
 Listens to the war-drums loud.
 Beats the eager drummer harder,
 And methinks the bronze can hear,
 In those eyes a flash of ardor!
 On that cheek a noble tear!

“Dauntless Captain, did’st thou ever,
 With thy sailor-eyes of gray
 Searching out from thy endeavor
 That sequestered flower-starred bay,
 Dream that some day those who love thee
 Here would stake their all of worth,
 For the flag that waved above thee
 And the land that gave thee birth?

“And the dauntless Captain listens:
 Ah, if only he could speak!
 But a vagrant rain drop glistens
 On that scorched and blistered cheek,
 And the faith that does not falter
 Still may hear his whisper low:
 ‘*Son, this new land doth not alter
 Britain’s breed of long ago.*’ ”

Another poem, equally as applicable to those of our country as to those of Britain may also be read to the pupils. It was written by Laurence Binyon and is entitled “For the Fallen.”

“With proud thanksgiving, as a mother for her children,
 England mourns for her dead across the sea.
 Flesh of her flesh they were, spirit of her spirit,
 Fallen in the cause of the free.

“Solemn the drums thrill: Death august and royal
Sings sorrow up into immortal spheres.
There is music in the midst of desolation
And a glory that shines upon our tears.

“They went with songs to the battle, they were young,
Straight of limb, true of eye, steady and aglow.
They were stanch to the end against odds uncounted,
They fell with their faces to the foe.

“They shall grow not old, as we that are left grow old:
Age shall not weary them, nor the years condemn.
At the going down of the sun and in the morning
We will remember them.

“They mingle not with their laughing comrades again;
They sit no more at familiar tables of home;
They have no lot in our labour of the day-time;
They sleep beyond England’s foam.

“But where our desires are and our hopes profound,
Felt as a well-spring that is hidden from sight,
To the innermost heart of their own land they are known
As the stars are known to the Night;

“As the stars that shall be bright when we are dust,
Moving in marches upon the heavenly plain;
As the stars that are starry in the time of our darkness,
To the end, to the end, they remain.”

A poem by William Wilfrid Campbell, entitled “Langemarck at Ypres,” to be found in Cunliffe’s *Poems of the Great War* may also be read. The first two stanzas are as follows:

“This is the ballad of Langemarck,
A story of glory and might;
Of the vast Hun horde, and Canada’s part
In the great, grim fight.

“It was April fair on the Flanders Fields,
 But the dreadest April then,
 That ever the years, in their fateful flight,
 Had brought to this world of men.”

PAGE 285—Yser Canal. The Yser is a small river of Belgium which flows into the North Sea after a course of fifty-five miles.

Barrage fire. A continuous rain of shells poured upon a single section, forming a curtain of fire through which it is impossible to pass.

French Colonial troops. The Turcos, a body of light infantry raised among the natives of Algiers for service in the French army and properly called Algerian tirailleurs.

The gas came over. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle says: “At the same time a phenomenon was observed which would seem to be more in place in the pages of romance than in the record of an historian. From the base of the German trenches over a considerable length there appeared jets of whitish vapor, which gathered and swirled until they settled into a definite low cloud-bank, greenish-brown below and yellow above, where it reflected the rays of the sinking sun. This ominous bank of vapor, impelled by a northern breeze, drifted swiftly across the space which separated the two lines. The French troops, staring over the top of their parapet at this curious screen which ensured them a temporary relief from fire, were observed suddenly to throw up their hands, to clutch at their throats, and to fall to the ground in the agonies of asphyxiation. Many lay where they had fallen, while their comrades, absolutely helpless against this diabolical agency, rushed madly out of the mephitic mist and made for the rear, over-running the lines of trenches behind them. Many of them never halted until they had reached Ypres, while others rushed westward and put the canal between themselves and the enemy. The Germans, meanwhile, advanced and took possession of the successive lines of trenches, tenanted only by the dead garrisons, whose blackened faces, contorted figures, and lips fringed with the blood and foam from their bursting lungs, showed the agonies in which they had died.”

PAGE 286—Langemarck—St. Julien. See map of western front during the Great War on page 182 of *The New Dominion Public School Geography* (Gage).

Swing the lead. Deceive.

PAGE 287—Cloth Hall. The Cloth Hall at Ypres was one of the finest public buildings in Belgium. Together with practically all the buildings in the town it was destroyed by the Germans' bombardment during the Great War. “The remains of the Cloth Hall—which bears an inscription

stating that Ypres is sacred to the memory of over 100,000 British soldiers who fell in the defence of the salient—are to be left as a memorial to the War." Ypres, a small town of about seventeen thousand people, was in the possession of the Germans for three days, but was reoccupied by British and French troops on October 16th, 1914. Throughout the remainder of the war, the allied front formed a salient round the town on the east.

IN THE HALL OF CEDRIC THE SAXON

This selection is made up of passages from Chapters III and IV of *Ivanhoe*, published in 1819. A good school edition of the novel edited by Alfred M. Hitchcock is found in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

The following brief sketch of the novel is given in *Library of the World's Best Literature* edited by Charles Dudley Warner (Glasgow, Brook): "Sir Wilfrid, knight of Ivanhoe, a young Saxon knight, brave, loyal, and handsome, is disinherited by his father, Cedric of Rotherwood, on account of his love for Rowena, a Saxon heiress and ward of Cedric's. Ivanhoe is a favorite of Richard I, Coeur-de-Lion, has won renown in Palestine, and now returns in the disguise of a palmer to see Rowena at Rotherwood. Under the name of Desdichado (the Disinherited) he enters the lists of the Ashby tournament; and, having won the victory, is crowned by the Lady Rowena. He is wounded, however, and returns to the care of his friends, Isaac of York, a wealthy Jew, and his daughter Rebecca. The latter tends him and loses her heart to the chivalrous knight. On returning from the tournament, Rowena is captured by the enamoured De Bracy and confined in the Tower of Torquilstone. After her release she is united in marriage to Ivanhoe, through the effort of King Richard. While the Lady Rowena is a model of beauty, dignity, and gentleness, she is somewhat overshadowed by Rebecca, who is as generous as her father is avaricious. Although loving Ivanhoe with intense devotion, she realizes that her union with him is impossible. She nobly offers to the Templar Bois-Guilbert any sum that he may demand for the release of the imprisoned Rowena. Bois-Guilbert carries her to the Preceptory of Templestowe, where she is convicted of sorcery on account of her religion, her skill in medicine, and her attractiveness. Condemned to the stake, she is permitted a trial by combat and selects Ivanhoe for her champion. On the death of Bois-Guilbert during the combat, she is pronounced guiltless and free." A careful outline of the plot of *Ivanhoe* is given in *Fifty English Classics Briefly Outlined* by Melvin Hix (Hinds). See also *Studies in Literature* by Frederick M. Tisdell (Macmillan).

PAGE 288—Cedric the Saxon. The father of Ivanhoe, and the guardian of the Lady Rowena.

PAGE 292—Boar-spear. Hunting the boar was a pastime of this period.
Gurth. A swineherd in the service of Cedric. Shortly after the incident related in the text he ran away from his master to act as squire to Ivanhoe.

Slow-hounds. Bloodhounds.

Trencher. A large wooden plate for table use.

PAGE 293—The major-domo. The steward of the household, the badge of whose office was a white wand.

Prior Aymer. The prior of Jorvaulx Abbey, who had begged the hospitality of Cedric for the night. He plays but a small part in the story.

Cope. An ecclesiastical cloak reaching from the shoulders nearly to the feet, and open in front except at the top where it is fastened by a clasp.

The Knight Templar. Brian de Bois-Guilbert, one of the principal characters in *Ivanhoe*. He was a bitter enemy of Ivanhoe, who finally slew him in combat as champion of the Jewess Rebecca. The Knights Templar were a religious order of monks, organized in 1118, and vowed to the defence of the Temple at Jerusalem. "They had for their special service the escorting of pilgrims from the coast up to Jerusalem; but they were great fighters, and had strongholds throughout Palestine from which they carried on war against all infidels." They had six Preceptories, as their establishments were called, in England. The order was finally destroyed by the civil power, "extinguished in blood and flames."

PAGE 294—A pilgrim. This pilgrim was Ivanhoe in disguise. He had been disinherited by his father Cedric, not only because his love for Rowena was interfering with the plan of uniting her to Athelstane, but also because he had joined his fortunes with those of Richard the Lion-hearted, whom Cedric hated as a Norman. Pilgrims were men who went about visiting holy places. Those who had visited Jerusalem and had worshipped there were known as palmers. These last usually wore cockleshells in their hats and carried a staff with a branch of palm at the top.

Cockle-shells. Small sea-shells.

PAGE 295—The Lady Rowena. A Saxon princess, the ward of Cedric. She marries Ivanhoe. *See Introduction.*

Thought surprised. It was the ambition of Cedric to unite the Lady Rowena to Athelstane, a descendant of the Saxon kings, and thereby to perpetuate the line, so as to dispute at some future time the kingship with the Norman occupant. He wished his ward to have as little as possible to do with the Normans.

THE BURIAL OF MOSES

This poem, one of the finest in the English language dealing with a scriptural subject, was published in 1854 in *Poems on Subjects in the Old Testament*. It is based on *Deuteronomy xxxii, 48-52* and *xxxiv, 1-6*. Alfred H. Miles says: "Though chiefly known as a writer of hymns for children, Mrs. Alexander's verse displays powers which under greater restraint would have been even more successful upon a higher plane. A sense of the sublime, and an eye for the picturesque, and especially for color, associated with an easy command of language, and an ear for rhyme and rhythm, are constantly in evidence; and in her lyric, 'The Burial of Moses,' have produced a poem which does not seem to fall far short of the great subject of which it treats. This is high praise indeed, but the poem bids fair to become a classic. Though not written specially for children, it appeals alike to young and old. A little child of six years of age known to the writer, after hearing it read, declared with enthusiasm that it was the grandest poem she had ever heard. Older critics will scarcely challenge the use of the word 'grand' in this connection."

With this poem may be compared "The Burial of Sir John Moore" by Charles Wolfe on page 106 of Book III of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

PAGE 296—Nebo. Mount Neba, about 2,650 feet high, situated a few miles east of the northern end of the Dead Sea is generally believed to be the ancient Mount Nebo.

Moab. An ancient country lying east of the Dead Sea.

No man. "And He buried him in a valley in the land of Moab, over against Beth-Peor; and no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day."
—*Deuteronomy xxxiv, 6.*

The train. The funeral procession.

PAGE 297—Them that wépt. An allusion to the employment of professional mourners at Eastern funeral ceremonies.

Hallow'd. Sacred.

Arms reversed. To indicate that war is over for the dead.

Muffled drums. Muffled with black cloth.

Funeral car. The body of the dead warrior at a military funeral is usually borne on a gun-carriage.

Minute-gun. Guns fired at intervals of one minute, corresponding to the tolling of bells.

Sage. The man who has been honored for his wisdom.

The bard. Poet's Corner in Westminster Abbey contains either the graves or the cenotaphs of many of the great poets of England.

Minster transept. In churches built in the form of a cross the transepts form the arms of the cross.

Like glories. The light shining through the windows of rich stained glass.
PAGE 298—Emblazon'd. Decorated with tablets in honor of the dead. Throughout this stanza there is probably a reference to Westminster Abbey.
Deathless. The truths he uttered shall live and have their influence forever.

For a pall. The pall is the covering of the coffin.

Lie in state. Usually before the funeral of the honored dead the body lies in state in the cathedral, the coffin, draped with a pall, being placed on a dais, surrounded by lighted candles and guarded by personal friends or by a military detachment.

Bier. The carriage on which the body is borne to the grave. In military funerals this is usually a gun-carriage.

He never trod. Palestine, the Promised Land. "Yet thou shalt see the land before thee; but thou shalt not go thither unto the land which I gave the children of Israel."—*Deuteronomy xxxii*, 52.

The strife. The sufferings and death of Christ.

Incarnate. Christ became man.

PAGE 299—Curious. Inquisitive.

Mysteries of grace. "For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts."—*Isaiah lv*, 8-9.

HENRY HUDSON

This selection is abridged from the section dealing with Henry Hudson in *Great Explorers*, published by Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh. The narratives in the book are based on, or rather modernized from the accounts in *Purchas his Pilgrims, Containing a History of the World in Sea Voyages and Land Travels by Englishmen and Others* by Samuel Purchas, published in 1625.

Practically all that is known of Henry Hudson is told in the text. A graphic account of his voyages is given in *Knights-Errant of the Wilderness* by Morden H. Long (Macmillan). Other good accounts are found in "Mutineers and Castaways" on page 85 of *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada* by W. S. Wallace (Oxford Press) and in "The Tragedy of Henry Hudson" on page 9 of *The Adventurers of England on Hudson Bay* by Agnes C. Laut in *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook). See also the chapter entitled "Hudson Finds his Bay" on page 273 of *A Book of Discovery: The History of the World's Exploration from the Earliest Times to the Finding of the South Pole* by M. B. Synge (Jack).

PAGE 299—Muscovy Company. This company was formed particularly for the purpose of fostering trade with Russia, or as it was then called "Muscovy."

East India Company. This celebrated company, which afterwards had under its control almost the whole of India, was chartered on the last day of the sixteenth century.

PAGE 300—Gravesend. A port on the right bank of the Thames, about twenty-four miles from London. At this time it was usual for discoverers when setting out on their voyages to take their final farewell at this port.

Spitzbergen. A group of Arctic islands about four hundred miles north of Norway. They were discovered in 1596.

PAGE 301—The Dutch. At this time the Dutch were taking a very active part in exploration and colonization.

North-East Passage. The passage across the sea to the north of the American continent, entrance being made from the eastern side. See note on "North-West Passage" on page 319.

Long Island. Part of the city of New York is now on Long Island.

Sandy Hook. A narrow sandy peninsula of New Jersey, about sixteen miles south of New York.

Albany. Albany is situated about one hundred and forty-two miles up the Hudson River.

PAGE 302—North-West Passage. See page 319.

Davis Strait. This strait which connects Baffin Bay with the Atlantic Ocean was discovered by John Davis in 1587.

Cape Wolstenholme. The cape was named in honor of one of the merchant adventurers who had supplied the money and the ship for the expedition.

Cape Digges. Digges was another of the merchants who were financing the voyage.

PAGE 306—Only five. As a matter of fact, only three survivors reached England, one of the four who navigated the ship across the Atlantic dying within sight of the Irish coast. W. S. Wallace says: "Why they were not all promptly hanged is one of the enigmas of British justice. Possibly it was thought they had already suffered enough; possibly those who knew that domineering old sailor, Henry Hudson, felt that they may have been justified in their mutiny."

BLESS THE LORD, O MY SOUL

This selection is numbered CIII in *The Book of Psalms*. The arrangement of the verses is that of Richard G. Moulton in *The Modern Readers' Bible* (Macmillan). The Rev. T. Witton Davies in Vol. II of *The Psalms*

in *The Century Bible* (Jack) says: "The Psalm seems to voice the gratitude of the writer and of his fellow countrymen, in view of some recent national deliverance, but whether this is the deliverance from Babylon or from the Syrian army, or whether some other national blessing is meant, must, with our present knowledge remain uncertain."

Dr. A. F. Kirkpatrick in *The Book of Psalms* in *The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) points out that "the Psalm falls into five approximately equal stanzas, the first and last forming the introduction and conclusion, and the other three the main body of the Psalm: (1) The Psalmist summons his soul and all his faculties to praise Jehovah for pardon, redemption, and bountiful provision for every need; (2) Jehovah's revelation of Himself to Moses has been verified afresh in His recent treatment of Israel; (3) His pardoning mercy knows no limits; His fatherly love shows the most tender consideration; (4) Man may be frail and transitory, but those who fear Jehovah can rest in the assurance of His faithfulness to their posterity; (5) The thought of the universality of Jehovah's kingdom naturally introduces the call to all creation to join in an universal chorus of praises." Dr. Kirkpatrick adds: "The Psalm is one of singular beauty. Its tenderness, its trustfulness, its hopefulness, anticipate the spirit of the *New Testament*. It does not contain one jarring note, and it furnishes fit language of thanksgiving for the greater blessings of a more marvellous redemption than that of Israel from Babylon."

PAGE 306—O my soul. Myself.

Within me. My entire personality, my whole self. The Hebrews regarded the various organs of the body as the seat of thought, will, and emotion.

Forget not, etc. Forget none of his benefits.

Iniquities. Turning away from the right.

Diseases. Sicknesses.

Thy life. Thine own self.

From destruction. Called him back as he was about to sink into the grave. The word in the Hebrew means "the pit."

Thy mouth. Probably the meaning is "thy desire."

Like the eagle's. Either "young and lusty as the eagle," or "as the eagle renews its feathers."

Righteousness. "Acts which display the divine righteousness in keeping the terms of His covenant."

Judgment. "Acts of deliverance involving this judgment upon the heathen."

His ways. His methods of action, the way in which He deals with men.

Children of Israel. The Israelites. See page 99.

PAGE 307—**Chide.** The word in this instance has the meaning of "contend."

Above the earth. "So high is his loving kindness above the merits of those who fear him."

Our frame. What we are made of. See *Genesis ii, 7.*

As grass. Of so short duration.

The wind. The reference is to the dry east wind of Palestine. See note on "east wind" on page 100.

In the heavens. Established on a sure and eternal foundation.

PAGE 318—**His works.** The works of nature.

THE HEROES OF THE LONG SAULT

This selection is taken, with some slight changes, from *The Old Régime in Canada*, published in 1865. The illustration in the text is from the bas-relief on the Maisonneuve Monument in the Place d'Armes, Montreal, by Philippe Hébert, the French-Canadian sculptor.

For twenty years a destructive war, with longer or shorter intervals of peace, had been carried on between the Iroquois and the French. In 1660, however, the Iroquois seem to have determined to wipe out the French entirely. Their plans were well-laid and sweeping in their comprehensiveness. There is no doubt that Canada owed its salvation to Daulac and his heroic companions. Parkman speaks of it as "one of the most heroic feats of arms ever achieved on this continent," and other historians have not been slow in adding their meed of praise. The whole story well brings out the appalling dangers through which the early French colonists passed, and the heroic courage with which they faced their desperate situation. See *Canada's Story* by H. E. Marshall (Jack) and *Canadian Types of the Old Régime* by Charles W. Colby (Holt). A poetical version which might with advantage be read in class is "How Canada was Saved" in *Poetical Works of George Murray* (O'Connor). An excellent colored picture of "The Iroquois Attacking Dollard's Stockade," painted by Henry Sandham, is found in *Canada* by J. G. Bealby in *Peeps at Many Lands* series (Black).

PAGE 308—**Daulac.** The name is generally written, Adam Dollard, Sieur des Ormeaux.

Maisonneuve. Paul de Chomedey, Sieur de Maisonneuve, saw much service before coming to Canada in 1641 as governor of a religious colony on the island of Montreal. Accompanied by a group of soldiers and workmen he wintered at Quebec and on May 18th, 1642, landed on the site of the future city of Montreal. For 22 years he remained as governor

of Montreal, but, through the jealousy of the governor of Canada, he was recalled to France in 1664. Seeing that it would be impossible to regain his office, he resigned in 1669. He died in 1676. A magnificent statue, erected by the citizens in memory of the founder of their city, stands in the Place d'Armes, Montreal. See *A History of Canada* by Charles G. D. Roberts (Macmillan) and *Maids and Matrons of New France* by Mary Sifton Pepper (Little, Brown).

The sacraments. Francis Parkman says: "As they knelt for the last time before the altar in the chapel of the Hôtel Dieu, that sturdy little population of pious Indian-fighters gazed on them with enthusiasm, not unmixed with an envy which had in it nothing ignoble. Some of the chief men of Montreal, with the brave Charles Le Moyne at their head, begged them to wait till the spring sowing was over, that they might join them; but Daulac refused. He was jealous of the glory and the danger, and he wished to command, which he could not have done had Le Moyne been present."

PAGE 309—**Ste. Anne.** See page 265.

Long Sault. The exact spot where they stopped is not known, but it is probably Greece's Point at the foot of the Long Rapid, on the left bank of the Ottawa, five or six miles above Carillon.

Soon joined. The party was composed of the Huron chief Annahotaha with 39 followers and the Algonquin chief Mitumeveg with three followers. The two chiefs had agreed to meet at Montreal for the purpose of engaging in a test of courage. When they heard of Daulac's enterprise, they thought that with him there would be an opportunity to prove which was the braver; they pushed forward rapidly and joined him soon after he reached the Long Sault.

PAGE 310—**Senecas.** The Iroquois, or Six Nations, were made up of six tribes. Originally there were but five—Cayugas, Oneidas, Senecas, Onondagas, and Mohawks—but later these were joined by the Tuscaroras.

PAGE 313—**Mantelets.** A mantelet is a movable parapet set on wheels for the purpose of protecting the engineers from bullet-fire during their operations. Here, however, it means "a shield."

Musketo. A short musket with a bell-shaped muzzle.

Grenade. A hollow shell of iron filled with powder and scrap-iron, and exploded by means of a fuse.

PAGE 315—**Glorious disaster.** George Murray, in "How Canada was Saved" says:

"True to their oath, that glorious band no quarter basely craved;
So died the peerless Twenty-two—So Canada was saved!"

Day of vengeance. The massacre of Lachine took place 29 years later.

SHERWOOD

In this spirited poem the author imagines that Robin Hood, the famous outlaw, has returned to his old haunt, Sherwood forest. The swing of the verse, the rapidity of the narrative, and the beauty of many of the individual lines make this an admirable poem for reading purposes.

A splendid companion poem to "Sherwood" is "The Highwayman" also by Alfred Noyes to be found on page 57 of Book VI of *The Oxford Reading Books* (Oxford Press).

A full account of Robin Hood and a description of Sherwood forest are found in the notes on "The Wedding of Allan-a-Dale" on page 66. A list of books relating to Robin Hood is given under the same heading.

PAGE 315—The brake. The thicket.

Shivering. Note the appropriateness of this word.

PAGE 316—Opal, etc. The predominant color of the opal is sea-green, of the ruby red, of the pearl a creamy white, and of the amethyst a reddish purple.

Wild rose. See page 123.

Hawthorne. See page 78.

Honeysuckle. C. E. Smith says: "The honeysuckle is a shrub with long, feeble, woody stems. These stems twist themselves round young trees and hedges, which support the plant and raise it up towards the sun. The beautiful flower trumpets are yellow-pink, sometimes almost purple on the outside, and inside they are pale yellow." See *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

Marian. Robin Hood's earliest playmate, who joined him in Sherwood Forest and subsequently became his wife. See *Stories of Robin Hood* by H. E. Marshall in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack) and "Robin Hood and Maid Marian" on page 114 of *Stories of Great Adventures* by Carolyn Sherwin Bailey (Milton Bradley).

Laverock. The skylark. See page 330.

Golden steep. The pathway of the sky in which the sun is shining.

Fairy grass-rings. Rings of grass, greener than that which surrounds it, supposed to be caused by the fairies dancing there.

Elf. See page 117.

Fay. Fairy.

Oberon. The king of the fairies.

Will Scarlet. Will Gamewell, Robin Hood's cousin and his chief lieutenant. He was nicknamed Scarlet from the color of the costume he wore the first time he came to Sherwood forest and made himself known to his cousin.

Friar Tuck. The famous chaplain of Robin Hood's band. See page 68.

Little John. See page 68.

Quarter-staff. A stout oak staff used for attack and defence.

Gray goose feather. Arrows winged with the feathers of a gray goose.

PAGE 317—Lincoln green. See page 68.

THE WRESTLING MATCH

This selection is taken from Act I, Scene II of Shakespeare's *As You Like It*.

In the reign of Louis XII, towards the end of the 15th century, France was divided into many independent dukedoms. In one of these dukedoms there reigned a usurper, Duke Frederick, who had deposed and banished his elder brother, the lawful duke. The banished duke retired to the forest of Arden, where he lived in exile with a few of his faithful followers, while his only daughter, Rosalind, was retained in the court as a companion for Duke Frederick's daughter, Celia. Orlando, the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Bois, who had been a close friend of the banished duke, had been left to the care of an elder brother, Oliver, who became so jealous of the charms developed by Orlando that he engaged a famous wrestler, Charles, to kill him. The wrestling match took place before Duke Frederick, Celia, and Rosalind, and to the surprise of all, resulted in a victory for Orlando, who gained strength and courage from the sympathetic remarks of the two girls. From that moment Rosalind and Orlando loved one another. When Duke Frederick discovered that Orlando's father had been his brother's friend, he vented his anger on Rosalind by banishing her to the forest of Arden. Unwilling to be parted from her friend, Celia accompanied Rosalind, the latter garbing herself as a shepherd lad. They bought a cottage in the forest, whither Orlando also fled to escape death at the hands of Oliver, who was enraged over the failure of his first plan to kill his brother. Here Orlando and Rosalind met and passed several days in mock courtship, while the disguised Rosalind instructed her suitor in the art of making love. In the meantime, Oliver had followed his brother to the forest, where he fell into the clutches of a lioness and was rescued by Orlando, who was wounded in the struggle. In telling Celia and Rosalind of his rescue, Oliver's remorse was so great that it led Celia to fall in love with him. As Oliver was also deeply in love with Celia, their marriage was arranged for the next day. The happy pair, accompanied by Orlando and Rosalind, the latter still in disguise appeared before the banished duke; Rosalind revealed her identity; and

both marriages were celebrated, while news was brought that Frederick had been converted and had resigned the dukedom to its rightful ruler. The play ends with all wrongs righted, exactly "As You Like It."

PAGE 317—Frowardness. Rashness.

PAGE 318—Looks successfully. Looks as if he would be successful.

Cousin. Rosalind is really Frederick's niece.

Are you crept? Have you crept?

The princess calls. Note that Le Beau tells Orlando that the princess calls him, meaning, of course, Celia, but Orlando includes both Celia and Rosalind in his reply.

If you saw, etc. "If you could use your own eyes to see, or your own judgment to know yourself, the fear of your adventure would counsel you."

Misprised. Undervalued, slighted.

Our suit. We shall make a personal appeal.

Might. May.

PAGE 320—Wherein. In denying your wishes.

Gracious. Acceptable.

Only. The word here modifies fill.

Modest working. Rolfe states that Shakespeare frequently uses "working" with reference to mental operations.

Come your ways. Come along.

Hercules. The great demi-god of the Greeks, noted for his tremendous strength and his powers of endurance. He was the son of Jupiter and Alcmena. His twelve labors are famous. These are fully told beginning on page 264 of *Gods and Heroes, or The Kingdom of Jupiter* by Robert Edward Francillon (Ginn).

Speed. Patron, protector.

PAGE 321. Should down. Should fall.

Well breathed. Am just beginning to get my breath, am only getting started.

Still. Always.

Calling. Being called Sir Rowland's son.

Unto. In addition to.

PAGE 322. Envious. Malicious.

At heart. To the heart.

But justly. Exactly as.

Out of suits. Fortune does not look on me with favor.

Could. Would gladly.

Quintain. Rolfe interprets "a mere wooden image of a man." He proceeds: "The quintain in its simplest form was an upright post, with a cross-bar turning on a pivot at the top. At one end of this bar was

a broad target, at the other a heavy sand-bag. The sport was to ride at full speed at the target, hit it with a lance, and get out of the way before the sandbag could swing round and hit the tilter on the back. The figure of a Saracen, with a shield on his left arm, and a drawn sabre in his right hand, sometimes took the place of the post with its cross-bar."

More than your enemies. Orlando has evidently made a very favorable impression on Rosalind.

TECUMSEH AND THE EAGLES

This poem was written by Bliss Carman during the period of the Great War. It was a call to united action against the Germans, who were threatening the freedom of the world.

Tecumseh (Shooting Star) was born in a wigwam in the old Indian village of Piqua, not far from Springfield, Ohio, in 1768. His father, Puckeshinwan, was chief of the Kiscopoke tribe of the Shawnees. During his childhood the Indians around the Ohio were in a state of unrest, and matters came to a head in 1774, when war broke out between the Virginians and several of the Indian tribes headed by the Shawnees. At the battle of Point Pleasant his father was killed. From this time his training in war and hunting was undertaken by his elder brother. He became a swift runner, an expert swimmer, and skilful with the bow. Stories of the oppression of the Indians by the pale-face, fired in him the ambition to become a leader of his race and win back for his people their freedom.

In 1780, when the village of Piqua was attacked by the whites and reduced to a heap of smoking ruins, the Shawnees were forced to flee about thirty miles north-westward to the Great Miami, where they rebuilt their homes. The fighting still continued and in response to his pleas, Tecumseh was given a taste of real war. At the first sight of blood and confusion, however, his courage failed and he fled from the field. After passing through the solemn ordeal of initiation, during which period he dreamed the dream of the shooting star from which he derived his name, Tecumseh set out with one of his brothers and fifty companions on a journey to the Mississippi. In a battle with the whites, his brother was killed, and Tecumseh was chosen leader of the band. In 1790 with eight survivors, he returned to Piqua, having learned through intercourse, much of the language and habits of other tribes, a knowledge which subsequently proved of the greatest use to him.

A year or two later Tecumseh, with a party of warriors, established his headquarters on a tributary of the little Miami and from this point made a series of attacks on the white settlers. In 1794 he led the Shawnees in a battle against General Anthony Wayne, but the Indians were defeated

and forced to retreat. The following year, by the treaty of Greenville, large tracts of Indian territory were surrendered to the Americans. Tecumseh, however, refused to recognize the validity of the treaty and, with the aid of his brother, who was regarded by the Indians as having a mysterious gift of prophecy, set out to organize a union of Indians to protest against its terms. His powers of oratory soon became evident, and by the autumn of 1807 eight hundred Indians, armed with new rifles, had assembled near Greenville. In 1808 they moved west across what is now the state of Indiana to a place on the banks of the Tippecanoe, where they purposed forming their union. Another treaty made in 1809 deprived the Indians of further large tracts of land and led to the confederacy of practically all the northern tribes under the leadership of Tecumseh, who immediately set out to organize the southern tribes. During his absence, encouraged by his brother, the Prophet, whose influence had grown with alarming rapidity, the Northern Indians attacked the Americans. The latter, however, were victorious; the Indian village was burned to the ground, and the prophet's mysterious influence was shattered.

Tecumseh was now the foremost American Indian and was held in awe, not only by the Indians, but also by the American and British settlers. In June, 1812, having for some time been angered by the attitude of the Americans and their frequent attacks upon his people, Tecumseh set out for Amherstburg, on the Canadian side of the Detroit River, where he formally pledged his allegiance to the king of Great Britain. With him he brought to Great Britain the support of all her Indian allies in the war of 1812. The first engagement in which Tecumseh fought for the British took place near Sandwich and was so successful that it assured him of the support of all the other Indian tribes. Fighting under the British flag, Tecumseh showed himself to be a man of magnificent courage and an able and resourceful leader, whose powerful personality alone kept the Indian warriors united. After the surrender of Detroit by the Americans, the Indian chief was publicly honored by General Brock, who recognized that the victory was due almost entirely to Tecumseh's dominating influence over his followers. During the armistice which followed, Tecumseh moved through the Indian territory between Lake Michigan and the Wabash, inducing more of his people to become Britain's allies.

When the British were defeated at Fort Meigs, at Fort Stephenson, and on Lake Erie, the Indians began to desert, and, when General Procter refused to make a stand at Amherstburg, Tecumseh was tempted to follow their example. He had been a champion of the rights of the Indian people, and now that the cause for which he had fought so heroically was about to fail, he became sad and oppressed. But he was finally induced to retreat to Moraviantown, where on October 5th, 1813, the British took their

stand against the Americans. Though Tecumseh predicted that he would never come through this engagement alive, he entered the conflict undaunted, and when Procter and his staff took flight, the Indian chief remained to face the enemy, until he fell to the ground dead, shot through the breast.

The best book for school use dealing with Tecumseh is *Tecumseh: A Chronicle of the Last Great Leader of his People* by Ethel T. Raymond in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook). See also *The Story of Tecumseh* by Norman S. Gurd in *Canadian Heroes Series* (Ryerson Press).

PAGE 322—**Shawnees.** The Shawnees, or Southerners, were a branch of the great Algonquin family of Indians. See page 276.

PAGE 323—**Sacred pact.** Solemn agreement.

The eagles. The golden eagle and the bald eagle are described in detail on pages 15 to 26 of Part I of *A Popular Handbook of the Birds of Canada and the United States* by Thomas Nuttall (Musson).

HUNTING WITH A CAMERA

This selection is taken from *The Romance of the Newfoundland Caribou* by A. R. Dugmore, "an Englishman who finds more pleasure in hunting animals with the camera than with the rifle." As a commentary the poem by Sam Walter Foss entitled "A True Sportsman" to be found on page 135 of Book III of *The Golden Rule Books* (Macmillan) might be read. The first stanza is as follows:

"I go a-gunning, but take no gun;
I fish without a pole;
And I bag good game and catch such fish
As suit a sportsman's soul;
For the choicest game that the forest holds,
And the best fish of the brook,
Are never brought down by a rifle shot
And never are caught with a hook."

PAGE 325—**Caribou.** The Newfoundland caribou is very similar to the Barren Grounds caribou. See page 352.

PAGE 326—**Canada jay.** Better known as the whiskey jack.

PAGE 327—**Elves.** See page 117.

PAGE 328—**For nine yards.** If the object is more than nine yards distant, the photograph would be blurred and indistinct.

Thirty-point horns. With thirty prongs on the horns. The deer would be seven or eight years old.

Shutter. The shutter opens and covers the lens of the camera.

PAGE 329—Wapiti. More familiarly known as the elk. "Wapiti are the giants of the red deer group, carrying enormous antlers, and attaining as much as a thousand pounds in weight. A good stag will stand from 5 feet 4 inches to 5 feet 8 inches at the shoulder. Magnificently shaped, splendid in form and bearing, as in the size of its antlers, a more lordly creature than the stag wapiti does not pace the earth." An excellent description of the wapiti is given on page 312 of *The Life of Animals: The Mammals* by Ernest Ingersoll (Macmillan).

Forty-five points. The stag would be eleven or twelve years old.

LOCHINVAR

This song occurs in the 12th Section of Canto V of *Marmion: A Tale of Flodden Field*. It is sung by Lady Heron to King James and is complete in itself. See page 293.

PAGE 330—Lochinvar. A castle on the shore of Loch Lochinvar in Kirkcudbrightshire, Scotland, the seat of the Gordon family. The hero of the ballad is Gordon of Lochinvar.

Border. The borderland between England and Scotland, for many years the scene of almost continuous warfare.

Save. Except.

Broad-sword. The Scottish claymore.

Brake. A thicket.

Eske river. A small river flowing into the Solway Firth.

Netherby. A castle near Carlisle in Cumberland, England. It was the family seat of the Grahams, or Graemes.

PAGE 331—Bridesmen. Groomsmen.

Craven. Cowardly.

Like the Solway. Sir Walter Scott says: "The tide in the Solway advances with such rapidity upon these fatal sands, that well-mounted horsemen lay aside hopes of safety if they see its white surge advancing, while they are yet at a distance from the banks."

Measure. Dance.

Kissed the goblet. It was formerly the custom for the lady to kiss the goblet before the health was drunk.

Galliard. A lively dance.

PAGE 332—Croup. The place behind the saddle.

Scaur. A cliff, or steep bank.

Forsters, etc. Families living on the English side of the Border.

Cannobie Lee. A plain in the valley of the Eske, near the English Border.

THE HOPE OF THE WORLD

This selection was written specially for *The Canadian Readers* by Professor A. L. Burt of the University of Alberta, Edmonton.

The following selections from *A New World, or The League of Nations*, issued by the League of Nations Society in Canada, should prove of value in explaining the selection in the text to the pupils:

"The *Assembly* is the general body of the League and meets in Geneva, the capital of the League, on the first Monday in every September. Each country may send as many as three representatives to sit in the Assembly but has only one vote there. This use of the word vote has been very misleading in the United States. Really, each state has not a vote but a veto, for all decisions in important matters must be unanimous. The only exception to this is when disputes between nations are referred to the Assembly. Then the agreement of 'the Representatives of those Members of the League, represented on the Council, and of a majority of the other members of the League, exclusive in each case of the Representatives of the parties to the dispute,' is all that is required. If unanimity were necessary in such cases, it would be useless to refer disputes to the Assembly. Being the general body of the League, the Assembly can 'deal at its meetings with any matter within the sphere of action of the League or affecting the peace of the world.' It has also some very special functions, such as the election of new members, the approval of the appointment of the Secretary General of the League, the passing of the budget, and a very important partial control over the composition of the Council of the League. It elects the majority of the Council, the non-permanent members, and its consent is necessary for any alteration of the constitution of the Council. This is the most representative body that the world has yet seen, and it is a tremendous revolution in international affairs that the governments of the world must come together every year in such a great conference. But it has limitations. Coming from all over the world, its members cannot be called together on short notice. It is also a large and a heterogeneous body. Therefore, it is not well adapted to grapple with international crises which usually arise suddenly and demand instant action. Finally, it embodies the principle of the equality of states. In the Assembly Britain's voice counts for no more than Cuba's. The constitution of the Assembly thus takes no account of one of the most important factors in international affairs, the existence of great powers. These are so strong that they will not put themselves on a par with lesser states in all things, and there is good reason for this attitude. When Britain goes to war, much more is involved than when a whole group of little Balkan

states fly at one another's throats. With interests ramifying all over the world, the great powers have commonly to shoulder the burden in time of international crisis.

"The *Council* of the League was therefore created to supplement the Assembly. The great powers are permanent members of the Council. At present there are five, Great Britain, France, Italy, Japan, and Germany, the last having been added in 1926, but it is understood that the United States and Russia may have similar seats whenever they wish to join the League. If this were the whole Council, it might be a dangerous body. Certainly the great majority of smaller states would suspect it of trying to establish a sort of tyranny over the world. Therefore, the Council includes a ballast of smaller powers. At first there were four, then, there were six, and now, there are nine. These are the non-permanent members. Until 1926, they were all elected each year by the Assembly. Now, by an amendment to the covenant, three retire each year, and their successors are elected for three years. Belgium, Salvador, and Czecho-Slovakia retire in 1927, Columbia, Holland, and China in 1928, and Poland, Chile, and Rumania in 1929. Only by a two-thirds vote of the Assembly can a retiring member be eligible for re-election within three years. The first to receive this privilege was Poland, who may be elected again in 1929. The Covenant provides a further protection for minor powers by the regulation that every state not represented on the Council becomes a member of the Council for the discussion of any question in which it is involved. Thus, for the settlement of the Aaland Islands dispute between Sweden and Finland in 1920, the Council was increased by a representative from each of these countries, though Finland was not yet a member of the League. In all important matters, the Council's decisions must be unanimous except in the settlement of disputes when the consent of the parties to the dispute is not necessary. The Council meets regularly in March, in June, just before and during the Assembly's sitting, and in December. It may also be called together at any time when it is needed. Its forty-fourth session was in March, 1927. Being small, it can meet on very short notice and may reach a decision quickly, and its decisions, because they are backed by the will of the great powers, carry great weight. Therefore, it is admirably suited for handling international crises as they arise and for being the executive organ of the Assembly.

"The *Secretariat* is what might be called the civil service of the League. Headed by Sir Eric Drummond, the Secretary-General, it is divided into sections, each with a director. It collects information and studies the problems that come before the Assembly and the Council. Associated with it are a number of commissions and committees to supervise the

many growing activities of the League. The Financial Committee, for example, worked out the plans for the financial reconstruction of Austria and of several other states. The League provides central machinery to further peaceful international co-operation of all kinds, from transportation and health to the control of the opium traffic. Here alone is unlimited scope for development.

"The *International Labor Organization*, established as a result of the labor clauses inserted in the peace treaties, is also located at Geneva. It is under the wing of the League but enjoys a certain independence. It has its own head, Albert Thomas of France, and its own secretariat organized like that under Sir Eric Drummond. Its purpose is 'to secure and maintain fair and humane conditions of labor for men, women, and children and the well-being, physical, moral, and intellectual, of industrial wage-earners, and already, it has led to many international agreements to protect employees.

"The *Permanent Court of International Justice*, known more popularly as the *World Court*, sits at the Hague. It must not be confused with the Permanent Court of Arbitration, established by the Hague Convention of 1899, which still exists. The Permanent Court of Arbitration is not really a court at all but only a list of names from which a court of arbitration may be selected by governments involved in a dispute. This is a purely temporary tribunal, ceasing to exist when it has given its decision. Under such conditions, experience and precedent, so essential to the development of any court, are impossible. But the World Court, finally organized in 1921, is a permanent court of eleven judges and four deputies. They are elected by the Assembly and the Council every nine years. If the Council cannot agree with the Assembly in selecting all fifteen judges and deputies, those upon whom they have agreed have the power to name the rest of the Court.

"The Statute, or constitution of the Court, provides that no state need appear as a principal in any case without having a judge of its own nationality on the bench. Thus, when the Allies proceeded against Germany in 1923 for refusing the S.S. *Wimbledon* passage through the Kiel Canal, a German judge was temporarily added. The Court sits regularly on June 15 but may be convoked at any time for an extraordinary session. Like the Supreme Court of Canada, it has two functions, judicial, and advisory. In the words of the Covenant, 'The Court shall be competent to hear and determine any dispute of an international character which the Parties thereto submit to it. The Court may also give an advisory opinion upon any dispute or question referred to it by the Council or by the Assembly.' One great difference between this and the ordinary courts of our land must

not be forgotten. The latter can compel people to appear before them; the former has no such power over states. Only in the famous 'optional clause' of the Court's constitution is there any approach towards compulsion. States which accept this clause bind themselves to submit their differences to the court and to abide by its judgment. A number of smaller states have accepted this 'compulsory jurisdiction,' but all the great powers, except France, have as yet refused. Canada has not signed this clause and probably will not until public opinion forces the hand of the government. However, the mere creation of this Court is a great revolution in international affairs. Now, we have what we never had before but have long desired, a small, effective, and impartial tribunal to which nations may, and do bring their disputes for judicial settlement. It is quite possible that there would have been no war had there been such a court in 1914.

"The chief purpose of those who launched the League was to prevent war. But they were not believers in what is popularly known as the doctrine of peace at any price, because that opens the door to gross injustice. Their design was rather to remove as far as possible the causes of war and to provide the best means for the peaceful settlement of disputes that might lead to war. The great end of the League is justice and, through justice, to establish peace.

"At the close of the War, there was a strong general feeling against secret diplomacy as responsible for many wars. Therefore Article XVIII of the Covenant bound all members of the League to register with the Secretariat of the League all treaties which they sign and required the Secretariat to publish them as soon as possible. Even non-members of the League have voluntarily submitted their treaties for publication and registration. Germany did it before she was elected to membership, and in 1926, the United States adopted the same practice. Though hundreds of treaties have been registered and published, it is yet too soon to pass any valuable judgment upon this regulation and its working."

HOW THEY BROUGHT THE GOOD NEWS FROM GHENT TO AIX

This poem was written by Browning under the bulwark of a vessel off the African coast, after he had been at sea long enough to appreciate even the fancy of a gallop on the back of a certain good horse "York" then in his stable at home. It was written in pencil on the fly-leaf of a favorite Italian book, and was subsequently published in 1845 in *Bells*

and *Pomegranates*. There is no actual basis in history for the incidents of the poem, although it is easy to imagine such an adventure to have taken place. The poem is simply the glorification of riding, the delight in rapid motion. The supposed date of the ride to carry out the secret mission was sometime during the attempted subjugation of the Netherlands by the Spaniards in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Browning himself dates the poem 16—. Valuable hints for study are given in *Introduction to Browning* by Ella B. Hallock (Macmillan).

The editor of the *Teachers' Notebook for the Holton-Curry Sixth Reader* says: "While Browning's statement must be regarded as final, Rolfe and Hersey in their *Select Poems of Robert Browning* suggest that the 'verisimilitude of the situation is perfect,' and that the good news is that of a 'treaty of union between Holland, Zealand, and the southern Netherlands, against Spain, under the tyrannical Philip II. The treaty was greeted rapturously by the frontier cities, because it was expected to free The Netherlands from Spanish power. Aix might easily have resolved to set herself on fire at a given hour, rather than submit herself and her citizens piecemeal to the torch of the persecutor.' The treaty referred to was made in 1576. For those who find it necessary for their interest to identify the 'good news,' there can be no objection to accepting the above suggestion."

Edward Berdoe in *The Browning Cyclopaedia* (Sonnenschein) says: "Dining one day last year at Trinity College, Cambridge, with that enthusiastic Browning scholar, Mr. E. H. Blakeney, we discussed the question of the comparative popularity of Browning's shorter poems, and it was decided that he should ask the editor of the *Pall Mall Gazette* to put it to the vote in his columns. A prize was offered for the list of fifty poems which came nearest to the standard list obtained by collating the lists of all the competitors." The result of this vote was that the first poem on the list was "How They Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix," while "Incident of the French Camp" stood twenty-second.

The route followed by the riders is easily traced on a map of Belgium. Frederick Ryland in *Selections from Browning* (Bell) says: "The route followed is actual enough. They go north-easterly to Lokeren, then keep due east to Boom, and then more south-easterly to Aershot, about ten miles from Louvain. The poet does not say that they went to Hasselt, but 'by Hasselt', and so with Looz and Tongres. They probably passed between Hasselt and the two latter places, riding straight across country to Aix-la-Chapelle. The ride can hardly have been less than 130 miles, and perhaps twenty or thirty more." An excellent route-map of the ride is found in Number V of *The Oxford Reading Books* (Oxford Press).

PAGE 341—The watch. The warder or guardian of the gate of the town.

Postern. A small gate in the wall of a fortified town.

Midnight. The black darkness.

PAGE 342—The great pace. Referring both to the speed of the horses and their long stride.

Changing our place. Riding side by side as they had set out.

Pique. The pommel of the saddle.

Yellow star. The morning star.

Twilight. The light before the rising of the sun as well as that which follows its setting.

PAGE 343—Butting. A strong expression which suggests both the gallant bearing of the horse and the thickness of the mist.

Bluff. Boldly and strongly outlined.

One eye's black intelligence. A beautiful poetic form for "one intelligent black eye."

Askance. Sideways.

Spume-flakes. Flakes of foam.

Dirck groaned. He felt that his horse was failing.

Roos. The name of the horse.

Pitiless laugh. The riders were suffering from the intense heat.

PAGE 344—Buff-coat. A heavily padded leather coat used as part of the defensive armor of the time.

Holster. Leather pistol cases attached to the saddle.

Jack-boots. Heavy military riding boots reaching above the knee.

Aix. Aix-la-Chapelle, in Rhenish Prussia on the Belgian frontier.

This Roland of mine. The horse, Roland, is of course, the hero of the story. The interest of the poem centres around the long ride, showing as it does the spirit and endurance of the horse and the sympathy which existed between it and its rider. Thomas Marc Parrott says: "Roland, the most famous of Charlemagne's heroes, became during the middle ages the symbol of liberty and free government in the towns of Germany and the Netherlands. There is thus a special significance in the name of the horse which is celebrated in this poem."

Burgesses. Citizens of the city.

ON MAKING CAMP

This selection is a portion of Chapter IV of *The Forest*, published in 1903. The whole book is an enthusiastic treatment of the delights of life in the woods. It is not necessary, however, to connect in any particular way the portion in the text with the book as a whole. Charles Dudley

Warner's "Camping Out" in *A Hunting of the Deer and Other Essays* (Houghton) may be read in this connection.

The description as here given of how to make a camp may be introduced by a paragraph from the omitted portion of Chapter IV: "Early in his woods experience Dick became possessed with the desire to do everything for himself. As this was a laudable striving for self-sufficiency, I called a halt at about three o'clock one afternoon in order to give him plenty of time. At the end of three hours' flusteration, heat, worry, and good hard work, he had accomplished the following results: a tent, very soggy, very askew, covered a four-side area—it was not a rectangle—of very bumpy ground. A hodge-podge bonfire, in the centre of which an inaccessible coffee-pot toppled menacingly, alternately threatened to ignite the entire surrounding forest or to go out altogether through lack of fuel. Personal belongings strewed the ground near the fire, and provisions cumbered the entrance to the tent. Dick was anxiously mixing batter for the cakes, attempting to stir a pot of rice often enough to prevent it from burning, and trying to rustle sufficient dry wood to keep the fire going. This diversity of interests certainly made him sit up and pay attention. At each instant he had to desert his flour-sack to rescue the coffee-pot, or to shift the kettle, or to dab hastily at the rice, or to stamp out the small brush, or to pile on more dry twigs. His movements were not graceful. They raised a scurry of dry bark, ashes, wood, dust, twigs, leaves, and pine needles, a certain proportion of which found their way into the coffee, the rice, and the sticky batter, while the smaller articles of personal belongings hastily dumped from the duffel-bag, gradually disappeared from view in the manner of Pompeii and ancient Vesuvius. Dick burned his fingers and stumbled about and looked so comically, pathetically red-faced through the smoke that I, seated on a log, at the same time laughed and pitied. And in the end, when he needed a continuous steady fire to fry his cakes, he suddenly discovered that dry twigs do not make coals, and that his previous operations had used up all the fuel within easy circle of the camp. So he had to drop everything for the purpose of rustling wood, while the coffee chilled, the rice cooled, the bacon congealed, and all the provisions, cooked and uncooked, gathered entomological specimens. At the last, the poor theorist made a hasty meal of scorched food, brazenly postponed the washing of dishes until the morrow, and coiled about his hummocky couch to dream the nightmares of complete exhaustion."

PAGE 345—**Marquees.** A large pleasure tent on a lawn.

PAGE 349—**Aluminium.** Now usually spelled "aluminum."

A CANADIAN CAMPING SONG

This poem by Sir James D. Edgar pictures the pleasures of a summer camp among the woods in Canada.

PAGE 352—Summer home. He has no ambition to spend his summer at a crowded summer-resort, but is content with his tent pitched beside a lake or by a mountain stream.

Are mine. I can find refuge from the heat in the cool recesses of the woods.

Adam's ale. Water.

Glide. Slip away almost without one knowing that time is passing.

PAGE 353—The whip-poor-will. The coloration of the whip-poor-will is like that of a great brown moth. P. A. Taverner in *Birds of Eastern Canada* (Department of Mines, Ottawa) says: "There is no other sound in the Canadian woods so poetically mournful as the reiterated call of the whip-poor-will. The translation of bird notes into words usually requires a stretch of the imagination, but this bird says 'whip-poor-will, whip-poor-will,' with unusual distinctness. For a calling station it selects a perch on a fallen tree-trunk, a bare branch, the roof of a building, or even a tent-pole. It returns to its various stations regularly on successive nights and seems to visit each in turn. Between periods of calling, the bird hawks and wheels through the tree tops in large interlacing circles, sometimes swooping towards the ground in a long pendulum-like swing. In the daytime it seeks the ground in some quiet patch of underbrush, where it passes the time at rest. When disturbed by an intruder, it rises with a loose, poorly-controlled flight that gives no indication of its wonderful command of the air at other times, flutters a short distance over the tangle, and drops again to earth." An excellent descriptive article on the whip-poor-will by Alexander Wilson, accompanied by a large, colored illustration, is found on page 64 of Book II of *Bird Life Stories* by Clarence Moores Weed (Rand).

Kindly chaff. Friendly banter.

Cedar beds. See "On Making Camp" by Stewart Edward White on page 344 of the text.

 THE NORTH-WEST—CANADA

This poem from the pen of Moira O'Neill is an appreciative description of the beauties of the prairie landscape, with its effect upon those who live amidst its loneliness. The author, who is an Irish lady, resided for

some years near Maple Creek, Saskatchewan, and it was there that the poem was written.

PAGE 353—**Take no mark.** Nothing mars their white loveliness.

Stark. See page 321.

PAGE 354—**The word.** The spirit that animates the people.

GULLIVER IN GIANT LAND

This selection is taken from "A Voyage to Brobdingnag," Part II of *Gulliver's Travels*, published in 1726. Gulliver made several voyages, the first two of which are the best known: that to Lilliput, the Land of the Pygmies, and that to Brobdingnag, the Land of the Giants. After escaping from the Lilliputians he returned to England, but becoming restless, set out on another voyage two months later, June 20th, 1702, bound for the eastern seas. Stormy weather delayed the voyage, and a part of the crew was obliged to land on an unknown island in order to obtain water. The sailors were frightened away by the giants who inhabited the country, and Gulliver, who had gone on shore to explore the country, was left behind in the confusion. He was found by one of the giants and taken to court, where he became the toy of the ladies. He remained in the country for some time, until by a marvellous contrivance he was able to make his escape.

An excellent abridgment of the story of *Gulliver's Travels* is given in *Children's Stories from English Literature: Shakespeare to Tennyson* by Henrietta Christian Wright (Scribner). Good school editions are edited by John Lang in *Told to the Children Series* (Jack), by Clifton Johnson in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan), and by Alfonzo Gardiner in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan). An excellent sketch of Dean Swift, particularly in relation to *Gulliver's Travels*, is given on page 304 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Clifton Johnson says: "Swift's style as a writer was masterly in its simplicity and vigor. He often expressed himself coarsely, but never with affectation, and what he says has an ease and a directness that have rarely been equalled. The work by which he is best known is of course his *Gulliver's Travels*. A few years before this masterpiece was published *Robinson Crusoe* had appeared, and the influence of De Foe's great romance can be plainly traced. The fictitious narrators are in each case plain seafaring men who have been wrecked and cast away in distant and little-known parts of the world, and their stories are told in the same homely manner, and gain an air of fact by the recital of many minute

and trifling circumstances. But in the case of *Gulliver's Travels* the book has a hidden meaning. Most of it is a satire on the politicians of the day and their methods, but the final portion derides mankind in general. Its publication, in 1727, was hailed with mingled merriment and amazement, and Gulliver's story had on its surface such an appearance of veracity that in some quarters it was more than half believed. Swift concealed his own authorship, and prefaced the volume with the letter of one Richard Sympson, who vouches for the reality of Mr. Gulliver, and declares that he is highly esteemed at his home near Newark in Nottinghamshire, and that his veracity was such that it had become a sort of proverb among his neighbors, when anyone affirmed a thing, to say: 'It is as true as if Mr. Gulliver had spoken it.'"

PAGE 354—**Glumdalclitch.** The daughter of the farmer who had found Gulliver on his arrival in Giant Land. When Gulliver was taken to court she went with him as his attendant.

MARMION AND DOUGLAS

This selection consists of portions of the 13th, 14th, and 15th sections of Canto VI of *Marmion: A Tale of Flodden Field*, published in 1808. Excellent school editions of the poem are edited by Michael Macmillan in *English Classics* (Macmillan) and by George B. Aiton in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan).

The story of *Marmion* is briefly as follows: Marmion of Fontenaye, a noble English knight, had been accompanied for some years by a page, in reality a young nun, named Constance de Beverley, who, for love of him, had broken her convent vows. Marmion, however, for worldly purposes, was anxious to marry Lady Clara de Clare, but a rival, Ralph De Wilton, stood in his way. By means of a forged letter written by Constance at his instigation, Marmion threw discredit on his rival, fought with him in the lists, overthrew him, and caused his banishment as a disgraced and perjured knight. Constance, shortly afterwards, was betrayed by Marmion and punished for her defection. Before her death she handed to the Abbess of St. Hilda a packet containing the proofs of her lover's guilt. This packet the Abbess gave to De Wilton, who, in the disguise of a palmer, had followed Marmion to Scotland, where he had gone on an embassy from the king of England. Clara de Clare with the Abbess had reached Edinburgh at the same time as Marmion, having been captured by a Scottish band. Marmion, being bound to remain in Scotland while there was any hope of peace between the two countries, was sent to Tantallon Castle as a guest of the Earl of Angus, and in his company

went the Abbess and Clara. De Wilton also accompanied them, and while at the castle laid the whole matter before Douglas, who in consequence treated Marmion with marked coldness. The knight, finding war to be inevitable and wishing to take part in the coming battle, ordered his equipage to be made ready. Then occurred the incident in the text. Marmion hastened forward, joined Surrey, fought bravely at Flodden, but was killed on the battlefield. De Wilton, who had also distinguished himself during the battle, soon established his innocence, was restored to his lands, and married Clara.

PAGE 357—The train. Marmion's escort, as ambassador of the English king to the court of Scotland, consisted of two squires, four men-at-arms, and twenty yeomen.

Plain. Complain.

PAGE 358—Cold respect. After Douglas had been made aware of Marmion's treacherous conduct towards De Wilton, he found it difficult to keep up even the outward form of respect which the position of his guest demanded.

Behest. Command.

Tantallon. Sir Walter Scott says: "The ruins of Tantallon Castle occupy a high rock projecting into the German Ocean, about two miles east of North Berwick. The circuit is of large extent, fenced upon three sides by the precipice which overhangs the sea, and on the fourth by a double ditch and very strong outworks. Tantallon was the principal castle of the Douglas family."

Douglas. Archibald Douglas, Earl of Angus (1449-1514), popularly known as "Bell-the-Cat." *See page 40.* He did not himself take part in the battle of Flodden, but his two sons and two hundred gentlemen of the name of Douglas fell on the field.

Halls and bowers. The hall of the castle was the meeting place of the men, while the bowers were the rooms of the ladies. The expression means "every part of my castle."

Lists. Wishes or pleases.

Unmeet. Unfit.

Swarthy cheek. In the poem Marmion is described as follows:

"He was a stalworth knight, and keen,
And had in many a battle been;
The scar on his brown cheek reveal'd
A token true of Bosworth Field;
His eyebrow dark and eye of fire,
Show'd spirit proud, and prompt to ire;
Yet lines of thought upon his cheek
Did deep design and counsel speak.

His forehead by his casque worn bare,
 His thick moustache, and curly hair,
 Coal black, and grizzled here and there,
 But more through toil than age.
 His square-turn'd joints, and strength of limb,
 Show'd him no carpet knight so trim,
 But in close fight a champion grim,
 In camps a leader sage."

Hoary beard. Douglas was at this time over sixty years of age.

Proud Angus. Douglas's title was Earl of Angus.

Pitch of pride. The height of your pride.

PAGE 359—Hold. Stronghold or castle.

Ashen. Pale as ashes.

Saint Bride. Saint Bridget of Ireland, a favorite saint of the house of Douglas and of the Earl of Angus in particular. Her monastery at Kildare was one of the most famous in Ireland. There was a shrine of Saint Bride at Bothwell on the Clyde River. See *Stories of the Irish Saints Told for Children* by the Rev. J. Sinclair Stevenson (Religious Tract) and *The Book of Saints and Friendly Beasts* by Abbie Farewell Brown (Houghton).

Drawbridge. The bridge which could be drawn up at will across the moat or ditch that usually surrounded the castles of this period. See page 53.

Portcullis. Michael Macmillan explains: "A frame of wood strengthened with iron, in the form of a grating, and sliding in vertical grooves in the jambs of the entrance gate of a fortified place. The vertical bars were pointed with iron below, and stuck in the ground, when the grating was dropped. Thus, whatever it fell upon would not only be crushed beneath a heavy weight, but also pierced by iron spikes."

Rowels. Spurs.

Ponderous gate. The portcullis.

Razed. Grazed.

THE DEPARTURE OF THE FLEET FROM LEMNOS

This selection is taken from Chapter II of *Gallipoli* by John Masefield, published by S. B. Gundy, Toronto. The book gives an account of the Gallipoli Expedition under Sir Ian Hamilton in 1915 during the Great War. The account is a sympathetic treatment of the whole disastrous attempt. Sir Edward Parrott in *The New Age Encyclopædia* (Nelson) tells the story: "The campaign in Gallipoli was one of the 'side shows'

in the Great War, undertaken after the failure of the unsupported naval attack on the Dardanelles on March 18th, 1915. Between that day and the landing of the British forces on the Gallipoli peninsula more than six weeks elapsed, and in the interval the enemy had so entrenched and fortified the terrain that the task had become almost insuperable. Lord Kitchener selected General Sir Ian Hamilton to command the expedition, which never had a fair chance, because General Headquarters in France regarded it as a rival and was unwilling to spare the troops necessary to make it a success. In 1915 the Allies had not yet built their strength, had no hope of forcing a decision in France, and it is now clear that had the same energy which was displayed in the indecisive battles of Neuve Chapelle and Loos been expended on the Gallipoli peninsula, victory would have been secured, Turkey would have been driven out of the war, and Bulgaria never would have entered it."

The extract in the text tells the story of the departure of the expedition to Gallipoli from the port of Mudros in the island of Lemnos. Sir Ian Hamilton's original force numbered one hundred and twenty thousand men and consisted of the splendid 29th Division (eleven regular battalions and a Territorial battalion—the Royal Scots), two naval brigades, a brigade of marines, the Australian and New Zealand (Anzac) division, some Indian troops, and the East Lancashire Territorial Division. The French force was made up of marines, colonial troops, and the Foreign Legion.

PAGE 360—Mudros. John Masefield thus describes Mudros: "The great natural harbor of Mudros, measuring some two by three miles across, provides good holding ground in from five to seven fathoms of water for half the ships of the world. Two islands in the fareway divide the entrance into three passages and make it more easy for the naval officers to defend the approaches. It is a safe harbor for ocean-going ships in all weathers. Mudros itself, the town from which the port is named, is a small collection of wretched houses inhabited by Levantines, who live by fishing, petty commerce, and a few olive gardens and vineyards. The town lies to the east of the harbor, on some rising ground or sand which stands up a little higher than the surrounding country. Behind it, rather more than a mile away, are barren hills of some eight or nine hundred feet. The port is ringed in with these hills; it looks like a great extinct crater flooded by the sea. Over the hills in fair weather the peaks of Samothrace may be seen. When the spring flowers have withered, the island is of the color of a lion's skin. Its only beauty is that of changing light."

Troy. The ancient city of Troy, the scene of the famous contest between the Greeks and the Trojans some twelve hundred years before Christ, was situated about four miles inland from the coast of Asia Minor.

Samothrace. An island of the Aegean Sea about forty miles north-west of the Dardanelles. Almost the whole of its surface is occupied by Mount Saece, which rises to a height of over five thousand feet.

Lemnos. An island in the Aegean Sea, about forty miles south-west of the Dardanelles. It is about one hundred and eighty miles in extent and has a population at present of about thirty thousand. The chief town is now Kastro on the west coast.

Thames—Mersey. The two great commercial rivers of England.

PAGE 362—Sap. A zig-zag trench running out from the front-line trench in the general direction of the enemy's trenches.

Gallipoli. A peninsula in European Turkey between the Gulf of Saros and the Dardanelles, about fifty-three miles in length and varying in width from twelve to two or three miles. It is mostly a mass of rocky ridges, covered with dense scrub and scored with gullies and ravines, with stunted forest in the hollows. The only considerable strip of level ground is around Suvla Bay. The north and west shores are rugged. On the south shore there are small natural harbors.

Imminent death. Death so close at hand.

Old quarrels. The struggle with France which began with the Hundred Years' War in the reign of Edward III and continued with more or less lengthy interruptions until the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.

Sacred. Sacred on account of her sufferings.

PAGE 363—Tenedos. A rocky island in the Aegean Sea about twelve miles south of the entrance to the Dardanelles. It is eight miles long by two to four broad.

THE FAIRIES

This fanciful little poem requires no explanation. In the old legends the gate to the house of sleep was supposed to have been of horn and gold, here ivory and gold.

Thomas Westwood was born at Enfield, England, on November 26th, 1814. His father was a friend of Charles Lamb, who encouraged the boy's taste for letters by giving him the free use of his library and introducing him to many of his literary friends. He published a number of volumes of verse, which were favorably received for their exquisite taste. He was an ardent admirer of Izaak Walton, and the latter half of his life was spent in West Flanders, collecting a remarkable library of books on angling and preparing his *Chronicle of the Compleat Angler*, one of the most elaborate biographies ever printed in England, and the *Bibliotheca Piscatoria: a Catalogue of Books on Angling, the Fisheries, and Fish-Culture*. He died in Belgium on March 13th, 1888.

In this connection the pupils might be interested in listening to *The Fairy Queen*, one of the old English ballads:

- “Come follow, follow me,
You fairy elves that be;
Which circle on the green,
Come follow Mab your queen.
Hand in hand let’s dance around,
For this place is fairy ground.
- “When mortals are at rest,
And snoring in their nest,
Unheard and unespied
Through keyholes we do glide;
Over tables, stools and shelves,
We trip it with our fairy elves.
- “And if the house be foul
With platter, dish or bowl.
Upstairs we nimbly creep,
And find the sluts asleep;
There we pinch their arms and thighs;
None escapes, nor none espies.
- “But if the house be swept,
And from uncleanness kept,
We praise the household maid,
And duly she is paid;
For we use before we go
To drop a tester in her shoe.
- “Upon a mushroom’s head
Our tablecloth is spread;
A grain of rye or wheat
Is manchet, which we eat;
Pearly drops of dew we drink
In acorn cups filled to the brink.
- “The grasshopper, gnat and fly,
Serve for our minstrelsy;
Grace said, we dance awhile
And so the time beguile;
And if the moon doth hide her head,
The glowworm lights us home to bed.

“On tops of dewy grass
So nimbly do we pass,
The young and tender stalk
Ne'er bends when we do walk;
Yet in the morning may be seen
Where we the night before have been.”

ANTS AND THEIR SLAVES

This selection is taken from one of the popular scientific works of Jules Michelet. It must not be thought that the red ants are always so submissive as in the two incidents related in the text. Henry David Thoreau in *Walden Pond* tells the story of a fierce combat between the red ants and the black ants, a contest which he himself saw. The story, which is an interesting one to read to the pupils, is as follows:

“One day when I went out to my woodpile, or rather my pile of stumps, I observed two large ants, the one red, the other much larger, nearly half an inch long, and black, fiercely contending with one another. Having once got hold, they never let go, but struggled and wrestled and rolled on the chips incessantly. Looking farther, I was surprised to find that the chips were covered with such combatants; that it was a war between two races of ants, the red always pitted against the black, and frequently two red ones to one black.

“The legions of these warriors covered all the hills and vales in my wood-yard, and the ground was already strewn with the dead and dying, both red and black. It was the only battle which I have ever witnessed, the only battlefield I ever trod while the battle was raging; internecine war; the red republicans on the one hand, and the black imperialists on the other. On every side they were engaged in deadly combat, yet without any noise that I could hear, and human soldiers never fought so resolutely.

“I watched a couple that were fast locked in each other's embraces, in a little sunny valley amid the chips, now at noonday prepared to fight till the sun went down, or life went out. The smaller red champion had fastened himself like a vise to his adversary's front, and through all the tumblings on that field, never for an instant ceased to gnaw at one of his feelers near the root, having already caused the other to go by the board; while the stronger black one dashed him from side to side, and, as I saw on looking nearer, had already divested him of several of his members.

“In the meanwhile there came along a single red ant, evidently full of excitement, who either had despatched his foe, or had not yet taken

part in the battle. He saw this unequal combat from afar,—for the blacks were nearly twice the size of the red;—he drew near with rapid pace till he stood on his guard within half an inch of the combatants; then, watching his opportunity, he sprang upon the black warrior, and commenced his operations near the root of his right fore-leg, leaving the foe to select among his own members. So there were three united for life, as if a new kind of attraction had been invented which put all other locks and cements to shame.

“I took up the chip on which the three were struggling, carried it into my house, and placed it under a tumbler on my window-sill, in order to see the issue. Holding a microscope to the first-mentioned red ant, I saw that, though he was assiduously gnawing at the near fore-leg of his enemy, having severed his remaining feeler, his own breast was all torn away, exposing what vitals he had there to the jaws of the black warrior, whose breastplate was too thick for him to pierce; and the dark carbuncles of the sufferer’s eyes shone with ferocity such as only war could excite.

“They struggled half an hour longer under the tumbler, and when I looked again, the black soldier had severed the heads of his foes from their bodies, and the still living heads were hanging on either side of him like ghastly trophies at his saddle-bow, still apparently as firmly fastened as ever, and he was endeavoring with feeble struggles, being without feelers and with only the remnant of a leg, and I know not how many other wounds, to divest himself of them; which at length, after an hour more, he accomplished. I raised the glass, and he went off over the window-sill in that crippled state. Whether he finally survived that combat, I do not know; but I thought that his industry would not be worth much thereafter. I never learned which party was victorious, nor the cause of the war; but I felt for the rest of that day as if I had had my feelings excited and harrowed by witnessing the struggle, the ferocity, and carnage of a human battle before my door.”

The best book on ants and their habits is *Ants, Bees, and Wasps* by Lord Avebury, or as he is better known, Sir John Lubbock (Murray). An interesting chapter is found in *Half Hours with the Lower Animals* by Charles Frederick Holder (American Book Co.). See also *Romance of the Insect World* by L. N. Badenoch (Macmillan), *Nature Studies in Field and Wood* by Chester A. Reed (Musson), *Stories from Natural History* by Richard Wagner (Macmillan), and *Glimpses of the Animated World* by James Johonnot (American Book Co.). *White Patch* retold by Angelo Patri (American Book Co.) tells the adventures of a small boy who became an ant.

PAGE 364—**Peter Huber.** François Huber, the Swiss naturalist, was born at Geneva on July 22nd, 1750. When he was only fifteen his sight began to fail, and he gradually became totally blind. In spite of this affliction, however, with the aid of his wife and a faithful servant, he was able to make investigations which form the basis of our scientific knowledge of the life of the bee. His great work dealing with the bees appeared in 1792. He died at Lausanne on December 22nd, 1831. His son, Peter, born in 1777, followed in his footsteps and became a distinguished naturalist. He wrote particularly on entomological subjects. His celebrated work on the ants was published in 1810. Peter died in 1840.

PAGE 367—**Jurine.** Louis Jurine (1751-1819) was a famous Swiss physician and naturalist. He wrote voluminously on his favorite subjects. **Fontainebleau.** The town of Fontainebleau is two miles from the left bank of the Seine River and about thirty-seven miles from Paris. Nearby is the famous forest, considered the most beautiful in France. Its area is 42,500 acres, with picturesque and varied scenery.

MARCO BOZZARIS

This poem first appeared in *The New York Review* in 1823. Tuckerman says: "Among Halleck's fellow clerks in Jacob Barker's counting-house was a young man of literary culture and disciplined taste, to whom he used to confide his effusions, to be read overnight and reported on at the first interval of leisure the next day. One evening, having missed the usual opportunity of quietly slipping into his friend's hand the latest 'copy of verses,' he left them at his lodging with 'Will this do?' written on the margin. The poem was 'Marco Bozzaris'."

A complete history of the composition of the poem, as well as an account of the action which made Bozzaris famous, will be found on pages 290-305 of Wilson's *Life and Letters of Fitz Greene Halleck* (Appleton).

In 1821 the Greeks rose in rebellion against the Turks, and the war for independence was begun. One of the bravest of the Greek leaders at the outbreak of the war was Marco Bozzaris, or Botzares, as the word is written in Greek. One of the Grecian generals, Caraiscos, had been defeated and was being driven southward by a force of 8,000 desperate Turks, under the command of Jelaludin Bey. Bozzaris resolved to stem the current of retreat and went to meet the Greek army, taking with him a band of 300 Suliotes and Parghiotes. After enduring incredible hardships they reached Caraiscos, who refused to join the desperate venture. Bozzaris resolved to attack alone and pushed forward. The men threw away their rifles and stole into the camp of the Turks, armed

with swords and pistols. Being mistaken for an Albanian reinforcement, they were allowed to penetrate almost into the centre of the camp. Then the cry of "Sword!" was raised and a volley poured into the tent of the Turkish general. Bozzaris fell at the first attack, but not before he had killed Mustapha, the Turkish commander-in-chief, who was resting in the tent of his nephew, Jelaludin Bey. His followers rescued his body, and continued the slaughter of the demoralized Turks until daybreak, when Caraiscos came down from the hills and completed the rout. The battle took place on August 20th, 1823, at Carpenisi. Only 50 Greeks, including Bozzaris, fell, while 800 Turks were slain. The immediate result of the battle was a long period of peace for the suffering Greeks.

PAGE 369—The Turk. Mustapha Bey, the Turkish Pasha, who had raised an immense army in the northern part of the state, with the purpose of blotting out the Greeks.

In suppliance. At this time the Greeks were subject to Turkey, but they were in a constant state of rebellion.

Signet-ring. This ring was worn by the grand vizier, or prime minister of the sultan of Turkey.

Eden's garden-bird. The bird of paradise.

Bozzaris. Bozzaris was born at Suli, in Albania, in 1788. He received his military training in the French army, and on the outbreak of the Greek war for independence joined his fellow-countrymen. He soon rose to high command and crowned his years of victory by his death at Carpenisi.

Suliot. The Suliotes were Christian Albanians living in the Cassopeian Mountains. They derived their name from Suli, their chief village. For sixty years before this their life had been one long conflict with the Turks.

Old Plataea's day. Carpenisi, where Bozzaris defeated the Turks, was very near the old battlefield of Plataea, where on September 22nd, 479 B.C., three hundred and fifty thousand Persians under Mardonius were defeated by an army of one hundred and ten thousand Greeks under Pausanias, the Spartan. Only about forty-three thousand Persians escaped, while the Greek loss was about thirteen hundred men.

Haunted air. Haunted by the spirits of the departed heroes.

PAGE 370—Altars . . . fires. For your religion and your homes.

Bozzaris fell. He had entered the tent of Mustapha Bey and had slain him. He shouted this fact to his soldiers. The Turks heard his voice, poured a volley into the tent, and killed the hero.

Storied brave. The heroes whose deeds are recorded on the monuments raised to their memory.

Proud clime. Proud of all the grand and glorious traditions of her history.

Funeral weeds. Black garments which are worn as a sign of mourning.
PAGE 371—Poet—marble—music. The poet, the sculptor, and the composer have the hero for their inspiration.

Plighted. Pledged, betrothed.

Pilgrim-circled. People make pilgrimages to the house of his birth.

THE BURNING OF MOSCOW

This selection is taken, with some omissions, from the chapter entitled "Marshal Mortier, Duke of Treviso" in Vol. I of *Napoleon and his Marshals* by Joel Tyler Headley, published in 1846.

Napoleon Bonaparte was born at Ajaccio, in Corsica, on August 15th, 1769. His father, a distinguished soldier, destined him for the army, and in 1779 sent him to a military school at Brienne, where he remained for five years. In 1785, after a year at the military school in Paris, he received a commission in the artillery, and by 1792 had attained the rank of captain. In 1792 he distinguished himself at the capture of Toulon and soon rose to the rank of brigadier-general. After a period of neglect and suspicion, he was again given command, in recognition of his services in quelling an insurrection of the National Guard at Paris. In 1796 he was appointed commander-in-chief of the army in Italy, and a few days later married Josephine de Beauharnais, to whose influence he was largely indebted for his command. In Italy he was completely successful in all his campaigns, winning at the same time the devoted love of his soldiers and the admiration of the French people. In 1798 he led an expedition against Egypt, with the object of striking a blow at British supremacy in the far East, but the destruction of his fleet by Nelson and the obstinate defence of Acre by Sir Sidney Smith shattered his plans and compelled his retreat. In August, 1799, he returned to France and was at once chosen by popular vote first consul, with power little less than absolute. He continued to hold the title of first consul until May, 1804, when he was chosen, amid the acclamations of the people, emperor of the French.

From this time until 1814 Napoleon was engaged in a series of desperate wars with almost all the nations of Europe, in which for the most part he proved victorious. For ten years practically the whole of Europe, with the exception of Great Britain, was at his feet. He was kept from invading Britain only by the vigilance and inflexible courage of the British naval commanders. His most disastrous campaign was in 1812, when he invaded Russia with an army of nearly half a million men, very few of whom returned to tell the story. In 1809 he was divorced from Josephine, and early in the next year married Maria Louise, daughter of the

emperor of Austria. In 1811 a son was born to whom he gave the title "king of Rome." In 1814 the nations of Europe combined against him and compelled his abdication. He retired to Elba, but remained there only a short time. In February, 1815, he again raised the imperial standard in France. For one hundred days he maintained his power, but on June 18th he was overwhelmingly defeated at the battle of Waterloo. He surrendered himself to the British and was sent as a prisoner to the island of St. Helena. He died there on May 5th, 1821. His body was afterwards removed to France and buried in a splendid mausoleum in Paris. See *The Story of Napoleon* by H. E. Marshall in *The Children's Heroes Series* (Jack), *The Story of Napoleon* by Arthur O. Cooke in *Herbert Strang's Readers* (Oxford Press), *Napoleon* by Herbert Fisher in *The Home University Library* (Williams), and *The Story of Napoleon* by Harold F. B. Wheeler (Harrap).

On June 24th, 1812, Napoleon set out on his campaign to conquer Russia. His army consisted of about 600,000 men, of whom only 200,000 were French, the remainder being a mixture of Germans, Austrians, Poles, Swiss, Dutch, Italians, Spaniards, and Portuguese. The Russians made no attempt to check the invaders; they retreated because they could not help themselves. At Borodino the first stand was made, and at the end of the battle 70,000 men lay dead or wounded on the field. The French continued their march, and at last on September 14th Moscow was reached. Then followed the incidents related in the text. The subsequent events of the campaign may be described in the words of Charles F. Warwick: "Napoleon, at last aroused from his indecision and lethargy, gave the order to retreat, and on October 18th the Grand Army began the memorable march homewards. When Borodino was reached, the French were horrified to see that the men who had fallen in the engagement fought on that field still lay unburied. When the army approached, vultures arose from their ghastly feast in such numbers that the great flocks darkened the sun. Up to this time the French had not suffered intensely from the cold, but on November 4th the first storm of winter broke upon this mighty host. The cold increased in bitterness from day to day. Food grew scarcer and scarcer, the principal ration being a broth made of horse-flesh thickened with flour. Supplies of all kinds were captured by bands of plundering Cossacks, who hung night and day on the rear and flanks of the retreating army. Savage and infuriated peasants armed with agricultural implements such as hoes, scythes, pitchforks, and spades cruelly beat to death the famished, benumbed, and exhausted stragglers. Great flocks of vultures and birds of prey hovered menacingly above the troops; packs of dogs and wolves fought with starving men over the carcasses of dead horses; fuel was scarce and the cold intolerable; the

nights, sixteen hours in length, seemed almost interminable. In the daytime the soldiers were blinded by the fields of glistening snow. Many of them cast aside their arms and equipment, while others in sheer exhaustion and despair threw themselves on the ground never to rise again. On November 9th the army reached Smolensk, where it remained until the 14th, when it again took up its march. The hardships increased after leaving Smolensk. Napoleon, clad in furs, with staff in hand, marched through the snow-drifts, facing the blizzards side by side with his soldiers. Of the half-million men who at the beginning of the invasion had proudly crossed the Niemen, only 20,000 crossed over the bridge at Kovno on the return. The Grand Army had been destroyed by fire and frost and flood. Napoleon had at last found his master in the elements." A vivid description of the Russian invasion is given in Marshall's *The Story of Napoleon*. See also *Historical Tales: French and Historical Tales: Russian* both by Charles Morris (Lippincott). A colored illustration of Napoleon watching the burning of Moscow is on page 152 of Book III of *The New Age History Readers* (Nelson).

PAGE 372—Moscow. The present capital of Russia, situated on the Moskwa River. The city had at this time a population of over a quarter of a million. See *Europe* by T. D. Herbertson in *Descriptive Geographies from Original Sources* (Macmillan).

Goal of his wishes. "Here I am at last! Here I am at Moscow, in the ancient place of the Czars! In the Kremlin itself," said Napoleon. He seemed to think that once the French were in possession of Moscow, the Czar would regard the war as over and would sue for peace.

Marshal Murat. Joachim Murat was perhaps the most brilliant of all Napoleon's marshals. He was the son of an innkeeper and began life as a waiter in a Paris hotel. He joined the army, proved himself a dashing cavalry leader, was made a marshal of the Empire, and finally king of Naples. In 1800 he married the sister of Napoleon. But his ambition proved his ruin. He attempted to deceive both Napoleon and the allied powers. He was deprived of his throne, was captured in an attempt to regain it, and was shot October 13th, 1815. See a brilliantly written account of Marshal Murat, with a frontispiece portrait, on page 1 of Volume II of *Napoleon and his Marshals* by Joel Tyler Headley.

Abandoned city. Thomas H. Watson says: "But it was soon apparent that Moscow was not like Berlin or Vienna. Here were no crowds of spectators to gaze upon the victors. The streets were silent, empty. The houses were deserted. Here was a vast city without citizens. The French were dumbfounded. Napoleon refused at first to believe: 'the thing was preposterous.' The conquerors marched through the streets,

the military bands playing, 'To us is the victory,' but the vast solitude awed them as they marched."

Marshal Mortier. Edouard Adolphe Mortier was born in 1768. He was originally a farmer, but obtained a commission in a cavalry regiment in 1791, and in a few years had attained the rank of general. In 1804 he was created a marshal of the Empire and later made Duke of Treviso. He took part in most of Napoleon's campaigns and distinguished himself particularly at Friedland and Dirnstein. During the Russian campaign he commanded the Young Guard and was made governor of Moscow. He was killed by an infernal machine in 1835. Mortier was one of the most loved and trusted of all Napoleon's generals.

PAGE 373—**First light.** On the retreat from Moscow Napoleon lost over half a million men. This disaster was the beginning of the end of his empire.

Kremlin. "The Kremlin with its lofty encompassing walls and towers, its imposing gateways and its churches soaring aloft with their clusters of gilded cupolas, presents a spectacle unique among the architectural displays of the world. It occupies the Brovitzky hill, rising steeply from the left bank of the Moskwa to a height of about 125 feet, and is roughly triangular in form. The wall is over a mile in circuit and about 65 feet high, and is surmounted by 21 towers. There are five gateways leading into the sacred precincts." The Kremlin is really the central part of the city. It contains the palace of the Czars. An excellent colored picture of the Kremlin is found in *Europe in Pictures* by H. Clive Barnard (Macmillan).

PAGE 374—**Young Guard.** To distinguish it from the "Old Guard" composed of Napoleon's veterans.

PAGE 375—**Moskwa.** The river on which Moscow is situated.

HORATIUS

This selection is a portion of "Horatius," the first of *Lays of Ancient Rome*, published in 1842. Macaulay takes for granted that what is called the history of the kings and consuls of Rome is to a large extent fabulous. He supposes that a literature, older than any now preserved, existed in Rome, and that this literature was a product of the people and written in the form of ballads. He further supposes that these forgotten ballads were the sources from which the Annalists, who later compiled the history of Rome, drew their material. The *Lays of Ancient Rome* is an attempt to reproduce some of these ancient ballads. A full account of all the incidents connected with the story is given in *Historical Tales: Roman* by Charles Morris (Lippincott). See also *Famous Men of Rome* by John H. Haaren and A. B. Poland (American Book Co.).

Macaulay, writing of "Horatius," says: "The following ballad is supposed to have been made about a hundred and twenty years after the war which it celebrates, and just before the taking of Rome by the Gauls. The author seems to have been an honest citizen, proud of the military glory of his country, sick of the disputes of factions, and much given to pining after good old times which had never really existed. The allusion, however, to the partial manner in which the public lands were allotted could proceed only from a plebeian; and the allusion to the fraudulent sale of spoils marks the date of the poem (393 B.C.), and shows that the poet shared in the general discontent with which the proceedings of Camillus, after the taking of Veii, were regarded."

Professor Henry Morley, in speaking of the mythical character of the story of Horatius, comments: "In the first of these *Lays*, the old Roman story of three Romans who saved Rome by keeping the bridge over the Tiber against all the force of Porsena, was the ingenious softening of a cruel fact. It turned a day of deep humiliation into the bright semblance of a day of glory. For we learn from Tacitus and others that Porsena became absolute master of Rome. The Senate of Rome paid homage to him with offering of an ivory throne, a crown, a sceptre, a triumphal robe; and he forbade the use of iron by the Romans in forging weapons or armor. The happy time of release from thralldom was long celebrated by a custom of opening auctions with a first bid for 'the goods of Porsena.' What did this matter? The songs of the people were free to suppress a great defeat, and put in its place the myth of a heroic deed; some small fact usually serving as seed that shall grow and blossom out into a noble tale. A ballad-maker who should stop the course of a popular legend to investigate its origin, and who should be dull enough to include that investigation in his song, would deserve to be howled to death by the united voices of his countrymen."

The first king of Rome was Romulus, the founder of the city. After him six kings ruled in succession, the last being Lucius Tarquinius, surnamed *Superbus*, or the Proud, on account of his haughty disposition. On the death of the fifth king, Tarquinius Priscus, Servius Tullius succeeded to the throne, and reigned for forty-four years. Tarquinius Priscus, however, had left two sons, Lucius and Aruns, and Servius, fearing that they might conspire against him, had married them to his two daughters. His eldest daughter was given in marriage to Lucius, who was bold and ambitious, while the younger sister was wedded to Aruns, the gentler and quieter of the two brothers. But Tullia was also bold and ambitious, and she and Lucius soon conspired to seize the throne. Lucius murdered his wife, Tullia her husband, and the two were married. Shortly afterwards they caused the death of Servius, and

Lucius, with the aid of the nobles who were angered at the favor shown to the common people, had himself proclaimed king.

The noble families who had helped Tarquin in his plans soon had reason to regret their action. Tarquin, it is true, oppressed the common people by loading them with taxes, and by compelling them to work without pay on the roads and public buildings, but at the same time he reduced the power of the nobles and deprived them of many of their privileges. All who opposed him were put to death or banished from the city. Both nobles and common people were soon anxious to get rid of the tyrant. Tarquin, however, strengthened his position by forming alliances with neighboring kings and peoples, especially with the Etruscan and Latin cities, so that he became daily stronger and more absolute. The citizens were compelled to submit, as they did not feel themselves strong enough to oppose successfully their tyrant king.

Tarquin had in various ways succeeded in making himself the head of the confederacy of Latin cities, but Gabii, an important stronghold, held out against him. The city was finally won through an act of the basest treachery on the part of Sextus, the youngest son of the king. Sextus fled to Gabii, and there begged for refuge, saying that he had been driven from Rome by the cruelty of his father. The people of Gabii believed him, and in time he became the leader of their armies. Tarquin allowed his son to win some unimportant victories over the Romans, and this increased the confidence of the Gabians in their general. When Sextus felt himself secure in his position, he made false charges against leading citizens, and had many of them banished and others put to death. In a short time there was no one strong enough to oppose him, and he surrendered the city to his father. The possession of Gabii made Tarquin the undisputed master of the Latin League. Although it was Sextus who had brought about this result, yet it was this same Sextus who was the means of ruining the Tarquins and causing their banishment from Rome.

Tarquin, in his efforts to strengthen his power, did not spare even the members of his own family. He was jealous of his sister's sons and put the elder to death, but allowed the younger, Lucius Junius, to live, as he did not think him capable of doing any harm. In reality, Lucius was a very able man, but feigned stupidity in order to deceive his uncle and to save his own life. So successful was he that he imposed not only upon his uncle, but also upon all the people, and gained for himself the surname of Brutus, or the Dullard. He was waiting the opportunity to serve his country by driving Tarquin from the throne.

Among the most important public works undertaken by Tarquin was the erection of a temple on the Capitoline Hill, in honor of the three great divinities, Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva. While the temple was being

constructed, an unusual incident occurred. As a sacrifice was being offered to the gods, a snake appeared and devoured the animal that was being burned on the altar. Tarquin could not understand what this marvel might mean, and sent his two sons, Aruns and Titus, accompanied by Brutus, to consult the famous oracle of the god Apollo, at Delphi, in Greece. The answer was not satisfactory but the young men were curious and asked many questions. Among others, they asked who should rule after Tarquin. The answer was: "Whichever of you three young men shall first kiss your mother shall be the next ruler of Rome." Titus and Aruns at once set out for Rome, each eager to be the first to kiss his mother; but Brutus, with a clearer idea of what the oracle really meant, as soon as he landed in Italy, fell to the ground and kissed the earth, the mother of us all.

When Titus, Aruns, and Brutus returned home, they at once joined the army that was besieging Ardea, one of the cities with which Rome was then at war. One night, during a feast at which Collatinus, who was the cousin of Tarquin and the governor of Collatia, was present, a dispute arose among the young men as to whose wife should be held in the highest esteem. Collatinus proposed that they should visit their homes in a body that evening, and find out how their wives were occupying their time. The proposal was accepted, and the house of each was visited in turn. At Rome they found the princesses enjoying a splendid banquet, but at the home of Collatinus, in Collatia, they found his beautiful wife, Lucretia, with her maidens round her, engaged in spinning wool for the household use. All agreed in awarding the highest honor to Lucretia.

Soon after this visit Sextus Tarquin deeply injured Lucretia, who sent at once for her husband, Collatinus, and for her father, Spurius Lucretius, who was governor of Rome in the absence of the king. Collatinus brought with him Brutus, and Lucretius came, accompanied by Publius Valerius. Lucretia told them of the bitter wrong that had been done her, and after pledging them to avenge her, stabbed herself to the heart. Brutus, who now threw off his mask of stupidity, plucked the dagger from her breast, and holding it up, exclaimed: "By this pure blood I swear before the gods that I will pursue Lucius Tarquinius, the Proud, and all his bloody house with fire, sword, or in whatsoever way I may, and that neither they nor any other shall hereafter be king of Rome." The body was then carried into the Forum of Collatia, where Brutus told the story to the citizens, and called on them to rid the Roman dominions of the Tarquins. The people of Collatia rose at once, and Brutus led them to Rome. Here Brutus told the story again and urged the citizens to join him in avenging the injury done to the dead Lucretia.

His appeal was answered. The citizens armed themselves and closed the gates of the city.

As soon as Tarquin heard of the revolt, he hastened to Rome, on the way crossing Brutus, who was hurrying to Ardea. The army, as soon as they heard the story, placed themselves under the command of Brutus, drove out the sons of Tarquin, and marched to Rome. In the meantime Tarquin had reached the city, but was refused admittance. There was nothing left for the king and his sons but to take refuge with their friends and allies outside of Rome.

The Romans now made up their minds to have no more kings, but instead they elected two chief magistrates, who were afterwards known as consuls. The consuls were elected each year by the whole body of the people, and, during their year of office, they held almost kingly power. The choice of the people at the first election fell on Brutus and on Collatinus, the husband of Lucretia. Collatinus, however, was soon compelled to resign, as he had been too closely related to the Tarquins in their days of power; and Publius Valerius, surnamed Poplicola, or "the friend of the people," was elected in his place.

But the Tarquins in their exile were not idle. Messengers who came to Rome to demand the return of the private property of the king succeeded in forming a conspiracy among a number of the young nobles who were favorable to the exiled house. A slave chanced to hear the conspirators arranging their plans and betrayed the plot to Brutus. The messengers were arrested, and letters were found on them which implicated a large number of young Romans. Among those who had signed the letters were Titus and Tiberius, the sons of Brutus. The stern consul would not listen to any appeals for mercy, and had his two sons executed in his presence, the first of all the plotters. This was the first attempt of the Tarquins to regain their power.

When Tarquin saw that the plot within the city had failed, he persuaded the people of Tarquinii and Veii to come to his assistance, and to make war on the Romans. Brutus led the Roman cavalry, and was opposed to Aruns, the son of Tarquin, who commanded the cavalry of the enemy. When Aruns saw Brutus, he rushed at him, and in the single combat that followed both leaders were killed. The result of the battle was in doubt, but in the night a mysterious voice proclaimed that the Romans were victorious, as they had lost one man less than their opponents. The enemy fled in the night, and thus the second attempt of Tarquin to regain his throne ended in failure.

Tarquin now turned for assistance to Lars Porsena, king of Clusium. Porsena was at the head of the Etruscan League, a confederacy of the twelve great cities of Etruria, and he soon had gathered a powerful army

with which to compel the Romans to submission. The story of his unsuccessful attempt to surprise the city is told in "Horatius." After the destruction of the bridge, Porsena laid siege to Rome and refused to make peace unless the Tarquins were restored. But the Romans held out bravely, and, in spite of famine and disease, for a long time refused to surrender. Finally they were compelled to admit Porsena into the city and to acknowledge him as master. They agreed to give up all the lands they had won from the Etruscans, and to furnish hostages as a pledge that they would carry out their promises to the Etruscans. Porsena, however, did not insist on the restoration of Tarquin. The third attempt of the Tarquins was thus unsuccessful. The story of the fourth and last attempt is told in "The Battle of the Lake Regillus," another of Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*. At this battle the forces of Tarquin were completely defeated.

PAGE 379—Lars Porsena. The honorary title *Lars* usually was given to the Etruscan kings. It is supposed to mean "king."

Clusium. The city of Clusium, now known as Chiusi, was situated on the river Clanis, a tributary of the Tiber, about eighty miles from Rome.

Nine Gods. Only nine of the gods of the Etruscans had control over the thunder; hence they were recognized as the chief divinities.

Trysting day. A place and time at which the armies should meet.

Amain. With the utmost speed.

Yellow Tiber. Probably so called from the reddish yellow soil at the bottom of the river.

Champaign. Open country.

PAGE 380—Skins of wine. Bags or bottles, made of the skins of goats, in which the wine was carried.

Rock Tarpeian. In the early days of Rome while the Sabines were besieging the city, Tarpeia, the daughter of the governor of the citadel, offered to open the gates, provided the Sabines would give her "that which they wore on their left arms," meaning their gold bracelets. The offer was accepted, and Tarpeia opened the gates. As the Sabines entered, their leader threw not only his bracelets, but his shield, which he also wore on his left arm, over Tarpeia, and his men following his example, she was crushed to death. She was buried where she fell, and the rock was from that time known by her name. Traitors were in after days hurled to their death from this rock.

Burghers. Citizens.

Fathers of the City. The *Patres Conscripti*, or *enrolled fathers*, were the members of the Senate, the governing body of Rome. At this time the Senate numbered three hundred members.

PAGE 381—Crustumarium. One of the Latin cities not far from Rome.
Ostia. The seaport of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber, about sixteen miles from the city. The site of the ancient town is now three miles inland.

Janiculum. A hill across the Tiber from Rome, with which it was connected by a bridge. This bridge was probably the first to be built across the Tiber. One of the early kings of Rome had erected a strong fortress on the top of the hill, as a protection against the Etruscans.

I wis. An adverb meaning "certainly" or "assuredly." The word was originally written *ywis*.

Senate. See page 207.

Consul. After the expulsion of the kings, the chief officers of the Roman state, two in number and elected annually, were termed consuls. See *Introduction*.

Fathers. The Senators were called "Patres Conscripti" or conscript fathers.

Gowns. The outer garment, or *toga*, of the Romans was a long robe of white wool.

River Gate. The Porta Flumentana, opposite Janiculum.

The bridge. The Pons Sublicius, a wooden bridge which connected Rome with Janiculum.

PAGE 382—Twelve fair cities. The Etruscan confederacy was composed of twelve cities.

Umbrian. Umbria was a division of Italy, lying to the east of Etruria.

Gaul. About this time the Gauls were crossing the Alps from France and Germany, and settling in northern Italy.

Port and vest. Bearing and dress.

Lucumo. Prince or noble.

Fourfold shield. Made of four thicknesses of ox-hide.

Brand. Sword.

Thrasymene. The largest lake in Etruria, about thirty miles in circumference, but very shallow. It is now known as Lago di Perneia.

Sextus. Sextus Tarquin. See *Introduction*.

PAGE 383—Horatius. Horatius was surnamed *Cocles*, "the one-eyed."

PAGE 384—Holy maidens. The Vestal Virgins or Priestesses of the goddess Vesta, whose duty it was to guard the sacred fire that was kept by them always burning on the altar of the goddess. It was believed that the extinguishing of this fire meant the ruin of Rome. The priestesses, of whom there were six, were held in special reverence and had many privileges. They were sworn never to marry; if they did so, they paid the penalty of breaking their oath by being buried alive. Vesta was worshipped in Rome as the protectress of the home. A beautiful temple was

erected in her honor in the Forum. See *Myths of Greece and Rome* by H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.).

Ramnian . . . Titian. The three defenders of the bridge are supposed to represent the three original tribes into which the Romans were divided: the *Ramnes*, or descendants of the Latins; the *Tities*, or descendants of the Sabines; and the *Luceres*, or descendants of the Etruscans. The Romans were a mixed people, made up principally of Latins, Sabines, and Etruscans.

Lands. The public lands were principally acquired by conquest and were supposed to be let without favor to the citizens at a certain rental. It was one of the main grievances of the common people, or *Plebeians*, against the nobles, or *Patricians*, that the latter had their undue share of these public lands.

Spoils. Booty captured in war, which was supposed to be sold and the proceeds fairly divided among all the citizens. The reference here is probably to the dissatisfaction of the Plebeians at the way in which Camillus had disposed of the spoils taken at the capture of Veii. He is said to have sold the spoils, and, instead of dividing the proceeds among the people, to have placed the money in the public treasury. He was also accused of having taken for his own use the great bronze gates of the city. Public opinion was so strong against him that he was forced to go into exile.

PAGE 385—**Tribunes.** Magistrates elected by the Plebeians themselves whose duty it was to protect the rights of the common people against the Patricians.

Harness. Armor.

PAGE 386—**Tifernum.** An Umbrian town on the Tiber, near the borders of Etruria.

Ilva's mines. The iron mines of the island of Ilva, or Elba, off the coast of Etruria.

Nequinum. A city about fifty-six miles from Rome, situated on a steep and lofty hill overlooking the river Nar.

Nar. Now the Nera, a tributary of the Tiber. Virgil speaks of "Nar white with its sulphurous waters."

Falerii. One of the cities of the Etruscan League, a few miles from Mount Soracte.

Urgo. A small island in the Mediterranean about twenty miles from Corsica.

Rover of the sea. A pirate.

PAGE 387—**Volsinium.** A city not far from Rome. It is said to have been destroyed later by fire from heaven.

Cosa. A seaport town of Etruria, now known as Ansedonia.

Albinia's shore. The Albinia is one of the rivers of Etruria, flowing into the sea.

Campania's hinds. The peasants of Campania, the district along the seashore south of Latium.

She-wolf's litter. According to the legend, Romulus, the founder of Rome, and his brother Remus were suckled by a she-wolf, after escaping from the Tiber, on which they had been cast by their grandfather Amulius. *See page 257.*

PAGE 389—Mount Alvernus. A heavily wooded hill in the Apennines, near the source of the Tiber.

Augurs. A body of priests at Rome who were entrusted with the duty of reading the future, by observing any unusual occurrences, such as the flight of birds, the lightning, etc. No act of any public importance was undertaken by the Romans without finding from the augurs whether the signs were favorable.

PAGE 392—Palatinus. One of the seven hills of Rome. *See page 258.* At this time the dwellings of the principal Patrician families were situated on this hill.

Father Tiber. The river was worshipped by the Romans as a god.

PAGE 393—Changing. Exchanging.

Ween. Think or imagine.

PAGE 394—Public right. Belonging to the state.

Comitium. The portion of the Roman Forum, on the north-east side, in which the citizens met in their assembly, called the *Comitia Curiata*. The Forum was a large open space situated between the Palatine, the Capitoline, and the Quirinal hills. It was originally a marsh, but was drained by one of the early kings and set apart as a public meeting place. Around the open space were built shops, temples, and public buildings.

Volscian. The Volsci were one of the ancient peoples of Italy, with whom the Romans waged war for many years. Their territory was adjacent to that of Rome. At the time this *Lay* was supposed to have been sung, the Romans had inflicted a severe defeat on them.

Juno. The wife of Jupiter, the king of the gods, and one of the supreme deities of the Romans. She was worshipped as the goddess of marriage and child-birth.

PAGE 395—Algidus. A part of the Alban Hills, about twelve miles from Rome.

FROM CANADA, BY LAND

This selection forms a part of Chapter V of *Pioneers of the Pacific Coast: A Chronicle of Sea Rovers and Fur Hunters* by Agnes C. Laut in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook).

Alexander Mackenzie was born about 1755 at Stornoway in the island of Lewis on the west coast of Scotland. In 1779 he came to Canada and at once embarked in the fur-trade. Little is known of his early movements, but after a short experience at Detroit, he made his way to the West in 1785. Two years later, when the rival fur companies—The North West Company and the XY Company—united, he was placed in charge of operations in the far West, and soon proved his worth both as a trader and as an organizer. His interest, however, was as much in exploration as in trading, and he made two famous journeys, the first of which resulted in the discovery of the Mackenzie River in 1789, and the second overland to the Pacific Ocean in 1793. Subsequently he devoted himself to the fur-trade, and in 1802 was knighted. For a time he represented Huntingdon county in the Legislative Assembly of Lower Canada, and later resided in Scotland. He died March 11th, 1820. *His Voyages from Montreal through the Continent of North America to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans*, originally published in 1801, is reprinted in *The Commonwealth Library* (Barnes). Excellent descriptions of the voyages of Mackenzie are given in *Knights-Errant of the Wilderness* by Morden H. Long (Macmillan), in *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada* by W. S. Wallace (Oxford Press), and in *Pathfinders of the West* by Agnes C. Laut (Macmillan). See also *The Search for the Western Sea* by Lawrence J. Burpee (Musson).

The paragraph in *Pioneers of the Pacific Coast* preceding the selection in the text is as follows: "Up in the Athabaska country, eating his heart out with chagrin because his associates in the North-West Company of Montreal had ignored his voyage of discovery down the Mackenzie River in 1789, the young trader Alexander Mackenzie heard rumors of new wealth in furs on the Pacific. Who could be the first overland to that western sea? If Spaniard and Russian had tapped the source of wealth from the ocean side, why could not the Nor'westers cross the mountains and secure the furs from the land side? Mackenzie had heard, too, of the fabled Great River of the West. Could he but catch the swish of its upper current, what would hinder him floating down it to the sea? Mackenzie thought and thought, and paced his quarters up at Fort Chipewyan, on Lake Athabaska, till his mind became so filled with the idea of an overland journey to the Pacific that he could not sleep or rest. He had felt himself handicapped by a lack of knowledge of astronomy and surveying when on the voyage to the Arctic, so he asked leave of absence from his company, came down by canoe to Montreal, and sailed for England to spend the winter studying in London. The spring of 1792 saw him hurrying back to Fort Chipewyan to prepare for the expedition on which he had set his heart. When October came he launched

his canoes, fully manned and provisioned, on Lake Athabaska, and, ascending the Peace River to a point about six miles above the forks formed by its junction with the Smoky, he built a rude palisaded fur-post and spent the winter there."

PAGE 395.—Alexander Mackay. After returning from the journey overland to the Pacific, Mackay was in charge of Isle à la Crosse House for two years. In 1804 he was admitted a partner in the North-West Company, but in 1810 he joined the Pacific Fur Company. In 1811 he was murdered by the Indians, along with a number of others, on the vessel *Tonquin*. See British Columbia edition of *History of Canada* by I. Gammell (Gage).

North-West Company. See page 153.

Voyageurs. See page 152.

PAGE 396—Brigades. Each spring the furs gathered in winter were loaded into boats and sent forth on their long journey to Montreal.

Rocky Mountain Portage. This elbow across the Peace River in the mountains was first used by Mackenzie. The North-West Company afterwards had a post there.

PAGE 397—Port thwart. The thwart of the canoe on the left hand side facing the bow.

Maelstrom. A boiling eddy. The name was originally applied to a famous whirlpool near Norway, fabled to suck in and swallow up vessels.

Tracked. Drawn ahead by the rope.

Pemmican. A food much used by the Indians and voyageurs. It was made from dried buffalo meat mixed with the fat of the animal. It was a very strengthening food, if not entirely palatable.

PAGE 399—Tarn. A mountain lake.

Simon Fraser. Simon Fraser (1776-1862) was brought to Canada as a child from New York State. In 1792 he joined the North-West Company and ten years later became a partner. He explored the great river which now bears his name. In 1811 he was in charge of the Red River Department. About 1821 he retired from the fur-trade. See *The Conquest of the Great North-West* by Agnes C. Laut (Macmillan) and W. S. Wallace's *By Star and Compass: Tales of the Explorers of Canada*.

PAGE 401—Carrier Indians. A tribe of the Dené or Athapascan Indians of British Columbia. They were so called by the early fur-traders, because they were accustomed to carry with them the ashes of their dead.

PAGE 403—Cariboo Road. The celebrated road built by the Royal Engineers into the interior of British Columbia during the governorship of Sir James Douglas. See British Columbia edition of Gammell's *History of Canada*.

Cached. Concealed, but so that they could find them on their return.
Totem cedar-poles. "Among the Indians of North America, a natural object, usually an animal, was assumed as the token or emblem of a clan or family." The totem also had a religious significance.

Dug-outs. Canoes made of cedar logs hollowed out by fire or by the knife.
PAGE 404—Vancouver. Captain George Vancouver (1758-1798) sailed up the west coast of North America in the summer of 1792. He spent two years in exploring the Pacific waters and surveying and mapping the coastal regions. He also proved the existence of Vancouver Island. See British Columbia edition of Gammell's *History of Canada*.

CREATION

This beautiful hymn appeared in No. 465 of *The Spectator*, published on Saturday, August 23rd, 1712. It is a paraphrase of *Psalm xix, 1-4*. Addison says in introducing the verses: "As such a bold and sublime manner of thinking furnishes very noble matter for an ode, the reader may see it wrought into the following one." The hymn enumerates the various wonders of the universe and sings a song of faith in a divine creator.

PAGE 405—Great Original proclaim. "All creation is a revelation of God, but the heavens in their vastness, splendor, order, and mystery are the most impressive reflections of His greatness and majesty. The simplest observer can read the message; but how much more emphatic and significant has it become through the discoveries of modern astronomy."

Wondrous tale. A. F. Kirkpatrick in *The Book of Psalms in The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges* (Cambridge Press) says: "This proclamation is continuous and unceasing. Each day, each night, hands on the message to its successor. Day and night are mentioned separately, for each has a special message entrusted to it: the day tells of splendor, power, beneficence; the night tells of vastness, order, mystery, beauty, repose. They are like the two parts of a choir chanting forth alternately the praises of God."

Dark terrestrial ball. The earth.

Reason's ear. Addison notes: "Aristotle says that should a man live underground and there converse with works of art and mechanism, and should afterwards be brought up into the open day, and see the several glories of the heavens and earth, he would immediately pronounce them the works of such a being as we define God to be."

SEVEN TIMES FOUR

This selection is one of the *Songs of Seven*, published in 1863 in a volume entitled *Poems*. See page 57. It is entitled "Seven Times Four—Motherhood."

The poem in the text deals with a happy wife and mother, rejoicing in her children and waiting expectantly the arrival of her husband who is absent on a distant voyage. All nature is joyous, sympathizing with her mood, and the world is full of laughter and devoid of tears. The poem concludes with the thought that all this happiness is owing to God "that is over us all."

PAGE 406—Cuckoo-buds. The cuckoo flower, or lady's smock, is very common in England and grows during the springtime in every meadow. The flowers are a pale purple or lilac, sometimes almost white. See colored plate in *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

Hedge-sparrow. A quiet little bird, more akin, however, to the robin than to the house-sparrow. He is dressed in quiet colors and has a soft little voice. See *British Birds* by F. B. Kirkman in *The People's Books* (Jack) and *Birds Shown to the Children* by M. K. C. Scott (Jack). A colored illustration of the bird is found in *A Book of Birds* by W. P. Pycraft (Ryerson Press).

Fain. Fondly.

Cowslips. The queen of the English meadow flower. The flowers are lemon-colored and grow in clusters at the end of a stout, round stalk. See colored plate in Janet Harvey Kelman's *Flowers Shown to the Children*.

One missing. The husband and father.

Thrall. Burden.

A PIONEER'S WIFE

This selection is taken from Chapter XV of *Maria Chapdelaine* by Louis Hémon, translated from the original French by W. H. Blake and published by The Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited, Toronto. The book is a "picture of a French-Canadian family, their life of steadfast labor on a half-cleared farm, their simple joys, their quietly-accepted sorrows, their love for the country which generations of their own people have made essentially theirs." Three excellent selections from the novel are given in *A Book of Canadian Prose and Verse* by Edmund Kemper Broadus and Eleanor Hammond Broadus (Macmillan). The entire story is well worth reading by the pupils. Maria, the heroine of the novel, is the daughter of Samuel and Laura Chapdelaine. Telesphore is another of the children.

Louis Hémon, the author of *Maria Chapdelaine* was born at Brest, France, on October 12th, 1880. He was educated in Paris, where he took his degree in modern Oriental languages. Mr. W. H. Blake says:

"His first contribution to literature was a story, *La Rivière*, submitted in competition to a sporting paper, the *Velo*, in 1904. This gained him the first prize, and its qualities in matter and style brought the prediction that he would take a distinguished place among French authors. The *Auto* succeeded the *Velo* and to both papers Louis Hémon contributed leading articles on sporting and literary subjects until his death. For one of these in 1906 another prize was awarded him. He made a long stay in England to learn the language which he finally spoke as well as his own." In 1908 he published a novel, *Lizzie Blakeston*, which was greatly admired for both manner and fidelity of portraiture. Sundry French papers published other stories and novels of his, and *La Patrie* of Montreal, on January 12th, 1912, contained an article by him: *Quebec, ville Française*. He lived in Canada for a year and a half in 1912 and 1913, spending months together on the farms, in field work, to learn the ways of the people at first hand. This was chiefly in the neighborhood of Lake St. John—at Roberval, St. Gédeon, and especially at Peribonka. *Maria Chapdelaine* was then written. He was the victim of a railway accident at Chapleau on the line of the Canadian Pacific in Ontario on July 8th, 1913. He is buried there, and a monument has recently been erected to his memory.

GENERAL BROCK

This poem was published in 1860 in *Hesperus and Other Poems and Lyrics*, where it is entitled "Brock." It has a sub-title "October 13th, 1859," with a footnote, "The day of the inauguration of the new Monument on Queenston Heights." Only four of the six stanzas of the original are printed in the text, the last two stanzas being omitted:

"Some souls are the Hesperides
 Heaven sends to guard the golden age,
 Illuming the historic page
 With records of their pilgrimage;
 True Martyr, Hero, Poet, Sage:
 And he was one of these.

"Each in his lofty sphere sublime
 Sits crowned above the common throng,
 Wrestling with some Pythonic wrong,
 In prayer, in thunder, thought, or song;
 Briareus-limbed, they sweep along,
 The Typhons of the time."

Thomas Guthrie Marquis says: "A magnificent monument was erected to Brock's memory on the site of the battle of Queenston Heights. This monument was 135 feet from base to summit, and rose 485 feet above the Niagara River. On October 13th, 1824, the remains of General Sir Isaac Brock and his aide-de-camp Lieutenant-Colonel Macdonell were removed from Fort George, where they had rested for twelve years, and deposited in a vault beneath the monument. On April 17th, 1840, a wretched creature named Lett exploded a heavy charge of gunpowder under this monument and utterly ruined it. Lett was one of the insurgents of 1837 and was compelled to flee to the United States when the rising was crushed. He thought that by destroying this monument, so dear to every Canadian, he would avenge himself on Canada. His act had the effect of making the memory of Brock more dear to Canadians. A monster meeting was held at Queenston, and it was at once decided to erect a larger and more beautiful monument a short distance from the old one. In 1853 the foundation stone was laid by Lieutenant-Colonel Macdonell, a brother of the man whose remains were to rest beneath it by the side of Brock's. This monument was completed in 1856. It is 190 feet from its base to the noble figure of Brock that surmounts it. It stands in magnificent prominence, a mark of inspiration to Canadians. Through it Brock still speaks to them and bids them guard their heritage." The new monument was formally inaugurated on October 13th, 1859, the poem in the text being written in connection with the occasion.

Isaac Brock was born in Guernsey, one of the Channel Islands, on October 6th, 1769. At the age of fifteen he entered the army, and by 1797 had reached the rank of senior lieutenant-colonel of the 49th Regiment. In 1798 he saw service in Holland and was wounded at Egmont-op-Zee. In 1801 he took part in the bombardment of Copenhagen under Lord Nelson. In 1802 he was sent with his regiment to Canada. In June, 1806, he was made commander-in-chief of the forces in Canada, and in 1808 was raised to the rank of brigadier-general. In 1811 he became major-general. In the next year he was appointed president and administrator of Upper Canada, during the absence of the lieutenant-governor. In June, 1812, war broke out between Great Britain and the United States. Brock at once took the field to repel the invasion of Canada by the Americans. On August 16th, 1812, he compelled General Hull, with 2,500 men, to surrender at Detroit. For this service he received the honor of knighthood. On October 13th, 1812, he was killed at the battle of Queenston Heights, while leading a desperate charge up the hill.

Many legends have grown up around the last hours of Brock. Words have been put into his mouth that he never spoke, and he is said to have

done things that in the circumstances were impossible. There is enough of glory surrounding his heroic death to make unnecessary any embellishments. A very sane and reasonable biography of Brock is *Sir Isaac Brock* by Hugh S. Eayrs in the *Canadian Men of Action* series (Macmillan). See also *Brock: The Hero of Upper Canada* by Thomas Guthrie Marquis (Macmillan), *The Story of Isaac Brock* by Walter R. Nursey in *Canadian Heroes Series* (Ryerson Press), and *The War with the United States: A Chronicle of 1812* by William Wood in the *Chronicles of Canada* series (Glasgow, Brook).

The lesson of Brock's life, what he means to the Canadians of to-day, is well brought out in the poem. This may be further impressed by the following quotations from three leading Canadian historians who have dealt with the life and times of the dead hero:

Thomas Guthrie Marquis says: "Seldom in British history have more honors been paid to a military hero. Yet Brock had won no great battle, and his work was done in a remote corner of the Empire. Even in Canada, at such battles as Chrystler's Farm and Lundy's Lane, other commanders had achieved more notable victories than Detroit—Brock's only success. Why is it that he was so honored. All recognized that by his work before the war and the thoroughness with which he had made his plans he had saved Canada. They knew, too, that though his battle experience in Canada was one swift, futile dash up a hillside to his death, he had by his daring so inspired his men that his example had had as much to do with winning future battles as the commands of the actual leaders. His spirit fought with the Canadian troops all through the war of 1812. His words and his deeds lived long after his life had gone out."

Lady Edgar says: "When, in 1812, the long-smouldering enmity between the United States and England burst into the flame of war, and Canada was the battle-ground, Brock entered upon the defence of the country entrusted to his charge with an indomitable spirit. With very inefficient means at his disposal, he used effectively what came to his hand. He took the untrained militia of Upper Canada and made of them a disciplined soldiery. He taught the youth of the country a lesson in courage and patriotism, and with infinite patience, tact, and judgment, he led them through their first days of trial. By his contemporaries Sir Isaac Brock was looked upon as the saviour of Canada, and time has not tarnished the lustre of his fame."

James Hannay says: "Brock's name sounds to-day in Canada as the watchword of the patriot, and no bugle blast could call the loyal to arms more quickly than a demand that they should emulate the heroic Brock. The traveller who approaches Queenston Heights, from whatever quarter, can see the lofty column which the people of this land have erected to

his memory standing boldly out against the skyline to inform the whole world that patriotism still lives in Canada. If ever the men of Canada need a rallying ground against any future invader they will find one on Queenston Heights beneath the shadow of the monument that they have reared to General Brock."

An excellent poem by Sangster dealing with another episode in Canadian history is "The Plains of Abraham" to be found on page 66 of *Poems of the Love of Country* edited by J. E. Wetherell in *Macmillan's Literature Series* (Macmillan).

PAGE 410—Smouldering. Ready at any moment to burst into flame.
Mute trumpet. The trumpet that has long been silent.

Strike the lyre. In honor of the brave deed done.

Still play their part. "Brock, though dead, still lives."

Monumental stone. The monument on Queenston Heights.

A nation's fealty. "The beautiful spot where Brock lies buried is a Canadian Mecca, and thousands of hero-worshippers visit it yearly." Under the same monument lies Lieutenant-Colonel Macdonell, Brock's aide-de-camp, who also fell on the fatal field. The monument is not alone to Brock and Macdonell, but is regarded as the tribute of the nation to all those who laid down their lives for their country during the memorable years 1812-14.

The victory. It was a glorious victory and far-reaching in its results.

Herald their degree. Proclaim to the world the great deeds which they accomplished.

PAGE 411—Sacred hill. Sacred in the memory of Canadians. See "On Queenston Heights" by Sarah Ann Curzon on page 73 of J. E. Wetherell's *Poems of the Love of Country*.

Yet shall thrill. "In the hearts of the Canadian people his memory is the one most dearly cherished."

AN ICEBERG

This selection is taken from Chapter XXXI of *Two Years Before the Mast*, published in 1840. The book is a vivid and interesting account of a two years' voyage made by the author himself. The brig *Pilgrim*, in which he sailed, left Boston for the western coast of North America on August 14th, 1834, and returned to Boston on September 18th, 1836. Dana, who was a student at Harvard University, was compelled to give up his studies, on account of an affection of the eyes. He was advised to try the effect of a sea voyage, and, not caring to go as a passenger, al-

though well able to do so, he shipped as a common sailor. *Two Years Before the Mast* is a vivid representation of what the author saw and experienced at a most impressionable age. He put his young life into his narrative. He was not thinking of literature when he wrote, and thus it takes rank with those books which are bits of life rather than products of art. An excellent school edition of the book edited by Homer Eaton Keyes is found in *Pocket Classics* (Macmillan). See also *Two Years Before the Mast* abridged by J. B. Marshall in *Bright Story Readers* (Macmillan).

Good companion selections are "Among the Icebergs" by Walter A. Wyckoff on page 193 of the Eighth Year of *Brooks's Readers* (American Book Co.) and the poem entitled "Passing the Icebergs" by T. Buchanan Read on page 201 of the same book.

PAGE 411—**Doctor.** A familiar title given to the ship's cook.

Larboard. See page 289.

Iceberg. This iceberg was seen on July 2nd, 1836, not far from the Straits of Magellan.

'TIS THE LAST ROSE OF SUMMER

This poem is one of the *Irish Melodies* published at intervals between 1808 and 1834. See page 267. The thought of the poem is summed up in the last two lines: life, after those we love have departed, is not worth living. The music of the song is found in *Songs Every One Should Know* edited by Clifton Johnson (American Book Co.).

The editor of *Notes on the Ontario Readers* says: "Moore's genius is at its best in his songs of love and friendship. The sweet, sad melody of his characteristic rhythms is especially suitable to these themes. The present poem is free from the overloaded imagery in which he sometimes indulges even in his masterpieces. Apart from the personification there is but one figurative expression in the whole poem. In other words, he relies solely upon the beauty, the propriety, and the naturalness of the sentiment for poetic effect and this is the ideal of lyric poetry." Compare with the poem in the text "The Meeting of the Waters" also by Moore to be found on page 97 of Book III of *The Ontario Readers* (Eaton).

PAGE 413—**Shining circle.** The metaphor is that of a ring set with precious stones.

True hearts. Real friends.

Fond ones. Lovers.

Bleak. The world would then be bleak.

THE VALUE OF TIME

This selection, purely didactic in its nature, is taken from Chapter VI of *The Pleasures of Life*. It requires no comment.

IN FLANDERS FIELDS

This poem was published in London *Punch* in 1915. Major-General E. W. B. Morrison, who at that time was in command of the Artillery Brigade says: "The poem was literally born of fire and blood during the hottest phase of the second battle of Ypres. My headquarters were in a trench on the top of the bank of the Ypres Canal, and John had his dressing station in a hole dug in the foot of the bank. During periods in the battle men who were shot actually rolled down the bank into his dressing station. Along from us a few hundred yards was the headquarters of a regiment, and many times during the sixteen days of battle he and I watched them burying their dead whenever there was a lull. Thus the crosses, row on row, grew into a good-sized cemetery. Just as he describes, we often heard in the mornings the larks singing high in the air, between the crash of the shell and the reports of the guns in the battery just beside us. I have a letter from him in which he mentions having written the poem to pass away the time between the arrival of batches of wounded, and partly as an experiment with several varieties of poetic metre."

Sir Andrew Macphail in "An Essay in Character" published in the volume of McCrae's poems entitled *In Flanders Fields and Other Poems* (Ryerson Press) has the following admirable comments on the poem: "The theme has three phases: the first a calm, a deadly calm, opening statement in five lines; the second in four lines, an explanation, a regret, a reiteration of the first; the third, without preliminary crescendo, breaking out into passionate adjuration in vivid metaphor, a poignant appeal which is at once a blessing and a curse. In the closing line is a satisfying return to the first phase—and the thing is done.

"As to the theme itself, the interest is universal. The dead, still conscious, fallen in a noble cause, see their graves overblown in a riot of poppy bloom. The poppy is the emblem of sleep. The dead desire to sleep undisturbed, but yet curiously take an interest in passing events. They regret that they have not been permitted to live out their life to its normal end. They call on the living to finish their task, else they shall not sink into that complete repose which they desire, in spite of the balm of the poppy. Formalists may protest that the poet is not sincere, since it is

the seed and not the flower that produces sleep. They might as well object that the poet has no right to impersonate the dead. We common folk know better. We know that in personating the dear dead, and calling in bell-like tones on the inarticulate living, the poet shall be enabled to break the lightnings of the Beast, and thereby he, being himself, alas! dead, yet speaketh.

"John McCrae witnessed only once the raw earth of Flanders hide its shame in the warm scarlet glow of the poppy. Others have watched this resurrection of the flowers in four successive seasons, a fresh miracle every time it occurs. Also they have observed the rows of crosses lengthen, the torch thrown, caught, and carried to victory. The dead may sleep. We have not broken faith with them.

"It is little wonder then that 'In Flanders Fields' has become the poem of the army. The soldiers have learned it with their hearts, which is quite a different thing from committing it to memory. Nor has any piece of verse in recent years been more widely known in the civilian world. It was used on every platform from which men were being adjured to adventure their lives or their riches in the great trial through which the present generation has passed."

"Numerous replies" to "In Flanders Fields" have been written. Perhaps the best reply is that of Edna Jacques, entitled "In Flanders Now," first published in *The Calgary Herald*:

"We have kept faith, ye Flanders' dead,
 Sleep well beneath those poppies red,
 That mark your place.
 The torch your dying hands did throw
 We've held it high before the foe,
 And answered bitter blow for blow
 In Flanders' fields.

"And where your heroes' blood was spilled,
 The guns are now forever stilled
 And silent frown.
 There is no moaning of the slain,
 There is no cry of tortured pain,
 And blood will never flow again
 In Flanders' fields.

"Forever holy in our sight
 Shall be those crosses gleaming white,
 That guard your sleep.

Rest you in peace, the task is done,
 The fight you left us we have won,
 And 'Peace on Earth' has just begun,
 In Flanders now."

Another excellent poem entitled "America's Answer to 'In Flanders Fields'" by R. W. Lillard appeared in the New York *Evening Post* in 1918:

"Rest ye in peace, ye Flanders dead.
 The fight that ye so bravely led
 We've taken up. And we will keep
 True faith with you who lie asleep
 With each a cross to mark his bed,
 And poppies blowing overhead,
 Where once his own life-blood ran red.
 So let your rest be sweet and deep,
 In Flanders fields.

"Fear not that ye have died for naught.
 The torch ye threw to us we caught
 Ten million hands will hold it high,
 And Freedom's light shall never die!
 We've learned the lesson that ye taught
 In Flanders fields."

Side by side with "In Flanders Fields" should be read "The Anxious Dead" to be found on page 4 of Colonel McCrae's *In Flanders Fields and Other Poems*. See also the beautiful poem entitled "Red Poppies in the Corn" by W. Campbell Galbraith on page 55 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto).

PAGE 415—**Flanders.** Belgium is here meant. See page 112.

Poppies. The common red poppy of Europe. The flower has four bright red petals, and of these the two outer are larger than the two inner. These petals are soft and silky with wavy edges. See "Red Poppy" with colored illustration on page 149 of *Flowers Shown to the Children* by Janet Harvey Kelman (Jack).

The crosses. The rows of crosses which mark the last resting-place of the dead in the fields of Belgium and France.

The torch. See notes on "The Torch of Life" on page 346.

RECESSIONAL

This poem was first published in the London *Times* on July 17th, 1897, towards the close of the celebration of the Diamond Jubilee of Queen Victoria. The queen had ascended the throne in 1837, and her jubilee had been celebrated with great magnificence. When, however, she attained the sixtieth year of her reign, it was felt that the occasion should be celebrated in a manner worthy of the unique occasion. "The prime ministers from all the self-governing Dominions, troops from the Dominions and colonies, Imperial Service Troops sent by native Indian princes, Housas from the West Coast of Africa, Negroes from the West Indies, Zaptiehs from Cyprus, Chinamen from Hong Kong, even Dyaks from Borneo, took part in ceremonies of unparalleled splendor. One hundred and sixty-five vessels of the Royal Navy assembled for review."

"So overwhelming was this display and the significance of its splendor that it roused in many minds a feeling of awe bordering almost upon apprehension. Was this greatness not too great? Might it not breed that over-weening pride of power which goes before destruction? This doubt sank deep into the impressionable mind of Rudyard Kipling. His genius sought to express in words the thought which came to him—the wish to deprecate that divine disfavor which men have always feared as the punishment of too great prosperity. It was the feeling which made the Greeks and Romans dread the power of Nemesis, the jealousy of the gods."

The *Notes on the Ontario Readers* says: "The prayer of the poem is that the British people in their exultation at the display of the tremendous strength of the imperial resources in men and armaments might not be led to put their trust in these and forget God, the Author of their sovereignty and Source of their power. The tone of religious fervor is almost Hebraic in its intensity and seems to claim the same special relation to Jehovah for the British peoples as that enjoyed by the Hebrews of old."

The publication of "Recessional" had a remarkable influence on the people at the time of its issue. It was reprinted in all parts of the British Empire, repeated from a thousand pulpits, and memorized by nearly every person. It had a tremendous effect in bringing "the more thoughtful persons to a true conception of personal and national responsibility."

The recessional is the hymn sung by the choir as they retire in procession from the chancel to the robing room after the service. Kipling's poem is so-called, because it was intended to be read after the great Imperial celebration had closed. It is a prayer for national humility and contriteness of spirit.

Perhaps some further light may be thrown on "Recessional" by the reading of "The Flag of England" by Stephen O. Sherman on page 119 and "Who's That Calling?" by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle on page 52 of *Poems of the Love of Country* edited by J. E. Wetherell in *Macmillan's Literature Series* (Macmillan). See also "Prospice" by Alan Sullivan on page 103 of *The Great War in Verse and Prose* edited by J. E. Wetherell (Department of Education, Toronto).

PAGE 415—**God of our fathers.** In the second *Paraphrase* the thought found in *Genesis xxviii, 20-22* is in part expressed as follows:

"Our vows, our prayers we now present
Before thy throne of grace:
God of our fathers! be the God
Of their succeeding race."

Known of old. Our fathers have always acknowledged God to be the source of their strength and power.

Far-flung. Daniel Webster, the celebrated United States statesman, referring to the British army, said: "Its morning drum-beat, following the sun and keeping company with the hours, encircles the globe with one unbroken strain of the martial airs of England." The British legions have penetrated into every corner of the globe.

Awful. Inspiring with awe.

Palm and pine. The palm stands for the warm countries of the tropical and semi-tropical regions of the earth, and the pine for the colder countries.

PAGE 416—**Lord God of Hosts.** "The Lord of hosts—the God of the armies of Israel"—*1 Samuel xvii, 45*.

Lest we forget. "Then beware lest thou forget the Lord, which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt."—*Deuteronomy vi, 12*.

The tumult, etc. The noise attending the celebration of the Diamond Jubilee.

The Captains, etc. "The thunder of the captains and the shouting"—*Job xxxix, 25*. The captains here refer to the commanders of the various bodies of the British troops. The kings refer not only to the subject princes of the Empire, but also to the various crowned heads, ambassadors, and representatives from other countries assembled to do honor to the queen.

Still stands, etc. "The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise."—*Psalms li, 17*. If we have a humble spirit and a penitent heart we may still retain the favor and protection of God.

Far-called. The war-ships have been summoned from all quarters of the world; and they are now returning to their stations.

Dune. A sand-hill along the coast.

Headland. Promontory.

The fire. One marked feature of the celebration was the lighting of bonfires on hills and prominent places throughout the country. Now that the celebration is over, the fires are allowed to die out.

Pomp of yesterday. "For a thousand years in thy sight are but as yesterday."—*Psalm xc, 4.*

Nineveh. "Nineveh is laid waste: who will bemoan her?"—*Nahum iii, 7.* Nineveh was the capital of the ancient Assyrian empire. It was at the height of its power a magnificent city, but now only a few ruins remain. See Chapter V of Book IX of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

Tyre. An ancient Phoenician city at the eastern end of the Mediterranean, once celebrated for its magnificence and for its commercial importance. But Tyre as well as Nineveh is now forgotten. See Chapter VIII of Book IX of *Highroads of History* (Nelson).

Drunk, etc. Losing our sane judgment by the evidences of power on every hand.

Wild tongues. Utter foolish, boastful words.

Thee in awe. Do not regard God as the Source of their power and dominion.

Such boastings, etc. "When they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful: but became vain in their imaginations."—*Romans i, 21-22.*

Without the Law. "The Gentiles, which have not the law"—*Romans ii, 14.* They do not know the Word of God. "Kipling here frankly adopts, for his countrymen, the language of the Hebrews, who regarded themselves as the chosen people of God and all others as outside the pale of the Law"

Reeking tube. Smoking cannon.

Iron shard. Broken pieces of explosive shells.

All valiant dust. Men of valor who rely solely upon their own strength and the strength of their fellows, and forget God.

Biographical Sketches

Addison, Joseph, was born at Milston, Wiltshire, on May 1st, 1672. He was educated at the Charterhouse and at Queen's College, Oxford, where he gained the degree of Master of Arts in 1693. His family wished him to enter the ministry, but on the advice of a friend, Lord Halifax, he determined to become a politician. A government grant of £300 enabled him to travel through France and Italy from 1699 until 1702, when the pension was cut off owing to a change in government. In 1704, in response to a request from the chief minister, Godolphin, for a poem on the battle of Blenheim, Addison wrote *The Campaign*, which restored him to favor and secured for him an appointment in the government service, where he subsequently filled several high offices, including that of Secretary of State. He died in London on June 17th, 1719, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His best known works are his *Sir Roger de Coverley* papers contributed to the *Spectator* and his celebrated tragedy *Cato*, produced in 1713. See *Addison* by W. J. Courthope in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "Joseph Addison" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Addison is found on page 199 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Alden, Raymond Macdonald, was born at New Hartford, New York, on March 30th, 1873. He was educated at Rollins Collegiate, Florida, and at the University of Pennsylvania, where he graduated in 1894 and received his Ph.D. in 1898. He was an instructor in English at George Washington University from 1894 to 1895, assistant in English at Harvard from 1896 to 1897, and senior fellow in English at the University of Pennsylvania from 1898 to 1899. For the next twelve years he taught English in Leland Stanford Junior University in California, but resigned his position there in 1911 to become professor of English at the University of Illinois. In 1914 he returned to Stanford as professor of English, a position which he still occupies. He has contributed to many of the leading periodicals and has edited a number of well known works. Among his writings are *The Rise of Formal Satire in England*, *The Art of Debate*, *Knights of the Silver Shield*, and *Why the Chimes Rang*.

Alexander, Cecil Frances, second daughter of John Humphreys, a major in the Royal Marines, was born in Wicklow County, Ireland, in 1818. She was a very precocious child, beginning to write poetry at the age of nine. In 1842, together with Lady Harriet Howard, she began the publication of a series of tracts dealing with religious questions of the times. For this series she wrote a number of poems. *Verses for Holy Seasons* appeared in 1846, followed two years later by *Hymns for Little Children*. In 1850 she married the Rev. William Alexander, who was afterwards successively Bishop of Derry and Archbishop of Armagh. The remainder of her life was spent chiefly in attending to her social duties, in charitable work, and in the writing of her numerous poems and hymns. She died at Londonderry on October 12th, 1895. In addition to the volumes already mentioned she wrote *Poems on Subjects in the Old Testament* and *Hymns for the Use of Schools*. In all she published about four hundred poems and hymns, written mainly for children. The best-known of her hymns are perhaps *Once in Royal David's City* and *There is a Green Hill Far Away*. See *The Sacred Poets of the Nineteenth Century* edited by Alfred H. Miles (Hutchinson).

Allan, Marguerite Buller, was born at Montreal, Quebec, about 1886. Her father is Dr. Frank Buller, the oculist, of Montreal. She married a member of the Allan family, the well-known shipowners, and now lives in New York. *The Rhyme Garden*, her first book, is illustrated by herself in a most charming and original manner.

Andersen, Hans Christian, was born at Odense, on the island of Funen, on April 2nd, 1805. The child's imagination was fired by stories of grandeur told him by his father, who, though a poor shoemaker, belonged to a once wealthy family. His father died when he was nine, leaving the family in very poor circumstances, and Hans was forced to seek employment. He went to Copenhagen, where by dint of great perseverance he won admission to one of the theatres. In a short time his voice failed, and he took up dancing. In 1824 he attracted the attention of King Frederick VI, who sent him to the University and afterwards made him a public grant. In 1829 the publication of a peculiar volume entitled *A Journey on Foot from Holman's Canal to the East Point of Amager* gained him considerable fame and relieved his poverty for a time. In 1833 he set out on the first of a series of travels through France, Germany, and Italy. In 1835 appeared the first volume of his *Fairy Tales*, by which he is chiefly known to-day. These continued to appear until 1872, when he met with an accident from which he never recovered. He died at Copenhagen on August 1st, 1875. His children's books have made him famous, but he also wrote many volumes of travels, dramas, and poems, and is said to have aspired to be a great novelist and dramatist.

See *Life of Hans Christian Andersen* by R. N. Bain (Lawrence). A good sketch of the life of Andersen is found on page 175 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Argyll, Duke of, son of the 8th Duke of Argyll, and during his father's life-time known as the Marquis of Lorne, was born at London on August 6th, 1845. He was educated at Edinburgh Academy, Eton, St. Andrew's College, and Trinity College, Cambridge. In 1871 he married the Princess Louise, daughter of the late Queen Victoria. He represented Argyllshire in the House of Commons from 1868 to 1878, when he was appointed governor-general of Canada for a term of five years. From 1895 to 1900 he again sat in the House of Commons, as member for South Manchester. In the latter year he succeeded his father as Duke of Argyll. He died at Cowes on May 10th, 1914. His most important writings are *Memories of Canada and Scotland*, *Canadian Pictures*, and *Life and Times of Queen Victoria*. See *Canadian Men and Women of the Times* by Henry J. Morgan (Ryerson Press).

Avebury, Lord, (Right Honorable Sir John Lubbock), was born at London on April 30th, 1834. He was educated privately and at Eton. From 1870 to 1880 he was member of Parliament for Maidstone. All his life he was prominently connected with an enormous number of societies for the advancement of science, and was a member of the Royal Commissions on the Advancement of Science, on Public Schools, on International Coinage, on Gold and Silver, and on Education. He was a banker, being head of Robarts, Lubbock, and Company, London, and for 25 years was secretary of the London Bankers and subsequently chairman. From 1872 to 1880 he was Vice-Chancellor of the University of London, and from 1888 to 1893 President of the London Chamber of Commerce. He died on May 28th, 1913. Among his works are *The Uses of Life*, *The Pleasures of Life*, *Scientific Lectures*, *Fifty Years of Science*, *The Scenery of England*, and *Coins and Currency*.

Aytoun, William Edmondstoune, was born at Edinburgh on June 21st, 1813. He was educated at Edinburgh University, studied law, and in 1835 was admitted as a Writer of the Signet. In 1840 he was called to the Scottish bar. His first volume, entitled *Poland, Homer, and Other Poems*, was published when he was only 17. In 1844, in collaboration with Sir Theodore Martin, he published the *Bon Gaultier Ballads*, a volume of humorous poems and parodies. In 1845 he was appointed professor of rhetoric in Edinburgh University and in 1852, Sheriff of Orkney. In 1849 he married the youngest daughter of Christopher North. From 1844 until his death on August 4th, 1865, he was a contributor to *Blackwood's Magazine*. Other well-known works are *Lays*

of the *Scottish Cavaliers*, *Firmilian*, *Bothwell*, a poetical monologue, and *Norman Sinclair*, a novel.

Bacon, Josephine Dodge Daskam, was born at Stamford, Connecticut, on February 17th, 1876. She graduated from Smith College in 1898 and five years later married Selden Bacon. At present she resides in New York. She writes almost entirely for children and has contributed numerous poems and short stories to magazines. Her work includes *Smith College Stories*, *The Imp and the Angel*, *Memoirs of a Baby*, *Biography of a Boy*, *The Luck of Lady Joan*, and *Square Peggy*.

Begbie, Harold, was born at Fornham St. Martin, Suffolk, in 1871. His writings are numerous and include *The Political Struwelpeter Series*, *Master Workers*, *The Handy Man*, *The Priest*, *The Challenge*, *The Vindication of Great Britain*, *Mr. Sterling Sticks It Out*, and *Fighting Lines*.

Bemister, Margaret, lives in Winnipeg, Manitoba, where she is connected with educational and newspaper work. She is the author of *Indian Legends* and *Thirty Indian Legends*.

Bigham, Madge A., is a writer of stories for children. She has for some years been the principal of a private kindergarten system in Atlanta, Georgia. She is the author of *Merry Animal Tales*, *Fanciful Flower Tales*, *Overheard in Fairyland*, *Within the Silver Moon*, and *Mother Goose Village*.

Blackburne, Mary Frances Blaisdell. See **Blaisdell, Mary Frances**.

Blackmore, Richard Doddridge, was born at Longworth, Berkshire, on June 7th, 1825. He was educated at Bruton, Somerset, and Blundell's School, Tiverton, and graduated from Exeter College, Oxford, in 1847. His first novel, *The Maid of Sker*, was commenced during one of the vacations at Oxford, but was not completed until several years later. In 1852 he married Lucy Maguire. In the same year he was called to the bar, but soon gave up his profession to become a teacher at Wellesley House, Twickenham, in 1855. About 1860 an uncle, with whom he had lived as a boy, died, leaving him a sum of money with which he bought a country home at Teddington, where he remained until his death on January 20th, 1900. His novel, *Clara Vaughan*, which appeared in 1864, marked the beginning of his literary success, and the publication of *Lorna Doone*, five years later, placed him in the front rank of English novelists. Among his other works are *Pelycross*, *Alice Lorraine*, and *Kil and Kitty*. See *Modern English Novelists* by William Lyon Phelps (Macmillan).

Blaisdell, Mary Frances, was born at Manchester, New Hampshire, on April 20th, 1874. She graduated from Cambridge Training School in 1895 and from 1896 to 1912 taught school, first in Brockton and later in Medford, Massachusetts. In 1917 she married Edward Best Black-

burne and now lives in West Medford, Massachusetts. She is the author of a number of books for children, among which are *Polly and Dolly*, *Tommy Tinker's Book*, *Pretty Polly Flinders*, *Bunny Rabbit's Diary*, and *Mother Goose Children*. With her sister, Etta Austin Blaisdell McDonald, she wrote *Child Life*, *Child Life in Tale and Fable*, *Child Life in Many Lands*, *Boy Blue and His Friends*, etc.

Blewett, Jean, daughter of John McKishnie, was born at Scotia, Ontario, on November 4th, 1862. She was educated at the Collegiate Institute, St. Thomas, and since her marriage to Bassett Blewett, has resided in Toronto. For some years she has been connected with the staff of the Toronto Globe and has been a contributor to a number of other Canadian periodicals. Her principal works are *Heart Songs*, *The Cornflower and Other Poems*, and a novel, *Out of the Depths*. See *Canadian Men and Women of the Times* by Henry J. Morgan and *Handbook of Canadian Literature* by Archibald MacMurchy (Ryerson Press).

Bourinot, Arthur Stanley, was born at Ottawa in 1894. He was educated in the Ottawa Collegiate Institute and graduated from the University of Toronto in 1915. He studied law at Osgoode Hall, was called to the bar in 1920, and is now practising in Ottawa. From 1915 to 1916 he served with the 77th Battalion and from 1916 to 1919 was attached to the Royal Flying Corps. His *Laurentian Lyrics* appeared in 1915, and in 1921 he published a volume entitled *Poems*.

Bradley, Mary Emily Neely, was born at Easton, Maryland, on November 29th, 1834. Her best known works are *Douglass Farm, Story of a Summer*, and a volume of poems entitled *The Hidden Sweetness*.

Brown, Kate Louise, was born at Adams, Massachusetts, on May 9th, 1857. She was educated at Reading High School and at Bridgewater State Normal School, subsequently taking a course in kindergarten training. She taught for a time in Reading, Wakefield, and Milton, Massachusetts, and in 1896 she removed to Boston, where she continued to teach until her death on December 31st, 1921. She was a frequent contributor to magazines and children's publications and wrote songs for children and music for kindergarten games. Among her writings are *Little People*, *Stories in Song*, *The Plant Baby and Its Friends*, *Alice and Tom*, *Santa Claus Discovered*, and *The Tables Turned*. She also wrote the *Interstate Second Reader*, the *Metcalf Third Reader*, and the Second and Third Readers of the *Heath Series*.

Browning, Robert, was born at Camberwell, a suburb of London, on May 7th, 1812. He was educated at home by his father, who, though only a clerk in the Bank of England, was a very scholarly man. Later he was sent to travel in Italy with a private tutor and spent two terms at the University of London, studying Greek. He devoted his life to a

study of the human soul, as he himself says: "Little else is worth study." His poem *Paracelsus*, published in 1835, strikes the key-note of his subsequent thought. In 1846 he married Elizabeth Barrett and until her death in 1861 lived chiefly in Florence and Paris. After his wife's death, he took up his residence in London, but continued to pay an annual visit to the continent. He died at Venice, on December 12th, 1889, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Browning's poetry received its first public recognition in 1881, when the Browning Society of London was established, and he is now regarded as one of the great poets of England. His chief works are *The Ring and the Book*, *Pippa Passes*, *Paracelsus*, *Luria*, *Ferishtah's Fancies*, *Saul*, and a large number of Dramatic Monologues, his favorite form of verse. See *Browning* by C. K. Chesterton in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Browning* by William Sharp in *Great Writers* series (Scott), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), "Robert Browning" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Browning is found on page 120 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Buchan, John, was born on August 26th, 1875. He was educated at Glasgow University and at Brasenose College, Oxford, and in 1898 won the Newdigate Prize. He was called to the bar in 1901. From 1901 to 1903 he was private secretary to Lord Milner, the High Commissioner for South Africa. In 1916 he was attached to the Headquarters Staff of the British army in France. He was made a temporary lieutenant-colonel and officer of the Crown of Belgium and the Crown of Italy. From 1917 to 1918 he was Director of Information under the Prime Minister, and was subsequently made Justice of the Peace in Oxfordshire and Peeblesshire, and received his LL.D. from Glasgow University. He is a member of the firm of Thomas Nelson & Sons, London. He is the author of *Sir Quixote*, *Grey Weather*, *The Moon Endureth*, *The Marquis of Montrose*, *Greenmantle*, *Mr. Standfast*, *The Path of the King*, etc.

Bullen, Frank Thomas, was born at Paddington, England, on April 5th, 1857. He attended Dame and Westbourne Schools in Paddington, but at the age of nine left school to become an errand boy. From 1869 until 1883 he cruised around the world in various capacities, finally becoming chief mate. Subsequently he was for six years junior clerk in the Meteorological Office in London. He died on March 1st, 1915. His works include many stories, articles, and essays dealing with life at sea. Among them are *The Cruise of the "Cachalot,"* *The Log of a Sea Waif*,

The Men of the Merchant Service, Back to Sunny Seas, The Call of the Deep, etc.

Bunner, Henry Cuyler, was born at Oswego, New York, on August 3rd, 1855. He was engaged in business in New York for a time, but later took up newspaper reporting. In 1887 he was appointed assistant editor of *Puck* and a few years later editor. He died at Nutley, New Jersey, on May 11th, 1896. His works consist of both prose and poetry, a collection of the latter being published in 1906. See *An American Anthology* edited by Edmund Clarence Stedman (Houghton).

Bunyan, John, was born near Bedford, England, in November, 1628. He learned the trade of a tinker, and later served with the parliamentary army during the Civil War. He was married at the age of 20. After several changes in his religious opinions, he finally turned Baptist in 1655 and two years later was recognized as a preacher, although he continued at his trade. From 1660 to 1672 he was imprisoned for illegal preaching, and in 1675 he was again sent to prison. It was during this latter period of imprisonment that he wrote *The Pilgrim's Progress*, which appeared in 1678. After his release he continued to preach at Bedford until 1688, when during a visit to London he contracted a fever and died on August 31st. In addition to *The Pilgrim's Progress*, he wrote *The Holy War* and *Grace Abounding to the Chief of Sinners*, an autobiography of his own soul. See *John Bunyan* by J. A. Froude in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "John Bunyan" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack).

Burns, Robert, was born near Ayr, Scotland, on January 25th, 1759. His father was a Scottish peasant farmer, and the poet's early life was one of toil and hardship. The necessity for constant work about the farm, combined with poverty, prevented him from receiving even an ordinary education and he grew to manhood practically ignorant of books, but thoroughly familiar with Scottish peasant life. At the age of 16 he began writing poetry and by 1776 had written enough to fill a volume. Having become hopelessly discouraged with farm life, he had determined to emigrate to America, but the success of his first volume of poetry caused him to abandon all thought of leaving Scotland. He was recognized by the leading men of letters in Edinburgh and treated with every courtesy. His second volume appeared in 1787, and the following year he bought a farm near Dumfries and married Jean Armour. In 1789 he was appointed an excise officer. He died at Dumfries on July 21st, 1796, in poverty and distress. Apart from a large number of songs, his most important poems are *The Cotter's Saturday Night* and *Tam O' Shanter*. See *Burns* by J. C. Shairp in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Burns*

by Professor Blackie (Scott), "Robert Burns" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Burns is found on page 239 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Burroughs, John, was born in the village of Roxbury, New York, on April 3rd, 1837. He grew up on a farm, where he became thoroughly familiar with all forms of animal and bird life and developed a passionate love of the great "out-of-doors." He received his education in the country school and in the academies of Ashland and Cooperstown, subsequently teaching school for eight years. His first publication was an essay written in the style of Dr. Johnson and Emerson, which appeared in the *Atlantic Monthly* in 1860. During the Civil War he accepted a position as clerk in the Treasury Department at Washington, where he remained for ten years. For the next ten years he was employed as bank examiner for the government, and in 1874, having practised the strictest economy, he was able to buy a farm on the west bank of the Hudson, where he lived close to nature until his death on March 29th, 1921. His best known works are *Wake-Robin*, *Winter Sunshine*, *Locusts and Wild Honey*, *Pepacton*, and *Squirrels and other Fur-Bearers*. Good sketches of the life of Burroughs are found on page 11 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn) and on page 215 of the Seventh Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Butler, Sir William Francis, was born at Tipperary, Ireland, on October 31st, 1838. He was educated at Dublin, and in 1858 became an ensign in the 69th Regiment. From that time on, his life was devoted to soldiering. In 1870 he joined the Red River Expedition under Sir Garnet Wolseley, and after the capture of Fort Garry successfully accomplished a special mission to the Indians of the Saskatchewan. He won distinction and rapid promotion while serving in the Ashantee war, the Zulu war, and the Egyptian wars of 1882 and 1884-5, and at various times commanded troops in Alexandria, in the South Eastern district, and in South Africa. On the outbreak of the Boer war he was recalled and placed in charge of the Western District. In 1877 he married Elizabeth Thompson, the painter. In 1887 he was knighted and in 1900 raised to the rank of lieutenant-general. In 1906 he again visited South Africa. He died on June 7th, 1910. His best known works are *The Great Lone Land*, *The Wild North Land*, *Red Cloud*, and *Charles George Gordon*. See *Our Living Generals* by Arthur Temple (Melrose, London) and *Sir William Butler: An Autobiography* (Lane).

Byron, Lord (George Gordon), was born at London on January 22nd,

1788. His home life was very unhappy. After squandering his wife's fortune, Byron's father deserted his mother, and in 1790 the latter took her son with her to live in Aberdeen. He was educated at grammar school, a private school, and at Harrow. At the age of ten he succeeded to the title and estates of his great-uncle, Lord Byron. In 1805 he went to Cambridge but left without taking his degree. While at the University he published a volume of poems entitled *Hours of Idleness*. The severe criticism of this volume in the *Edinburgh Review* led Byron to write a biting satire entitled *English Bards and Scotch Reviewers*. From 1809 to 1811 he travelled through Europe and on his return published the first two cantos of *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, which met with remarkable success. In 1815 he married Miss Anna Milbanke, but his married life was very unhappy, and he and his wife soon separated. Severe criticism of his domestic troubles led him to quit England in disgust in 1816. For the next two years he wandered over Europe. He died at Missolonghi on April 19, 1824, from a fever contracted while he was engaged in helping the Greeks in their fight for freedom. His body was brought to England and buried at Newstead. His most important works are *The Corsair*, *The Gaiour*, *Lara*, *The Prisoner of Chillon*, *Manfred*, *Cain*, and *Don Juan*. See *Byron* by John Nichol in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Byron* by Hon. Roden Noel in *Great Writers* series (Scott), "George Gordon Noel Byron" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Byron is found on page 317 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Campbell, Thomas, was born at Glasgow, Scotland, on July 27th, 1777. He received his early education at the Glasgow Grammar School and entered the University at the age of 13. While attending the University he supported himself by giving private tuition and in 1797 went to Edinburgh, where he commenced his literary work. *The Pleasures of Hope* was published in 1799, and the following year he paid a visit to the Continent which resulted in the production of some of his finest lyrics. After his marriage in 1803 he was continually in distress owing to his improvidence. A government pension of £200 a year, however, relieved him of anxiety for a time. *Gertrude of Wyoming* was published in 1809. In 1826 he was elected Lord Rector of Glasgow University. Many of the best years of his life were spent in advancing the cause of the Poles, a people in whom he was intensely interested. He died at Boulogne, June 15th, 1844, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His best known poems are *Ye Mariners Of England*, *Theodoric*, *O'Connor's*

Child, Lochiel's Warning, and The Last Man. See *Literary Celebrities* (Chambers).

Carman, William Bliss, was born at Fredericton, New Brunswick, on April 15th, 1861. He graduated from the University of New Brunswick in 1881, winning the Alumni Gold Medal, and received his LL.D. from that institution in 1906. From 1882 to 1883 he attended the University of Edinburgh, and from 1886 to 1888, Harvard. He successively studied law, practised engineering, and taught school. In 1890 he became office editor of the New York *Independent* and four years later, editor of the *Chap Book*, Boston. He was also connected with the *Atlantic Monthly* and the *Cosmopolitan*. He lives in New Canaan, Connecticut. Among his works are *Low Tide on Grand Pré, Ballads of Lost Haven, Songs from Vagabondia, Pipes of Pan, The Gate of Peace, The Rough Rider, and April Airs.*

Carroll, Lewis is the pen name of Charles Lutwidge Dodgson, who was born at Daresbury, near Warrington, on January 27th, 1832. He was educated at Richmond in Yorkshire, Rugby, and graduated from Christ Church, Oxford, in 1854. The following year he entered upon the career of mathematical lecturer, which continued for twenty-six years. In 1861 he was ordained, but preached only an occasional sermon. He died at Guildford on January 14th, 1898. His extreme shyness probably accounts for the fact that his two most intimate friends were little girls for whose entertainment he wrote *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* in 1865 and *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There* in 1871. His later attempts at writing in a nonsense vein were not successful. He wrote a number of books dealing with mathematics, but the only one of value is *Euclid and His Modern Rivals*. See the *Life and Letters of Lewis Carroll* by Stuart Dodgson Collingwood (Unwin). A good sketch of the life of Lewis Carroll is found on page 109 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Cervantes, Miguel de, was born at Alcalá de Henares, Spain, on October 9th, 1547. He was educated at the Universities of Salamanca and Madrid. He served for a time with the papal army and in 1571 was wounded in the famous battle of Lepanto. He endured great sufferings as a slave in Algiers from 1575 to 1580, when he was ransomed and returned to Madrid. Though many of his dramas and romances achieved literary success, they failed to relieve his poverty until 1605, when he published the first part of *Don Quixote de la Mancha*, which at once made him famous. The second part of *Don Quixote* appeared in 1615. He died at Madrid on April 23rd, 1616. See *Miguel de Cervantes* by Henry Edward Watts (Macmillan). A good sketch of the life of Cervantes is found on page 213 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Clemens, Samuel Langhorne. See Twain, Mark.

Cloud, Virginia Woodward, was born at Baltimore, Maryland. She was educated in various private schools in Baltimore and has always lived there. From 1906 to 1914 she was literary editor of the *Baltimore News* and has contributed critical articles, stories, and poems to the leading periodicals. In addition to a number of connected stories of Colonial and Revolutionary periods, she has written *Down Durley Lane*, a collection of ballads, *The Witch*, *The Ballad of Sweet P.*, *Leisurely Lane*, *Goodnight Song*, and *The O'Tara Stories* published in *Harper's Weekly* and *Uncle Remus's Home Magazine*.

Connor, Ralph, is the pen-name of Charles William Gordon, who was born at the Indian Lands, Glengarry, Ontario, on September 13th, 1860. He was educated in the public school in Glengarry and at St. Mary's High School, graduating from the University of Toronto in 1883. After teaching for a short time, he spent a year in travel, and from 1890 to 1894 he was a missionary at Banff. He received the degree of D.D. from Knox College, Toronto, in 1906 and from Glasgow in 1919, and the degree of LL.D. from Queen's University. He occupied a number of high positions in the Presbyterian Church of Canada, including that of Moderator of the General Assembly. In 1915 he went overseas with the Canadian Expeditionary Forces as Chaplain of the 43rd Battalion, Cameron Highlanders of Canada, with the rank of Captain, and the following year was made Senior Chaplain of Canadian Forces in England with the rank of Major. In 1917 and 1918 he lived in the United States as a member of the British Mission. Since 1894 he has been the minister of St. Stephen's Church, Winnipeg. Amongst his works are *Black Rock*, *The Sky Pilot*, *The Man From Glengarry*, *The Prospector*, *The Doctor*, *The Major*, and *Canada and the Fight for Freedom*.

Cooper, George, was born in New York City on May 14th, 1840. He is a composer and poet. He has written the words of many popular ballads, among which is *Beautiful Isle of the Sea*.

Cowper, William, was born at Great Berkhamstead, Hertfordshire, on November 15th, 1731. He attended Westminster School, where he showed himself to be a good classical scholar. In 1754 he was called to the bar. In 1763 he was offered the position of Clerk of the Journals of the House of Lords, but his temperament was such that, when called upon to undergo examination as to his fitness for the office, he was so overcome with nervous horror that he attempted suicide, and was taken to a private asylum, where he remained until restored. In 1765 he took up his residence with the Unwins at Huntingdon, and two years later, on the death of Mr. Unwin, went with Mrs. Unwin to Olney, where he remained until his death on April 25th, 1800. The last few years of his life

were saddened by fits of insanity. His principal works are *Table Talks*, *John Gilpin*, *The Task*, a translation of *Homer*, and the *Olney Hymns*. See *Cowper* by Goldwin Smith in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan) and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Cowper is found on page 88 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Cox, Alfred Beverly, was born at London, Ontario, on November 4th, 1860. He was educated at Hellmuth College, London, Ontario, the Galt Collegiate Institute, and Osgoode Hall, Toronto, and was called to the bar in 1882. He died on May 1st, 1904.

Craik, Dinah Maria Mulock, was born at Stoke-upon-Trent, Staffordshire, on April 20th, 1826. In 1846 she went to London, where she commenced writing stories for children. *Cola Monti*, the best known of these, appeared in 1849. Her three-volume novel, *The Ogilvies*, published the same year, met with great success. Having established her literary reputation, she took a cottage at North End, Hampstead, where she became the centre of a large social circle. In 1864 she married George Lillie Craik and took up her residence at Shortlands, near Bromley, where she lived until her death on October 12th, 1887. Her best known works are *John Halifax, Gentleman* and *The Little Lame Prince*.

Crandall, Charles Henry, was born at Greenwich, New York, on June 19th, 1858. He was educated at Greenwich. The first seventeen years of his life were spent on the farm where he was born. After five years devoted to mercantile life, he became successively reporter, correspondent, and editor of the *New York Tribune*. He has contributed poems, stories, and essays to many leading periodicals. He is the author of *The Season*, *Wayside Music*, *Songs from Sky Meadows*, and *Songs for the Boys in Khaki*.

Cunningham, Allan, was born at Keir, Dumfriesshire, on December 7th, 1784. He learned the trade of a stone-mason, but in 1810 went to London, where he became a newspaper reporter. From 1814 to 1841 he held the office of secretary to Chantry, the sculptor. His dramatic poem entitled *Sir Marmaduke Maxwell*, published in 1822, and the popular romances, *Lord Roldan* and *Paul Jones*, were enthusiastically received by the public. He died at London on October 30th, 1842. In addition to several songs, his best known works are *Lives of the Most Eminent British Painters, Sculptors, and Architects*, and *Critical History of the Literature of the Last Fifty Years*. See *Biographical Dictionary of Eminent Scotsmen* (Chambers).

Curtis, George William, was born at Providence, Rhode Island, on February 24th, 1824. He was educated in the public school and, when fifteen years old, became a clerk in a store in New York. After farming

for a time at Concord, Massachusetts, he spent four years travelling through Europe and Asia and returned to the United States in 1850. He became a member of the editorial staff of the New York *Tribune* and was soon appointed one of the editors of *Putnam's Monthly*, in which magazine he later lost all his private fortune. His series of papers entitled "The Editor's Easy Chair," began to appear in *Harper's Monthly* in 1853, and in 1857 he became the leading editorial writer on that magazine. He took a keen interest in politics and was a firm supporter of President Lincoln. He is generally regarded as the father of civil service reform in the United States. He died at New York on August 31st, 1892. His principal works are *The Potiphar Papers*, *Prue and I*, *Essays from the Easy Chair*, *Trumps*, and *Lotus-Eating*.

Dana, Richard Henry, was born at Cambridge, Massachusetts, on August 1st, 1815. At the beginning of his third year at Harvard University his eyesight failed, and he was forced to give up his course for a time. He shipped before the mast on the *Pilgrim* and spent two years cruising around the coast of California. The record of this voyage is found in *Two Years Before the Mast*. He returned to Harvard and graduated in 1837, subsequently taking up the study of law. He took a prominent part in politics and held several high offices under the government. He was a strong supporter of the federal government in the struggle against the Southern States. The last four years of his life were devoted to study and travel. He died at Rome on January 9th, 1882. See *Richard Henry Dana: a Biography* by Charles Francis Adams (Houghton).

Defoe, Daniel, was born at London in 1661, the son of a butcher. He was educated at the dissenting academy at Stoke Newington, with the intention of becoming a dissenting minister. He preferred a mercantile life, however, and, after serving in the Duke of Monmouth's army in the rebellion against James II, he became a merchant, but failed in business in 1692. He was constantly mixed up in political controversies and in 1703 was fined, pilloried, and imprisoned for two years for the publication of an ironical pamphlet entitled *The Shortest Way with the Dissenters*. He was one of the commissioners appointed to bring about the union between England and Scotland, and in 1709 he published his much admired *History of the Union*. He died April 26th, 1731. He wrote over 200 books, the best known ones being *Adventures of Robinson Crusoe*, *Memoirs of a Cavalier*, and the *History of the Plague of 1665*. See *Defoe* by William Minto in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "Daniel Defoe" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Defoe is found on page 272 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Deland, Margaretta Wade, was born at Allegheny, Pennsylvania, on February 23rd, 1857. She was educated at private schools, and in 1880 married Lorin F. Deland, of Boston, where she has lived ever since. Her works include *The Old Garden and Other Verses*, *The Story of a Child*, *Mr. Tommy Dove and other Stories*, *Old Chester Tales*, *The Hands of Esau*, *The Voice*, and *The Vehement Flame*.

De Mille, James, was born at St. John, New Brunswick, in 1833. He was educated at Brown University, Providence, Rhode Island. He became senior partner in the firm of De Mille & Fillmore, stationers, but soon sold out his interest in the business, partly because of ill-health and partly because he wished to devote himself to literature. During the last few years of his life he was professor of history and rhetoric in Dalhousie College and acquired a high reputation as a lecturer. He died on January 28th, 1880. Among his works are *The American Baron*, *Behind the Veil*, *The Cryptogram*, and two series of stories for boys known as the *Boys of the White Cross Series* and *The Young Dodge Club*.

Dickens, Charles, was born at Landport, Portsea, England, on February 7th, 1812. His early life of abject poverty in London is reflected in such books as *Oliver Twist*, *The Old Curiosity Shop*, *Pickwick Papers*, and others. His father became involved in financial difficulties, which resulted in the entire family becoming inmates of the Debtors' Prison. *Little Dorrit*, the prison scenes of *Pickwick*, and the earlier part of *David Copperfield* are based on his experiences there. When he was twelve years old his father's circumstances improved, and Charles was sent to school for a time. On leaving school he was placed in a law office, but soon abandoned this calling to become a newspaper reporter. His literary career began in 1836 with the publication of *Sketches by Boz*, which at once made him famous. His best novels now followed one another in rapid succession. In 1838 he married a daughter of George Hogarth, the musical critic. In 1842 he visited America, spending a month in Canada, acting in private theatricals and giving readings from his various works. He died at Gadshill, Kent, on June 9th, 1870, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. Some of his best known works are *Sketches by Boz*, *Pickwick Papers*, *Oliver Twist*, *The Life and Adventures of Martin Chuzzlewit*, *Dombey & Son*, *The Personal History of David Copperfield*, *Bleak House*, *Little Dorrit*, *A Tale of Two Cities*, *Great Expectations*, and *Nicholas Nickleby*. See *Dickens* by A. W. Ward in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Dickens* by Frank T. Marzials in *Great Writers* series (Scott), "Walter Scott" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life

of Dickens is found on page 120 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Dodgson, Charles Lutwidge. See Carroll, Lewis.

Dole, Charles Fletcher, was born at Brewer, Maine, on May 17th, 1845. He graduated from Harvard in 1868 and from Andover Theological Seminary in 1872. In 1906 he received the degree of D.D. from Bowdoin College. In 1873 he was appointed professor of Greek in the University of Vermont. The following year he became Minister of Plymouth Church, Portland, Maine, where he remained for two years. In 1876 he was appointed to the charge of the First Congregational Church, Jamaica Plain, Massachusetts, and since 1916 has been minister-emeritus of that church. His works, which are mostly of a religious character, include *Early Hebrew Stories*, *The Golden Rule in Business*, *The Spirit of Democracy*, *The Hope of Immortality*, *A Religion for the New Day*, and *The Young Citizen*.

Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan, was born at Edinburgh, on May 22nd, 1859. He was educated at Stonyhurst and at Edinburgh University. From 1882 to 1890 he practised medicine at Southsea and from 1899 to 1900 was engaged in hospital work in South Africa. In 1900 he became a member of the House of Commons for Edinburgh. He was knighted in 1902. He has recently become a firm believer in spiritualism, and in 1922 he made a lecture tour of Canada and the United States, giving expression to his views on this subject. Amongst his best known works are *The Adventures of Sherlock Homes*, *The Refugees*, *The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes*, *The White Company*, *Micah Clarke*, *The Great Boer War*, *The Hound of the Baskervilles*, *Songs of the Road*, *The New Revelation*, *History of the British Campaign in France and Flanders*, and *The Guards Came Through*.

Doyle, Sir Francis Hastings, 2nd baronet, was born near Todcaster, Yorkshire, on August 21st, 1810. He was educated at a private school at Chelsea and at Eton, where he was closely associated with Gladstone, Hallam, and Canning. He graduated from Oxford and took up the study of law in 1832, being called to the bar four years later. In 1835 he was elected a fellow of All Souls. His first volume of poetry entitled *Miscellaneous Verses* was published in 1834. The publication in 1866 of *The Return of the Guards and Other Poems*, a collection of almost all his best poems, secured for him his election as professor of poetry at Oxford. He died at London on June 8th, 1888. Among his notable ballads are *The Red Thread of Honour*, *The Private of the Buffs*, and *The Loss of the Birkenhead*. See *Reminiscences and Opinions of Sir F. H. Doyle* by himself (Appleton).

Douglas, Marian, is the pen name of Annie Douglas Green Robinson, who was born at Plymouth, New Hampshire, on January 12th, 1842.

She was educated in private schools. Her present home is in Bristol, New Hampshire. She is the author of *Peter and Polly*, *Picture Poems for Young Folks*, *In the Poverty Year*, and *Days We Remember*.

Drummond, Rev. Lewis Henry, was born at Montreal, on October 19th, 1848. He was educated at the Montreal Collegiate Institute and at St. Mary's (Jesuit) College, graduating at the age of 16. In 1868 he entered the Society of Jesus. From 1870 to 1873 he taught classics in St. Mary's College and devoted the next three years to the study of philosophy at Woodstock College, Maryland. In 1876 he returned to teaching again, and from 1880 to 1884 he studied the D.D. course at St. Bernier's College, North Wales, but did not take the degree. In 1883 he was ordained and spent a year in priestly ministration in London. During this period he was on the staff of *The Month*, London. In 1885 he became a member of the staff of St. Boniface College, and a councillor of the University of Manitoba. In 1890 he was appointed rector of St. Mary's College, Montreal, but owing to ill health, resigned after two years and returned to St. Boniface. In 1908 he became rector of the Church of Our Lady, Guelph, Ontario, and editor of *America*, a Catholic review of the week, published in New York. He has contributed essays and sonnets to leading periodicals and has published numerous lectures. Among his writings are *The French Element in the Canadian Northwest*, *True and False Ideals in Education*, and *The Jesuits*.

Drummond, William Henry, was born near Mohill, County Leitrim, Ireland, on April 13th, 1854. His father was an officer in the Royal Irish Constabulary. His boyhood was passed at Tawley, beside the bay of Donegal, where he developed a love of poetry and romance. He was educated at the village school and at an early age emigrated to Canada with his parents. His father died shortly after their arrival in Canada, and Drummond left school to become a telegrapher on the banks of the Rivière des Prairies, where he first came in contact with the habitant and voyageur, and learned stories of the backwoods. Later he attended a high school, McGill University, and graduated from Bishops Medical College in 1884. He practised for a time in Stornoway and Knowlton, and in 1888 returned to Montreal. In 1894 he married May Harvey, while on a hurried trip to Jamaica. Soon after this *The Habitant* was published and was followed in 1901 by *Johnnie Courteau*. For several years he occupied the chair of medical jurisprudence in McGill University. In 1902 he visited England and Scotland and in the same year received the degree of LL.D. from the University of Toronto. His last completed work *The Voyageur*, was published in 1905. He became interested in the Drummond Mines, and from 1905 on, much of his time was spent in the

vicinity of Cobalt, where he died on April 6th, 1907, the victim of an attack of cerebral hemorrhage.

Dugmore, Arthur Radclyffe, was born in England on December 25th, 1870. He was educated at Elizabeth College, Guernsey, and Turrell's School, in Smyrna, Asia Minor, and studied painting at Belle Arti in Naples. In 1889 he went to the United States, where he studied ornithology and continued drawing, painting, and illustrating by photography. He afterwards became a writer and lecturer on nature subjects. He is the author of *Bird Homes*, *Camera Adventures in the African Wilds*, which was translated into French and German, *Wild Life and the Camera*, and *The Romance of the Newfoundland Caribou*.

Duncan, Norman, was born at Brantford, Ontario, on July 2nd, 1871. He graduated from the University of Toronto in 1895 and received the degree of Litt.D. from the University of Pittsburg in 1912. From 1897 to 1901 he was on the staff of the New York *Evening Post*. He was successively professor of rhetoric at Washington and Jefferson Colleges and assistant professor of English literature at the University of Kansas. He made many journeys to Newfoundland and Labrador. He was correspondent for *Harper's Magazine* from 1907 to 1908 in Syria, Palestine, Arabia, and Egypt, and from 1912 to 1913 in Australia, New Guinea, Dutch East Indies, and the Malay States. He was a frequent contributor to leading periodicals. He died on October 18th, 1916. Among his works of fiction are *The Soul of the Street*, *Dr. Luke of the Labrador*, *The Adventures of Billy Topsail*, and *Billy Topsail and Company*.

Edgar, Sir James David, was born at Hatley, Quebec, on August 10th, 1841. He was educated in Lennoxville and Quebec, was called to the Ontario bar in 1864, and began the practice of law in Toronto. From 1872 to 1874 he represented Monck in the House of Commons and in 1884 was again elected to represent West Ontario. Shortly after being elected Speaker of the House in 1896, he was knighted. He died at Toronto on July 31st, 1899. In addition to several law-books and political pamphlets, he is the author of *The White Stone Canoe* and *This Canada of Ours and Other Poems*.

Eliot, George, is the pen name of Mary Ann Evans, who was born at Griff, Warwickshire, on November 22nd, 1819. Her father was a man of unusual ability, and under his guidance she received an excellent education. Her first attempt at writing was a translation of Strauss's *Life of Jesus*, which appeared in 1846. After living for a year in Geneva, she became assistant editor of the *Westminster Review* and took up her residence in London. In 1854, she formed a union with George Henry Lewes, who first encouraged her to write fiction. Lewes died in 1878, and two years later she married John Walter Cross. She died at Chelsea on

December 22, 1880. Her principal works are *Adam Bede*, *The Mill on the Floss*, *Felix Holt*, *Silas Marner*, *Daniel Deronda*, and *Romola*. See *George Eliot* by Sir Leslie Stephen in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of George Eliot* by Oscar Browning in *Great Writers* series (Scott), "George Eliot" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of George Eliot are found on page 170 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn) and on page 257 of the Eighth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Erskine, Emma Payne, was born at Racine, Wisconsin, on May 10th, 1854. She was educated at home, and in 1873 she married Charles Edwin Erskine, who died in 1908. She lives at Tryon, North Carolina, where she devotes herself to designing and home-building on her own land. She is the author of two volumes of poetry, *Iona, a Lay of Ancient Greece* and *The Harper of the King's Horse*, and of several novels, among which are *When the Gates Lift Up Their Heads*, *The Mountain Girl*, *The Eye of Dread*, and *A Girl of the Blue Ridge*.

Evans, Mary Ann. See **Eliot, George**.

Everett-Green, Evelyn, was born at London, England, on November 17th, 1856. Her father was an artist and her mother, a writer. She was educated at a preparatory school and at Bedford College, London, winning the Reid Scholarship in 1872. She studied music for a time at the London Academy, and, after nursing for two years in a London hospital, she removed to the country in 1883 and took up a literary career. Since 1910 she has lived much abroad. Her works, which are mostly novels and stories for young people and children, include *The Last of the Dacres*, *Dominique's Vengeance*, *After Worcester*, *Married in Haste*, and *Magic Emeralds*.

Ewing, Juliana Horatia, was born at Ecclesfield, in Yorkshire, in 1841. Her father was Dr. Alfred Gatty, vicar of Ecclesfield. As a child in the nursery, she loved story-telling and play-acting. Her first story, *A Bit of Green*, was published in the *Monthly Packet* in 1861 and was included in her first volume, which was published a year later under the title *Melchior's Dream and Other Tales*. Most of her stories appeared in *Aunt Judy's Magazine*, which was started in 1866 and owes its title to her nickname. In 1867 she married Major Alexander Ewing with whom she visited New Brunswick. *The Land of Lost Toys*, her best story, appeared in 1869. From 1873 to 1875 she helped her sister to edit the magazine, but gave up this work to confine herself to story-writing. In 1879 she set out on a journey to Malta to meet her husband. but was taken so ill

that she was forced to return to England and did not see her husband again for four years. She died at Bath on May 13th, 1885. Her most popular story is probably *Jackanapes*.

Fawcett, Edgar, was born at New York on May 26th, 1847. He graduated from Columbia University in 1867 and devoted the remainder of his life to literary work. He travelled extensively in Europe and died at London, England, in 1904. His works include prose, poetry, and several plays. His volumes of verse are *Fantasy and Passion, Romance and Revery, Song and Story, Songs of Doubt and Dream*; and amongst his prose works are *An Ambitious Woman, Purple and Fine Linen, The Evil that Men Do, The House at Highbridge, Tinkling Cymbals, and Agnosticism and Other Essays*.

Field, Eugene, was born at St. Louis, Missouri, on September 2nd, 1850. He was educated at Williams and Knox Colleges, and studied at the University of Missouri for a time but left without securing his degree. In 1871 he travelled in Europe and on his return took up journalistic work. He was connected with various newspapers in Missouri and Colorado and in 1883 joined the staff of the Chicago *Daily News*. He was passionately fond of children and many of his best poems, which appeared in the *Daily News*, are dedicated to them. He died at Chicago on November 4th, 1895. His best known works are *A Little Book of Profitable Tales, With Trumpet and Drum, Love Songs of Childhood*, and *A Little Book of Western Verse*. "This rare and original minstrel of the West was the Yorick of American poetry, childhood's born laureate, and no less a scholar by nature than a man of infinite humor, and of inimitable, if somewhat too eccentric, jest." See *Eugene Field* by Alason Thompson (Scribner).

Fox-Smith, C. See **Smith, C. Fox**.

Goldsmith, Oliver, was born at Pallas, Longford County, Ireland, on November 10th, 1728. He took his degree at Trinity College, Dublin, in 1749 and spent two years in the study of medicine at Edinburgh. Shortly after this, he set out to make a tour of Europe on foot, but while in Italy was recalled to England by his uncle's death in 1756. After teaching in a school near London for a time, he became an apothecary's assistant. *The Vicar of Wakefield* was written in 1762, but was not published until four years later. *The Traveller* appeared in 1764 and met with an enthusiastic reception. Early in 1774 he contracted a fever and died at London on April 4th. Others of his best known works are *Letters from a Nobleman to His Son, The Deserted Village*, and the comedy, *She Stoops to Conquer*. See *Goldsmith* by William Black in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Goldsmith* by Austin Dobson in *Great Writers* series (Scott), and "Oliver Goldsmith" in *Lives of Great*

English Writers by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton). A good sketch of the life of Goldsmith is found on page 225 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Goodwin, Grace Duffield, was born at Adrian, Michigan, on October 2nd, 1869. She graduated from Bishopthorpe School, Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, in 1888 and three years later married Rev. Frank J. Goodwin, of Glen Ridge, New Jersey. Her home is in Litchfield, Connecticut. She is a strong opponent of woman suffrage. She is the author of *The Valley of Troubling*, *Anti-Suffrage—Ten Good Reasons*, and *Horizon Songs*.

Gordon, Charles William. See Connor, Ralph.

Gould, Hannah Flagg, was born at Lancaster, Massachusetts, on September 3rd, 1789. The greater part of her life was spent quietly at Newburyport, where she died on September 5th, 1865. Her first volume of poems was published in 1832. *Hymns and Poems for Children*, which is her best known work, appeared in 1854.

Green, Evelyn Everett. See Everett-Green, Evelyn.

Grimm, Jacob Ludwig Karl (1785-1863) and **Wilhelm Karl** (1786-1859). The brothers were born at Hanau, Germany. Jacob was appointed to the office of librarian to King Jérôme at Wilhelmshöhe in 1806 and ten years later became sub-librarian at the Kassel library. In 1814 Wilhelm was appointed secretary at the same institution. In 1829 they went together to Göttingen, where Jacob was appointed librarian and his brother, sub-librarian. In 1841 they were summoned by Frederick William IV to the University of Berlin, where they devoted the remainder of their lives to the study of the German language and literature. Their most famous works are their collection of *Fairy Tales*.

Halleck, Fitz-Greene, was born at Guilford, Connecticut, on July 8th, 1790. He began writing poetry while still very young. In 1811 he became a clerk in the house of Jacob Barker in New York, where he remained for twenty years, after which he entered the employ of John Jacob Astor. In recognition of his services to the latter, he was left an annuity of \$200 and appointed a trustee of the Astor Library. He was a frequent contributor to newspapers and periodicals. The last eighteen years of his life were spent in Guilford, where he died on November 19th, 1867. He wrote both prose and poetry, his best known poems being *Marco Bozzaris* and *Burns*. See *The Life and Letters of Fitz-Greene Halleck* by J. G. Wilson (Appleton).

Hamilton, Douglas Ewart, was born at Hamilton, Ontario, on August 5th, 1889. He was educated at the public school and at the Hamilton Collegiate Institute, and graduated from the University of Toronto in 1911. He received the degree of M.A. the following year, and the degree

of Doctor of Paedogy in 1920. Since 1912 he has been connected with the University of Toronto Schools. He is the author of *The Story of the Great War*.

Harding, Samuel Bannister, was born at Indianapolis on July 29th, 1866. He graduated from Indiana University in 1890, and received his Ph.D. from Harvard in 1898. In 1890 he married Caroline Hirst Brown, in collaboration with whom he wrote *Greek Gods, Heroes and Men* in 1897 and *The City of the Seven Hills* in 1898. From 1895 to 1918 he was successively assistant professor, associate professor, and professor of history in Indiana University. From 1917 to 1919 he was engaged in research and editorial war work with the Committee on Public Information, Washington. In 1918 he married Margaret Snodgrass, with whom he had previously written *The Story of Europe*, in 1912. From 1919 to 1921 he devoted his time to editorial work in Chicago and since 1921 has been acting professor of English history in the University of Minnesota. He is managing editor of *Compton's Encyclopaedia* for young people, and is a contributor to historical and political science magazines. His works include *The Story of the Middle Ages, Essentials in Mediaeval and modern History*, and *Study of the Great War*.

Harte, Francis Bret, was born at Albany, New York, on August 25th, 1839. His father, a school teacher, died when Bret was seventeen, leaving the family without means of support. Inspired by newspaper accounts of gold discoveries in California, the boy and his mother set out on the long journey across the continent. In California he became successively "teacher, miner, printer, express-messenger, secretary of the San Francisco mint, and editor." While employed as compositor in the office of the San Francisco *Era*, he occasionally slipped into the paper original paragraphs for which he had no copy. These soon attracted the attention of the editor, who encouraged him in his literary efforts, and before long Harte became editor of *The Californian* and in 1868, of *The Overland Monthly*. The publication, the same year, of his mining story, *The Luck of the Roaring Camp*, established his fame. In 1871 he moved to New York, where he wrote for the *Atlantic Monthly*. About seven years later he was appointed United States consul at Crefeld, Germany, subsequently being transferred to Glasgow, Scotland. He retired from public life in 1885 and died at Camberley, England, on May 5th, 1902. He was a very voluminous writer, having published forty-four volumes between 1867 and 1898. See *Bret Harte* by H. W. Boynton in *Contemporary Men of Letters* series (Blackwood) and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Harte are found on page 72 of Part I of *The Young and Field Ad-*

vanced *Literary Reader* (Ginn) and on page 175 of the Eighth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Hawthorne, Nathaniel, was born at Salem, Massachusetts, on July 4th, 1804. He was of a melancholy temperament and all his life was subject to fits of depression. He was educated at Bowdoin College, where he was a classmate of Longfellow. After his graduation in 1825, he lived for several years in seclusion at Salem, devoting himself to literary work for periodicals. His *Twice-told Tales* appeared in 1837 and *Mosses from an Old Manse* in 1846. In 1850, the publication of his *Scarlet Letter* placed him in the front rank of American writers of fiction. In 1849 he was appointed to a position in the Boston Customs House, and four years later became United States Consul at Liverpool, where he remained until 1857. After extensively touring the continent of Europe, he returned to the United States to resume his literary work. He died at Plymouth, New Hampshire on May 18th, 1864. His principal works are *House of the Seven Gables*, *Bliethedale Romance*, *Marble Faun*, *Tanglewood Tales*, and *The Wonder-Book*. See *Hawthorne* by Henry James in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Nathaniel Hawthorne* by George E. Woodberry in *American Men of Letters* series (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Hawthorne are found on page 11 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) and on page 215 of the Fifth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Headley, Joel Tyler, was born at Walton, New York, on December 30th, 1813. He was educated for the ministry at Union College and Auburn Seminary and was pastor in charge of a church at Stockbridge, Massachusetts, for two years. Ill-health, however, compelled him to abandon the ministry, and, after spending a year travelling abroad, he devoted himself to literary work in the United States. In 1846 he was appointed associate editor of the *New York Tribune*. Subsequently he entered politics and in 1856 became Secretary of State for New York. He died at Newburg, New York, on January 16th, 1897. Most of his works deal with historical subjects and are characterized by a fierce partizanship. The principal ones are *Napoleon and His Marshals*, *Oliver Cromwell*, *Life of Washington*, and *Sacred Heroes and Martyrs*.

Herford, Oliver, was born in December, 1863. He was educated at Lancaster College, England, and Antioch College, Ohio. After spending some time in the study of art at the Slade School in London and Julien's in Paris, he settled in New York, where he devotes himself to literary work. His works, which are mostly written for children, include stories, poems, and plays. Among them are *The Bashful Earthquake* and *Other*

Fables and Verses, A Child's Primer of Natural History, Rubaiyat of a Persian Kitten, Peter Pan Alphabet, Kitten's Garden of Verses, The Herford Æsop, and The Florist Shop.

Higginson, Nesta. See **O'Neill, Moira.**

Hogg, James, was born in Ettrick Forest, Selkirkshire, Scotland, on January 25th, 1772. The first thirty years of his life he spent farming and tending sheep, receiving very little education apart from what he gained by constant reading. At the age of 25 he began to compose songs and in 1807 published his first collection of poems under the title of *The Mountain Bard*. In 1810 he became editor of *The Spy*, a journal in Edinburgh, which proved a failure. In 1820 he married Margaret Phillips, and took up his residence at Altrive, where he devoted himself to literary work until his death on November 21st, 1835. His best works are *The Shepherd's Calendar, Montrose Tales, and Winter Evening Tales.*

Houghton, Richard Monckton Milnes, Lord, was born at London on June 19th, 1809. He was educated at Hundhill Hall school near Doncaster and graduated from Trinity College, Cambridge, in 1831. He was a close friend of Tennyson, Hallam, and Thackeray, and played a prominent rôle in the association known as the "Apostles." From 1837 to 1863 he represented Pontefract in the House of Commons, and was later raised to the peerage. He was instrumental in securing the passing of the Copyright Act. In 1875 he paid a visit to Canada and the United States, where he made the acquaintance of Longfellow and Emerson. He died at Vichy on August 11th, 1885. His principal works are *Poems Legendary and Historical, Palm Leaves, and The Life, Letters and Literary Remains of John Keats.*

Howitt, Mary, daughter of Samuel Botham, a prosperous Quaker, was born at Coleford, Gloucestershire, on March 12th, 1799. In 1821 she married William Howitt, in collaboration with whom some of her poetical works were produced, notably *The Forest Minstrel* and *The Book of the Seasons*. After their removal to Esher in 1837, she began her long series of children's stories, which number 110. A pension of £100 was awarded her from the Civil List in 1879. She died at Rome on January 30th, 1888. Her literary productions include poems, histories, stories, novels, travels, and translations from foreign languages, of which the best known are perhaps *Sowing and Reaping* and *Studies of Natural History.*

Howitt, William, was born at Heanor, Derbyshire, on December 18th, 1792. He was educated at the Friend's public school at Ackworth, Yorkshire, and at a school at Tamworth. His first publication was *An Address to Spring* which appeared in the *Monthly Magazine* when the author was only 13 years of age. In 1821 he married Mary Botham

(Mary Howitt), in conjunction with whom many of his works were produced. He conducted a drug store at Nottingham for a time and in 1836 settled in Esher, where he wrote *Rural Life of England*, *The Boys' Country Book*, and the first series of *Visits to Remarkable Places*. In 1854, upon his return from a two years' visit to Australia, he wrote several works dealing with life in that country, among which is *A Boy's Adventures in the Wilds of Australia*. In 1870 he took up his residence in Rome, where he died on March 3rd, 1879. In addition to the works mentioned, he wrote *A Popular History of England*, *The History of Magic*, *The Religion of Rome*, and many other books. In conjunction with his wife he wrote *Stories of English and Foreign Life*, *Ruined Abbeys and Castles of Great Britain*, etc.

Ingelow, Jean, was born at Boston, Lincolnshire, on March 17th, 1820. The influence of the fen scenery, so typical of Lincolnshire, is frequently reflected in her verse. She was educated at home. After living for a time in Ipswich, she went to London in 1863, where she remained until her death. Her first volume, *A Rhyming Chronicle*, was published in 1850 and was followed by *Poems* which contained her best poem, *High Tide on the Coast of Lincolnshire*. She also wrote a number of novels, of which the best is *Off the Skelligs*. She died at Kensington on July 20th, 1897.

Jackson, Helen Hunt, daughter of Professor Nathan W. Fiske of Amherst University, was born at Amherst, Massachusetts, on October 18th, 1831. She was educated at the female seminary at Ipswich. After her marriage to Captain Edward B. Hunt in 1852, she commenced to publish her literary works under the initials "H. H." After the death of her first husband, she married William S. Jackson, a banker in Colorado Springs, in 1875, and became known as Helen Hunt Jackson. She died in San Francisco on August 12th, 1885. Her best known work is *Ramona*, based on her investigation into the treatment of Indians by the United States Government. She also published volumes of verse, sketches of travel, novels, and miscellaneous poems. A good sketch of the life of Helen Hunt Jackson is found on page 294 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Jakeway, Charles Edwin, was born at Holland Landing, Ontario, in 1847. He graduated from the University of Toronto in 1871, and, from that date until his death in 1906, he practised medicine in Stayner, Ontario. He was a frequent contributor to Canadian magazines and newspapers. A volume of his poems, entitled *The Lion and the Lilies*, was published in 1897.

Johnson, E. Pauline, was born at Chiefswood, the reserve of the Six Nations Indians, in Brant County, Ontario, in 1862. Her father was head chief of the Mohawk Indians and her mother an Englishwoman. She was

educated privately and at the Brantford High School. Her first verses, *Gems of Poetry*, were published in New York, and she soon became well known as a contributor to Canadian and United States periodicals. In 1894, while on a visit to England, she published a collection of poems under the title of *The White Wampum*. She died at Vancouver on March 7th, 1913. Her finest poems deal with Indian life and Canadian scenery, the best known ones being *The Death Cry*, *A Cry from an Indian Wife*, *In April, As Red Men Die*, and *Prone on the Earth*. See *Canadian Men and Women of the Times* by Henry J. Morgan, and *Handbook of Canadian Literature* by Archibald MacMurchy.

Kingsley, Charles, was born at Holme Vicarage, Devonshire, on June 12th, 1819. He was educated at King's College, London, and Magdalene College, Cambridge, where he took his degree in 1842. He intended to study law but changed his mind and entered the Church, being ordained in 1842. Two years later he became rector of Eversley, Hampshire, where he devoted himself to the improvement of the conditions of the working-man. His first publication was a volume of *Village Sermons*, which was followed in 1850 by *Allon Locke*. He was professor of modern history at Cambridge from 1860 to 1869, when he became Canon of Chester and afterwards of Westminster. In 1872 he became editor of *Good Words*, and the following year made a lecturing tour in the United States. He was subsequently appointed chaplain to Queen Victoria. He died at Eversley on January 23rd, 1875. His best known works are *The Heroes: or Greek Fairy Tales*, *The Water-Babies*, *Two Years Ago*, *Yeast*, *Hypatia*, and *Westward Ho*. See *Charles Kingsley* by C. W. Stubbs in *Victorian Era* series (Blackie), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Kingsley is found on page 85 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Kipling, Rudyard, was born at Bombay, India, on December 30th, 1865. He was educated at the United Services College, Westward Ho, North Devon. From 1882 to 1889 he was assistant editor on the *Civil and Military Gazette and Pioneer* in Lahore, India. In 1886 he published *Departmental Ditties* and the following year *Plain Tales from the Hills*. From this time on, his publications followed one another in rapid succession. His books reveal great powers of observation, imagination, and vigor of narrative. From 1887 to 1889 he travelled through China, Japan, America, Africa, and Australasia. His series of *Barrack Room Ballads*, which appeared in the *National Observer* established his fame. He lived for some years in America and paid several visits to South Africa. In 1907 he was awarded the Nobel prize for literature. He received his LL. D. from McGill University in 1899, and was made an Honorary Literary

Doctor of Durham and Oxford Universities in 1907, of Cambridge in 1908, and of Edinburgh in 1920. He resides at present in Burwash, Sussex. As a poet Kipling did much to keep alive the martial spirit of the British people during the long period of peace which preceded the war of 1914-18. His best known works are *The Jungle Book*, *The Second Jungle Book*, *The Light that Failed*, *Captains Courageous*, *Stalky & Co.*, *Kim*, *Puck of Pook's Hill*, *Just So Stories for Little Children*, *Fringes of the Fleet*, and *Letters of Travel*. See *A Kipling Primer* by Frederic Laurence Knowles (Brown), *Modern Novelists* by William Lyon Phelps (Macmillan), *History of English Literature* by F. A. Mackenzie (Macmillan), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Kipling is found on page 188 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Knowles, James Sheridan, was born at Cork, on May 12th, 1784. He attended his father's school in Cork for three years and in 1793 moved with his family to London. At the age of 12 he attempted his first play and wrote *The Welch Harper*, a ballad which was set to music and became popular. In 1800 his mother died, and shortly afterwards, unable to agree with his step-mother, he left home and lived from hand to mouth for some time. He took the degree of M.D. from the University of Aberdeen, but soon gave up the practice of medicine and took to the stage. In 1809 he married Maria Charteris, with whom he acted at Waterford. There he met Edmund Kean, the actor, for whom he wrote *Leo, or the Gipsy* in 1810. *Brian Boroihme, or the Maid of Erin* was produced in Belfast in 1811 and proved very popular. Playwriting, however, did not prove remunerative, and Knowles opened a school in Belfast, where he wrote *The Elocutionist*, a series of extracts for recitation by his pupils. Later he removed to Glasgow, where he carried on a school for twelve years. *Caius Gracchus*, which appeared in 1815, met with great success, and ten years later the production of *William Tell* established his reputation as "the first tragic writer of his time." From 1823 to 1824 he conducted the literary department of the *Free Press*, a Glasgow organ of liberal and social reform, and upon giving up his school, he lectured on oratory and the drama. His first comedy, *The Beggar's Daughter of Bethnal Green*, was not popular, but *The Hunchback*, produced in 1832, met with great success and was followed in 1837 by *The Love Chase*. In 1834 he paid a visit to the United States. He continued acting until 1843, wrote stories for magazines, and delivered public lectures and in 1848 was granted a civil list pension. About 1844 he became an ardent Baptist. He delivered sermons in church pulpits and wrote two books on religious subjects. He died at Torquay on November 30th, 1862. His writings comprise dramatic works, miscellaneous poems, and prose.

Krout, Mary Hannah, was born at Crawfordsville, Indiana, on November 3rd, 1857. She was educated at home and from 1872 to 1887 taught school. In 1881 she became associate editor of the *Crawfordsville Journal*, in 1882 editor of the *Terre Haute Express*, and for the following ten years was on the staff of the *Chicago Inter-Ocean*. In 1884 she toured New Zealand and Australia, returning to the latter country in 1906 to deliver a series of addresses. From 1893 to 1894 she was staff correspondent for several United States papers in Hawaii and in 1895 went to London, where she filled a similar position for three years. At present she resides in Crawfordsville. Her best known publications are *Hawaii and a Revolution*, *Alice in the Hawaiian Islands*, *A Looker-on in London*, *Two Girls in China*, *Platters and Pipkins*, and *The Eleventh Hour*.

Kupfer, Grace Harriet, was born at New York. She took her M.A. degree from New York University in 1900, and is now principal of the Alcuin Preparatory School in New York and supervisor of English courses in the High School Department of that school. She is the author of *Stories of Long Ago in a New Dress*, *Legends of Greece and Rome*, and *Lives and Stories Worth Remembering*.

Lampman, Archibald, was born at Morpeth, Ontario, on November 17th, 1861. He was educated at Trinity College School, Port Hope, and graduated from Trinity University, Toronto, in 1882. He taught school for a time, and in 1883 he entered the Canadian civil service. In 1887 his verses began to appear in *Scribner's*, *Harper's*, and the *Century*. Among the *Millet and Other Poems* appeared in 1888 and *Lyrics on Earth* in 1896. He was elected a Fellow of the Royal Society of Canada in 1895. He died at Ottawa on February 10th, 1899. See Introduction by Duncan Campbell Scott to *Poems of Archibald Lampman* (Morang).

Lang, Jean, is a native of Scotland. Her husband is John Lang, a younger brother of Andrew Lang. She is the author of *The Land of Romance*, *The Book of Myths*, *Little Tickle*, *Robert Bruce*, and other volumes in *Children's Heroes* series (Nelson), *Stories from Shakespeare*, and other volumes in *Told to the Children* series (Nelson).

Lansing, Marion Florence, was born at Waverley, Massachusetts, on June 10th, 1883. She graduated from Mount Holyoke College in 1903 and took her A.M. degree at Radcliffe in 1905. She edited *The Open Road Library* from 1907 to 1912, *Cooper's Deerslayer* in 1910, and *Dramatic Stories* and *Our Wonder World* in 1914. She lives, at present, in Cambridge, Massachusetts. Among her works are *The Story of the Great Lakes*, *Life in the Green Wood*, *Patriots and Tyrants*, and *The Wonder of Life*.

Larcom, Lucy, was born at Beverly, Massachusetts, in 1826. Writing stories and poems was her favorite form of amusement as a child, and, while still in her teens, she attracted the attention of John Greenleaf Whittier

through contributions made to his paper, while she was employed in the mills of Lowell. About 1846 she went to live with a married sister in Illinois, where she attended school for three years. Returning to Massachusetts, she engaged in teaching but, after six years, was forced to abandon this work owing to ill-health. From 1866 to 1874 she was chief editor of *Our Young Folks*. She died at Boston in 1893. Her best known works are *Wild Roses of Cape Ann*, *An Idyl of Work*, *Ships in the Mist and Other Stories*, and *Childhood Songs*.

Laut, Agnes C., was born at Stanley, Ontario, on February 11th, 1871. While she was still a child her family moved to Winnipeg. She entered the University of Manitoba, but ill-health compelled her to give up her course after two years. From 1895 to 1897 she was on the editorial staff of the *Manitoba Free Press*, Winnipeg, and subsequently removed to New York, where she became correspondent for a number of Canadian, English, and United States newspapers and periodicals, among which are the *Saturday Evening Post*, the *Financial Post*, *Review of Reviews*, and *Colliers*. She is the author of *Lords of the North*, *Heralds of Empire*, *Pathfinders of the West*, *Adventures of England on Hudson Bay*, *Canadian Commonwealth*, and *Pioneers of the Pacific Coast*.

Lear, Edward, was born at Holloway, London, on May 12th, 1812. He was the youngest of a large family and at fifteen was forced to earn his own living. This he did by making tinted drawings of birds and other artistic work. In 1831 he became draughtsman in the gardens of the Zoological Society, and the following year his first publication, a volume of colored plates of birds, appeared. From 1832 to 1836 he was engaged by the Earl of Derby to illustrate the volume entitled *The Knowsley Menagerie*, and it was for the earl's grandchildren that he wrote his *Book of Nonsense*, which was published in 1846. In 1837 his health failed and he left England. He spent several years in Rome earning his living by teaching drawing and subsequently travelled through southern Europe, Palestine, and India, sketching landscapes, some of which were afterwards exhibited in the Royal Academy. In 1845 he had the honor of teaching drawing to Queen Victoria. He was an intimate friend of Tennyson. He died at San Remo in January, 1888. His other works include *Nonsense Songs and Stories*, *More Nonsense Songs, Pictures, etc.*, *Laughable Lyrics*, and *Nonsense Botany and Nonsense Alphabets*.

Letts, Winnifred M., was born in Ireland in 1887. During the war she served as a nurse in various hospitals in France. Her best known book, *Songs from Leinster*, was published in 1913, followed by *Hallowe'en* in 1916, but she will long be remembered as the author of *The Spires of Oxford*.

Lindsay, Maude McKnight, daughter of Robert Burns Lindsay,

governor of Alabama from 1870 to 1872, was born in a small town in that State on May 13th, 1874. She was intensely interested in children and opened the first free kindergarten in Alabama. At present she resides in Sheffield, Alabama. All her stories were written for the cotton mill children and accordingly are expressed in exceedingly simple language. She is the author of *Mother Stories*, *More Mother Stories*, *Commentaries on the Mother Play*, *Story Teller for Little Children*, and *The Big Road*.

Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, was born at Portland, Maine, on February 27th, 1807. He graduated from Bowdoin College in 1825 and commenced the study of law. He soon abandoned law, however, to accept the position of professor of modern languages at Bowdoin College and spent three years in Europe to fit himself for his new position. In 1835 he was appointed to the chair of modern languages at Harvard and again went abroad to study for three years. He resigned his professorship at Harvard in 1854 but continued to live in Cambridge. In 1868 he again went to Europe, where he received the degree of D.C.L. from the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. He died at Cambridge, Massachusetts, on March 24th, 1882. His best known works are *Evangeline*, *Miles Standish*, *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, *The Golden Legend*, and *Hiawatha*. See *Henry W. Longfellow* by T. W. Higginson in *American Men of Letters* series (Houghton), *Life of Longfellow* by Eric S. Robertson in *Great Writers* series (Scott), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), *Henry W. Longfellow* by G. R. Carpenter in the *Beacon Biographies* (Small), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Longfellow are found on page 63 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn), and on page 204 of the Fourth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Loveman, Robert, was born at Cleveland, Ohio, on April 11th, 1864. He was educated at Dalton, Georgia, and received the honorary degree of A.M. from the University of Alabama. After several years spent in travel and study abroad, he returned to Dalton, Georgia, where he devotes his time to literary work. His works, which consist chiefly of poetry, include *A Book of Verses*, *The Gates of Silence with Interludes of Song*, *On the Way to Willowdale*, *Sonnets of the Strife*, and three volumes entitled *Poems*.

Lowell, James Russell, was born at Cambridge, Massachusetts, on February 22nd, 1819. He graduated from Harvard in 1838 and three years later was called to the bar. He soon abandoned law and devoted himself to literature, his first volume of poems being published in 1844. He was an ardent advocate of the abolition of slavery. He visited Europe in 1851 and in 1855 succeeded Longfellow as professor of modern languages at Harvard. From 1857 to 1862 he was editor of the *Atlantic Monthly*.

In 1877 he became Minister to Spain and from 1879 to 1885 was Ambassador to Great Britain. The degree of LL.D. was conferred on him by the Universities of Oxford, Cambridge, and Edinburgh, and he was elected Lord Rector of St. Andrew's University. He died at Cambridge, Massachusetts, on August 12th, 1891. In addition to his numerous works of literary criticism, he is the writer of many well-known poems, amongst which are *The Cathedral*, *The Bigelow Papers*, *Sir Launfal*, and the *Commemoration Ode*. See *James Russell Lowell* by Ferris Greensley in *American Men of Letters* series (Houghton), *James Russell Lowell* by E. E. Hale, Jr., in the *Beacon Biographies* (Small), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Lowell are found on page 178 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn), and on page 199 of the Eighth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Lubbock, Sir John. See *Avebury, Lord*.

Mabie, Hamilton Wright, was born at Cold Spring, New York, on December 13th, 1846. He was a frequent contributor to magazines and periodicals, and was associate editor of *The Outlook*. He died on December 31st, 1916. His best known works are *By My Study-Fire* and *Norse Tales Retold from the Eddas*.

Macaulay, Thomas Babington, Lord, was born at Rothley Temple, Leicestershire, on October 25th, 1800. He learned to read at the age of three, and at seven he wrote a *History of The World*. He was educated privately and at Trinity College, Cambridge, where he won high literary honors. He graduated in 1822 and two years later was elected a fellow of his college. In 1826 he was called to the bar. He began his literary career in 1823, and in 1825 his brilliant essay on *Milton* appeared in the *Edinburgh Review*. In 1830 he became Member of Parliament for Calne and became prominent in connection with the Reform Bill. In 1834 he went to India as a member of the Supreme Council and on his return to England four years later was the leader in establishing the educational system and in compiling a criminal code and code of criminal procedure for India. In 1839 he was appointed Secretary of State for War, and in 1846, Paymaster to the Forces with a seat in the Cabinet. His *History of England* was begun in 1839, though the first two volumes did not appear until 1848, the third and fourth being published in 1855. From 1839 to 1847 he was Member of Parliament for Edinburgh and was returned for the same constituency in 1852, at the head of the poll. In 1857 he was raised to the peerage with the title of Baron Macaulay of Rothley. He died at Campden Hill, Kensington, on December 28th, 1859, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. His principal works are *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Essays* and the unfinished *History of England*. See *Macaulay* by

J. Cotter Morison in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Lord Macaulay* by C. H. Jones (Appleton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold, (McClurg), and "Thomas Babington Macaulay" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton). A good sketch of the life of Macaulay is found on page 24 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Macdonald, George, was born at Huntley, West Aberdeenshire, on December 10th, 1824. He received his early education at a small school at Huntley and graduated from King's College, Aberdeen, in 1845. In 1850 he was ordained and appointed to the charge of Trinity Congregational Chapel at Arundel. After three years there, he removed to Manchester to devote himself to literature, and later went to London, where he became a lay member of the Church of England. In 1851 he married Louisa Powell, whose sympathy did much to help him in his work. For a time he edited *Good Words for the Young*, and in 1877 was granted a civil list pension of £100. In 1881 his health began to fail, and for the next twenty years the greater part of his time was spent at Bordighera. He was on intimate terms with the Carlyles, Tennyson, Matthew Arnold, the Duke of Argyll, Lord Houghton, and other famous men. He died at Ashted on September 18th, 1905. His best known works are *Unspoken Sermons*, *At the Back of the North Wind*, and *The Princess and the Goblin*. A good sketch of the life of Macdonald is found on page 73 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Machar, Agnes Maule, was born and educated at Kingston, Ontario, her father being the principal of Queen's University. She sometimes writes under the pen name of *Fidelis*. She is a frequent contributor to Canadian, English, and United States magazines. In addition to historical books and a volume of verse, she has written a number of works of fiction, which include *For King and Country*, *Lucy Raymond*, *Stories of New France*, *Marjorie's Canadian Winter*, and *The Heir of Fairmount Grange*.

Mackay, Charles, was born at Perth, Scotland, on March 27th, 1814. He was educated at a school in Brussels and was engaged in secretarial work and tutoring until 1834, when he turned his attention to journalistic work. In 1844 he returned to Scotland, where he became editor of *The Glasgow Argus* and two years later received the degree of LL.D. from Glasgow University. In 1852 he became editor of *The Illustrated London News* and in 1860 established *The London Review*. In 1857 he made a lecture tour of Canada and the United States, and five years later he returned to New York, where he remained during the period of the Civil War as correspondent of the *London Times*. He died at London on December 24th, 1889. His best known works are *Legends of the Isles*,

Voices from the Crowd, Under Green Leaves, The Lump of Gold, and Gossamer and Snowdrift.

Mackay, Isabel Ecclestone Macpherson, was born at Woodstock, Ontario, on November 25th, 1875. She was educated at Woodstock Collegiate Institute and in 1895 married Peter John Mackay, court stenographer. She removed to British Columbia in 1909 and made her home in Vancouver until her death in 1928. She was one of the best known writers of short stories and poems in Canada and was a frequent contributor to leading Canadian and United States periodicals. In 1918 she wrote a book of verse for children, entitled *The Shining Ship*. Among her other works are *Between the Lights* (poetry), *The House of Windows, Up the Hill and Over*, and *Mist of Morning* (novels).

Malet, Paul Henri, was born at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1730. For a time he acted as tutor to the Crown Prince of Denmark and in 1760 was appointed professor of history in the Academy of Geneva. He died in 1807. His best known works are *Monuments of the Mythology and Poetry of the Celts, Memoirs on the Literature of the North*, and *A History of Denmark*.

Marshall, H. E., is a Scottish writer of children's stories. She is the author of *Island Stories, Scotland's Story, Empire Story, Child's English Literature, Robin Hood*, and other volumes in *Told to the Children Series* (Nelson).

Masefield, John, was born at Ledbury, Hertfordshire, England, in 1878. At an early age he went to sea and for several years lived the life of a wanderer. In 1902 he published his *Salt Water Ballads*, and the following year *Ballads* appeared. In the same year he married Constance de la Cherois-Crommelin. His reputation as a poet was established in 1911 by the publication of his masterpiece *The Everlasting Mercy*. During the war he served with the Red Cross, and his *Gallipoli* is acknowledged to be the best story of that campaign in existence. He is the author of several plays and novels, but he is best known as a poet. Among his other works are *The Widow in the Bye-Street, Dauber, The Daffodil Fields, Good Friday and Other Poems, Reynard the Fox*, and *Enslaved and Other Poems*.

McCrae, John, was born at Guelph, Ontario, on November 30th, 1872. He was educated at Guelph Collegiate Institute and at the University of Toronto, taking the degree of M.B. in 1898. He became assistant physician of the Royal Victoria Hospital, Montreal, and lecturer in medicine in McGill University. From 1899 to 1900 he served as a lieutenant in the artillery in the South African field force and took part in the engagements at Belfast and Lydenburg. For his services in the latter campaign he received the Queen's Medal with three clasps. He subsequently commanded the 16th Battery, Canadian Field Artillery and in 1910 accompanied

Earl Grey to Hudson Bay. In July 1914 he set out on a holiday trip to Havre, but his journey was interrupted by the outbreak of war, and he returned to Canada. He went overseas the same year as surgeon to the 1st Brigade Artillery. In April, 1915, at the time of the second Battle of Ypres, when the Germans had all but reached Paris, he wrote *In Flanders Fields*, the poem which made him famous and which was adopted as the poem of the army. In the same month he was transferred to No. 13 General Hospital at Boulogne, where he remained until his death from pneumonia on January 28th, 1918. He is the author of several scientific books and a number of short poems.

McGee, Thomas D'Arcy, was born at Carlingford, Ireland, on April 13th, 1825. In 1842 he went to the United States, where he became editor of the *Boston Pilot*. In 1845 he returned to Ireland, but three years later was forced to flee to New York, because of the enthusiastic way in which he championed the Irish cause. In New York he edited various Irish-American papers until 1857, when he removed to Montreal, where he became a journalist, a member of Parliament, and an advocate of the federation of the British provinces in America. After Confederation he became a member of the Dominion Parliament and held various offices in the government. He was murdered at Ottawa on April 7th, 1868. His principal works are *Canadian Ballads*, *History of Ireland*, and *A Catholic History of North America*.

Meyer, Zoe, is engaged in teaching school in Peoria, Illinois. She is the author of *The Outdoor Book*, *In the Green Fields*, and *In the Green Wood*. Trade editions of these books have appeared under the titles, *Under the Blue Sky*, *Orchard and Meadow*, and *The Little Green Door*.

Michelet, Jules, was born at Paris in 1798. He was educated at the Lycée Charlemagne, and in 1823 was appointed to the chair of history in the Collège Rollin. He began his literary career in 1825, his first works dealing with modern history. In 1827 he was appointed maître des conférences at l'Ecole Normale and in 1830, assistant to Guizot at the Sorbonne. About this time he began his greatest work the *Histoire de France*. In 1838 he was appointed professor of history at the Collège de France, and the following year he published his *Histoire Romaine*. He died in 1874. He also wrote a history of the French Revolution and several books on natural history.

Moore, Thomas, was born on May 28th, 1779, at Dublin, Ireland, where his parents kept a small grocery store. He was educated at a private school and at Trinity College, where he once surprised his professors by writing an examination in verse. In 1799 he commenced the study of law at the Middle Temple, London. From 1803 to 1804 he held a civil service appointment in Bermuda and on his way back to

England paid a short visit to Canada and the United States. In 1811 he married an actress and settled in Kegworth in Leicestershire. He died near Devizes, Wiltshire, on February 25th, 1852. Moore was a brilliant conversationalist and a favorite in society. His best known works are *Irish Melodies*, *Lallah Rookh*, *Life of Byron*, and a *History of Ireland*. See *Thomas Moore* by Stephen Gwynn in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Literary Celebrities* (Chambers), and *Notes on Men, Women and Books* by Lady Wilde (Ward). A good sketch of the life of Moore is found on page 300 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Newbolt, Sir Henry John, was born at Bilston on June 6th, 1862. He was educated at Clifton College and at Corpus Christi College, Oxford, and in 1887 was called to the bar. He practised law for 12 years. His first book, *Taken from the Enemy*, was published in 1892, but his literary reputation was not established until the publication of his ballads, *Admirals All*. From 1900 to 1904 he edited the *Monthly Review*. In 1915 he was knighted. In 1922 he was appointed Editor-in-Chief for Thomas Nelson and Sons, Limited, Edinburgh. In 1923 he made a lecture tour of Canada. Among his works are *The Island Race*, *Songs of the Sea*, *The Old Country*, *Tales of the Great War*, *A Naval History of the War*, *An English Anthology*, and *A New Study of English Poetry*.

Noyes, Alfred, was born at Wolverhampton, in Staffordshire, on November 16th, 1880. He was educated at Exeter College, Oxford, where he began to write verses. He is an honorary Literary Doctor of Yale University and in 1914 was appointed visiting professor of English literature at Princeton University. In 1916 he was attached for a time to the British Foreign Office. He has made lecture tours of England, Canada, and the United States and has been a contributor to most of the leading periodicals in all three countries. His best known works are *The Loom of Years*, *The Flower of Old Japan*, *Forty Singing Seamen*, *The Enchanted Island*, *Tales of the Mermaid Tavern*, *Drake*, *Walking Shadows*, and *The Elfin Artist*. See *History of English Literature* by A. S. Mackenzie (Macmillan).

O'Neill, Moira, the pen name of Miss Nesta Higginson, is a combination of the Christian names of her father and mother. She was born on the Island of Mauritius, but most of her childhood was spent in the glens of Antrim. Her great ambition was to be a painter, and for four years she lived in Italy, studying art. Upon her return to Ireland, she took up literary work, at which she proved more successful than at art. Her first story, *Born on Hallow E'en*, was published in *Blackwood's Magazine* in 1890 and was soon followed by her first verses, *Sea Wrack*, written in the Antrim dialect. She has written many lyrics and studies of Irish folks

and landscapes. Among her stories are *An Eastern Vacation* and *An Elf Errant*.

Osborne, E. B., is an English author and journalist whose home is in London. His first volume, *The Maid with Wings and Other Fantasies, Grave to Gay*, appeared in 1917. Other publications which he has edited are *The Muse in Arms*, a collection of war poems, *The New Elizabethans*, and a *First Selection of the Lives of Young Men Who Have Fallen in the Great War*.

Ouida. See *Ramée, Marie Louise de la*.

Parkman, Francis, was born at Boston, Massachusetts, on September 16th, 1823. He graduated from Harvard in 1844 and from the Dana Law School in 1846. After a year spent in Europe he travelled extensively through the Western States, where he contracted a painful disease which constantly interfered with his work. He paid many visits to Europe in search of information for his histories. He died at Boston on November 8th, 1893. His principal works are *The Oregon Trail*, *The Pioneers of France in the New World*, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, *The Conspiracy of Pontiac*, and *The Jesuits of North America*. See *Francis Parkman* by H. D. Sedgewick in *American Men of Letters* series (Houghton) and *American Writers of To-day* by Henry C. Vedder (Silver). A good sketch of the life of Parkman is found on page 363 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Parrott, Sir James Edward, was born at Liverpool on June 1st, 1863. He was educated at St. Paul's College, Cheltenham, and Trinity College, Dublin, receiving the degree of LL.D. in 1900. After teaching for a time in Sheffield and Liverpool, in 1898 he became editor for the publishing house of Thomas Nelson & Sons. In 1917 he was elected Member of Parliament for the South Division of Edinburgh, and was appointed Justice of the Peace for the County of the City of Edinburgh. He wrote under the pen name of *Edward Shirley*. He died on April 5, 1921. His publications include *A Pageant of British History*, *A Pageant of English Literature*, *Britain Overseas*, and *Children's Story of the War*. He also edited a number of books, including Funk & Wagnall's *Standard Encyclopædia*.

Patterson, Maude Elizabeth, resides in the City of Toronto, Ontario, where she is in charge of kindergarten work in Brown Public School. She is the author of *A Child's Garden of Stories*.

Peat, Harold R., was born in 1893. Three weeks after the outbreak of the Great War, he enlisted in Edmonton and sailed for England with the first overseas troops. He went to France with the 3rd Battalion of the First Brigade and fought in the second and third battles of Ypres. After two years of fighting, he was wounded, invalided home, and discharged.

In 1917 he published *Private Peat*, a record of his experiences at the front. He was a member of the British Recruiting Commission in the United States.

Procter, Bryan Waller, was born at Leeds, England, on November 21st, 1787. His pen name was *Barry Cornwall*. He was educated at a school in Finchley and at Harrow, and was called to the bar in 1831. His first volume, *Dramatic Scenes and Other Poems*, and his tragedy, *Mirandola*, met with an enthusiastic reception at the hands of the public. He died at London on October 5th, 1874. His eldest daughter was the poetess, Adelaide Anne Procter. His chief works are *The Flood of Thesaly*, *English Songs and Other Small Poems*, *Essays and Tales in Prose*, and *Charles Lamb: A Memoir*.

Prud'homme, Louis Arthur, was born at St. Urbain Premier, Quebec, on November 21st, 1853. He was educated at Montreal College, studied law, and in 1881 began to practise his profession in Manitoba. In 1885 he was appointed a county court judge. He contributed to French Canadian publications many articles dealing with Manitoba and the Northwest Territories, and served for some time on the editorial staff of *Le Metis* and *Le Manitoba*. His home is in St. Boniface, Manitoba. He is the author of *Notes Historiques sur la vie de P.E. de Radisson*.

Ramée, Marie Louise de la, was born at Bury St. Edmunds, Suffolk, England, on January 1st, 1839. Her pen name, *Ouida*, was her childish pronunciation of her second name, Louise. Her father was French and her mother English. At an early age she took up her residence in London, where she contributed to the *New Monthly* and *Bentley's Magazine*. *Granville de Vigne*, her first novel, appeared in the *New Monthly* in 1863 and was republished three years later under the title of *Held in Bondage*. In 1874 she removed to Florence. She was a lover of animals and a strong champion of the Antivivisection movement. Her *Bimbi: Stories for Children* appeared in 1882. She died in poverty at Viareggio, Italy, on January 25th, 1908. Her best known publication is *Under Two Flags*.

Rand, Theodore Harding, was born at Cornwallis, Nova Scotia, on February 8th, 1835. He received his early education at Horton College Academy and graduated from the University of Acadia in 1860. He taught school for a time and in 1874 was made Superintendent of Education for Nova Scotia, subsequently holding a similar position in New Brunswick. In 1883 he was appointed to the chair of history in Acadia and later held a professorship in McMaster and Woodstock Colleges. From 1892 to 1895 he was Chancellor of McMaster University, Toronto. He died at Fredericton, New Brunswick, in 1900. *At Minas Basin and Other Poems* was published in 1897.

Rands, William Brighty, was born at Chelsea on December 24th, 1823. His education was very limited. He was employed for some years in a warehouse, then went on the stage, and later became a clerk in an attorney's office. In 1857 he was appointed a reporter in the House of Commons and held this position until 1875, when ill-health forced him to resign. During this period he was a constant contributor to leading periodicals under the pen names of *Henry Holbeach* and *Matthew Browne*. In 1878 he aided in founding the *Citizen*, a London newspaper. He was for some time a preacher in a chapel at Brixton and composed many hymns. He died at Luton Villa, Surrey, on April 23rd, 1882. He is noted for his children's lyrics and fairy tales, of which he published one every Christmas for many years. He has been described as the "laureate of the nursery." His best known works are *Lilliput Legends* and *Shoemaker's Village*.

Reade, Charles, was born in Oxfordshire, England, on June 8th, 1814. He was educated at various private schools and at Magdalen College, Oxford, where he graduated in 1835. In 1843 he was called to the bar but soon abandoned law for literature. He was successively bursar, Dean of Arts, and Vice-President of Magdalen College. His first publication was a comedy entitled, *The Ladies' Battle*, which appeared in 1851. This was followed a year later by his first novel, *Peg Woffington*. He died at London on April 11th, 1884. His best works are *It Is Never Too Late To Mend*, *Hard Cash*, and *The Cloister and the Hearth*.

Richards, Laura Elizabeth, was born at Boston, Massachusetts, on February 27th, 1850. Her mother was Julia Ward Howe. In 1871 she married Henry Richards of Gardiner, Maine, where she has resided ever since. Her works are numerous and varied. Among them are *Sketches and Scraps*, *Five Mice*, *Five Minute Stories*, *The Pig Brother Play Book*, and "To Arms," a collection of war songs. A good sketch of the life of Laura E. Richards is found on page 53 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Riley, James Whitcomb, was born at Greenfield, Indiana, in 1853. He was educated in the public schools and received the honorary degrees of M.A. from Yale in 1902, Litt.D. from Wabash College in 1903 and the University of Pennsylvania in 1904, and LL.D. from Indiana University in 1907. In 1873 he began contributing to Indiana periodicals and became known as "the Hoosier poet" because of the fact that most of his verse is written in the middle-western dialect. His earlier works appeared under the pen name *Benj. F. Johnson of Boone*. He died on July 22nd, 1916. His works include *The Old Swimmin' Hole* and 'Leven More Poems, *Afterwhiles*, *Rhymes of Childhood*, *A Child-World*, *The Book of Joyous Children*, *A Defective Santa Claus*, *Raggedy Man*, *The Little*

Orphant Annie Book, When the Frost is on the Punkin and Other Poems, and Good-bye Jim. Good sketches of the life of Riley are found on page 79 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) and on page 197 of the Fifth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Roberts, Charles George Douglas, was born at Douglas, New Brunswick, on January 10th, 1860. He received his education at the Fredericton Collegiate Institute and at the University of New Brunswick. After teaching school for a time, he became editor of *The Week*, a Toronto publication. From 1885 to 1895 he was on the staff of King's College, Nova Scotia, first as professor of English and French literature and subsequently as professor of economics. In 1897 he became associate editor of the *Illustrated American*, New York. In October, 1914, he enlisted as a trooper in the Legion of Frontiersmen, Southampton, and was raised successively to the ranks of lieutenant and captain, and in 1917 to that of major. His works include both poetry and prose. Among them are *Orion, In Divers Tones, Songs of the Common Day, The Book of the Native, The Forge in the Forest, A Sister to Evangeline, The Heart of the Ancient Wood, The Secret Trails, and Canada in Flanders.*

Robinson, Annie Douglas Green. See **Douglas, Marian.**

Rossetti, Christina Georgina, was born at London on December 5th, 1830. Her father was Gabriel Rossetti, the Italian patriot, and her brother, Dante Rossetti, the noted poet and painter. She led an uneventful life, devoting many of her earlier years to the care of her mother, and in later life becoming an invalid herself. An unhappy love affair is responsible for the melancholy character of much of her poetry. In 1850, she contributed several poems to the *Germ* under the pen name of *Ellen Alleyne*. She died at London on December 29th, 1894. Her best work is *The Goblin Market and Other Poems*. Among her other poems are *The Prince's Progress and Other Poems* and *A Pageant and Other Poems*. See *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack).

Ruskin, John, was born at London on February 8th, 1819. His father, a wealthy wine merchant, used to take him annually on excursions through the country, where the beautiful scenery afforded him intense delight. He had a passion for beauty in any form. He was educated at various private schools and at Christ Church, Oxford, where he graduated with honors in 1842. During his college course he was threatened with consumption and spent two years resting and travelling in Italy, where he made a study of art. In 1843 the publication of his first volume, *Modern Painters*, established his reputation as an art critic. He devoted much of his time to a study of architecture, art, and drawing, making frequent journeys to Italy to visit the great galleries. In 1869 he was elected Slade Professor of Art at Oxford. He subsequently became

prominent as a social reformer, spending a great deal of his time and money in efforts to benefit the working classes. He died at Brantwood on January 20th, 1900. His chief works are *Modern Painters*, *Stones of Venice*, *The Seven Lamps of Architecture*, *The Crown of Wild Olive*, and *Sesame and Lilies*. See *John Ruskin, His Life and Work* by Marshall Mather (Warne), *Ruskin*, by Frederic Harrison in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "John Ruskin" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Ruskin is found on page 158 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Sangster, Charles, was born at Kingston, Ontario, on July 16th, 1822. His education was limited, due to the fact that at the age of fifteen he was forced to seek employment to help support his mother. He worked for a time in the laboratory at Fort Henry and for the next ten years held a junior position in the Ordnance office, Kingston. In 1849 he became editor of the Amherstburg *Courier* and the following year engaged in newspaper work in Kingston. In 1867 he received an appointment in the civil service at Ottawa, where he died in 1893. His chief works are *The St. Lawrence and the Saguenay and Other Poems*, and *Hesperus and Other Poems and Lyrics*. See *Handbook of Canadian Literature* by Archibald MacMurchy (Ryerson Press).

Sangster, Margaret Elizabeth, was born at New Rochelle, New York, on February 22nd, 1838. She was educated privately and in 1858 married George Sangster. She was a frequent contributor to leading periodicals and in 1871 became associate editor of *Hearth and Home*. From 1873 to 1879 she held a similar position on the *Christian at Work* and subsequently on the *Christian Intelligencer*. From 1882 to 1889 she was post-mistress of *Harper's Young People*, and for the next ten years she edited *Harper's Bazaar*. She contributed to *The Christian Herald* and *The Ladies' Home Journal* from 1894 until her death on June 4th, 1912. Her best known works are *Poems of the Household*, *Easter Bells*, and *Happy School Days*.

Saxe, John Godfrey, was born at Highgate, Vermont, on June 2nd, 1816. He studied for a time at Wesleyan University and graduated from Middlebury College in 1839. He was admitted to the bar in 1843 and practised law for some years. From 1850 to 1856 he edited the *Burlington Sentinel*, after which he turned his attention to politics. He filled the office of attorney-general of Vermont for one year and on two occasions was the unsuccessful Democratic candidate for governor. In 1872 he became the editor of the Albany *Evening Journal*. He was a frequent

contributor to the leading American periodicals. He died at Albany on March 31st, 1887. His writings include *The Money King*, *The Masquerade*, *Leisure Day Rhymes*, *Humorous and Satirical Poems*, and *Fables and Legends of Many Countries*.

Schwartz, Julia Augusta, was born at Albany, New York, on February 3rd, 1873. She graduated from Vassar College in 1896 and the following year took the degree of A.M. Her present home is in La Jolla, California. She has written some delightful books for children. Among them are *Five Little Strangers*, *Wilderness Babies*, *Famous Pictures of Children*, *Little Star-Gazers*, and *The Happy Family*.

Scott, Duncan Campbell, was born at Ottawa on August 2nd, 1862. He was educated in the public schools and at Stanstead Wesley Academy and in 1880 became a clerk in the Department of Indian Affairs. He steadily advanced in this department, and since 1913 he has been Deputy Superintendent-General of Indian Affairs. He is a frequent contributor to Canadian and United States periodicals. His writings include *The Magic House and Other Poems*, *In the Village of Viger*, *Labor and the Angel*, *New World Lyrics and Ballads*, *John Graves Simcoe*, *Lundy's Lane*, and *Beauty and Life*. See *Canadian Men and Women of the Times* by Henry J. Morgan (Ryerson Press) and *Handbook of Canadian Literature* by Archibald MacMurchy (Ryerson Press).

Scott, Frederick George, was born at Montreal on April 7th, 1861. He was educated at the Montreal High School, Preparatory School, McGill University, Bishop's College, Lennoxville, and King's College, London, England. During the great war he served as Chaplain with the 1st Canadian Division, rising to the rank of Senior Chaplain in 1915. For his services overseas he was made a Companion of St. Michael and St. George and a Companion of the Distinguished Service Order. He is Canon of Quebec and Rector of St. Matthew's Church, Quebec. He is the author of two volumes, *Poems* and *In the Battle Silences*. See *Canadian Men and Women of the Times* by Henry J. Morgan (Ryerson Press) and *Handbook of Canadian Literature* by Archibald MacMurchy (Ryerson Press).

Scott, Sir Walter, was born at Edinburgh on August 15th, 1771. In infancy he was attacked by a fever which weakened his constitution and left him permanently lame. In the hope of restoring him to health, his parents sent him to live for a time with his grandmother in the country, where he gained an extraordinary knowledge of Scottish history and legends, which formed the basis of most of his literary work. He was educated at Edinburgh High School and University and was called to the bar in 1792. In 1797 he married Charlotte Margaret Charpentier, and two years later became Deputy-Sheriff of Selkirkshire. Some of his

poems had already been published, and in 1805 the publication of *The Lay of the Last Minstrel* placed him in the front rank of the most distinguished poets of the age. In 1811 he purchased a country estate at Roxburgh. In 1813 he was offered the position of Poet Laureate which he respectfully declined. The following year he commenced to publish the *Waverley Novels*, the name under which all his fiction appeared. In 1820 he was made a baronet. In 1826 the firm of Constable and Co., of which he was a member, failed, and Scott undertook to pay all their debts which amounted to £117,000. He accomplished this stupendous task by writing almost two books a year, but the effort cost him his life. In 1830 he suffered a stroke of paralysis and the following year made a voyage to the Mediterranean in search of health, on a warship provided by the British Government. He died at Abbotsford on September 21st, 1832. His three great poems are *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, *Marmion*, and *The Lady of the Lake*, and his principal novels are *Ivanhoe*, *Kenilworth*, *The Talisman*, *The Abbot*, *The Heart of Midlothian*, and *The Antiquary*. See *Scott* by R. H. Hutton in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Life of Scott* by Professor Yonge in *Great Writers* series (Scott), "Walter Scott" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Scott are found on page 198 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn), and on page 57 of the Eighth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Seton, Ernest Thompson, was born at South Shields, England, on August 14th, 1860. From 1866 to 1870 he lived on the prairies of Manitoba. He was educated at a high school in Toronto and at the Royal Academy, London. From 1882 to 1887 he lived close to nature in various parts of Manitoba, where he gained the intimate knowledge of animal and bird life and wood lore, which forms the basis of most of his literary work. In 1886 he published *Mammals of Manitoba* and in 1891 *Birds of Manitoba*. From 1890 to 1896 he studied art in Paris and is now well known as an animal painter and illustrator. He was one of the chief illustrators of *The Century Dictionary* and has contributed articles and illustrations to many leading periodicals. He is official ornithologist for the Province of Manitoba and is widely known as a lecturer. He lives in Greenwich, Connecticut, with his wife, formerly Miss Grace Gallatin, who is also a writer and book designer. Among his best known works are *Wild Animals I Have Known*, *The Trail of the Sandhill Stag*, *The Biography of a Grizzly*, *Two Little Savages*, *Animal Heroes*, *Woodcraft and Indian Lore*, and *Wild Animals at Home*.

Setoun, Gabriel, is the pen name of Thomas Nicoll Hepburn, who was born at West Wemyss, Fifeshire, on April 21st, 1861. He was educated at Moray House Training College, Edinburgh, and St. Andrew's University and is now headmaster of Milton House Public School, Edinburgh. His publications include *Barneraig*, *Sunshine and Haar*, *Robert Urquhart*, *Robert Burns*, *The Child World*, *George Malcolm*, and *The Skipper of Barneraig*.

Sewell, Anna, was born at Yarmouth, England, on March 30th, 1820. Her mother, Mary Sewell, was a popular authoress of the day. In early childhood she was the victim of an accident, through which she became a permanent invalid. She became famous as the author of *Black Beauty*, an autobiography of a horse, which was published in 1877 and was later translated into French, Italian, and German. She died in April, 1878.

Shakespeare, William, was born at Stratford-on-Avon in 1564. Very little is known about his early life apart from the fact that he attended the Stratford Grammar School. In 1582 he married Anne Hathaway, who was eight years his senior. Three years after his marriage, he went to London, where it is said he held horses at the doors of theatres for a time and subsequently became an actor. His first play appeared in 1594, and from this time on we find him firmly established as a dramatist, producing plays in regular succession. In 1597 he purchased a place in Stratford where he retired about 1613 and died three years later. Shakespeare is everywhere acknowledged as the greatest dramatic genius that ever lived. The most famous of his dramas are *Hamlet*, *King Lear*, *Macbeth*, *Othello*, *The Winter's Tale*, *The Merchant of Venice*, *The Tempest*, and *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. See *William Shakespeare* by Sidney Lee (Macmillan), *Shakespeare* by Sir Walter Raleigh in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "William Shakespeare" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Frances B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). Good sketches of the life of Shakespeare are found on page 237 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn) and on page 275 of the Eighth Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Shanley, Charles Dawson, was for a number of years editor of *Punch in Canada*. Subsequently he became noted as an art critic in New York. His poem, *The Walker of the Snow*, was first published in the *Atlantic Monthly*.

Sherman, Frank Dempster, was born at Peekskill, New York, on May 6th, 1860. He was educated at Columbia University where he afterwards became assistant professor of architecture. In 1904, he was appointed professor of graphics at Columbia, which position he held until his death on September 19th, 1916. His works include *Madrigals*

and *Catches*, *New Waggings of Old Tales*, *Little-Folk Lyrics*, and *Lyrics of Joy*.

Shirley, Edward. See **Parrott, Sir James Edward.**

Sill, Edward Rowland, was born at Windsor, Connecticut, on April 29th, 1841. After graduating from Yale in 1861, he spent five years at the Pacific Coast and returned in 1866 to study at Harvard Divinity School. He taught school for some years at various places, subsequently becoming principal of the High School at Oakland, California. In 1874 he was appointed professor of English at the University of California, but resigned in 1882 to devote himself to literary work. He returned to Cleveland, Ohio, where he died on February 27th, 1887. He is the author of *The Hermitage and Other Poems* and *The Venus of Milo and Other Poems*. His poems have been collected into a single volume, preceded by a memoir (Houghton).

Smith, C. Fox, was born at Lymm, Cheshire, England. She was educated privately and at Manchester High School. She paid a visit to Canada, living for a time at Lethbridge, Alberta, and at Victoria, British Columbia, and has published two novels dealing with life in the latter province, *Singing Sands* and *Peregrine in Love*. She is a contributor to *Punch* and has published several volumes of poems showing a love of the sea. Among them are *Songs and Chanties*, *Small Craft*, *Rhymes of the Red Ensign*, and *Ships and Folks*.

Southey, Robert, was born at Bristol, England, on August 12th, 1774. His parents died when he was quite young, and Southey was entrusted to the care of an Aunt. He was sent to Westminster School but was expelled for writing an essay condemning flogging. In 1793 he entered Balliol College, Oxford, where he remained for two years. His first volume of poems was published in 1794. The following year he married Edith Fricker, a sister-in-law of Coleridge, and removed to Portugal for six months. He was made Secretary to the Chancellor of the Exchequer for Ireland, but resigned about 1803 and went to live in Keswick, where he devoted himself to literature. In his younger days Southey came under the influence of the French Revolution and was a strong radical but later became an ultra-royalist. He was granted a government pension and in 1813 was made Poet Laureate. He died at Keswick on March 21st, 1843. His best poems are *Joan of Arc*, *Thalaba*, and *The Curse of Kehama*, and his best prose works, *Life of Nelson* and *Life of John Wesley*. See *Southey* by Edward Dowden in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Southey is found on page 165 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Spenser, Edmund, was born at London. The actual date of his birth is unknown, but it is thought that he was born in 1552. He was educated at the Merchant Tailor's School and Pembroke College, Cambridge, where he took the M.A. degree in 1576. His *Shepherd's Calendar*, a pastoral poem, published in 1579, describes his despair over an unfortunate love affair with a girl whom he called Rosalind. In 1578 he entered the service of the Earl of Leicester, as bearer of despatches and in 1580 became secretary to Lord Grey de Wilton, Viceroy of Ireland, where he remained until 1598. In 1589 he visited London, where he published the first three books of the *Faerie Queene*, which he had begun ten years before, and which was completed in 1596. In 1590 he was granted a state pension and made Poet Laureate, and eight years later was appointed Sheriff of Cork. During the rebellion of the Earl of Tyrone, his estate was plundered and his home burned, and he died in poverty at London on January 16th, 1599. He was buried in Westminster Abbey. See *Spenser* by R. W. Church in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), *Great English Poets* by Julian Hill (Jacobs), "Edmund Spenser" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Spenser is found on page 198 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Spyri, Johanna Heusser, was born near Zurich, in Switzerland, in 1829. Her father was a doctor and her mother a poet, and the child constantly came in contact with scholars and writers. Her childhood was spent among the mountains, and the influence of the scenery is reflected in all her writings. In 1852 she married Bernhard Spyri, town clerk of Zurich, where they lived for over thirty years. Her best stories are *Heidi*, *Moni the Goat Boy*, *Heimatlos*, *The Little Runaway*, and *Without a Friend*. A good sketch of the life of Johanna Spyri is found on page 186 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Stead, Robert James Campbell, was born at Middleville, Ontario, on September 4th, 1880. He received his education in Manitoba, where he went at the age of two. In 1895 he became a clerk in a store and three years later started to publish *The Review* at Cartwright, Manitoba, which he continued until 1910. From 1908 to 1909 he also published the *Crystal City Courier*. From 1910 to 1912 he was engaged in business in High River, Alberta, and was on the editorial staff of the *Calgary Albertan* for a year. In 1913 he became Assistant Publicity Agent for the Canadian Pacific Railway, and since 1919 has been Director of Publicity, Department of Immigration and Colonization, in Ottawa. He is the author of *Empire Builders*, *Songs of the Prairies*, *Prairie Born*, *Kitchener and Other Poems*

(verse), and *The Bail Jumper*, *The Homesteaders*, *The Cow Puncher*, and *Dennison Grant*, (novels).

Steedman, Amy, was born at Cape Town, South Africa, though she is of English nationality. She is the author of *In God's Garden*, *Knights of Art*, *Our Island Saints*, *The Madonna of the Goldfinch*, *The Staircase of Stories* (with Louey Chisholm), *Stories from Grimm*, and other volumes in *Told to the Children* series (Nelson).

Stevenson, Robert Louis, was born at Edinburgh, Scotland, on November 13th, 1850. He was trained to be an engineer, but gave up this profession to study law. He was called to the bar in 1875 but never practised. The following year he began to contribute his brilliant essays to the *Cornhill Magazine*. His first book, *The Inland Voyage*, was published in 1878. Ill-health constantly interfered with his work, but he continued to write. In 1879 he went to the United States, where he married a Mrs. Osbourne, who nursed him through his worst illness. He returned to England in 1880. In 1888 he sailed for the South Seas and two years later took up his residence at Vailima, in Samoa. He died at Apia on December 3rd, 1894. His best known works are *Picturesque Notes*, *Virginibus Puerisque*, *Familiar Studies of Men and Books*, *The New Arabian Nights*, *Treasure Island*, *Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*, and *The Merry Men*. See *Robert Louis Stevenson* by L. Cope Cornford in *Modern English Writers* series (Blackwood), *Modern Novelists* by William Lyon Phelps (Macmillan), *Stevensoniana* by J. A. Hammerton (Grant), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Stevenson is found on page 149 of the Seventh Reader of *The Riverside Readers* (Houghton).

Swift, Jonathan, was born at Dublin, on November 30th, 1667. His father died before his birth, and he was sent by an uncle to Trinity College, Dublin, where he graduated in 1685. He took up his residence at Moor Park as private secretary to Sir William Temple. In 1692 he took holy orders, in 1694 became prebendary of Kilroot, and the following year returned to Moor Park. In 1699 he was appointed rector of Agher and Vicar of Laracor in Ireland. From 1710 to 1711 he edited *The Examiner*, a weekly Tory paper, and the following year wrote *The Conduct of the Allies*, in which he did much to promote the peace of Utrecht, which was signed in 1713. In recognition of his services he was appointed Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin. He died at Dublin on December 19th, 1745. He is best known today as the author of *Gulliver's Travels*. See *Swift* by Sir Leslie Stephen in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "Jonathan Swift" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Swift

is found on page 304 of Book VI of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Tennyson, Alfred, Lord, was born at Somersby, Lincolnshire, England, on August 6th, 1809. His father, who was a clergyman and scholar, taught his children to love reading and told them many stories and legends of the days of knighthood. He was educated at home, at Louth Grammar School, and at Trinity College, Cambridge, but, owing to the death of his father in 1831, he was obliged to give up his college course without taking his degree. In 1827, in collaboration with his brother, Charles, he published a small volume entitled *Poems by Two Brothers*. *Poems, Chiefly Lyrical* was published while he was at Cambridge, and in 1832 he published his second volume, which contained *The Lady of Shalott*, *The May Queen*, etc. In 1833 Arthur Henry Hallam, with whom he had contracted a fast friendship while at college, died, and Tennyson was so heart-broken that for ten years he refused to write. In 1850 his poem *In Memoriam*, in memory of Hallam, appeared, and in the same year he married Emily Sellwood and was made Poet Laureate. In 1853 he went to live in the Isle of Wight, where he wrote *Maud*, published in 1855, and *Idylls of the King*, published in 1859. In 1868 he moved to Aldworth, near Haslemere, and in 1884 was raised to the peerage. He died at Aldworth on October 6th, 1892, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. In addition to the poems mentioned, he wrote *Enoch Arden*, *Locksley Hall*, *Queen Mary*, *Harold*, *Becket*, *The Foresters*, and numerous short poems. His poetry is noted for its musical rhythm and beautiful word pictures. See *Tennyson, A Memoir*, by Hallam Tennyson (Macmillan), *Tennyson* by Sir Alfred Lyall in *English Men of Letters* series (Macmillan), "Alfred Tennyson" in *Lives of Great English Writers* by Walter S. Hinchman and Francis B. Gummere (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Tennyson is found on page 207 of Book V of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Thaxter, Celia, was born at Portsmouth, New Hampshire, on June 26th, 1836. She was brought up on the Isle of Shoals, about ten miles from Portsmouth, where, following a quarrel with his political associates, her father had retired and become keeper of the White Island lighthouse. In 1851 she married Levi L. Thaxter, of Watertown, Massachusetts, but continued to reside on the islands. She died on Appledore Island on August 26th, 1894. Her chief works are *Among the Isles of Shoals*, *Drift-Wood*, and *Poems for Children*. A complete edition of her poems, with a memoir by Sarah Orne Jewett, was published in 1896 (Houghton). A good sketch of her life is found on page 128 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Thomson, James, was born at Ednam in Roxburghshire, Scotland, on September 7th, 1700. He was educated at the parish school, at the Abbey of Jedburgh, and at the University of Edinburgh. In 1725 he went to live in London, where he published his poems, *Winter, Summer, Spring, and Autumn (The Seasons)*. From 1730 to 1737 he held the position of Secretary of Briefs with a salary of £300 a year. He was subsequently granted a state pension of £100. In 1740 he published his famous ode *Rule, Britannia*, and four years later he was appointed Surveyor-General of the Leeward Islands. He died at London on August 27th, 1748. In addition to the works mentioned, he wrote *The Castle of Indolence and Liberty*. See *James Thomson* by William Bayne in *Famous Scots* series (Oliphant) and *Eighteenth Century Literature* by Edmund Gosse (Macmillan).

True, John Preston, was born at Bethel, Maine, on February 13th, 1859. He was educated at Exeter Academy, New Hampshire, and at Roxbury Latin School, Boston. From 1879 to 1919 he was connected with the educational department of Houghton, Mifflin & Co., publishers. He lives now in Waban, Massachusetts. He is a writer of historical novels for boys and girls, and in his later books depicts, in a vivid and realistic manner, scenes and characters of the revolution as seen from the British ranks. He is the author of *Shoulder Arms, The Iron Star, Scouting for Washington*, and *Scouting for Light Horse Harry*.

Twain, Mark, is the pen name of Samuel Langhorne Clemens, who was born at Florida, Missouri, on November 30th, 1835. His pseudonym is derived from the name applied on the Mississippi to the two-fathom mark on the sounding line. He learned the trade of a printer. In 1855 he became a pilot on the Mississippi River and six years later went to Nevada, as private secretary to his brother. After devoting himself to newspaper work for a time in Nevada, San Francisco, and Buffalo, in 1867 he moved to Hartford, where he made his home until his death. Much of his time was spent abroad, and during his latter years he made a lecture tour around the world for the purpose of raising money to pay the debts he had contracted as a member of the publishing firm of C. L. Webster and Company. Shortly before his death he received the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws from Oxford University. He died at Hartford, Connecticut, on April 21st, 1910. His best known works are *Roughing It, Tom Sawyer, Huckleberry Finn, The Prince and the Pauper, The Innocents Abroad, A Yankee at King Arthur's Court, and Joan of Arc*. See *American Writers of To-day* by Henry C. Vedder (Silver), *Modern Novelists and Essays on Books* both by William Lyon Phelps (Macmillan), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Mark Twain is found on page 41 of Part I of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Van Dyke, Henry, was born at Germantown, Pennsylvania, on November 10th, 1852. He graduated from the Polytechnic Institute, Brooklyn, in 1869 and from Princeton Theological Seminary in 1877. He received the degree of D.D. successively from Princeton, Harvard, and Yale, LL.D. from Union, Pennsylvania, and Geneva, Switzerland, and D.C.L. from Oxford in 1917. He was ordained in 1879 and held several charges in Presbyterian churches, later being elected Moderator of the General Assembly. He was appointed professor of English literature at Princeton in 1900, but resigned his position to devote himself to literary work. From 1913 to 1917 he was United States minister to the Netherlands and Luxemburg, and in 1918 was made Commander of the Legion of Honor. His home is in Princeton, New Jersey. Among his works are *The Poetry of Tennyson*, *The Toiling of Felix and Other Poems*, *The Builders and Other Poems*, *The Other Wise Man*, *The First Christmas Tree*, *Fisherman's Luck*, *The Blue Flower*, and *The Valley of Vision*.

Van Vorst, Marie, was born at New York, where she was educated by private tutors. She has been a frequent contributor of verse and fiction to leading periodicals, her first verse appearing in 1893 in *Scribner's Magazine*. In 1907 she was sent abroad by Harper & Bros. to visit the Tiber, Nile, Danube, and Seine, to write the *Rivers of the Old World*. She was married in 1916 to Gaetano Cagiati, of Rome, Italy, where she has resided ever since. In addition to a volume of poems, she is the author of *Philip Longstreth*, *Amanda of the Mill*, *The Man from Rome*, *Big Tremaine*, *War Letters of an American Woman*, *Carmichael's Path*, *The Woman Who Toils*, *Miss Desmone*, *Queen of Karmania*, *In Ambush*, and a number of other works of fiction.

Ward, Lydia Avery Coonley, was born at Lynchburg, Vermont, on January 31st, 1845. She received her education at Louisville, Utica, and Philadelphia. After her marriage in 1867 to John C. Coonley, she lived first in St. Louis and later in Louisville, and since 1873 has lived in Chicago. Her first husband died in 1882, and in 1897 she married Henry Augustus Ward, who died in 1906. Much of her work has consisted in contributions to newspapers and magazines. Amongst her writings are *Under the Pines and Other Verses*, *Singing Verses for Children*, *Love Song*, *Christmas in Other Lands*, and *Washington and Lincoln*.

Warren, Maude Lavinia Radford, is a native of Wolfe Island, Canada. She received the degrees of Ph. B. and Ph. M. from the University of Chicago, and in 1907 married Professor Joseph Parker Warren, who died two years later. Her present home is in Ithaca, New York. In addition to a number of short stories contributed to magazines, she is the author of *King Arthur and His Knights*, *Peter Peter*, *The Main Road*, *Robin Hood*, *Little Pioneers*, and *The White Flame of France*.

Weir, Robert Stanley, was born at Hamilton, Ontario, on November 15th, 1856. He was educated at McGill Normal School and at McGill University, where he graduated in 1880. He was principal of Sherbrooke Street School, now Aberdeen School, Montreal, for a time and was called to the bar in 1881. From 1899 to 1915 he was Recorder of Montreal, but resigned to carry on his private practice. In 1916 he was appointed a King's Counsel. He has contributed frequently to leading periodicals and has lectured on musical and literary subjects. In addition to a number of books on legal subjects, he wrote the words for the songs *O Canada* (1908) and *After Ypres and Other Verse* (1917).

Wetherald, Agnes Ethelwyn, was born at Rockwood, Ontario, on April 26th, 1857. Her parents were English Quakers. She was educated at the Friends' Boarding School, Union Springs, New York, and Pickering College, Ontario. Under the pen name of *Bel Thistlewaite* she edited the women's department of the *Toronto Globe* and was also on the staff of the *Ladies' Home Journal*. She has contributed a number of poems to magazines and is the author of *The House of the Trees*, *Tangled in Stars*, *The Radiant Road*, and *The Last Robin*.

White, Stewart Edward, was born at Grand Rapids, Michigan, on March 12th, 1873. He graduated from the University of Michigan in 1895, taking his M.A. from the same institution eight years later. From 1896 to 1897 he attended the Columbia Law School. In 1904 he married Elizabeth Grant, and now lives at Burlingame, California. From 1917 to 1918 he served with the United States army as Major of the 144th Field Artillery. He is a frequent contributor to periodicals and is the author of *The Westerners*, *The Claim Jumpers*, *The Magic Forest*, *Blazed Trail Stories*, *Arizona Nights*, *Camp and Trail*, *The Adventures of Bobby Orde*, and *The Forty Niners*.

Whitman, Walt, was born near Huntington, Long Island, in 1819. In early childhood he went to live in Brooklyn. He was passionately fond of birds and flowers and spent much of his time wandering in the woods. He attended school irregularly and gained most of his knowledge of literature in a public library. At thirteen he became an errand boy, then type-setter in a newspaper office, school teacher, and finally proprietor, editor, compositor, and pressman of a small weekly paper at Huntington. Two years later he went to New York as editor of a small daily and afterwards edited a paper in New Orleans. About this time he paid a visit to Canada. In 1855 he published his first volume, a group of poems entitled *Leaves of Grass*, which he was forced to print himself, the publishers having refused it. During the Civil War, he remained in Washington as a volunteer nurse and for the following ten years was a clerk in one of the government offices. He suffered a stroke of paralysis, and the last twenty

years of his life were spent as an invalid in comparative poverty in Camden, New Jersey, where he died in 1892. See *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Whittier is found on page 353 of Part II of *The Young and Field Advanced Literary Reader* (Ginn).

Whittier, John Greenleaf, was born at Haverhill, Massachusetts, on December 17th, 1807. He was brought up a Quaker and educated in a public school. For two terms he attended a private school in Haverhill, paying for his tuition by making slippers at eight cents a pair. In 1830 he became editor of the *New England Weekly Review* and other newspapers, taking an active part in the agitation against slavery. In 1835 he represented Haverhill in the Legislature. He died at Hampton Falls on September 7th, 1892. His principal works are *Mogg Megone*, *The Tent on the Beach*, and *Snow-Bound*. See *John Greenleaf Whittier* by George R. Carpenter in *American Men of Letters* series (Houghton), *Home Life of Great Authors* by Hattie Tyng Griswold (McClurg), *John Greenleaf Whittier* by Richard Burton in the *Beacon Biographies* (Small), and *A History of English Literature* by Arthur Compton-Rickett (Jack). A good sketch of the life of Whittier is found on page 310 of Book IV of *The Young and Field Literary Readers* (Ginn).

Wyss, John David. See notes on "Tent House" on page 234.

Yonge, Charlotte Mary, was born at Otterbourne, near Winchester, England, on August 11th, 1823. She was carefully instructed by her father in Latin, Greek, and mathematics, while tutors were employed to teach her several of the modern languages. At the age of seven she began to teach in the village Sunday-school, and continued this practice for seventy-one years. She began the writing of fiction chiefly from a desire to set forth the teachings of the Christian religion, and during her life the greater part of the proceeds of her very successful pen were devoted to religious purposes. In 1853, the publication of *The Heir of Redclyffe* made her famous. Her religious worship and her literary work constituted her entire life. She died at her home in the little village of Elderfield on March 24th, 1901. Her best known books are *The Lances of Lynwood*, *The Daisy Chain*, *Dynevor Terrace*, and *Heartsease*.

Pronouncing Vocabulary

ā	as <i>a</i> in ale.	ī	as <i>i</i> in ice.	ōō	as <i>oo</i> in foot.
ǎ	“ <i>a</i> “ am.	ī	“ <i>i</i> “ ill.	ow	“ <i>ow</i> “ cow.
ah	“ <i>a</i> “ arm, car.	ō	“ <i>o</i> “ old.	ch	“ <i>ch</i> “ chair.
aw	“ <i>a</i> “ all.	ō	“ <i>o</i> “ odd.	g	“ <i>g</i> “ go.
ē	“ <i>e</i> “ eve.	ū	“ <i>u</i> “ use.	ng	“ <i>ng</i> “ sing.
ě	“ <i>e</i> “ end.	ū	“ <i>u</i> “ up.	zh	“ <i>z</i> “ azure.
		ōō	“ <i>oo</i> “ food.		

Aberbrothock... ăb'-ěr-brōth'-ōk.
 Abishai.....ă-bīsh'-ă-ī.
 Adjidaumo.....ăd-jē-daw'-mō.
 Aegean.....ē-jē'-ăn.
 Aequian.....ēk-wē'-ăn.
 Aershot.....ăr'-shot.
 Ahimaaz.....ă-hīm'-ă-ăz.
 Aix.....ăks.
 Aladdin.....ă-lăd'-īn.
 Albinia.....ăl-bīn'-ē-a.
 Algidus.....ăl'-jī-dūs.
 Algonquin.....ăl-gōn'-kīn.
 Allah.....ăl'-ă.
 Alsace.....ăl-sās'.
 Alvernus.....ăl-věr'-nūs.
 Amiens.....ă-mē-an'.
 Amundsens.....ă'-münd-sēn.
 Androcles.....ăn'-drō-klēz.
 Anjou.....ăn'-zhōō.
 Apennine.....ăp'-ē-nīn.
 Apollo.....ă-pōl'-lō.
 Appledore.....ăp'-pl-dōr'.
 Arachne.....ă-rak'-nē.
 Aragon.....ăr'-ă-gōn.
 Argonauts.....ahr'-gō-nōts.
 Arretium.....ăr-rē'-tē-ūm.
 Artemision.....ahr-tē-mīs'-ē-ōn.
 Aruns.....ăr'-ūns.
 Asgard.....ăs'-gahrd.
 Ashur.....ăsh'-ūr.
 Asola.....ah'-zō-lah.
 Assiniboine.....ăs-sīn'-ī-boin.
 Assyrian.....ă-sīr'-ē-an.
 Astur.....ăs'-tūr.
 Athabaska.....ă-thă-băs'-kă.
 Athelney.....ăth'-ēl-nē.

Atta.....aht'-tă.
 Aunus.....aw'-nūs.
 Aurora.....aw-rōr'-a.
 Avon.....ă'-vōn or ăv'-ōn.
 Baal.....bā'-al.
 Baldur.....bahl'-dēr.
 Bamburg.....băm'-būrg.
 Baptiste.....bă-tēst'.
 Barcelona.....bahr-sī-lō'-nă or
 bahr-thă-lō'-nă
 Basil.....băz'-īl or bāz'-īl.
 Baucis.....baw'-sīs.
 Beau.....bō.
 Beaufort.....bō'-fōrt.
 Beerhaven.....bēr-hāven.
 Beethoven.....bā'-tō-vēn.
 Benbow.....bēn'-bō.
 Bengal.....bēn-gawl'.
 Bentinck.....bēn'-tīnk.
 Beth-peor.....bēth-pē'-ōr.
 Bethune.....bēth'-ūn.
 Bideford.....bīd'-ē-fōrd.
 Bilskirner.....bēl-skēr'-nēr.
 Blantyre.....blăn-tīr'.
 Blynken.....blīng'-kēn.
 Boadicea.....bō-ă-dī-sē'-ă.
 Bonn.....bōn.
 Brahman.....brah'-măn.
 Brazil.....bră-zīl'.
 Briareus.....brī-ēr'-ē-ūs.
 Brichtelmstone. brīt'-ēm-stōn.
 Brok.....brōk.
 Brühl.....brōōl.
 Burgandee.....ber'-gun-dē.
 Byron.....bī'-rōn.

Cadi.....kah'-dī or kā'-dī.
 Cadiz.....kā'-diz
 Caedmon.....kād'-mōn.
 Caesar.....sēz'-ār.
 Caldon-Low....kawl'-don-lō.
 Cambria.....kām'-brē-ā.
 Campania.....kām-pā'-nya.
 Campobello....kām'-pō-bēl'-ō.
 Canaan.....kā'-nan.
 Cannobie Lee...kā'-nō-bē lē.
 Canova.....kā-nō'-vā.
 Cariboo.....kār-ī-bōō'.
 Carrara.....kār-rā'-rā.
 Cartier.....kahr-tyā'.
 Cathay.....kā-thā'.
 Cavell.....kā-vēl'.
 Cedric.....sēd'-rik.
 Chamois.....shām'-wah.
 Champagne....shām'-pān.
 Champlain....shām-plān'.
 Charlecote....shahr-l-kōt.
 Charleroi....shahr-lē-rwah'.
 Chaudière....shō-dē-air'.
 Chesapeake....chēs'-ā-pēk.
 Cilnius.....sīl'-nē-ūs.
 Cincinnatus...sīn-sī-nā'-tūs.
 Cloudesley....klowd'-slē.
 Clusium.....klōō'-zē-ūm.
 Clytie.....klī'-ti-ē.
 Coghill.....cōg'-hīl.
 Cologne.....kō-lōn'.
 Comitium....kō-mīsh'-ē-ūm.
 Coningsby....kō-nings-bē.
 Cosa.....kō'-sā.
 Cossack.....kōs'-āk.
 Crecy.....krā-sē'.
 Crimean.....krī-mē'-an.
 Cruce.....krōōs.
 Crusumerium..krūs-tū-mēr'-ē-ūm.
 Cushi.....kū'-shi.
 Cycnus.....sīk'-nūs.

 Dalhem.....dāl'-lēm
 Damon.....dā'-mōn.
 Dara.....dā'-rā or dā'-rā.
 Daulac.....dō-lāk'.
 Delphi.....dēl'-fī.
 Delphian.....dēl'-fē-an.
 Derbyshire....dahr'-bī-shēr or
 der'-bī-shēr.
 De Soto.....dā sō'-to.
 Digges.....dīgz.

Dirck.....dūrck.
 Dodo.....dō'-dō.
 Dollard.....dōl-lār'.
 Dominique....dōm-in-ēk'.
 Don Quixote....dōn kwīk'-sōt or
 dōn kē-hō'-tā.
 Douaumont....dōō'-ō-mōn.
 Druid.....drōō'-īd.
 Düffeld.....dōō'-fēlt.
 Dulcinia.....dūl-sīn'-ē-ā or
 dūl-thī-nē'-ā.

 Earraid.....ēr'-ād.
 Eblis.....ēb'-līs.
 Eclusier.....ā-klōō-zē-ā'.
 Elah.....ē'-lā.
 El Harish....ēl hār-ish.
 Elysian.....ē-līs'-ē-ān or
 ē-līzh'-an.
 Ephraim.....ē'-frā-īm.
 Epimetheus....ēp-ī-mē'-thūs.
 Ericsson.....ēr'-īk-sōn.
 Eske.....ēsk.
 Etruria.....ē-trōō'-rē-ā.
 Etruscan.....ē-trūs'-kān.
 Euboea.....ū-bē'-ā.
 Euphrates....ū-frā'-tēz.

 Faggus.....fāg'-gūs.
 Falerii.....fā-lē'-rē-ē.
 Farne.....fahn.
 Fontaine.....fōn-tān'.
 Fontainebleau..fōn-tān-blō'.
 François.....frān-swah'.
 Franz.....frānts.
 Frey.....frā.
 Freya.....frī'-ā.
 Frise.....frēs.

 Gaboury.....gā-bōō-rē'.
 Galatea.....gāl-ā-tē'-ā.
 Galilee.....gāl'-ī-lē.
 Gallipoli....gāl-lē'-pō-lē.
 Gatineau....gāt'-ī-nōor gāt-ī-nō'
 Geneva.....jē-nē'-vā.
 Gentiles.....jēn'-tīls.
 Gesler.....gēs'-lēr.
 Ghent.....ghēnt.
 Ghiznee.....gīz'-nē.
 Gibraltar....jīb-rawl'-tar.
 Glumdalclitch...glūm-dāl'-klīch.
 Goliath.....gō-lī'-āth.

- Goshen gō'-shēn.
 Graeme grām.
 Grenoble grē-nōbl'.
 Grimes grīmz.
 Gungner gūng'-ner.
 Guyon gī'-ōn or gū-yōn'.
- Hamelin hā'-mēln.
 Harcar hahr-kahr'
 Harlech hahr'-lek.
 Harmonius hahr-mōn'-ē-ūs.
 Hasselt hahs'-ēlt.
 Heidi hī'-dē.
 Hellas hēl'-as.
 Hellenes hēl'-ē'-nēs.
 Hercules hēr'-cū-lēz.
 Herminius hēr-mīn'-ē-ūs.
 Hiawatha hī-ā-waw'-thā.
 Hindu hīn'-dōō.
 Hindustan hīn'-dōō-stahn'.
 Hochelaga hō-shē-lā'-gā.
 Horatio hō-rā'-shē-ō.
 Horatius hō-rā'-shē-ūs.
 Huber hū'-ber.
 Huron hū'-ron.
- Iagoo ē-ā'-gōō.
 Ilva il'-vā.
 Ionia i-ō'-nē-ā.
 Iris i'-rīs.
 Iroquois īr-ō-kwaw'.
 Ishmaelites ish'-ma-ēl-its.
 Israel is'-ra-ēl.
 Italian ī-tāl'-yan.
 Ittai īt'-ā-i, īt'-ī or ī-tā'-i.
 Ivald ī'-vawld.
- Jackanapes jāk'-ā-nāps.
 Jacques zhāk.
 Janiculum jā-nīk'-ū-lūm.
 Jehan Daas ye-hān'dās.
 Jericho jēr'-ī-kō.
 Jerusalem jē-rōō'-sā-lēm.
 Jesse jēs'-sē.
 Jesu jē'-sōō.
 Joab jō'-āb.
 Joan of Arc jōn of ahrk.
 Joffre zhōfr.
 Joris yō'-rēs.
 Juliana jōō-li-ān'-ā.
 Juno jōō-nō.
 Jupiter jōō-pī-ter.
 Jurine jōō-rēn'.
- Kearney kahr'-nē.
 Kezia kē-zī'-ā.
 Khan kahn or kān.
 Khartoum kahr-tōōm'.
 Kremlin krēm'-līn.
 Kristinots krīs-tīn-ōts.
- Labrador lāb-rā-dōr'.
 Lacedaemonian lās-ē-dē-mō'-nē-ān.
 Lajimodière la-zhē-mō-dyēr.
 Langemarck lahng'-ē-mahrk'.
 Lannes lahn.
 Lars lahrs.
 Lartius lahr'-shūs.
 Latian lā'-shi-an.
 Lausulus laws'-ū-lūs.
 Leicester lēs'-ter.
 Leif lēf.
 Lena lē'-nā.
 Levite lē'-vīt.
 Lincoln līng'-kēn.
 Lizette lē-zēt'.
 Lochinvar lōk'-in-vahr.
 Locris lōk'-rīs.
 Loke lōk-ē.
 Looz lōz.
 Lucumo lū'-cū-mō.
 Luna lū'-nā.
- Madeleine mād-lān'.
 Madonna mā-dōn'-nā.
 Maisonneuve mā-zōn-nūv'.
 Malian mah'-lē-ān.
 Malta mawl'-tā.
 Mamilius mā-mīl'-ē-ūs.
 Manitou mān'-ī-tōō.
 Marcelle mahr-sēl'.
 Marmion mahr'-mē-ōn.
 Matilda mā-tīl'-dā.
 Mechlen mēk-len.
 Mehrab Khan mē'-rāb kān.
 Mercury mēr'-cū-rē.
 Michael mī'-kāl.
 Midas mī'-dās.
 Midianite mid'-ē-ān-īt.
 Minerva mī-nēr'-vā.
 Miolnir myōl'-nir.
 Mississippi mīs-i-sīp'-ī.
 Missouri mīs-zōō'-rē.
 Mondamin mōn-dā'-mīn.
 Mons mōns.
 Monsieur mō-syēr'.

Montmorency... mōnt-mō-rēn'-sī.	Pelion... pē'-lē-ōn.
Morocco... mō-rōk'-ō.	Pembina... pēm-bē'-nā.
Mortier... mōr-tyā'.	Peronne... pā-rōn'.
Moscow... mōs'-kō.	Petitcodiac... pēt'-ē-kō-dē'-āk.
Moskwa... mōsk'-vā.	Phaeton... fā'-e-ton.
Moslem... mōz'-lēm.	Pharoah... fēr'-ō.
Mudros... mū'-drōs.	Philemon... fī-lē'-mon.
Müll... mōöl.	Philistine... fil'-is-tin.
Murat... mūrā'.	Phineas... fīn'-ē-ās.
Murillo... mūrīl'-ō.	Piccola... pik'-o-la.
Muscovy... mūs'-kōvy.	Picus... pī'-kus.
	Pierre... pyēr.
Napier... nā'-pē-er.	Pippa... pīp'-a.
Nar... nahr.	Plataea... plā-tē'-a.
Narcissus... nahr-sīs'-ūs.	Platte... plāt.
Nebo... nē'-bō.	Plymouth... pli'-mūth.
Nehaco... ne-chā'-kō.	Pon-ge-wan-ge... pōn-gē-wahn-gē.
Neptune... nēp'-tūn.	Porsena... pōr-sē-nā or pōr-sēn'-ā.
Nequinum... nē-kwī'-nūm.	Pythias... pīth'-ē-as.
Newfoundland... nū-fūnd-lānd'.	
New Guinea... nū-gī'-nē.	Raleigh... rā'-lē.
Nightingale... nī'-ting-gāl.	Ramnian... rām'-nē-ān.
Nile... nīl.	Raphael... rāf'-a-ēl.
Ninevah... nīn'-ē-vā.	Ratisbon... rāt'-is-bōn.
Noel... nō-ēl'.	Remus... rē'-mūs.
Nokomis... nō-kō'-mīs.	Reynard... rā'-nard.
Nombre Dios... nōm'-brā dē'-ōs.	Richelieu... rēsh'-ē-lū.
Norfolk... nōr'-fok.	Rideau... rē-dō'.
Norton Bury... nōr'-ton bēr'-i or būr'-ī.	Rio del Norte... rē'-ō dēl nōr'-tē.
Norwich... nōr'-ich.	Roche... rōsh.
	Romulus... rōm'-ū-lūs.
Oberon... ō'-bēr-ōn.	Roos... rōz.
Ocnus... ōk'-nūs.	Roostum... rōōs'-tūm.
Odin... ō'-dīn.	Rosalind... rōz'-ā-līnd.
Og... ōg.	Rouen... rōō-ahn'.
Olympus... ō-līm'-pūs.	Rowena... rō-ē'-na.
Opechee... ō-pē'-chē.	Rozinante... rō-thē-nahn'-tē.
Orleans... ōr'-lē-anz.	Ruyter... roi'-ter.
Ostia... ōs'-tē-a.	
Owaisa... ō-wās'-a.	Sahara... sā-hah'-rah.
	St. Boniface... sāt bōn'-i-fās.
Palatine... pāl'-ā-tīn or pāl'-ā-tīn.	St. Malo... sān mah'-lō'.
Palatinus... pāl'-ā-tī'-nūs.	Samaritan... sā-mār'-ī-tan.
Pandora... pān-dōr'-a.	Sambre... sāhnbr.
Panza, Sancho... pān'-thā, sahn'-chō or pān'-zā, sān'-kō	Samothrace... sām'-ō-thrās.
Patrasche... pā-trāsh'.	Sancho... sahn'-cho or sān'-kō
Pedro... pē'-drō or pā'-drō.	Sancta Maria... sānk'-tā mā-rē'-ā.
Peggotty... pēg'-ōtē.	Sarnem... sahr'-nēm.
Peguis... pē-gōō'-īs.	Sault... sōō.
	Scapa Flow... scāh'-pā flō.
	Schwartz... shvahrts.

- Slaveyn sklă'-vĕn.
 Slavonian sklă-vô'-nĕ-ăn.
 Scilla sĭl'-ă.
 Scyros sĭ'-rôs or skĭ'-rôs.
 Sebastian sĕ-băs'-tyĕn.
 Secunder sĕ-cŭn'-der.
 Seius sĕ'-yŭs.
 Semner, Marcelle . . . sĕm'-ner mahr-sĕl.
 Senecas sĕn'-ĕ-kăs.
 Sennacherib sĕ-năk'-er-ib.
 Seville sĕv-ĭl' or sĕ-vĕl'.
 Sextus sĕks'-tus.
 Shattega shă-tĕ'-gă.
 Shawnees shaw-nĕs'.
 Shoreham shôr'-ăm.
 Siberian sĭ-bĕ'-rĕ-ăn.
 Sierras sĕ-ĕr'-rahz.
 Sif sĕf.
 Sigurd sĕ'-gurd.
 Sindre sĭn'-drĕ.
 Sioux sōō, sĕ-ōō or sō.
 Skidbladner skĕd-blahth'-ner.
 Skottowe skō-tō'.
 Sluys slois.
 Somersby sŭm'-erz-bĕ.
 Somme sŏm.
 Sonata sŏ-nă'-tă.
 Spaniard spăn'-yard.
 Spurius spŭ'-rĕ-ŭs.
 Stephen stĕ'-ven.
 Stornoway stŏr'-nŏ-wă.
 Styria stĭr'-ĕ-a.
 Styx stĭks.
 Suliote sŭ'-li-ŏt.
 Sultan sŭl'-tan.
 Swardeston swŏrd'-stŏn.
 Syracuse sĭr'-a-kŭs.
 Tahiti tă-hĕ'-tĕ.
 Tantallon tahn'-tă-lon.
 Tarquin tahr'-kwĭn.
 Tarpeian tahr-pĕ'-yan.
 Tecumseh tĕ-kŭm'-sĕ.
 Tenedos tĕn'-ĕ-dŏs.
 Texel tĕks'-ĕl.
 Thames tĕmz.
 Thermopylae thĕr-mŏp'-ĭ-lĕ.
 Thor thŏr.
 Thrasymene thră-sĭm'-e-nĕ.
 Thrudvang thrŭth'-văng.
 Thrym thrŏŏm.
 Thule thŭ'-le.
 Tiber tĭ'-ber.
 Tifernum ti-fĕr'-nŭm.
 Titian tĭsh'-an.
 Tolumnius tŏ-lŭm'-nĕ-ŭs.
 Tongres tŏn'-gr.
 Torquay tŏr-kĕ'.
 Torres tŏr'-esh.
 Toretto tŏr-rĕt'-tŏ.
 Trafalgar tră-făl'-gar.
 Truckee trŭk'-ĕ.
 Tulliver tŭl'-ĭ-ver.
 Turcos tŭr'-kŏs.
 Tuscany tŭs'-kă-nĕ.
 Tyre tĭr.
 Tyrian tĭr'-ĕ-an.
 Ulf ŭlf.
 Umbrian ŭm'-brĕ-an.
 Urگو ŏŕ'-gŏ.
 Ursula ur'-sŭ-lă.
 Utawa ŭt-ă-wah.
 Valentine văl'-ĕn-tĭn.
 Venice vĕn'-is.
 Venus vĕ'-nus.
 Verbenna ver-bĕn'-na.
 Verchères vĕr-shĕr'.
 Verdun vĕr-dŭn'.
 Verèndrye, La vĕr-ŏn'-drĕ.
 Versailles vĕr-sălz' or
 vĕr-sah'-e.
 Vignau vĕ-nyŏ'.
 Volscian vŏl'-sĕ-an.
 Volsinium vŏl-sĭn'-ĕ-ŭm.
 Von Hipper fon hĭp'-er.
 Vosges vŏzh.
 Warwickshire wŏr'-ĭk-sheer.
 Wenceslas vĕn'-sĕs-lahs.
 Wesakchak wĕ-săk-chŏk.
 Windigo wĭn'-dĭ-gŏ.
 Wolstenholme wŏl'-sten-hŏm.
 Wynken wĭng'-ken.
 Xavier ză'-vi-er.
 Yorkshire yŏrk'-sheer.
 Ypres ĕpr.
 Yser ĕ-zĕr'.
 Zadock ză'-dŏk.
 Zeus zŭs.
 Zutphen zŭt'-fen.

**NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF PUBLISHERS MENTIONED
IN THE TEXT**

- American Book Co.**—100 Washington Square, New York, N. Y.
- Appleton**—D. Appleton & Co., 35 West 35th Street, New York, N. Y.
- Atkinson**—See Mentzer, Bush & Co.
- Barnes**—A. S. Barnes & Co., 130 East 25th Street, New York, N.Y.
- Bell**—G. Bell & Sons, Ltd., York House, Portugal St., London, W. C. 2, England.
- Berry**—B. D. Berry & Co., 623 South Wabash Ave., Chicago, Ill.
- Birks**—Henry Birks, Montreal.
- Black**—Adam & Charles Black, London, England, represented in Canada by The Macmillan Co. of Canada, Ltd., 70 Bond St., Toronto.
- Blackie**—Blackie & Son, Ltd., Glasgow, represented in Canada by Hector Prenter, 33 Richmond St. West, Toronto.
- Blackwood**—William Blackwood & Sons, 45 George St., Edinburgh, Scotland.
- Bobbs-Merrill**—The Bobbs-Merrill Co., Indianapolis, Ind., represented in Canada by George J. McLeod, 266 King St. West, Toronto.
- Brown**—Brown & Company, Publishers, Boston, Mass.
- Burrow**—Ed. J. Burrow & Co., Ltd., 89 and 93 Kingsway, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Cambridge Press**—The Cambridge Press, Cambridge, England, represented in Canada by The Macmillan Co. of Canada, Ltd., 70 Bond St., Toronto.
- Cassell**—Cassell & Co., London, represented in Canada by McClelland & Stewart, 215 Victoria St., Toronto.
- Century Co.**—353—4th Avenue, New York, N. Y.
- Chambers**—W. & R. Chambers, Ltd., 339 High St., Edinburgh, Scotland.
- Chapman**—Chapman & Hall Ltd., 11 Henrietta St., Covent Garden, London, W. C., England.
- Chatto**—Chatto & Windus, 97 and 99 St. Martin's Lane, Charing Cross, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Constable**—Constable & Co., Ltd., 10-12 Orange St., Leicester Square, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Copp, Clark**—The Copp, Clark Co., Ltd., 129 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Crowell**—T. Y. Crowell Co., 426-428 West Broadway, New York, N. Y.

- Dent**—J. M. Dent & Sons, 215 Victoria St., Toronto.
- Dodd**—Dodd, Mead & Co., 4th Ave. and 30th St., New York, N. Y.
- Doubleday**—Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, represented in Canada by S. B. Gundy, 25 Richmond St. West, Toronto.
- Duckworth**—Duckworth & Co., 3 Henrietta St., Covent Garden, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Duffield**—Duffield & Co., 211 West 33rd St., New York, N. Y.
- Dutton**—E. P. Dutton & Co., 31 West 23rd St., New York, N. Y.
- Eaton**—T. Eaton Co., Ltd., Toronto.
- Educational Pub. Co.**—Educational Publishing Company, 50 Bromfield St., Boston, Mass.
- Evans**—Evans Brothers, Ltd., Montague House, Russell Square, London, W. C. 1, England.
- Flanagan**—A. Flanagan Co., 521 South Wabash Ave., Chicago, Ill.
- Foulis**—T. N. Foulis, 15 Frederick St., Edinburgh, Scotland.
- Gage**—W. J. Gage & Co., Ltd., 84 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Ginn**—Ginn & Company, 70—5th Ave., New York.
- Glasgow, Brook**—Glasgow, Brook & Co., 70 Bond St., Toronto.
- Grant**—Grant Educational Co., Ltd., 91 and 93 Union St., Glasgow, Scotland.
- Grosset**—Grosset & Dunlap, 1140 Broadway, New York, represented in Canada, for reprints only, by Ryerson Press, 299 Queen St. West, Toronto.
- Gundy**—S. B. Gundy, 25 Richmond St. West, Toronto.
- Harrap**—George G. Harrap & Co., Ltd., 39-41 Parker St., Kingsway, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Heath**—D. C. Heath & Co., 50 Beacon St., Boston, Mass.
- Hinds**—Hinds, Hayden & Eldredge, Inc., 11-15 Union Square, New York, N. Y.
- Hodder**—Hodder and Stoughton, 263 Adelaide St. West, Toronto.
- Houghton**—Houghton, Mifflin Co. (Riverside Press), 4 Park St., Boston, Mass.
- Hutchinson**—Hutchinson & Co., 34-36 Paternoster Row, London, E. C. 4, England.
- Jack**—T. C. & E. C. Jack, Edinburgh, represented in Canada by Thomas Nelson & Sons, Ltd., 77 Wellington St. West, Toronto.
- Jacobs**—G. W. Jacobs & Co., 1628 Chestnut St., Philadelphia, Pa.
- Laidlaw**—Laidlaw & Fraser, 15 Drury St., Glasgow, Scotland.
- Lane**—John Lane Co., New York, represented in Canada by Oxford University Press, 25 Richmond St. West, Toronto.
- Lawrence**—Lawrence & Jellicoe, Ltd., 16 Bedford St., Strand, London, W. C. 2, England.

- Lippincott**—J. B. Lippincott Co., East Washington Square, Philadelphia, Pa.
- Little, Brown**—Little, Brown & Co., 34 Beacon St., Boston, Mass.
- Longmans**—Longmans, Green & Co., 210 Victoria St., Toronto.
- Macmillan**—The Macmillan Co. of Canada, Ltd., 70 Bond St., Toronto.
- McClelland**—McClelland & Stewart, 215 Victoria St., Toronto.
- McClurg**—A. C. McClurg & Co., 330-352 East Ohio St., Chicago, Ill.
- McDougall**—McDougall's Educational Co., Ltd., 8 Farrington Ave., London, E. C., England.
- McLeod**—George J. McLeod, 266 King St. West, Toronto.
- Melrose**—Andrew Melrose, Ltd., 3 York St., Covent Garden, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Mentzer**—Mentzer, Bush & Co., 2210 South Park Ave., Chicago, Ill., represented in Canada, for *Art Literature Readers* and *Folk-Lore*, by W. J. Gage & Co., Ltd., 84 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Merrill**—Charles E. Merrill Company, 432-4th Ave., New York, N. Y.
- Methuen**—Methuen & Co., 36 Essex St., Strand, London, W. C., England.
- Milton Bradley**—Milton Bradley Co., 49 Willow St., Springfield, Mass.
- Morang**—Morang & Co., Ltd., 386 Victoria St., Toronto.
- Murray**—John Murray, 50A Albemarle St., Piccadilly, W. 1., London, Eng.
- Musson**—Musson Book Co., Ltd., 263 Adelaide St. West, Toronto.
- Nelson**—Thomas Nelson & Sons, Ltd., 77 Wellington St. West, Toronto.
- Newnes**—George Newnes Ltd., 8-11 Southampton St., Strand, London, W.C. 2, England.
- Newson**—Newson & Company, 73-5th Ave., New York, N. Y.
- Nimmo**—Nimmo, Hay & Mitchell, Ltd., 18 Clyde St., Edinburgh, Scotland.
- Oliphant**—J. H. Oliphant & Co., 61 Broadway, New York, N. Y.
- Oxford Press**—Oxford University Press, 25 Richmond St. West, Toronto.
- Page**—The Page Company, 53 Beacon St., Boston, Mass.
- Pitman**—Sir Isaac Pitman & Sons, 2-6 West 45th Street, New York, N. Y.
- Pott**—James Pott & Co., 214-220 East 23rd St., New York, N. Y.
- Rand**—Rand, McNally & Co., Chicago, represented in Canada by W. J. Gage & Co., Ltd., 84 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Religious Tract**—The Religious Tract Society, London, England, represented in Canada by The Macmillan Co. of Canada, Ltd., 70 Bond St., Toronto.
- Revell**—Fleming H. Revell & Co., 158-5th Ave., New York, N. Y.
- Row, Peterson**—Row, Peterson & Company, 623 South Wabash Ave., Chicago, Ill.
- Ryerson Press**—299 Queen St. West, Toronto.
- Scott**—Walter Scott Publishing Co., Ltd., Felling-on-Tyne, England.

- Scott, Foresman**—Scott, Foresman & Co., 623 South Wabash Ave., Chicago, Ill.
- Scribner**—Charles Scribner's Sons, 597—5th Ave., New York, N. Y.
- Silver**—Silver, Burdett & Co., Boston, Mass., represented in Canada by W. J. Gage & Co., Ltd., 84 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Skeffington**—Skeffington & Son, Ltd., 34 Paternoster Row, London, E. C. 4, England.
- Small**—Small Maynard & Co., 41 Mt. Vernon St., Boston, Mass.
- Smith, Elder**—See Murray.
- Sonnenschein**—Swan Sonnenschein & Co., Ltd., 25 High St., Bloomsbury, London, W.C., England.
- Stanford**—E. Stanford, Ltd., 12-14 Long Acre, London, W.C.2, England.
- Stokes**—F. A. Stokes Co., 443-449—4th Ave., New York, N.Y.
- University Pub. Co.**—The University Publishing Company, New York, N. Y.
- Unwin**—T. Fisher Unwin, Ltd., 1 Adelphi Terrace, London, W. C. 2, England.
- Ward**—Ward, Lock & Co., Ltd., Warwick House, Salisbury Square, London, E. C. 4, England.
- Warne**—Frederick Warne & Co., 12 East 33rd St., New York, N. Y.
- Williams**—Williams & Norgate, 14 Henrietta St., Covent Garden, London, W.C., England.
- Winston**—John C. Winston & Co., 129 Spadina Ave., Toronto.
- Young Churchman Co.**—Now Morehouse Publishing Co., 1801-1811 Fond du Lac Ave., Milwaukee, Wis.

ADDENDA

- American Tract**—American Tract Society, Park Ave. and 40th St., New York, N.Y.
- Blakiston**—P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1012 Walnut St., Philadelphia, Pa.
- Gray**—J. & J. Gray, Edinburgh, Scotland.
- Grolier**—Grolier Society of London, Manning Chambers, Toronto.
- Holt**—Henry Holt & Co., 34 West 33rd St., New York, N.Y.
- Letts**—Charles Letts & Co., 3 Royal Exchange, London, E.C.3, England.
- O'Connor**—Daniel O'Connor, 90 Great Russell St., London, W.C.1, England.
- Routledge**—G. Routledge & Sons, 68-74 Carter Lane, Ludgate Hill, London, E.C., England.
- Sanborn**—Benj. H. Sanborn & Co., 50 Beacon St., Boston, Mass.

Index

OF ANNOTATED SELECTIONS IN SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH, AND FIFTH READERS

	PAGE		PAGE
Adjudged Case, An.....	257	Bruin and the Cook.....	308
Alan McLeod, V.C.....	274	Buffalo, The.....	283
Alice and the White Queen.....	222	Bugle Song, The.....	296
Alice in Wonderland.....	41	Burial of Moses, The.....	368
All Things Beautiful.....	106	Burning of Moscow, The.....	400
Androcles and the Lion.....	110		
Ants and Their Slaves.....	396	Canada! Maple Land!.....	236
Antonio Canova.....	212	Canadian Boat-Song, A.....	264
Ape and the Firefly, The.....	123	Canadian Camping Song, A.....	388
April Morning, An.....	196	Canadians—Canadians—That's All..	359
April Rain.....	214	Captain Cook.....	318
Arachne.....	184	Captain Scott's Last Journey.....	248
Arrow and the Song, The.....	108	Charge of the Light Brigade, The...	251
At School with Shakespeare.....	216	Cheerful Locksmith, The.....	249
At the Zoo.....	78	Chickens, The.....	10
Athabaska Trail, The.....	221	Children of the Empire.....	129
Autumn Fires.....	12	Children's Song, The.....	239
		Child's World, The.....	111
Baby Bear Mends his Chair.....	11	Christ of the Andes, The.....	302
Baldur, the Beautiful.....	158	Christmas.....	169
Barren Lands, The.....	350	Christmas Dinner, The.....	167
Beatitudes, The.....	172	Cincinnatus.....	206
Beavers, The.....	133	Circus-Day Parade, The.....	167
Bed in Summer.....	9	Clouds, The.....	139
Beginning of Rome, The.....	257	Colors of the Flag, The.....	182
Belling the Cat.....	39	Columbus and the Egg.....	144
Bewildered Bluebirds, The.....	134	Coming of Angus Og, The.....	173
Billy Topsail.....	195	Copperfield and the Waiter.....	243
Black Beauty's Breaking In.....	205	Country Mouse and the City Mouse	
Bless the Lord, O My Soul.....	370	The.....	32
Bluejay, The.....	294	Coureur-de-Bois, The.....	255
Boadicea.....	342	Coyote, The.....	337
Boats Sail on the Rivers.....	29	Coyote, The.....	338
Boy Hero, The.....	169	Creation.....	414
Boy's Song, A.....	108	Crocus's Song, The.....	208
Brahman, the Tiger and the Six			
Judges, The.....	90	Daisies, The.....	35
Brook Song, The.....	212	Damon and Pythias.....	122
Brown Thrush, The.....	15	Dandelion, The.....	16
Brownies, The.....	33	Dandelion, The.....	17
Bruce and the Spider.....	193	David and Goliath.....	223

	PAGE		PAGE
Departure of the Fleet from Lemnos, The.....	392	He and She.....	99
Devon Men.....	198	Heidi.....	191
Dickens in Camp.....	332	Henry Hudson.....	369
Dog Crusoe, The.....	301	Heroes of the Long Sault, The.....	372
Dog of Flanders, A.....	112	Heroine of Verchères, The.....	279
Dominion Hymn.....	115	Hiawatha's Brothers.....	23
Dominique.....	355	Hiawatha's Hunting.....	127
Don Quixote and the Windmills.....	298	Hindu Fable, A.....	117
Doubting Castle and Giant Despair.....	325	Home, Sweet Home.....	246
Duel, The.....	71	Honey-Bee's Song, The.....	51
Eagle, The.....	225	Hope of the World, The.....	381
Eastern Legend, An.....	88	Horatius.....	403
Edith Cavell.....	211	How Robinson Crusoe Made Bread..	251
Elf and the Dormouse, The.....	42	How the Indians Got the Corn.....	56
Enchanted Shirt, The.....	189	How the Little Kite Learned to Fly..	45
Explorer's Boyhood, An.....	163	How the Robin Got its Red Breast..	28
Fairies, The.....	394	How They Brought the Good News..	384
Fairies of the Caldron-Low, The.....	125	Hunting the Chamois.....	196
Fairy Went A-Marketing, A.....	70	Hunting with a Camera.....	379
Farewell to the Farm.....	40	I Dig a Ditch.....	336
First English Singer, The.....	181	I do! Don't You?.....	69
First Printer, The.....	209	Iceberg, An.....	419
Fisherman and his Wife, The.....	9	Immortality.....	335
Flight of the Thrushes, The.....	98	In a Minute.....	13
Forest Fire, A.....	295	In Flanders Fields.....	421
Four Sunbeams.....	76	In the Hall of Cedric, the Saxon....	366
Four Things.....	222	Incheape Rock, The.....	155
Frog Prince, The.....	36	Incident of the French Camp.....	311
Frogs at School.....	21	Indian Summer Carol, An.....	131
From Canada, by Land.....	411	Iris.....	84
Frost, The.....	146	Jack-o'-Lantern, The.....	44
General Brock.....	416	Jackal and the Alligator, The.....	14
Gold and Silver Shield, The.....	215	Jackanapes.....	126
Golden-Rod.....	55	Jacques Cartier.....	275
Golden Touch, The.....	70	James Watt and the Tea-Kettle....	49
Golden Windows, The.....	121	Japanese Home, A.....	84
Good Samaritan, The.....	50	John Gilpin.....	231
Goose that Laid the Golden Egg, The	7	John Ridd's Ride.....	156
Grace Darling.....	219	Joseph and his Brethren.....	99
Gray and White.....	31	King Arthur's Sword.....	135
Gulliver in Giant Land.....	389	King Solomon and the Bees.....	19
Hammer of Thor, The.....	147	King Wenceslas.....	101
Happy Home, A.....	24	Kitchener of Khartoum.....	269
Harvest Song.....	49	Knights of the Silver Shield, The...	139
Harvest Time.....	122	Lady Moon.....	26
Hayloft, The.....	69	Land of Counterpane, The.....	25

	PAGE		PAGE
Land of Story-Books, The.....	74	New Game, A.....	12
Lark at the Diggings, The.....	329	Ning-Ting.....	45
Laughing Chorus, A.....	89	North-West—Canada, The.....	388
Laura Secord.....	308	November.....	255
Laws of the Land, The.....	286	Nut-Crackers and the Sugar-Tongs, The.....	135
Legend of Athelney, A.....	218	O Canada!.....	39
Legend of Saint Christopher, The....	317	Oasis, The.....	340
Life of Fear, A.....	314	Off to the Fishing Ground.....	177
Little Brown Hands.....	226	Oliver Cromwell at Home.....	343
Little Chimney Sweep, The.....	102	On Making Camp.....	386
Little Eskimo, The.....	34	One, Two, Three.....	50
Little Hiawatha.....	23	Orchard, The.....	110
Little Seed, The.....	19	Orchard, The.....	110
Little Things.....	65	Outpost, The.....	286
Lobster Quadrille, The.....	62	Over in the Meadow.....	30
Lochinvar.....	380	Overland Mail, The.....	289
Lord is my Shepherd, The.....	324	Owl and the Pussy-Cat, The.....	75
Lord Nelson.....	86	Pandora's Box.....	95
Loss of the "Birkenhead", The.....	292	Peddler's Caravan, The.....	83
Loss of the Brigg, The.....	288	Phaeton.....	164
Lost Camel, The.....	109	Pied Piper of Hamelin, The.....	73
Lost Doll, The.....	23	Pioneer Woman, A.....	151
Love of Country.....	322	Pioneer's Wife, A.....	415
Lullaby of an Infant Chief.....	102	Pippa.....	76
Madonna of the Chair, The.....	81	Pippa's Song.....	77
Maggie and Tom.....	197	Ploughman, The.....	43
Maid of Eclusier, The.....	201	Pot of Gold, The.....	118
Maple, The.....	327	Powder-Monkey, The.....	78
March of the Men of Harlech.....	171	Psalm of David, A.....	321
Marco Bozzaris.....	398	Puppy and I.....	30
Marmion and Douglas.....	390	Pussy Willow.....	33
Matilda Jane.....	8	Putting the World to Bed.....	28
Meeting in the Rain, A.....	190	Rabbit's Trick, The.....	71
Mercury and the Woodmen.....	52	Race with Time, A.....	214
Michael, the Upright.....	140	Rainbow, The.....	12
Miller of the Dee, The.....	140	Rainbow Bridge, The.....	27
Minstrel Boy, The.....	267	Raindrop, The.....	26
Miraculous Pitcher, The.....	277	Rapid, The.....	290
Miriam's Song.....	259	Reason Why, The.....	37
Months, The.....	38	Recessional.....	424
Moonlight Sonata, The.....	241	Red River Voyageur, The.....	278
Morning Hymn.....	7	Rescue, The.....	356
Moses at the Fair.....	280	Ride for Life, A.....	188
Mouse and the Lion, The.....	20	Riders of the Plains, The.....	161
Mr. Winkle on Skates.....	347	River, The.....	268
My Shadow.....	32	Robinson Crusoe.....	88
National Anthem.....	113	Rock-a-by Lady, The.....	95
Nature's Song.....	301		
Nest in a Pocket, A.....	93		

	PAGE		PAGE
Romance of Marquis Wheat, The...	356	Tidal Bore, The.....	266
Roman's Honor, A.....	254	Time and the Deed, The.....	147
Round-Up, The.....	268	'Tis the Last Rose of Summer.....	420
Rule, Britannia.....	265	To an Oriole.....	335
Saint Valentine.....	75	To a Sparrow.....	357
Sand Castle, The.....	53	Tom, the Water-Baby.....	142
Sandman, The.....	20	Torch of Life, The.....	346
Scarecrow, The.....	97	Treasure House of Mammon, The...	290
Scene from "William Tell," A.....	353	Treasure Valley, The.....	311
Scots, Wha Hae.....	338	True Fairy Tale, A.....	316
Sea, The.....	285	Two Little Kittens.....	29
September.....	119	Ugly Duckling, The.....	21
Seven Times Four.....	414	Unbroken Song, The.....	279D
Seven Times One.....	57	Unknown Painter, The.....	187
Shepherd's Song, The.....	171	Unnamed Lake, The.....	315
Sherwood.....	374	Up the Ottawa River.....	259
Ships of St. John, The.....	348	Value of Time, The.....	421
Shoemaker and the Elves, The.....	115	Waiting to Grow.....	79
Silent Searchers, The.....	134	Wake-up Song, A.....	105
Sir Humphrey Gilbert.....	203	Walker of the Snow, The.....	193
Sir Philip Sidney.....	53	Walrus and the Carpenter.....	210
Sleepy Song, The.....	46	Water and the Pitcher, The.....	10
Snow Bird's Song, The.....	18	Waves.....	215
Snow Blanket, The.....	17	Wedding of Allan-a-Dale, The.....	66
Song My Paddle Sings, The.....	280	Weighing an Elephant.....	52
Song of the Brook, The.....	306	Wet Sheet and a Flowing Sea, A....	215
Song of the Golden Sea.....	121	Where go the Boats?.....	52
Song Sparrow, The.....	247	"While Shepherds Watched Their Flocks".....	282
Sower and the Seed, The.....	190	White Horse Plain, The.....	323
Spires of Oxford, The.....	336	White Ship, The.....	235
Splendor of the Days, The.....	331	Whitethroat, The.....	213
Squirrel Wisdom.....	47	Why the Bear's Tail is Short.....	19
Stars.....	190	Wind, The.....	13
Story of Absalom, The.....	334	Wind, The.....	27
Story of Aladdin, The.....	94	Wind and the Moon, The.....	164
Story of Florence Nightingale, A....	60	Wind and the Sun, The.....	24
Story of Piccola, The.....	25	Wind in a Frolic, The.....	151
Story of the McIntosh Red, The.....	228	Wolf! Wolf!.....	30
Summer Storm, A.....	222	Wonderful Journey, A.....	129
Sun in the Woods, The.....	206	Work or Play.....	255
Sunflower, The.....	64	Wreck of the Hesperus, The.....	185
Sweet and Low.....	154	Wrestling Match, The.....	375
Swing, The.....	22	Wynken, Blynken, and Nod.....	35
Talents, The.....	229	Ye Mariners of England.....	249
Tecumseh and the Eagles.....	377	Young Hero, A.....	106
Tent House.....	234		
Three Minstrels, The.....	129		
Three Trees.....	141		

